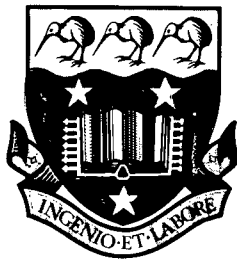
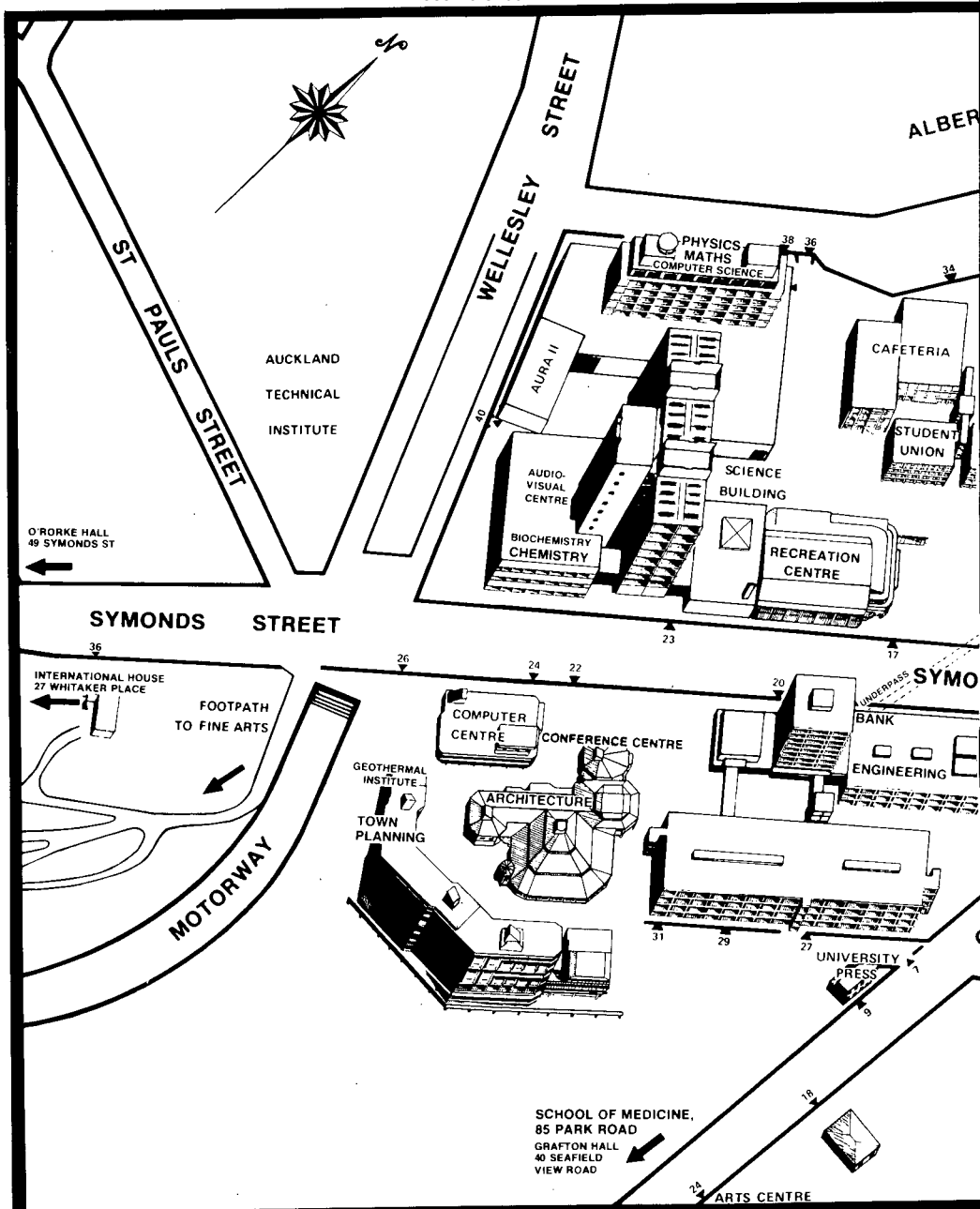


**The  
University  
of  
Auckland**

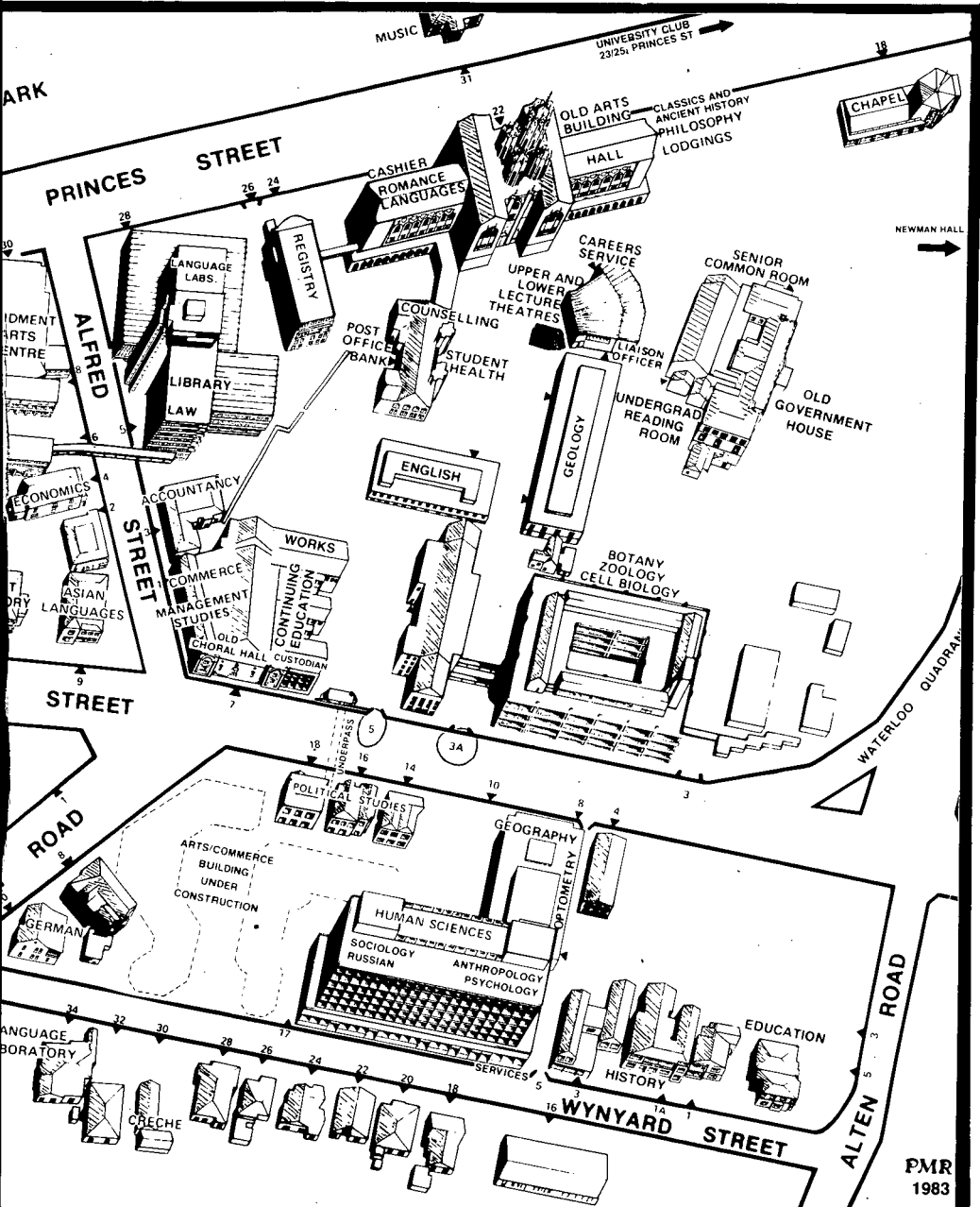
*Calendar* **1983**





# UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

MAIN SITE



**ALL DEPARTMENTS AND THEIR STREET ADDRESSES  
ARE LISTED AT THE BACK OF THE CALENDAR**

# Contents

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
<b>Centenary Information</b>		Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	248
Vice Chancellor's Message	6	Diploma in Clinical Psychology	248
The University of Auckland Foundation	7	Diploma in Computational Mathematics	249
History of the University	8	Diploma in Energy Technology (Geothermal)	250
Arms of the University	10	Diploma in Mathematical Education	251
		Diploma in Statistics	252
<b>General Information</b>		Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radio-Chemistry	253
Calendar Year 1983	12	<i>Faculty of Commerce</i>	
Officers of the University	19	Degree of Bachelor of Commerce	256
The Council	19	Degree of Master of Commerce	265
The Senate	21	Degree of Master of Business Administration	267
Deans of Faculties	22	Degree Course Prescriptions	268
Honorary Graduates	23	Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	273
Professores Emeriti	24	Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration	273
Staff of the University (academic)	25	<i>Faculty of Law</i>	
Staff of the University (library)	51	Degree of Bachelor of Laws	276
Staff of the University (non-academic)	53	Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Hons)	280
		Law Professional Examination	282
<b>General Statutes and Regulations</b>		Degree of Master of Laws	283
Admission	60	Degree of Master of Jurisprudence	285
Enrolment and Course (General)	61	Degree Course Prescriptions	287
Pre-enrolment	74	Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	294
Enrolment 1983	77	Diploma in Criminology	294
Extramural Enrolment	80	<i>Faculty of Music</i>	
Examination	81	Degree of Bachelor of Music	298
Conferring of Degrees and Academic Dress	85	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)	302
Award of Honorary Degrees	86	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours	306
Fees	88	Degree of Master of Music	308
Discipline	91	Degree Course Prescriptions	311
The Library	94	Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	316
		Diploma in Music	316
<b>Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>		Diploma in Music with Honours	319
<i>Faculty of Arts</i>		Certificate Course of Instruction in a Single Instrument	320
Degree of Bachelor of Arts	98	<i>Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning</i>	
Degree of Master of Arts	131	Degree of Bachelor of Architecture	324
Degree Course Prescriptions	139	Degree of Master of Architecture	328
Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	189	Joint Special Examination NZIA and AERB	329
Diploma in Broadcast Communication	190	Degree Course Prescriptions	331
Diploma in Drama	190	Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	334
Diploma in Education	191	Diploma in Valuation	334
Diploma in Educational Psychology	192	Degree of Bachelor of Town Planning	337
Diploma in Guidance and Counselling	193	Degree of Master of Town Planning	339
Diploma in Local Government and Administration	194		
<i>Faculty of Science</i>			
Degree of Bachelor of Science	198		
Degree of Bachelor of Science (Hons)	212		
Degree of Bachelor of Optometry	214		
Degree of Master of Science	217		
Degree Course Prescriptions	220		



	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
Degree Course Prescriptions .....	341	<i>Inter-Faculty</i>	
Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions .....	342	Degree of Master of Philosophy .....	404
Diploma in Town Planning .....	343	Degree of Doctor of Philosophy .....	404
<i>Faculty of Engineering</i>		Certificate of Proficiency .....	407
Degree of Bachelor of Engineering .....	346	Inter-Faculty Studies .....	407
Degree of Master of Engineering .....	352	Operations Research .....	407
Professional Institution Courses .....	354	<i>Continuing Education, Computer Centre</i>	
Degree Course Prescriptions .....	355	Centre for Continuing Education .....	410
<i>Faculty of Fine Arts</i>		Computer Centre .....	410
Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts .....	372	<b>General Student and Staff Information</b>	
Degree of Master of Fine Arts .....	373	Student Services .....	414
Degree Course Prescriptions .....	376	Halls of Residence .....	415
<i>Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology</i>		Students' Association .....	417
Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology .....	382	Graduates' Association .....	419
Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery .....	383	University Club .....	420
Degree of Master of Human Biology .....	384	Enrolment .....	421
Degree of Master of Medical Science .....	385	Enrolment Limitations 1983 .....	421
Degree of Doctor of Medicine .....	386	Lecture Timetable 1983 .....	423
Degree Course Prescriptions .....	388	Laboratory Timetable 1983 .....	438
Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions .....	392	<i>Scholarships Grants, Awards and Prizes</i>	
Diploma in Paediatrics .....	392	Tertiary Assistance Grants .....	444
Diploma in Psychiatry .....	392	Scholarships and Prizes .....	446
Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics .....	393	National Scholarships and Prizes 1982 .....	447
Diploma in Obstetrics .....	394	University of Auckland Scholarships 1982 .....	447
<i>Higher Degrees</i>		University of Auckland Prizes 1981 .....	449
Degree of Doctor of Literature .....	398	<b>Legislation</b>	
Degree of Doctor of Science .....	399	Legislation .....	453
Degree of Doctor of Laws .....	400	<b>Prescribed Texts</b>	
Degree of Doctor of Music .....	401	Prescribed Texts .....	484
		Directory .....	511
		Index .....	514

#### Official Address

The correspondence of the University is conducted by the Registrar, and all communications on University matters should be addressed as follows:

The Registrar  
The University of Auckland  
Private Bag, Auckland  
New Zealand

Telegrams and Cables should be addressed as follows:

University Auckland  
Telephone: 737-999

## **THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND CENTENARY MESSAGE**

The University of Auckland celebrates its centenary in 1983. Functions of a varied nature will be held throughout the year. In the main focus period of 6-9 May there will be a special programme of events, including symposia and lectures, an assembly for the centenary oration and for the reception of greetings from universities around the world, a convocation for the award of honorary degrees, a service of thanksgiving and commemoration, and a concert featuring the New Zealand Symphony Orchestra and University choral groups. In addition there will be a full programme of receptions and social events in which staff and students will welcome back graduates to the campus and return hospitality to the community.

The centenary of the University of Auckland is the most notable educational event in the history of Auckland and must be marked by some permanent gift worthy of the occasion. The University of Auckland Foundation has therefore been established to commemorate the centenary. The Foundation is intended primarily to encourage a flow of highly-qualified visitors from overseas to share their knowledge and their expertise with the university community, staff and students alike, and with the wider community of city, region and nation.

I would hope that many of you using this *Calendar* will contribute to this appeal and I look forward to seeing you at some of our centenary functions.

I wish you well in your academic activities during the 1983 academic year, and hope the year will be as exciting and rewarding for you as for the University as a whole.

C. J. Maiden  
Vice-Chancellor

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND FOUNDATION

In commemoration of the Centenary of the University, the University of Auckland Foundation is established for the advancement of education in New Zealand in ways which extend the University's ability to meet the higher educational needs of the Community.

The Trustees will apply the income of the Foundation from time to time in fulfilling within the University District and elsewhere in New Zealand the purpose for which the Foundation is established:

1. To encourage the transfer and exchange of knowledge among scholars and the dissemination of knowledge among the community.
2. To encourage overseas scholars to visit New Zealand and New Zealand scholars to visit overseas to carry out study and research and to exchange and impart their knowledge and experience.
3. To arrange the movement within New Zealand of resident and visiting scholars.
4. To facilitate those visits and movements of scholars to, from and within New Zealand, assisting to arrange the temporary exchange or occupation of academic posts in New Zealand and (where New Zealand scholars are concerned) overseas.
5. To arrange the giving of lectures and the promotion of educational discussion and debate in New Zealand before invited or public audiences by scholars from both within and without New Zealand and to arrange itineraries and accommodation for the participants;

and in encouraging, arranging and facilitating those activities the Trustees may make such grants, pay such fees, cost of travel and accommodation and make such other expenditure as they consider necessary or desirable.

Note: "New Zealand Scholar" means a scholar resident in New Zealand who is pursuing his career here. "Scholar" includes a person engaged in any discipline, in the study or practice of administration and of technology and in the management or custody of libraries.

Donations to the Foundation should be sent to:

The Registrar,  
University of Auckland,  
Private Bag,  
Auckland 1.

A form of legacy for the Foundation, or for the University as a whole, is available on request from the Registrar.

## HISTORY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

As early as 1862 an unknown writer, 'J.G.', proposed in *Chapman's New Zealand Monthly Magazine* that a university should be established in Auckland. No one took up the suggestions. In the South Island, where the inhabitants were wealthier and keener on education, a university was established in Otago in 1869 and a college in Canterbury in 1873. In 1870 Parliament passed legislation to create the University of New Zealand as an examining body with affiliated teaching colleges. An Auckland politician, later Speaker of the House of Representatives, Maurice O'Rorke, tried to induce Parliament to place the University in Auckland, but he failed. The University of New Zealand had no fixed abode; its Senate met in the main towns in turn.

The citizens of Auckland did nothing to establish a college, but some so-called 'university' instruction was provided at the Auckland Grammar School. One student, Kate Edger, in 1877 became the first woman to graduate B.A. at a British university.

In 1878 O'Rorke was appointed chairman of a Royal Commission to report on higher education. It recommended that University Colleges should be established at Auckland and Wellington. In 1882 the Auckland University College was set up by Act of Parliament. Thus the College was a creation, not of the citizens and local government, like those in the south, but of the state.

The applicants for the first four chairs, of Classics and English, Mathematics, Natural Science, Chemistry and Physics, were interviewed in England by the New Zealand Agent-General and some of the most famous scientists and scholars of the day, including the great Benjamin Jowett of Balliol College, Vice-Chancellor of Oxford University. The men appointed formed an impressive group. The chemist, F. D. Brown, had studied both in France and at Leipzig as well as London, and taught at Oxford and London. He had published a dozen papers. Algernon Phillips Thomas, the biologist, was a Balliol man who had discovered the life history of the liver fluke. The classicist, T. G. Tucker, was to become a famous scholar. When he left to go to Melbourne University in 1885 he was succeeded by Hutcheson Macaulay Posnett, an Irishman who had written several books, including one on comparative literature, what would now be called the sociology of literature, a subject which he is now credited with inventing. The first professor of Mathematics was drowned shortly after he reached Auckland and he was succeeded by W. S. Aldis, who had been the senior wrangler at Cambridge and was the author of several mathematical books.

The College was formally opened on 21 May 1883 in the Choral Hall, then the largest hall in Auckland. The Governor, Sir William Jervois, announced that the College was to be a thoroughly democratic institution, open to all, women as well as men, and to all classes. He remarked that the first College building was a barn. It was, in fact, a disused court-house.

When O'Rorke had first tried to secure a University for Auckland, in 1872, he had suggested housing it in Government House, left empty when the capital was moved to Wellington in 1865. This immediately aroused opposition in the newspapers, for many Aucklanders hoped that the capital – and the governor – would eventually return to Auckland. These conflicting ambitions lay at the basis of a recurrent feature of the history of the College, the great 'site row' which raged with particular violence in the years 1909–12, with the College trying to get at least part of the grounds of Government House while numerous citizens strongly opposed it. One result was that for years the College had no permanent site or permanent buildings. Instead, it acquired the disused Admiralty House and a building which had been the original Parliament House. In 1907 the Choral Hall was purchased. In 1917 the College occupied the deserted Grammar School. Not until 1926 did it acquire its first permanent building, now the Old Arts building, in Princes Street.

The College was poor: its statutory grant was for many years only £4,000 a year, while its educational reserves were of such poor land that they brought in very little. It was small: there were 95 students in 1883; 156 by 1901. Many of the students had not passed the matriculation examination. Most of them were part-time, trainee teachers and Law clerks, Music students from 1888 onwards, Commerce students by 1905. The College was dominated by the lay members of Council, especially by Sir Maurice O'Rorke, who was its chairman from 1883 to 1916. When Professor Aldis complained in 1892 that he had found the College stables occupied by O'Rorke's son's polo ponies he was dismissed! Despite a prolonged public controversy, Council would not reinstate him. Posnett also left, in 1891.

Some of the best professors departed. Most of the remainder grew increasingly out-of-date in their subjects. There was no system of sabbatical or study leave until the nineteen-twenties. The teachers simply handed on traditional knowledge: research was not expected and was rarely done. The staff lectured for very long hours. In some subjects research was impossible. For instance, the library took no mathematical journals, so the mathematicians knew little about recent work. Some students, however, carried out good research notably in Chemistry. In general the students were given a good, traditional undergraduate education, but standards were not rigorous and had in some subjects declined by the twenties.

In that decade and well into the thirties the College was ruled by a Registrar, Rocke O'Shea, and a new Chairman (President after 1924), another former Cabinet Minister, Sir George Fowlds. Under their not always benevolent dictatorship some improvements were made. The first New Zealand graduates with post-graduate education abroad were appointed to the staff, notably the very able economist, Horace Belshaw, the philosopher, R. P. Anschutz, and the physicist, P. W. Burbidge. An excellent researcher, W. F. Short, was appointed as a lecturer in Chemistry.

Some advances were made in providing professional education. The only such education offered at the College was in Law, which attracted large numbers of students. The only 'professional schools' recognized by the University of New Zealand were Medicine at Otago and Engineering at Canterbury. In 1906 the College established a School of Mining, which, covertly and by degrees was turned into a 'School of Engineering'. After fierce battles with Canterbury, fired by provincial rivalry, the Auckland School received University recognition for its teaching in the first two professional years. Students then had to go to Canterbury to complete their final year of education. In the course of this battle, in 1917, the College also began instruction in Architecture.

During the depression of the early nineteen-thirties there were great disputation and rancour. The temporary appointment of a lecturer in history, J. C. Beaglehole, later a world-famous scholar, was terminated after and, his friends believed, because of a letter of liberal or radical tendency, to a newspaper, defending the right of Communists to distribute their literature. This episode led to a Council election in which a liberal, Hollis Cocker, displaced a conservative. The College Council now adopted resolutions in favour of academic freedom and received the undeserved congratulations of the flower of the British academic establishment, including Lord Rutherford and Wittgenstein. At this time, in a modern terminology, the College 'came alive'. For instance, some students, led by James Bertram, established a new literary journal, *Phoenix*, which was the focus for the first literary movement in New Zealand history: Allen Curnow, A. R. D. Fairburn, R. A. K. Mason and other writers, later distinguished, wrote for it.

The College received great intellectual stimulus in 1934 when four new professors arrived, H. G. Forder, a very able mathematician, Arthur Sewell, a brilliant lecturer in English, a classicist, C. G. Cooper, and a new historian, James Rutherford.

The College had never had academic leadership. Cocker came to dominate it before and during World War II as much as had O'Rorke and O'Shea. But Council now appointed the first Principal (later Vice-Chancellor) K. J. Maidment. He came in 1950 and remained for two decades. He was a Classics don from Merton College, Oxford.

The nineteen-fifties was a very difficult period in the history of the College — the University of Auckland, as it was called from 1958 onwards. There was a further, fierce 'site row'. Council wanted to move to a larger site out of town. The National Government in 1956 offered Government House to the College as a compensation for staying in Princes Street. Another 'save Government House' campaign followed. Both academic staff and the public were deeply divided over the issue, which was resolved in 1960: the University was to stay where it was.

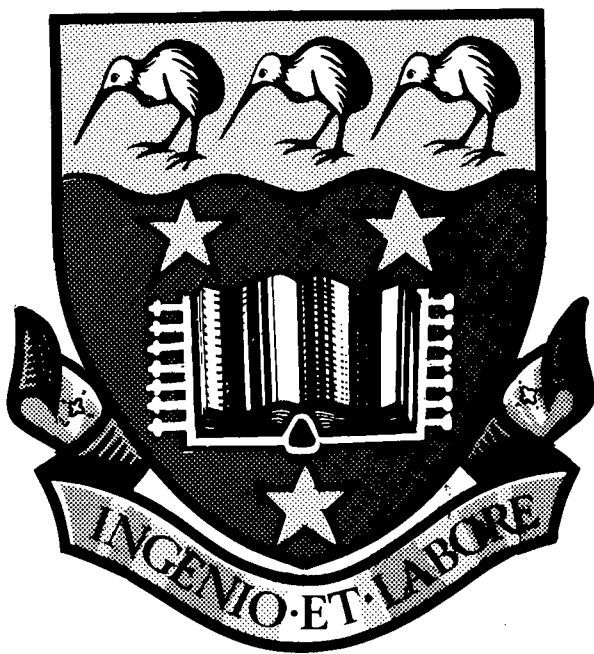
The 'site row' held up the building programme for about six years, while student rolls rose rapidly, to 4,000 by 1959, with the result that there was bad overcrowding in quite inadequate buildings — army huts, for instance, were erected. Universities everywhere were expanding rapidly. New Zealand salaries were low and many able Auckland staff were recruited by Australian or other universities. Despite these problems, there was significant progress. New subjects were introduced: Geography, Anthropology, Maori Studies, Fine Arts. There was a new emphasis on staff research. Many of the new and younger academics became very active researchers, as could be seen in the growing lists of staff publications.

A general improvement in conditions was spearheaded by a Committee, the Hughes Parry Committee, which reported on University conditions. Staff salaries were raised. For the first time the students were given fairly generous bursaries, which led to a rapid increase in the proportion of full-time students. The government grant to the University rose rapidly. There was a massive university building programme, and over the next two decades the campus was transformed as one large building after another was erected: Fine Arts, Science, Engineering buildings, a Student Union, a new library ... A number of new subjects were introduced, including Political Studies, Art History, and Sociology. In 1968 teaching commenced in the new Medical School, which was the most important 'new development'.

By the end of the sixties Auckland had the largest university library in the country, whereas it had usually been the smallest. Most of the credit for this belonged to Kenneth Maidment. One other change must be mentioned. In 1962 the University at last became independent, when the University of New Zealand was abolished.

When Dr Kenneth Maidment departed in 1970, there were 9,300 students. Under his successor, Dr Colin Maiden, the roll increased to over 12,000 by 1981. Dr Maiden was an Auckland engineer who headed a research division of General Motors in Michigan. One of the first things that struck him in Auckland was the paucity of student facilities. He pushed ahead to get them a theatre, a splendid gymnasium and recreation centre, and a large playing field 'complex'. The entire administrative organisation, from faculties and committees to deputy vice-chancellors, was reformed. The academic boom of the sixties continued well into the seventies and several new buildings, like Human Sciences, were built and new subjects, like Management Studies and Computer Science, were introduced.

The seventies brought numerous social changes: an increase in the proportion of Maori and Polynesian students and in the proportion of women as well as in the proportion of older students. Only in the years 1975-81 were the first two women professors appointed, Marie Clay and Patricia Bergquist. At a time of high inflation the government grant to the University rose rapidly, to \$48.5 million by 1982. Nevertheless there was a certain austerity by then, in a bleak economic climate, but after a century of growth the University seems sufficiently strongly established in the community to withstand hard conditions.



## ARMS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

as granted by Garter, Clarenceux and Norroy and Ulster, Kings of Arms by Letters Patent bearing date the 15th February 1962 and recorded in the College of Arms, London.

### Heraldic Description

Azure between three Mulletts Argent an open Book proper edged and bound Or with seven clasps on either side Gold on a Chief wavy also Argent three Kiwis proper.

On a scroll set below the Arms appear the words 'Ingenio et Labore'.

### Symbolism

The open book together with the motto 'Ingenio et Labore', freely translated as 'by natural ability and hard work', indicate in a general way the aim of the institution and combined with the three stars express the idea of learning pursued under the sky of the Southern Hemisphere. The kiwis are indicative of New Zealand as the bird is absolutely confined to its Islands and the silver wavy chief upon which they are set directs attention to the fact that Auckland is on the sea coast.

**Note:** British Colour Council Dictionary of Colour Standards, references: AZURE (BCC 196) or (BCC 114).

---

# General Information

## *Contents*

---

12	Calendar Year 1983
19	Officers of the University
19	The Council
21	The Senate
22	Deans of Faculties
23	Honorary Graduates
24	Professores Emeriti
25	Staff of the University
51	Library Staff
53	Administration Staff
53	Registrar's Section Staff
53	Academic Section Staff
54	Finance Section Staff
54	Personnel Section Staff
55	Works Section Staff
56	Welfare Services Section staff

## THE CALENDAR YEAR 1983

### January 1983

Saturday 1	New Year's Day
Wednesday 5	Registry opens
Monday 10	Applications close for: Enrolment as an Extramural student. Permission to re-enrol because of failure to make satisfactory academic progress.
Saturday 15	Applications close for: Pre-enrolment as an internal student for: Architecture & Town Planning, BArch 1st Professional, DipVal Intermediate and First Professional, BTP, First Town Planning Examination (for first time), DipTP (for first time), MTP: Arts; Accounting 01.102, 01.103, Anthropology 03.204, 03.206, 03.207 and 03.210 and all Stage III papers, Art History all Stage II and III papers, Computer Science (all papers), English 18.328, all students in Music, Psychology 32.109, 32.206, 32.207 and Masters papers, BipBrc, DipDrama: Commerce; BCom Part I (any paper), Accounting Stage I papers and Commercial Law for any Course of Study, Management Studies 72.220, 72.221: Engineering; BE First Professional (for the first time): Fine Arts; BFA, MFA, (First year only): Law; Accounting Stage I papers, Art History, Computer Science and Psychology (as for BA) for Intermediate LLB and LLB(Hons) (except Intermediate), LLM, MJur, DipCrim, Law Professional: Medicine & Human Biology; BHB II and III, MBChB I and II: Music; all students other than BMus (for the first time), BMus(Perf) (for the first time), DipMus (for the first time) including those who have been interviewed for a Performance Course and have a confirmed place: Science; Accounting 01.102, 01.103, Biochemistry 66.201, 301, 302, Botany 201/301, 39.213, Cell Biology 40.303, 40.304, 40.305, Computer Science all papers, Geology all Stage II and III papers, Physiology 67.201, 67.301, Psychology 32.109, 32.206, 32.207 and Masters papers, Zoology 38.201, 38.301, 38.310, 39.211, 39.207/307, 39.315 and MSc, DipComp Maths, BOptom, DipOpt Division II (for the first time). Provisional Admission. Permission to transfer to the University of Auckland from another University in New Zealand including students wishing to complete another University course.
Wednesday 19	Liaison Office opens for arranging appointments.
Monday 31	Auckland Anniversary Day Holiday. Last day for LATE applications for: Permission to pre-enrol for courses for which pre-enrolment is required by 15 January, provided a late fee of \$20 is paid.

### February 1983

Tuesday 1	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30.
Thursday 3	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30.
Sunday 6	Waitangi Day.
Monday 7	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30. Meeting of Education Committee 3.30. Meeting of Research Committee 10.00.
Tuesday 8	Meeting of Recreation Sub-Committee 3.30.
Thursday 10	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30.
Monday 14	Opening of General Information and Advisory Centre in Student Union Building, 9 a.m.-5 p.m. Mon-Fri. Meeting of Press Committee 2.00. Meeting of Council 4.00.
Wednesday 16	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00.
Thursday 17	Meeting of Non-Academic Staff Committee 3.30.
Friday 18	Last day for LATE applications for: Provisional Admission provided a late fee of \$20 is paid. Permission to re-enrol because of failure to make satisfactory progress provided a late fee of \$20 is paid.



Extramural enrolment, provided a late fee of \$20 is paid.

Students transferring from another New Zealand university provided a late fee of \$20 is paid.

Meeting of Audio Visual Committee 10.00.

Monday 21

**Enrolment Week begins**

Times for enrolment for the various Faculties are set out under General Student and Staff Information, Enrolment 1983.

Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30.

Tuesday 22

Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30.

Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.

Thursday 24

Meeting of Leave & Conference Sub-Committee 10.00.

Friday 25

**Enrolment Week ends**

General Information and Advisory Centre closes.

Monday 28

**First Term begins**

Candidates who have not presented theses, essays, dissertations, and original investigations to complete their Degree or Diploma by this date are required to re-enrol and are not entitled to have their Degree conferred or Diploma presented at the Graduation Ceremony in May.

Alterations to Courses of Study: for closing dates see Reg. 7

Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

Enrolments (with fees) close with the Registrar for the June examination for DipG&O and DipObst.

## March 1983

Tuesday 1

Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30.

Thursday 3

Meeting of Works Committee 3.30.

Friday 4

Last day for additions to courses in Engineering.

Monday 7

Meeting of Senate 9.30.

Thursday 10

Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30.

Monday 14

Last day for additions to courses in Architecture, Arts, Commerce, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine, Music and Science except Masters papers.

Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30.

Meeting of Education Committee 3.30.

Tuesday 15

Meeting of Library Committee 9.15.

Meeting of Research Committee 10.00.

Wednesday 16

Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00.

Thursday 17

Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30.

Friday 18

Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00.

Monday 21

Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30.

Meeting of Press Committee 2.00

Meeting of Council 4.00.

Tuesday 22

Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.

Wednesday 23

Meeting of Promotions Advisory Sub-Committee 3.30.

Thursday 24

Meeting of Leave & Conference Sub-Committee 10.00.

Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30.

Monday 28

Meeting of Senate 9.30.

Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30.

Tuesday 29

Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30.

Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30

Thursday 31

Last day for deletion of Courses (not including DipG&O, DipPaed, DipObst, final year for MBChB).

Last day for LATE applications for Extramural enrolment (Auckland subjects).

**April 1983**

Friday 1	Good Friday Last day for withdrawal from the Course for DipG&O and for DipObst for the June examinations.
	<b>Easter Recess begins</b>
Monday 4	Easter Monday.
Tuesday 5	University closed.
Wednesday 6	<b>Lectures resume after Easter recess.</b>
Thursday 7	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30.
Monday 11	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30.
	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30.
Wednesday 13	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00.
Thursday 14	Meeting of Recreation Sub-Committee 3.30.
Friday 15	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00.
Monday 18	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30.
	Meeting of Press Committee 2.00.
	Meeting of Council 4.00.
Tuesday 19	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00.
Wednesday 20	Meeting of Non-Academic Staff Committee 3.30.
Thursday 21	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30.
Monday 25	ANZAC Day.
Tuesday 26	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30.
	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30.
Wednesday 27	Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30.
Thursday 28	Meeting of Leave & Conference Committee 10.00.
	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30.
Saturday 30	Last day for additions to Masters courses except Engineering.

**Saturday 30 April University Open Day****May 1983**

Sunday 1	Applications close with Overseas Admissions Committee for overseas students in New Zealand and Fiji seeking admission at Entrance level for the 1984 Academic Year.
Monday 2	Meeting of Senate 9.30.
	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30.
Tuesday 3	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30.
	Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.
Thursday 5	Graduation Ceremonies – Commerce, Law, Science, Architecture, Town Planning, Engineering, Medicine and Human Biology.
Friday 6	Graduation Ceremonies – Arts, Fine Arts, Music
Saturday 7	First Term ends

<b>Friday 6</b>	<b>Opening of Centenary Celebration "Focus" period.</b>
<b>Saturday 7</b>	<b>Symposia, lectures, functions.</b> <b>New Zealand Symphony Orchestra Concert including University Choirs.</b>
<b>Sunday 8</b>	<b>Church Service.</b> <b>Sporting Events – University Park.</b> <b>Centenary Assembly and oration.</b>
<b>Monday 9</b>	<b>Symposia, lectures, functions.</b> <b>Convocation for the conferring of Honorary Degrees.</b>

Monday 16	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30. Meeting of Press Committee 2.00. Meeting of Council 4.00.
Tuesday 17	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00.
Wednesday 18	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00.
Thursday 19	Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Friday 20	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Monday 23	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30.
Tuesday 24	Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.
Thursday 26	Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30
Monday 20	<b>Second Term Begins</b> Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30.
Tuesday 31	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30. Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30.

---

## June 1983

Wednesday 1	Applications close for Commonwealth Scholarships (Australia).
Thursday 2	Meeting of Leave & Conference Sub-Committee 10.00.
Monday 6	Queen's Birthday.
Thursday 9	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30.
Monday 13	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30. Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 15	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00
Thursday 16	Meeting of Recreation Sub-Committee 3.30
Friday 17	Meeting of Audio-visual Committee 10.00
Monday 20	<b>Engineering Study Break and Examinations begin.</b> Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30. Meeting of Press Committee 2.00. Meeting of Council 4.00.
Tuesday 21	Meeting of Library Committee 9.15. Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 22	Meeting of Non-Academic Staff Committee 3.30.
Thursday 23	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30.
Monday 27	Meeting of Senate 9.30. Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30.
Tuesday 28	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30. Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.
Thursday 30	Applications close for admission in 1984 for BMus(Performance) (for the first time), and DipMus (for the first time). Meeting of Leave & Conference Sub-Committee 10.00. Meeting of Works Committee 3.30

---

## July 1983

Friday 1	<b>Engineering Study Break and Examinations end.</b>
Monday 4	<b>Mid-term Study Break begins.</b>
Tuesday 5	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Saturday 9	<b>Mid-term Study Break ends.</b>
Monday 11	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30. Meeting of Education Committee 3.30.
Thursday 14	Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30.
Friday 15	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00.
Monday 18	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30. Meeting of Press Committee 2.00 Meeting of Council 4.00

Tuesday 19	Meeting of Library Committee 9.15. Meeting of Research Committee 10.00.
Wednesday 20	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00.
Thursday 21	Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30.
Monday 25	Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30.
Tuesday 26	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30. Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.
Wednesday 27	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Sub-Committee 3.30.
Thursday 28	Meeting of Leave & Conference Sub-Committee 10.00.
Sunday 31	Applications close with Registrar for Rhodes Scholarships, Examination entries (with fees) for Sinclair, Gillies and Lissie Rathbone Scholarships (Entrance level) to be sent to the Secretary, Examination Board; Box 12-348, Wellington North, by this date.

*August 1983*

Monday 1	Meeting of Senate 9.30.
Tuesday 2	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30.
Thursday 4	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30.
Monday 8	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Thursday 11	Meeting of Recreation Sub-Committee 3.30.
Friday 12	<b>Second Term ends.</b>
Monday 15	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30. Meeting of Press Committee 2.00. Meeting of Council 4.00.
Tuesday 16	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00.
Wednesday 17	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00.
Thursday 18	Meeting of Non-Academic Staff Committee 3.30
Friday 19	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00.
Tuesday 23	Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.
Thursday 25	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30.
Monday 29	Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30.
Tuesday 30	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30.

*September 1983*

Thursday 1	Applications close with Overseas Students Admissions Committee for overseas students (other than those in New Zealand or Fiji) seeking admission at Entrance level for the 1984 Academic Year. Enrolments (with fees) close with the Registrar for the December examinations for DipG&O and DipObst. Meeting of Leave & Conference Sub-Committee 10.00.
Monday 5	<b>Third Term begins.</b> Meeting of Senate 9.30.
Tuesday 6	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30.
Thursday 8	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30.
Monday 12	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30. Meeting of Education Committee 3.30.
Thursday 15	Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30.
Friday 16	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00.
Monday 19	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30. Meeting of Press Committee 2.00. Meeting of Council 4.00.
Tuesday 20	Meeting of Library Committee 9.15. Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 21	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00. Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 9.00.

Thursday 22	Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Monday 26	Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30.
Tuesday 27	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30. Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.
Wednesday 28	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Sub-Committee 8.30.
Thursday 29	Meeting of Leave & Conference Sub-Committee 10.00

## October 1983

Saturday 1	Applications close with the Registrar for Commonwealth (U.K. and Canada), Postgraduate and some Auckland Scholarships. Last day for withdrawal from the Course DipG&O and DipObst for the December examination.
Monday 3	Applications close for entry to the course for BHB (for the first time) for 1984.
Tuesday 4	Meeting of Senate 9.30.
Thursday 6	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30.
Friday 7	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30.
Monday 10	Lectures end (approximately).
Thursday 13	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30.
Monday 17	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30.
Tuesday 18	Meeting of Recreation Sub-Committee 3.30.
Wednesday 19	Internal Degree and Diploma Examinations begin this week.
Thursday 20	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30.
Friday 21	Meeting of Press Committee 2.00.
Monday 24	Meeting of Council 4.00.
Tuesday 25	Meeting of Library Committee 9.15.
Wednesday 26	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00.
Thursday 27	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00.
Friday 28	Meeting of Non-Academic Staff Committee 3.30
Monday 31	Engineering lectures end (approximately)
Tuesday 1	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00.
Wednesday 2	Labour Day.
Thursday 3	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30.
Friday 4	Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30.
Saturday 5	Meeting of Leave & Conference Sub-Committee 10.00.
Sunday 6	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30.
Monday 7	Engineering examinations begin (approximately).
Tuesday 8	<b>Third Term ends.</b>
Wednesday 9	Applications close for some Auckland Scholarships.
Thursday 10	Applications close for entry to the Course for DipEdPsych, DipClin Psych (for the first time)
Friday 11	Meeting of Senate 9.30.

## November 1983

Tuesday 1	Applications close for most remaining Auckland Scholarships. Candidates for a Master's Degree must present theses and dissertations by this date except by special permission of Head of Department. DipEd and DipEdPsych candidates must present their original investigations and written reports to the Registrar by this date. Applications close for accommodation for University Halls of Residence for 1984. Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30. Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.
Thursday 3	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30.
Monday 7	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30.
Thursday 10	Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30.
Monday 14	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30. Meeting of Education Committee 3.30.

Tuesday 15	Applications close for entry to BMus (for the first time), BMus (Performance) (Honours), DipMus (Honours), MA and MPhil in Music. Meeting of Research committee 10.00
Wednesday 16	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00.
Thursday 17	Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30.
Friday 18	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00.
Monday 21	Meeting of Press Committee 2.00. Meeting of Council 4.00.
Tuesday 22	Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.
Wednesday 23	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Sub-committee 3.30.
Thursday 24	Meeting of Leave & Conference Sub-Committee 10.00. Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30.
Monday 28	Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30.
Tuesday 29	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30. Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Wednesday 30	Applications close for entry to DipGuid, and overseas students seeking admission with graduate status and wishing to enrol for a graduate degree or diploma. Meeting of Deans Committee (Scholarships) 9.30.

---

*December 1983*

---

Thursday 1	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30.
Monday 5	Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Tuesday 6	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00.
Monday 12	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30. Meeting of Council 4.00.
Tuesday 13	Meeting of Joint Relations Committee 4.30.
Wednesday 14	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00.
Thursday 15	Last day for withdrawal from the first-year course for MBChB.
Thursday 22	Registry Closed.
Sunday 25	Christmas Day.
Monday 26	Boxing Day.
Tuesday 27	Public Holiday.

---

## UNIVERSITY PERSONNEL

---

### OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

*Visitor* HIS EXCELLENCY THE GOVERNOR-GENERAL

*Chancellor* R. H. L. FERGUSON, MBChB N.Z., DO Lond., FRCS, FRACS

*Pro-Chancellor* J. H. INGRAM, BE N.Z., FIPENZ, FAIMM, MIMechE

*Vice-Chancellor* C. J. MAIDEN, ME N.Z. DPhil Oxf.

*Deputy Vice-Chancellor* P. N. TARLING, MA, PhD LittD Camb., FRAS FRHistS

*Registrar* W. B. NICOLL, BCom, ACA

---

### THE COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY

G. P. BRAAE, MCom N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Professor of Economics, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-84)*

PATRICIA R. BERGQUIST (Mrs), MSc PhD N.Z., DSc

*Professor of Zoology, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-83)*

D. J. BROAD, (President of the Students' Association)

*Ex officio*

G. W. A. BUSH, MA N.Z., PhD Brist., DipEd, AILGA

*Appointed by Senate (Retires 31-12-83)*

JOAN S. CHAPPLE, MBChB N.Z., FRACS

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-83)*

.....  
*Elected by the governing bodies of secondary schools within the Auckland University District (Retires 31-12-85)*

R. H. L. FERGUSON, MBChB N.Z., DO Lond., FRCS, FRACS (Chancellor)

*Appointed by the Governor-General in Council (Retires 30-6-83)*

A. M. FINLAY, QC, LLM N.Z., PhD Lond.

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-83)*

JENNIFER GIBBS (Mrs), MA N.Z.

*Appointed by the Governor-General in Council (Retires 30-6-84)*

K. J. HOLLYMAN, MA N.Z., DU Paris

*Professor of French, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-84)*

J. H. INGRAM, BE N.Z., FIPENZ, FAIMM, MIMechE

*Appointed by the Governor-General in Council (Retires 30-6-85)*

C. M. KAY, JP (Mayor of Auckland)

*Ex officio*

(Nominee for 1983). W. J. STREVEN, BCom N.Z., BA

A. C. KIBBLEWHITE, MSc N.Z., DIC PhD Lond., FInstP, FASA

*Professor of Geophysics, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-83)*

A. W. MACKNEY, OBE, MSc Syd., FRACI, Hon MNZIC

*Appointed by the Council (Retires 31-12-83)*

C. J. MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil Oxf. (Vice-Chancellor)

*Ex officio*

DEIRDRE G. MILNE (Mrs), LLB Well., MA

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-83)*

G. L. D. MORRIS, BCom BCA *Well.*  
*Appointed by Senate (Retires 31-12-84)*

CHARMAINE G. POUNTNEY, MA DipEd  
*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-85)*

G. D. SPEIGHT (The Hon. Mr Justice) LLB N.Z.  
*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-85)*

N. T. TUIASAU, BA LLB  
*Appointed by the Students' Association (Retires 30-6-83)*

DOROTHY G. WINSTONE (Mrs), CMG, BA DipEd N.Z.  
*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-85)*



## THE SENATE OF THE UNIVERSITY

Chairman: THE VICE-CHANCELLOR

ALL PROFESSORS (and their equivalents)

HEADS OF DEPARTMENTS AND ACTING HEADS OF DEPARTMENTS (subprofessorial).

DEANS (not being members of the professorial staff).

LIBRARIAN

LIAISON OFFICER

ASSOCIATE DEAN OF POST GRADUATE AFFAIRS IN MEDICINE

ELECTED MEMBERS OF THE SUB-PROFESSORIAL STAFF (three from the Faculty of Arts; two from the Faculty of Science; one each from the Faculties of Architecture and Town Planning, Commerce, Engineering, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine and Human Biology, Music and from the Centre for Continuing Education and five from the sub-professorial staff at large).

*Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning*

J. G. HUNT (Retires 31-1-85)

*Faculty of Arts*

G. W. A. BUSH (Retires 31-1-84)

IVANICA M. VODANOVICH (Retires 31-1-84)

VIVIENNE J. GRAY (Retires 31-1-85)

*Faculty of Commerce*

M. A. PERKINSON (Retires 31-1-84)

*Faculty of Engineering*

A. G. WILLIAMSON (Retires 31-1-84)

*Faculty of Fine Arts*

B. G. de THIER (Retires 31-1-85)

*Faculty of Law*

D. W. McMORLAND (Retires 31-1-85)

*Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology*

P. B. DAVIS (Retires 31-1-84)

*Faculty of Music*

G. W. J. DRAKE (Retires 31-1-85)

*Faculty of Science*

G. R. COCHRANE (Retires 31-1-85)

C. J. O'CONNOR (Retires 31-1-84)

*Centre for Continuing Education*

R. G. DELLOW (Retires 31-1-85)

*Sub-Professorial Staff at Large*

M. D. HANNE (Retires 31-1-84)

L. J. HOLT (Retires 31-1-84)

L. R. B. MANN (Retires 31-1-84)

JUDITH C. I. McMORLAND (Retires 31-1-84)

MARGARET A. WILSON (Retires 31-1-84)

PRESIDENT, AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY STUDENTS ASSOCIATION

FOUR STUDENT MEMBERS (nominated by Auckland University Students' Association).

J. W. BLAKEMAN (Retires 31-10-83)

KARIN BOS (Retires 31-10-83)

D. R. CAREY (Retires 30-4-83)

SUSAN M. COLLIER (Retires 30-4-83)

## DEANS

### *Dean of the Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning*

A. A. WILD, BArch N.Z., RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA

### *Dean of the Faculty of Arts*

P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD Camb., FRAS, FRHistS

### *Deputy Deans of the Faculty of Arts*

A. G. ANDERSON, MA DipEd N.Z., PhD

MARIE M. CLAY, MA DipEd N.Z. PhD, FNZPsS, Hon FNZEI

SUZANNE TYNDEL (Mrs), MA N.Z.

### *Dean of the Faculty of Commerce*

B. D. MURPHY, MA PhD

### *Deputy Deans of the Faculty of Commerce*

M. S. PUTTERILL, MBA PhD Cape T., CA, FCMA

J. C. ELMSLY, MA N.Z., MNZPsS

### *Dean of the Faculty of Engineering*

R. F. MEYER, BE N.Z., PhD Manc., FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ

### *Associate Dean of the Faculty of Engineering*

I. C. MEDLAND, BSc ME N.Z., PhD Manc., CEng, MICE, FIPENZ

### *Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts*

J. D. SAUNDERS, DipFA N.Z., MSIA, DipIndustDesign, NDD, FNZSID, FRSA

### *Sub Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts*

R. W. ELLIS, ARCA, RBA, MNZSSP, FRSA

### *Dean of the Faculty of Law*

J. F. NORTHEY, BA LLN N.Z., DJur Tor., LLD

### *Sub Deans of the Faculty of Law*

G. F. DAWSON, BA BCL Oxf.

MARGARET A. VENNEL (Mrs), LLB N.Z.

### *Dean of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology*

D. S. COLE, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

### *Deputy Dean of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology*

C. H. MACLAURIN, MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

### *Clinical Sub Dean*

G. L. GLASGOW, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

### *BHB Sub Dean*

D. M. PATON, MBChB Cape T., MD Wits, FIBiol, FRCPCan

### *Dean of the Faculty of Music*

### *Dean of the Faculty of Science*

G. A. WRIGHT, MSc N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FNZIC

### *Deputy Deans of the Faculty of Science*

M. J. J. LENNON, PhD M.I.T., MSc

R. GEDDES, BSc PhD Edin.

---

**HONORARY GRADUATES**

HER MAJESTY QUEEN ELIZABETH, THE QUEEN MOTHER,	LLD 1966
PAUL JOHN BEADLE,	MFA 1979
SIR JACK RICHARD BUTLAND,	LLD 1967
WILLIAM HENRY COOPER,	LLD 1974
SIR RAYMOND WILLIAM FIRTH,	LittD 1978
SIR CHARLES ALEXANDER FLEMING,	DSc 1974
OLIVE AVERIL JOHNSON,	MA 1979
KENNETH JOHN MAIDMENT,	LLD 1970
ROY GRANVILLE McELROY,	LittD 1976
WALTER SCHEEL,	LLD 1978
SIR WILLIAM ALFRED STEVENSON,	DSc 1978
SIR ALEXANDER KINGCOMBE TURNER,	LLD 1965
FRANCIS JOHN TURNER,	DSc 1965

## PROFESSORES EMERITI

RICHARD PAUL ANSCHUTZ, MA N.Z. PhD *Edin.* (Philosophy) Retired 1961

PAUL JOHN BEADLE, HonMFA, HonMNZSID, MNZSSPA, MFIM, FRSA (Fine Arts) Retired 1983

EDWARD MUSGRAVE BLAIKLOCK, OBE, MA LittD N.Z. (Classics) Retired 1968

ARCHIBALD GORDON BOGLE, BE N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*, CEng, FIEE, FNZIE (Engineering) Retired 1978

DENNIS BROWN, DSc *Brist.*, FInstP, FRSNZ (Physics) Retired 1967

PERCY WILLIAM BURBIDGE, CBE, MSc N.Z., BAR *es Camb.*, FPhysSoc *Lond.* (Physics) Retired 1956

EDWIN RICHARD COLLINS, OBE, MSc N.Z., PhD *Birm.*, FIP, FASA (Physics) Retired 1982

KENNETH BRAILEY CUMBERLAND, CBE, MA *Lond.*, DSc N.Z., FRSNZ (Geography) Retired 1978

PETER BERNARD DAVID de la MARE, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRIC, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Chemistry) Retired 1982

PETER DAVID HENSMAN GODFREY, MBE, MA MusB *Camb.*, Hon FRSCM, FRCO, ARCM (Music) Retired 1983

TREVOR ROBERT JOHNSTON, LL.M BCom N.Z., MCom *Melb.*, PhD *Camb.*, FCA, FASA (Accountancy) Retired 1981

ROBERT TERENCE KENNEDY, CBE, FRIBA, MTPI, ANZIA, MNZPI (Town Planning) Retired 1968

ALLWYN CHARLES KEYS, Ld'H, MA N.Z., Dipd'EtSup *DU Paris*, Certd'EtPrat (Romance Languages) Retired 1971

ALFRED CHARLES LIGHT, BA *Lond.*, FRIBA, FRSA, FNZIA (Architecture) Retired 1968

ARNOLD ROBERT LILLIE, MA *Camb.*, DesSc *Geneva*, FRSNZ (Geology) Retired 1975

SYDNEY MUSGROVE, MA DPhil *Oxf.* (English) Retired 1980

CHARLES NALDEN, CBE, BMus *Durh. & Lond.*, DMus *Lond.*, (Music) Retired 1974

ERIC MUSARD NANSON, OBE, MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRCSCan, FACS, FRACS (Medicine) Retired 1980

ERNEST JOHNSTONE SEARLE, MSc N.Z., DSc (Geology) Retired 1972

CECIL MARIN SEGEDIN, MSc N.Z., PhD *Camb.*, FIMA, FRSA Hon FNZIE (Engineering) Retired 1981

RICHARD HORTON TOY, OBE, BArch N.Z., PhD *Dub.*, RIBA (Architecture) Retired 1977

HENRY ARTHUR WHALE, MSc N.Z. PhD *Camb.*, FIP, SMIEEE (Engineering) Retired 1983

RALPH WINTERBOURN, MA DipEd N.Z., PhD *Lond.*, FBPsS (Education) Retired 1975

---

## UNIVERSITY STAFF (ACADEMIC)

---

*Dates given are dates of taking up full-time appointment. Where Degrees and Diplomas are shown without the name of the awarding university, the university is Auckland. List prepared 1-11-82.*

\*Denotes a part-time permanent appointment.

---

### ACCOUNTANCY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1960 J. B. TABB, BCom N.Z., PhD *Sheff.*, MCom, FCA

*Professor*

1968-71, 1975 D. M. EMANUEL, MCom, ACA

*Associate-Professors*

1958 J. E. FIELD, MCom N.Z., ACA, CMA

1978 M. S. PUTTERILL, MBA PhD *Cape T.*, CA, FCMA

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 G. L. D. MORRIS, BCom *BCA Well.*

1971 I. G. EAGLES, BA LLB *Q'ld.*, PhD *Camb.*, LLM

1971 P. J. VENTURI, ACA, CMA, FCCA, ACMA, ACIS

1971 M. A. PERKINSON, MCom, ACA

1973 SALLY B. WALL (Mrs), BCom N.Z., ACA, ACIS, CMA

1973 ANNE WEBB (Mrs), LLB *Nott.*, (on leave)

1976 A. M. FAIRFIELD, MCom, ACA

1977 I. C. STEWART, *BCA Well.*, PhD *N.E.*, MCom, ACA

1975 G. A. HARRIS, LLB *MJur*

1976 PAULETTE A. JAY (Mrs), Bsc *Penn.*, MCom, CPA, ACA

*Lecturers*

1979 ELIZABETH M. HICKEY, MCom, ACA, ACIS

1979 JOHANNA C. VROEGOP, LLM

1979 CATHERINE L. WATSON, LLM

1982 M. E. BRADBURY, MCom, ACA, CMA

1981 J. WONG, MCom, ACA

1982 C. D. PERKINS, BA *C.N.A.A.*, LLM *Birm.*

*Senior Tutors*

1973 C. B. FRANKHAM, BCom N.Z., MCom, ACA

1982 SHIRLEY C. CALDERWOOD (Mrs), BCom

*Tutor in Accounting*

1979 KATHRYN G. CAIRD (Mrs), BSc *Otago*, BCom

---

### ANATOMY, *see* Medicine and Human Biology

---



---

### ANCIENT HISTORY, *see* Classics

---



---

### ANTHROPOLOGY

*Professor of Prehistory, Head of Department*

1961-66, 1973 R. C. GREEN, BA BSc *New Mexico*, PhD *Harv.*, FRSNZ

*Professor of Social Anthropology*

1958-67, 1974 R. N. H. BULMER, MA *Camb.*, PhD *A.N.U.*

*Professor of Maori Studies and Oceanic Linguistics*

1952 B. G. BIGGS, MA N.Z., PhD *Indiana*, FRSNZ

*Associate-Professor of Ethnomusicology*

1973 M. E. McLEAN, MA N.Z., PhD *Otago*

*Associate-Professor of Social Anthropology*

1966 A. B. HOOPER, MA N.Z., PhD Harv.

*Associate-Professor of Linguistics*

1965 A. K. PAWLEY, BA N.Z., MA PhD (on leave)

*Senior Lecturers in Social Anthropology*

1972 NANCY E. BOWERS, BS PhD Col.

1973 JUDITH W. HUNTSMAN, AB PhD Bryn Mawr, MA Brown

1972 M. R. RIMOLDI, BA DipAnth Syd., PhD A.N.U.

1973 M. ANNE SALMOND, MA PhD Penn.

1972 S. S. WEBSTER, BA Minn., PhD Wash.

1976 G. A. ROGERS, BA Otago, MA PhD

*Senior Lecturers in Prehistory*

1973 H. R. ALLEN, BA Syd., PhD A.N.U.

1975 G. J. IRWIN, PhD A.N.U., MA

*Senior Lecturers in Maori Studies*

1965 P. W. HOHEPA, MA N.Z., PhD Indiana

1966 MERIMERI PENFOLD (Mrs), BA

*Senior Lecturer in Linguistics*

1973 D. R. CLARK, BA Br. Col., PhD Calif.

*Lecturer in Social Anthropology*

1980 K. S. CHAMBERS, BA Hawaii, MA Calif.

*Lecturer in Prehistory*

1982 D. G. SUTTON, MA PhD Otago

*Lecturer in Physical Anthropology*

1980 G. G. TUNNELL, BS W. Texas State, MA PhD Colorado

*Lecturer in Maori Studies*

1982 R. B. W. KERR, BA (jtlly with Centre for Cont. Ed.)

*Lecturer in Linguistics*

1980 F. LICHTENBERK, MA Tor., PhD Hawaii

*Honorary Research Fellows*

ANNE F. V. CHAMBERS (Mrs), MA Calif.

JULIE PARK, MA PhD Otago

---

**ARCHITECTURE***Professor, Head of Department*

1969 A. A. WILD, BArch N.Z., RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA

*Professor, Architectural Design*

1964 P. J. BARTLETT, BArch N.Z., PhD, RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA

*Professor*

1961-66, 1973 A. H. MARSHALL, BArch BSc N.Z., PhD S'ton, RIBA, FNZIA, FRAIA, FASA (on leave)

*Associate-Professor*

1959 E. C. MCCLEAN, BArch N.Z., MArch, RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA

*Senior Lecturers*

1964 I. E. GEORGE, BArch N.Z., MArch Calif., ANZIA

1967 A. L. MITCHENER, DipArch, ANZIA

1967 M. R. AUSTIN, BArch N.Z., PhD, FNZIA (on leave)

1969 C. W. MEGSON, MArch, RIBA, ANZIA

1969 A. N. J. GOLDWATER, BArch N.Z., FNZIA

1970 D. G. STEVENS, BE N.Z., CEng, FICE, FIPENZ, Hon ANZIA

1970 J. D. DICKSON, BArch PhD

\*1972 D. J. MITCHELL, BArch

1973 R. J. W. GRANWAL, ME, MIPENZ

1974 G. DODD, BSc R'dg., MSc (Eng) PhD DipAud S'ton

1979 K. J. MORROW, DipArch R.M.I.T.

1979 H. B. WILLEY, MA PhD Camb., BArch MSc

1979 J. G. HUNT, BArch PhD, ANZIA

\*1981 J. D. SUTHERLAND, BArch *Wales*, RIBA, FNZIA

1982 A. WARD, DipArch *Birm.*, RIBA

*Senior Lecturer in Valuation*

1978 W. K. S. CHRISTIANSEN, DipTP, FRICS, MPMI, MNZPI, AREINZ

*Lecturers*

1979 M. P. T. LINZEY, BE *Cant.*, PhD *Melb.*, ME, MIEAust

1979 C. A. BIRD, MA DipUD *Oxf. Pol.*, BArch

1981 G. R. JENNER, BA *Otago*, BArch

1981 SARAH TREADWELL, BArch

*Lecturer in Valuation*

1979 R. A. BELL, DipSurv *Lond.*, DipUrbVal, ARICS, MPMI, ANZIV, AREINZ

*Lecturers, part-time*

\*A. M. R. DEAN, FRICS, ANZIQS, FCIArb

\*P. J. HANLY, MNZSSP

\*S. E. K. REEVES, LLM *Virginia*, LLB

\*S. L. SPEEDY JP, BCom *N.Z.*, MPhil, FCA, FNZIV, FCIS, MPMI, FREINZ

*BRANZ Senior Research Fellow in Acoustics*

P. J. DICKINSON, BSc *Lond.*, PhD *S'ton*, FIP, FIOA, FPS, MASA, MCAA

## ART HISTORY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1969 A. S. G. GREEN, MA *Camb.*, PhD *Edin.*, DipHistArt *Lond.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1970 M. R. DUNN, DipFA *Cant & Auck.*, MA *Melb.*

1971 A. J. WRIGHT, MA *Edin.*

\*1969-71, 1975 ELIZABETH E. EASTMOND, MA *Edin.*

1973 L. B. BELL, DipArtHist *Edin.*, BA

1974 I. B. BUCHANAN, BA *Manc.*, MA *Essex*

*Lecturer*

1977 ROBIN L. WOODWARD, PhD *Edin.*, MA

*Senior Tutor*

1978 CHERYLL B. SOTHERAN, MA

## ASIAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*

1967 MARGARET T. S. SOUTH, BA *Syd.*, PhD *A.N.U.*

*Senior Lecturer in Chinese*

1970 TI-HOU-HAN (Miss), BA *Yenching*, MA *H.K.*

*Senior Lecturers in Indonesian*

1968 J. B. KWEE, BA *Lond.*, PhD

1974 E. O. van REIJN, Drs *Ley.*

*Lecturer in Chinese*

1981 P.M. HARRISON, PhD *A.N.U.*, MA

*Lecturer in Indonesian*

.....  
*Senior Lecturers in Japanese*

1970 SETSUKO ITO, (Miss), MA *Doshisha*, MPhil PhD *Lond.*

1972 T. TAKAGAKI, BA *Wakayama*, MA *San Francisco State*

1973 T. AKIMA, MA *Waseda*

1979 K. G. HENSHALL, BA *Lond.*, PhD *Syd.*, DipEd *Adel.*

---

**BIBLICAL HISTORY AND LITERATURE, see Classics**


---

**BIOCHEMISTRY**

*Professor, Head of Department*

1974 A. G. C. RENWICK, MA Camb., MDChB PhD Edin., FRCPPath, FRSCChem

*Associate-Professor*

1970 E. MOUSTAFA, MSc Cairo, MA PhD Camb., FNZIC

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 A. M. ROBERTON, BSc Otago, DPhil Oxf. (on leave)

1970 R. GEDDES, BSc PhD Edin.

1974 P. M. BARLING, BA Oxf., PhD Lond.

1976 G. K. SCOTT, BSc Manc., PhD Edin.

1977 G. E. CHAPMAN, MA DPhil Oxf. (Biochemist, Nat. Hormone Lab.)

1977 T. BRITTAIN, BSc PhD E. Anglia, CChem, MRSC, MNZIC

1981 G. C. GILLARD, BSc PhD Wales

*Lecturer*

.....  
*Honorary Lecturer*

1978 R. N. JOHNSON, BSc PhD Brist.

*Senior Research Fellow*

G. J. LEES, BSc PhD Melb.

---

**BOTANY**

*Professor, Head of Department*

1976 P. H. LOVELL, BSc PhD Sheff.

*Professor of Plant Pathology*

1966 F. J. NEWHOOK, MSc N.Z., DIC, PhD DSc Lond., FRSA

*Honorary Professor*

E. G. BOLLARD, BSc N.Z., PhD Camb., FRSNZ

*Associate Professors*

1951 J. A. RATTENBURY, MA Br. Col., PhD Calif.

1956 J. M. A. BROWN, BSc PhD Durh.

*Senior Lecturers*

1966 F. I. DROMGOOLE, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD.

1972 L. C. W. JENSEN, AB Brown, MSc PhD Minn.

1979 J. OGDEN, MSc PhD Wales

1969 J. E. BRAGGINS, MSc Well., PhD (on leave)

1982 J. A. CONSIDINE, BAgrSc, PhD Melb., MAgrSc Adel.

\*1972 BARBARA P. SEGEDIN (Mrs), MSc N.Z., PhD Camb. (on leave)

1977 N. D. MITCHELL, MA Oxf., MSc Wales, PhD N'cle. (U.K.)

*Lecturer*

1983 M. N. PEARSON, BSc Durh. PhD Exeter

*Senior Tutor*

G. MARIE TAYLOR (Mrs), MSc Well.

*Post Doctoral Fellow*

M. C. BRIDGE, BSc Brist.

*Honorary Lecturers*

R. L. BIELESKI, MSc N.Z., PhD Syd., FRSNZ

A. R. FERGUSON, MSc Well., PhD

F. H. WOOD, MAgrSc Massey, PhD Cant.

*Honorary Research Fellow*

L. H. MILLENER, MSc N.Z., PhD Camb., FRNZIH



## CELL BIOLOGY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1962 R. E. F. MATTHEWS, MSc N.Z., PhD ScD Camb., FRS, FNZIC, FRSNZ

*Professors*

1969 S. BULLIVANT, PhD DSc Lond. (on leave)

1964 P. L. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., FRSNZ (on leave)

1963 R. K. RALPH, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc N.S.W., MNZIC

*Associate-Professor*

1968 A. R. BELLAMY, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Genetics*

1978 H. E. D. LANE, BSc PhD Otago

*Lecturer*

1982 W. JUDD, BA PhD

*Cancer Society Senior Research Fellow*

B. C. BAGULEY, MSc PhD

*Research Fellows*

D. R. LOVE, BSc, PhD Adel.

M. B. STREIFF, DipChem PhD Basel

*University Post-Doctoral Fellows*

F. SATO, MA Toyama, PhD Tokyo

P. GUNN, BSc PhD Adel.

---

## CHEMICAL AND MATERIALS ENGINEERING, *see* Engineering

---

## CHEMISTRY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1958-66, 1968 D. HALL, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ

*Professors*

1958 R. C. CAMBIE, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil Oxf., DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ

1944 A. L. ODELL, MSc N.Z., PhD Lond., DSc, FNZIC (on leave)

1962 B. R. DAVIS, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil Oxf., DSc, FNZIC

*Associate-Professors*

1961 G. A. WRIGHT, MSc N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FNZIC

1958 CHARMIAN J.O'CONNOR, (Mrs), JP, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc, FNZIC

1963 F. J. B. AGGETT, MSc PhD N.Z., FNZIC

1966 W. R. ROPER, MSc N.Z., PhD Cant., MNZIC

1967 P. S. RUTLEDGE, MSc PhD N.Z., FNZIC

1968 D. J. McLENNAN, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD Well., DSc, FNZIC

1962 J. E. PACKER, MSc N.Z., PhD Lond., FNZIC

1966 M. J. TAYLOR, MA DPhil, Oxf., FNZIC

1966 D. J. SPEDDING, MSc PhD Well., MNZIC

1970 G. R. CLARK, MSc PhD, FNZIC

1971 P. D. WOODGATE, MSc PhD, FNZIC

*Senior Lecturers*

1948 H. MASLEN, MSc N.Z., PhD, MNZIC

1955 T. A. TURNEY, MSc N.Z., MNZIC

1958 B. E. SWEDLUND, MSc N.Z., PhD Lond., FNZIC

1965 B. A. GRIGOR, MSc N.Z., PhD Leic., MNZIC (on leave)

1966 A. J. EASTEAL, MSc N.Z., PhD Tas., MNZIC, ARACI (on leave)

1968 C. E. F. RICKARD, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, MNZIC

1968 G. A. BOWMAKER, BSc PhD Syd., MNZIC, ARACI

1969 D. SHOOTER, MSc PhD, MNZIC

1978 P. D. W. BOYD, BSc Tas., PhD Monash, ARACI (on leave)

*Senior Lecturer, Physico-Chemistry*

1960 G. R. WHITE, MSc N.Z., MNZIC

*Lecturers*

1982 M. G. BANWELL, BSc PhD *Well.*, MNZIC, MACS

1982 R. F. HOWE, BSc PhD *Cant.*

*Tutors*

1982 JUDITH M. BRITTAIN, BSc PhD *E. Anglia*, MNZIC

1982 SHEILA D. WOODGATE, BS *Arizona*, PhD *Stan.*

R. A. PAUPTIT, BSc *Cape T.*, MSc PhD *Br. Col.*

## **CIVIL ENGINEERING, see Engineering**

## **CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY**

*Professor of Classics and Ancient History, Head of Department*

1969 W. K. LACEY, MA *Camb.*

*Associate-Professor*

1970 J. R. HAMILTON, MA *Edin. & Camb.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1960 R. G. COWLIN, MA *Camb.*

1963 W. F. RICHARDSON, MA N.Z. & *Camb.*, BD *Otago*, PhD

1971 W. R. BARNES, BA *Syd.*, MA PhD *Camb.*

1973 R. H. ALLISON, MA *St And.*, BPhil *Oxf.*

1974 VIVIENNE J. GRAY, PhD *Camb.*, MA

1981 A. J. SPALINGER, BA C.U.N.Y., MPhil PhD *Yale*

*Lecturer in Biblical History & Literature, part-time*

\*F. FOULKES, (Rev.), MA N.Z. & *Oxf.*, MSc N.Z., BD *Oxf.*

*Lecturer in Hebrew, part-time*

\*R. J. THOMPSON, (Rev.), BA N.Z., BD N.Z., *Lond.*, & *Melb.Div. Coll.*, Dr Theol *Zür.*, MA

## **COMMERCIAL LAW, see Accountancy**

## **COMMUNITY HEALTH, see Medicine and Human Biology**

## **COMPUTER CENTRE**

*Director*

1971 J. C. B. WHITE, MSc N.Z., PhD A.N.U.

*Deputy Director*

1971 J. N. BROWNEE, MSc PhD, AmInstP, MIEE

*Senior Lecturers*

1972 P. M. FENWICK, MSc PhD

1973 G. A. CREAK, BA *Camb.*, PhD *Leeds*

*Lecturer*

.....

## **COMPUTER SCIENCE**

*Professor, Head of Department*

1966 J. C. BUTCHER, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc *Syd.*, FRSNZ, FIMA

*Associate-Professor*

1982 R. W. DORAN, BSc *Cant.*, MS *Stan.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1959 J. F. WHALE, MSc N.Z., DIC *Lond.*, MBCS

1968 G. J. TEE, MSc *N.Z.*  
 1979 R. J. E. LOBB, MSc PhD  
 1981 P. B. GIBBONS, MSc *Massey*, PhD *Tor.*

*Lecturers*

1980 P. T. COX, PhD *Wat.*, MSc  
 1981 B. W. HUTTON, PhD *Warw.*, MSc  
 1981 K. BURRAGE, MSc PhD

**CONTINUING EDUCATION, Centre for***Director*

1966 E. P. MALONE, MA *N.Z.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1950 R. G. DELLOW, MBE, MusB. *N.Z.*, FRCO(CHM), ARSCM  
 1962 P. B. BECROFT, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Calif.*  
 1970 R. J. I. WALKER, MA PhD  
 1973 JUDITH C.I. McMORLAND (Mrs), BA *Leeds*, MA DipEd *Massey*, DipYthWk *Manc.* PhD  
 1978 A. A. MORRISON, MA

*Lecturer*

1979 JUDITH M. ELPHICK-MALONE, MA PhD

**ECONOMICS***Professor, Head of Department*

1972 C. A. BLYTH, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Camb.*

*Professors*

1962 G. P. BRAAE, MCom *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1973 R. H. COURT, BA BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *N.S.W.*, MA  
 1977 A. J. L. CATT, MCom *N.Z.* (on leave)

*Senior Lecturers*

1964 K. D. S. JONES, BA *Wales*, MSc (Econ) PhD *Lond.*  
 1972 K. E. JACKSON, BA PhD *Kent*  
 1978 S. R. H. JONES, BSc (Econ) PhD *Lond.*  
 1979 C. A. PERRINGS, BA PhD *Lond.*  
 1982 G. J. MacGREGOR-REID, MA *Leic.*

*Lecturers*

1979 R. D. J. SCOLLAY, MA *Well.*, BA *Camb.*, B Com  
 1982 N. B. TRAN, BEc *James Cook*, MEc *A.N.U.*, PhD *N.S.W.*

*Senior Tutor*

1976 J. I. HORSMAN, MA *N.Z.*

**EDUCATION***Professor Head of Department*

1961 A. H. McNAUGHTON, MA *Calif.* & *N.Z.*, PhD *Calif.*, DipEd *N.Z.*

*Professor*

1962 MARIE M. CLAY, MA DipEd *N.Z.*, PhD, FNZPsS, Hon FNZEI

*Associate-Professors*

1951 W. J. D. MINOGUE, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Ohio State*  
 1969 E. L. GLYNN, PhD *Tor.*, MA, FNZPsS

*Senior Lecturers*

1946 B. W. HARE, MA DipEd *N.Z.*  
 1966 T. S. DUFF, BA *N.Z.*, MA  
 1965 E. W. BRAITHWAITE, MA *N.Z.*, DipSocSc *Well.*  
 1968 B. A. MacARTHUR, MA PhD  
 1973 J. D. MARSHALL, BA PhD *Brist.*

- 1972 W. M. GILL, MA Massey, BSc PhD  
 1971 J. F. EVERTS, MA DipClinPsych Cant., PhD DipEdPsych  
 1976 VIVIANE M. J. ROBINSON, PhD Harv., MA  
 1976 S. S. McNAUGHTON, MA PhD  
 1980 K. M. WILTON, PhD Alta., MA  
 1982 B. F. TUCK, MA PhD  
*Senior Lecturer in Child Studies*  
 1981 M. A. R. TOWNSEND, MA Cant., PhD Ill.  
*Lecturers*  
 1978 C. J. LANKSHEAR, MA PhD Cant.  
 1978 R. A. PEDDIE, MA N.Z., Dipd'EtSup Poitiers  
*Junior Lecturer*  
 DOROTHY R. HOWIE, MA PhD DipEd  
*Senior Tutor*  
 1979 KATHRYN C. IRWIN, BA Min. MEd Harv.

## ENGINEERING

- Dean, Professor of Mechanical Engineering*  
 1969 R. F. MEYER, BE N.Z., PhD Manc., FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ

## CHEMICAL AND MATERIALS ENGINEERING

- Professor, Head of Department*  
 1981 B. J. WELCH, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc, MAICHE, FRACI, FNZIC, MAIME  
*Professor in Chemical and Materials Engineering*  
 1951 A. L. TITCHENER, BSc BE N.Z., ScD M.I.T., AOSM, MIMechE, FIPENZ, MAIME, FIM  
*Associate-Professors*  
 .....  
 1968 W. G. FERGUSON, BSc BE N.Z., PhD, MIPENZ  
 1969 G. G. DUFFY, BSc N.S.W., PhD, ASTC, CEng, MICHE, FIMC  
*Senior Lecturers*  
 1969 E. G. KELLY, BE PhD Otago, AOSM, CEng, MAIME, MIMM (on leave)  
 1970 J. T. GREGORY, BSc Idaho, PhD Wis., MAIME, MASW  
 1971 M. L. ALLEN, BSc(Eng) Lond., CEng, MICHE, MIPENZ, MNZIC  
 1973 R. M. SHARP, MA DPhil Oxf., CEng, MIM  
 1977 P. A. MUNRO, PhD Lond., BE  
*Lecturer*  
 1981 P. G. CRABBE, PhD Monash, BSc BE  
*University Post Doctoral Fellow*  
 T. KRAKOWIAK, MSc PhD Lodz  
*Research Fellow*  
 R. K. JAIN, MSc PhD Delhi

## CIVIL ENGINEERING

- Professor, Head of Department*  
 1953 P. W. TAYLOR, BSc BE N.Z., PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ, FASCE  
*Professors*  
 1956 A. J. RAUDKIVI, DipIng (Civil) Tallin & T.H. Braunschweig PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ  
 1981 P. G. LOWE, BE N.Z., MA Camb., MEngSc Syd., PhD Lond., CEng, MICE, FIPENZ MIEAust  
*Associate-Professor*  
 1961 R. A. CALLANDER, BE N.Z., PhD, FIPENZ, MASCE  
*Senior Lecturers*  
 1967 B. H. CATO, BE N.Z., CEng, MICE, FIPENZ, FIHE

*General Information, University Staff (Academic)*

- 1969 I. W. GUNN, BE N.Z., DipPHE *N'cle.(U.K.)*, CEng, MICE, MIPENZ, FIPHE, MInstWPC  
 1969 A. H. BRYANT, BE PhD *Cant.*  
 1969 I. G. BUCKLE, BE PhD, MIPENZ  
 1972 R. C. M. DUNN, BE BSc N.Z., MEngSc N.S.W., DipTP, MIHE, FITE, MIPENZ  
 1975 R. C. FENWICK, BE N.Z., PhD *Cant.* MIPENZ (on leave)  
 1977 M. J. PENDER, BE PhD *Cant.*, MIPENZ, MASCE  
 1979 C. D. CHRISTIAN BSc(Eng), PhD *S'ton*, CEng, MICE, AMASCE  
 1979 N. LAWGUN, ME PhD, MIPENZ  
 1979 B. J. DAVIDSON, BE PhD  
 1980 J. W. BUTTERWORTH, BE PhD  
 1980 R. G. COMPTON, BE, MIPENZ  
 1980 T. J. LARKIN, BE PhD, AMASCE  
 1981 B. W. MELVILLE, BE PhD, AMICE, MIPENZ  
*Timber Engineering Research Fellow*  
 M. L. BATCHELAR, ME *Cant.*, BE, MIPENZ  
*Professional Design Consultants*  
 M. JACOBS, BE PhD, MIPENZ  
 P. G. RADLEY, ME  
 D. M. BEST, BE, MIEAust, MIPENZ, PDC

**ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC ENGINEERING***Professor, Head of Department*1977 J. L. WOODWARD, BE N.Z., MASc *Tor.*, FIEE, FIEAust., FIPENZ*Professor**Honorary Professor*

1976 E. E. SUCKLING, MSc N.Z., DEE N.Y., MIEE

*Associate-Professors*

1966 D. V. OTTO, BE PhD, CEng, MIEE, FIMC

1977 J. T. BOYS, ME PhD

*Senior Lecturers*

1955 B. EGAN, BA BE N.Z., PhD, CEng, MIEE, MemIEEE

1963 J. G. NAYLOR, BE N.Z., CEng, MIEE

1966 H. B. GATLAND, BSc N.Z., DipElectronics *S'ton*, CEng, MIEE, FIMC1967 N. J. CASTLE, BE *Cant.*, PhD, CEng, MIEE, MIPENZ (on leave)

1975 A. G. WILLIAMSON, BE PhD MemIEEE

1976 D. T. NGUYEN, BE *Cant.*, PhD, MIEENZ1977 A. C. TSOI, DipTech *H.K.*, BD *Otago*, MSc PhD *Salf.**Lecturer**Research Engineer*

D. A. WALDRON, BE PhD

**RADIO RESEARCH CENTRE, within the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering***Senior Research Fellows*1960 J. E. TITHERIDGE, MSc DipHons N.Z., PhD *Camb.*, Sen MemIEEE, FIP, FRSNZ

1961 M. J. POLETTI, MSc N.Z.

**MECHANICAL ENGINEERING***Professor, Head of Department*1957-61, 1966 J. H. PERCY, BSc BE N.Z., PhD *Camb.*, FIPENZ (on leave)

*Professor*1983 A. F. MILLS, MSc(Eng) *Cape. T.*, DIC *Lond.*, PhD *Calif.*, AMASME*Associate-Professors*1976 G. ARNDT, BE MEngSc *Melb.*, PhD *Monash*, CEng, FIProdE, FIEAust., VDI1961 J. STEPHENSON, BSc *Glas.*, MIPENZ (on leave)*Senior Lecturers*1960 K. C. LEE, BE *N.Z.*, MSc *Cran. I.T.*, CEng, MIMechE, MRAeS1962 P. D. SMITH, BSc(Eng), *Lond.* MAIM1965 J. J. WARD, MSc(Eng) *Natal*, CEng, MIMechE1970 G. W. BLANCHARD, MSc *Manc.*1973 G. MOLTSCHANIWSKYJ, MSc(Eng) *Lond.*1973 V. A. L. CHASTEAU, BSc(Eng) *Witw.*, PrEng, FEASA1975 J. D. TEDFORD, BSc, PhD *Belf.*, CEng, MIProdE, ANZIM1977 P. S. JACKSON, ME *N.Z.*, PhD *Camb.*1977 R. R. RAINE, BSc PhD *S'ton.*1981 D. BHATTACHARYYA, ME *Calc.*, PhD *Jad.*, MASME1982 G. D. MALLISON, BSc *Well.*, PhD *N.S.W.**Lecturers*1982 P. J. RICHARDS, BSc *R'dg.*, PhD *C.N.A.A.*, AMRAeS1982 B. R. MACE, MA *DPhil Oxf.**MRC Senior Research Fellow*N. D. BROOM, BE *Melb.*, PhD*Research Fellows*W. H. BAISLEY, BS, ME *Santa Clara* MSAEK. JONES, MSc *Cran I.T.***THEORETICAL AND APPLIED MECHANICS***Professor, Head of Department*1981 I. F. COLLINS, MA PhD *Camb.*, FIMA*Associate-Professors*1962 M. S. ROSSER, MSc MusB *N.Z.*1967 I. C. MEDLAND, BSc ME *N.Z.*, PhD *Manc.*, CEng, MIPENZ1969 M. J. O'SULLIVAN, BE *N.Z.*, PhD *Cal. Tech.*, BSc ME*Senior Lecturers*1975 D. M. RYAN, MSc *Otago*, PhD *A.N.U.*, FIMA

1977 C. J. PATTERSON, BSc BE (on leave)

1978 P. J. HUNTER, DPhil *Oxf.*, ME*Lecturers*1980 G. A. MOHR, MEngSc *Melb.*, PhD *Camb.*, MIE Aust1981 R. McKIBBIN, MSc *Cant.*, PhD, (jtly with Geothermal Institute)*Research Fellow*

G. W. CHRISTIE, BSc MPhil

**ENGLISH***Professor, Head of Department*1973 D. I. B. SMITH, MA *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.**Professor of English Language*1964 F. S. SCOTT, MA *MLitt Camb.**Professors*1959 C. K. STEAD, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Brist.*, LittD1980 T. L. STURM, PhD *Leeds*, MA*Associate-Professors*1954 W. H. PEARSON, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Lond.*1968 F. C. de VRIES, MA *Amst.*, DLitt *Utrecht*

1964 M. P. JACKSON, MA N.Z., BLitt Oxf.

*Senior Lecturers*

1961 P. DANE, MA Leic.

1965 C. C. BOWLEY, MA N.Z., DipApLing Edin.

1966 R. J. HORROCKS, BA N.Z., MA PhD

1966 W. S. BLACK, BA Leeds

1968 M. A. F. NEILL, MA Otago, PhD Camb.

1970 W. T. L. CURNOW, BA N.Z., PhD Penn., MA

1968 AOREWA P. McLEOD, MA Well., BPhil Oxf., BA

1969 J. LAMB, BA DPhil York (U.K.)

\*1972 STEPHANIE J. HOLLIS, BA Adel., PhD A.N.U.

1973 K. J. LARSEN, PhL Rome, MA PhD Camb.

1973 R. H. LEEK, MA PhD

\*1981 M. J. WRIGHT, MA Oxf., PhD N.E.

*Senior Lecturer in Drama*

1977 M. G. THOMPSON, MA Cant.

*Lecturers*

1977 R. H. NICHOLSON, MA Well. (on leave)

1979 D. G. WRIGHT, MA Cant., PhD Tor. (on leave)

1979 G. A. J. BOIRE, BA Montr., MA PhD McM (on leave)

1980 B. D. BOYD, MA Cant., PhD Tor.

*Senior Tutors*

1966 K. SMITHYMAN

1971 RIEMKE ENSING, MA

1971 MARGARET A. EDGCUMBE, MA

1971 GABRIELLE HILDRETH, MA

## FINE ARTS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1961 J. D. SAUNDERS, DipFA N.Z., DipIndustDesign, NDD, FNZSID

*Associate-Professors*

1957 R. W. ELLIS, ARCA, RBA, MNZSSPA, FRSA

1966 G. L. TWISS, DipFA N.Z., MNZSSPA

*Senior Lecturers*

1971 J. B. TURNER

1975 A. GARCIA-ALVAREZ, PD Barcelona, MNZSSPA

1979 D. H. BINNEY, DipFA N.Z., MNZSSPA

1978 R. M. SIMPSON, MFA Ill., BFA

*Lecturers*

1977 P. E. DADSON, DipFA

\*1980 D. C. WATKINS, DipRCA Lond., DipGD Well. Poly.

\*1980 VICTORIA A. P. EDWARDS, MFA, MNZSSPA

1980 B. G. de THIER, DipFA Cant., MNZSID

## FRENCH, *see* Romance Languages

## GEOGRAPHY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1968 W. MORAN, MA N.Z., PhD

*Professor*

1972 P. W. WILLIAMS, BA Durh., MA Dub., PhD Camb.

*Associate-Professors*

1965 A. G. ANDERSON, MA DipEd N.Z., PhD

1965 G. R. COCHRANE, MA BSc N.Z., PhD, FBIS  
 1970 R. J. W. NEVILLE, MA DipEd N.Z., PhD Lond.

*Senior Lecturers*

1968 P. L. HOSKING, BA N.Z., MA Cant., PhD S.Ill  
 1971 D. G. RANKIN, BA PhD Nott.  
 1977 R. F. McLEAN, MA N.Z., PhD McG.  
 1976 H. K. YOON, BA Seoul, MS Brigham Young, PhD Calif.  
 1977 C. R. de FREITAS, MA Tor., PhD Q'ld.  
 1980 S. G. BRITTON, MA Massey, PhD A.N.U.

*Lecturers*

1982 N. J. ENRIGHT, BA W. Aust., PhD A.N.U.  
 1982 G. B. HALL, BA Otago, MA PhD McM.

*Honorary Lecturer*

P. J. McDERMOTT, MA PhD Camb.

*University Post-Doctoral Fellow*

F. E. TOWNSEND, BS Ohio, MS PhD Wisc.

**GEOLOGY***Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1958 J. A. GRANT-MACKIE, MSc N.Z., PhD

*Professor*

1951 R. N. BROTHERS, MSc N.Z., DIC, PhD Lond., FGS, FMSAm, FRSNZ

*Associate-Professors*

1970 PHILIPPA M. BLACK, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, FMSAm  
 1969 K. B. SPÖRLI, DiplIngGeol DrScNat Zür., FGSA  
 1964 K. A. RODGERS, MSc PhD, MNZIC

*Senior Lecturers*

1960 P. F. BALLANCE, BSc PhD Lond.  
 1966 G. W. GIBSON, BSc N.Z., PhD Well.  
 1967 H. W. KOBE, DrPhil Zür.  
 1971 M. R. GREGORY, BSc N.Z., PhD Dal., MSc  
 1975 W. M. PREBBLE, MSc Well.  
 1980 I. E. M. SMITH, BSc Well., PhD A.N.U.

*Lecturer*

1981 J. CASSIDY, BSc PhD Liv.

*Analyst in Geochemistry*

1981 R. J. PARKER, MSc Cape T., PhD Lond.

*Honorary Research Fellow*

T. SAMESHIMA, BSc Tokyo, DSc Nagoya

*Post-Doctoral Research Fellow*

C. J. N. WILSON, BSc PhD Lond.

**GEOHERMAL INSTITUTE within the Department of Geology***Associate-Professor, Director of Geothermal Institute*

1978 M. P. HOCHSTEIN, DipGeophys T. U. Clausthal, DrRerNat Mün.

*Associate Professor in Professional Engineering*

1969 D. H. FREESTON, BSc Lond., CEng, MRACs, FIMechE, MIPENZ

*Senior Lecturer in Earth Science*

1979 P. R. L. BROWNE, BSc Cape T., MSc Leeds, PhD Well.

*Lecturer*

1981 R. McKIBBIN, MSc Cant. PhD (jtly with Dept of Theoretical & Applied Mechanics)



---

## GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE

### *Professor, Head of Department*

1948 J. A. ASHER, Grosses Verdienstkrz Germany, RNO Sweden, Ehrenkreuz I. Klasse Austria, Goethe Med. Munich, MA N.Z., DrPhil Basle

### *Associate-Professor*

1966 KATHRYN SMITS, MA N.Z., DrPhil Freib.

### *Senior Lecturer in German Language*

1972 SUZANNE TYNDEL (Mrs), MA N.Z.

### *Senior Lecturer in Scandinavian Studies*

1965-68, 1975 O. L. WAARA, FilMag Uppsala

### *Senior Lecturers*

1976 J. NORTHCOTE-BADE, MA Well., DrPhil Zür.

1978 F. VOIT, DrPhil Saar

### *Senior Tutors*

1964 GERTRUD S. BLUMENFELD, (Mrs)

1969 M. J. SUTTON, MA

1979 UTA HAGEN (Mrs), MA Freib.

### *Tutor in Scandinavian Studies*

1980 S. D. LOVICH, FilKand Lund, BA

---

## GREEK, *see* Classics

---

## HEBREW, *see* Classics

---

## HISTORY

### *Professor, Head of Department*

1965 P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD Camb., FRAS, FRHistS

### *Professors*

1947 K. SINCLAIR, MA PhD N.Z., LittD (on leave)

1956-58, 1964 M. P. K. SORRENSON, MA N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

### *Associate Professors*

1959 P. S. O'CONNOR, BA N.Z. & Oxf.

1964 L. J. HOLT, BA N.Z., AM PhD Harv.

1964 R. C. J. STONE, MA N.Z., PhD

1971 VALERIE I. J. FLINT, MA DPhil Oxf., FRHistS

1966 JUDITH M. C. BINNEY (Mrs), BA N.Z., MA

1967 M. A. R. GRAVES, BA Camb., PhD Otago

### *Senior Lecturers*

1965 MARGARET H. LAMB (Mrs), BA PhD Lond.

1970 H. M. LARACY, MA Well., PhD A.N.U.

1972 RAEWYN DALZIEL, BA PhD Well. (on leave)

1972 P. H. ROUSSEAU, MA DPhil Oxf. FRHistS

1973 J. C. A. STAGG, MA Cant., AM PhD Prin.

1978 L. Y. ANDAYA, BA Yale AM PhD C'nell. (on leave)

1976 R. G. PHILLIPS, BA Trent, PGDA Otago, DPhil Oxf.

1976 R. T. PHILLIPS, MA PhD Camb.

1978 H. R. JACKSON, BA LLB Melb., MA Camb, PhD A.N.U.

### *Lecturers*

1980 B. H. MOSS, BA C'nell., MA PhD Col., Dipd'Et Paris

1982 B. G. REAY, BA Adel., DPhil Oxf.

### *Honorary Research Fellow*

E. H. McCORMICK, MA LittD N.Z., MLitt Camb.

### *Senior Tutors*

1974 JUDITH O. BASSETT (Mrs), MA

1979 BARBARA J. WATSON ANDAYA (Mrs), BA Syd., MA Hawaii, PhD C'nell. (on leave)

---

**INDONESIAN**, *see* **Asian Languages and Literatures**

---

**ITALIAN**, *see* **Romance Languages**

---

**JAPANESE**, *see* **Asian Languages and Literatures**

---

**LATIN**, *see* **Classics**

---

## **LAW**

*Professor of Public Law, Head of Department*

1951 J. F. NORTHEY, BA LLM N.Z., DJur Tor., LL.D.

*Professors*

1961 B. COOTE, LL.M N.Z., PhD Camb.

1968 P. R. H. WEBB, MA LLB Camb., LL.D.

1961-67, 1969 G. W. HINDE, LL.M N.Z., LL.D.

*Associate-Professors*

1962-65, 1969 B. J. BROWN, LLB Leeds, LL.M Sing.

1966 F. M. BROOKFIELD, BA LLB N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Senior Lecturers*

1966 J. A. B. O'KEEFE, JP, BA MPhil Lond., LL.M

1966 D. R. MUMMERY, BA N.Z., LL.M N.Z. & Harv., SJD Virginia (on leave)

1969 K. A. PALMER, LL.M Harv. & Auck., SJD Virginia DipTP

1969 P. J. EVANS, BA LLB Otago, PhD Camb., LL.M (on leave)

1970 PAMELA E. RINGWOOD, BA Syd., LL.M DipSocSc Adel.

1973 J. B. ELKIND, BA Col., JD N.Y., LL.M Lond.

1968 D. W. McMORLAND, PhD Camb., LL.M

1972 W. C. HODGE, AB Harv., JD Stan. (on leave)

1977 MARGARET A. VENNEL (Mrs), LLB N.Z.

1974 PAULINE TAPP, LLB MJur

1974 D. V. WILLIAMS, BA LLB Well., BCL Oxf.

1979 S. J. MACFARLANE, MA LLB N.Z.

1974 MARGARET A. WILSON, LLB MJur

1973-78, 1981 G. F. DAWSON, BA BCL Oxf.

1980 T. J. MCBRIDE, LLB Well., LL.M Dal.

1978 G. C. THORPE, LL.M Monash, BCom LLB

1980 C. B. CATO, BCL Oxf., LLB

*Lecturers*

1978 J. G. H. HANNAN, BA LLB Well.

1979 ELIZABETH J. KELSEY, LLB Well., BCL Oxf., MPhil Camb.

1982 M. B. TAGGART, LL.M Harv., LLB

1983 G. L. WILLIAMS, BCom LLB

*Special Lecturer in Legal Ethics*

Hon. J. NIGEL WILSON, LLB N.Z.

*Junior Lecturers*

.....

.....

*\*Lecturers, part-time*

R. S. CHAMBERS, DPhil Oxf., LLB

M. P. CREW, BA

G. A. CROWHEN, LLB Cant., LL.M Well.

A. R. GALBRAITH, BCL Oxf., LLB

S. L. GERMANN, BCom LLB

D. A. M. GRAHAM, LLB

P. J. KAYE, LLB Cant.

P. E. NEWFIELD, BA LLB

W. M. PATTERSON, LLB

D. P. SELKIRK, BCom LLB

P. B. TEMM, QC, LLB N.Z.

NADJA TOLLEMACHE (Mrs), MA *Oxf.*  
 M. J. WHALE, BCom LLB, ACA, ACIS  
 C. WOOD, LLM

---

## LEIGH LABORATORY

### *Director*

1965 W. J. BALLANTINE, MA *Camb.*, PhD *Lond.*

### *Associate-Director*

1966 F. J. TAYLOR, MSc *Sheff.*, PhD *Lond.*, FLS, FIBiol

### *Research Fellow*

R. G. CREESE, BSc PhD *Syd.*

---

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES

### *Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1969 A. MACCORMICK, MA PhD *Yale*, BSc MCom

### *Professor*

1973 B. D. HENSHALL, BSc PhD DSc *Brist.*, CEng., FRAeS MAIAA

### *Associate-Professor*

1972 J. S. DEEKS, MA *Camb.*, DipPM *Lond.*

### *Senior Lecturers*

1971 B. D. MURPHY, MA PhD

1974 D. H. PETERS, BA *Washington & Jefferson*, MBA *Stan.*

1974 K. R. ROBERTSON, BS MBA *Calif.* (on leave)

1975 N. R. MARSH, BA *Nott.*, MA *Leeds*, PhD *Bath*

1980 E. E. W. RUDOLPH, DipPhys *Aachen*, PhD *Wits.*

1980 J. H. K. INKSON, MA *Aberd.*, MPhil *Lond.*, PhD *Otago*

1982 J. SHEFFIELD, MBA *Wis.*, MSc

### *Lecturers*

1978 R. MARSHALL, MCom

1981 J. PAYNTER, MSc BCom

1982 P. F. ROBINSON, BA *Open*, BSc *Manc.*

### *Senior Tutor*

1976 J. C. ELMSELY, MA *N.Z.*, MNZPss

---

## MAORI STUDIES *see Anthropology*

---

## MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

### *Professor, Head of Department*

1969 D. B. GAULD, PhD *Calif.*, MSc

### *Professors*

1958 J. A. KALMAN, MA *N.Z.*, AM PhD *Harv.*

1972 A. J. SCOTT, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Chic.*

### *Professor, Head of Statistics Unit*

1965–71, 1973 G. A. F. SEBER, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Manc.* (Statistics Unit)

### *Associate-Professors*

1948 G. A. HOOKINGS, MSc *Camb. & N.Z.*

1962 D. A. NIELD, MA *Camb.*, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD, FIMA

1966 P. J. LORIMER, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *McG.*

1970 I. L. REILLY, BA MSc *Well.*, AM PhD *Ill.*, FIMA

### *Senior Lecturers*

1967 C. P. CHANG, MSc *St John's (Shanghai)*, PhD *Chic.*

1967 K. ASHTON, BSc *Manc.*

1968 G. D. DIXIT, BA *Agra*, MA DPhil *Alld.*

1969 J. J. HUNTER, BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *N. Carolina*, MSc (Statistics Unit)

1970 P. R. HAFNER, DipMaths Dr Phil *Zür.*

1971 M. K. VAMANAMURTHY, MSc *Mys.*, MS PhD *Mich.*

1971 P. RAMANKUTTY, BA *Madr.*, MSc *Kerala*, MA PhD *Indiana*

1969 D. P. ALCORN, BSc *N.Z.*

1971 B. D. CALVERT, MS PhD *Chic.*, BSc

1969 C. C. KING, BSc *Well.*, MSc *Warw.*

1970 D. J. SMITH, BA *Portland State*, MA PhD *Wash. State*

1971 J. L. SCHIFF, AM PhD *Calif.*

1971 W. J. WALKER, PhD *Ill.*, MSc.

1971 M. J. J. LENNON, PhD *M.I.T.*, MSc

1974 G. R. BAIRD, BSc *Tas.*, PhD *Monash*

1974 A. J. LEE, PhD *N. Carolina*, MA (Statistics Unit)

1979 C. J. WILD, PhD *Wat.*, MSc (Statistics Unit)

#### Lecturers

1982 S. P. FITZPATRICK, BSc *W. Aust.*, PhD *Wash.*

1983 M. D. E. CONDER, MSocSc *Waik.*, MSc DPhil *Oxf.*

#### Senior Tutor

1969 R. E. SWENSON, MSc

## MECHANICAL ENGINEERING, *see* Engineering

## MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY

### SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

#### Dean, Professor of Surgery

1974 D. S. COLE, BMedSc MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCS, FRACS

### POSTGRADUATE AFFAIRS IN MEDICINE

#### Associate-Dean of Postgraduate Affairs in Medicine

1975 C. H. MACLAURIN, MBChB *N.Z.*, FRCS, FRACS

*Sir William Goodfellow Director of Continuing Medical Education in General Practice*

1978 P. M. BARHAM, BSc MBChB *Otago*, DipObst, MRCGP, MNZCGP

### ANATOMY

#### Professor, Head of Department

1968 J. B. CARMAN, BMedSc MBChB *N.Z.*, DPhil *Oxf.*

#### Auckland Savings Bank Professor of Radiology

1976 C. J. ALEXANDER, MBChB *N.Z.*, MD *Otago*, HonFRCR, FRACR, HonFACR (on leave)

#### Associate-Professor in Reproductive Biology (jty with Dept of Physiology)

1969 D. P. BOSHIER, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Brown*

#### Senior Lecturers

1976 M. J. MERRILEES, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Tor.*

1978 R. L. M. FAULL, BMedSc MBChB *Otago*, PhD

#### Senior Lecturer in Radiology

1979 G. A. FOOTE, MBChB *Otago*, MRACR

#### Senior Lecturer

\*1973 CYNTHIA G. JENSEN, AB *Brown*, PhD *Minn.*

#### Lecturers

1975 A. M. F. REEVE, MBChB *Otago* (on leave)

1978 D. R. ENSOR, BVSc *Massey*, PhD

## BIOCHEMISTRY, *see* Biochemistry

## COMMUNITY HEALTH

*Professor of Human Genetics and Community Health, Head of Department*

1973 A. M. O. VEALE, MBChB BSc N.Z., PhD Lond., FRACP, MCCMNZ

*Associate-Professors of General Practice*

1973 J. G. RICHARDS, MBChB N.Z., FRCGP, FRNZCGP, FRCPEd, FRACP

1977 S. R. WEST, MBChB DipObst N.Z., FRCGP, FRNZCGP, MCCMNZ

*Senior Lecturers*

1976 P. B. DAVIS, BA S'ton, MSc Lond.

1972 F. C. DONNELLY (Fr), DipReligEd Brussels, DipEd N.Z., MA PhD DipCrim

\*1972 R. B. HUNTON, MBChB N.Z., DTM & H Liv., MRCP, MRCPEd, FRACP

*Senior Lecturer in Epidemiology*

1979 R. BEAGLEHOLE, MDChB Otago, MSc Lond., MRCP, FRACP, MCCMNZ

*Lecturer in Biostatistics*

1978 P. R. MULLINS, MSc

*Senior Research Fellows*

T. E. KJELLSTROM, MME R.I.T., MD Karolinska I., Stockholm MNZIC

I. C. T. LYON, MSc Well., PhD Otago, MAACB

*Research Fellow*

M. I. PARSLOW, BSc Well.

*Executive Director Alcohol Research Unit*

SALLY CASSWELL, BA Sheff., PhD Otago

## MEDICINE, The Department of

*Professor, Head of Department*

1973 P. J. SCOTT, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MD Birm, FRCP, FRACP

*Professor of Medicine*

1968 J. D. K. NORTH, MBChB N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FRCP, FRACP

*Professor of Endocrinology*

1970 H. K. IBBERTSON, MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

*Associate-Professors*

1971 C. TASMAN-JONES, BSc MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

1979 W. F. LUBBE, MBChB MD Cape T., FCP(SA), FRACP, FACC

*Associate Professor in Immunology*

1972 J. D. WILSON, MBChB N.Z., PhD Lond., FRACP, FRCPA

*Honorary Associate-Professor*

1981 I. M. HOLDAWAY, BMedSc, MDChB Otago, FRACP

*Senior Lecturers*

1971 D. J. SCOTT, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MRCP, FRACP

1973 D. E. RICHMOND, MBChB N.Z., MD Otago, MRCP, FRACP, DipABIM

1978 D. N. SHARPE, MDChB Otago, FRACP DipABIM, DipABCVDIs, FACC

1978 I. J. SIMPSON, MBChB Otago, FRACP

1980 E. W. WILLOUGHBY, MBChB Otago, FRACP

1981 D. C. SUTHERLAND, MBChB Otago, BSc, FRACP

*MRC Career Fellow*

1969 PHILIPPA M. WIGGINS, MSc N.Z., PhD Lond.

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

S. P. LEE, MDBS H.K., PhD, FRACP

## OBSTETRICS & GYNAECOLOGY, Incorporating the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology

*Professor, Head of Department and Postgraduate School*

1964 D. G. BONHAM, OBE, MA MBBChir Camb., FRCS, FRACS, FRCOG, FNZCOG, MCCM(NZ)

*Professor in Obstetrics and Gynaecology*

1973 C. D. MANTELL, BMedSc MBChB Otago, FRCOG

*Professor in Obstetric and Gynaecological Endocrinology*

1962 G. C. LIGGINS, MBChB N.Z., PhD, FRCSEd, FRACS, FRCOG, FRS, FRSNZ

*Professor in Perinatal Physiology*

1959 SIR WILLIAM LILEY, KCMG, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., PhD A.N.U., Hon. DSc Well. DipObst, FRSNZ, FRCOG, HonFACOG

*Associate-Professor*

1969 J. T. FRANCE, MSc N.Z. PhD, MNZIC, FAACB

*Senior Lecturers*

1978 F. M. GRAHAM, MBBS Lond., LRCP, FRCSEd, MRCOG

1978 J. D. HUTTON, MBChB Otago, PhD Lond., MRCOG

1982 M. G. JAMIESON, BMedSc MBChB Otago, MSc Edin., DPhil Oxf., Dip Obst, MRCOG, FNZCOG

*MRC Career Fellow*

W. B. WATKINS, MSc PhD DSc

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

S. J. M. SKINNER BSc PhD S'ton.

**PAEDIATRICS***Professor, Head of Department*

1979 J. C. DOWER, AB MD Johns H., FRACP

*Research Professor in Child Health*

1970 R. B. ELLIOTT, MBBS MD Adel., FRACP

*Associate-Professors*

1971 J. M. COSTELLO, MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

1972 R. N. HOWIE, MBChB N.Z., FRACP

*Senior Lecturers*

1976 M. C. MORRIS, MBChB Otago, FRACP, FRCPCan

1982 M. INNES ASHER, BSc MBChB, FRACP

*Senior Lecturer in Neonatal Paediatrics*

1976 S. R. WEALTHALL, MDChB Sheff.

*Lecturer**Senior Research Fellows*

P. D. GLUCKMAN, MBChB Otago, MMedSc

BARBARA JOHNSON, BSc S'ton, DPhil Oxf.

**PATHOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1969 P. B. HERDSON, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., PhD Northwestern, FRCPA

*Professor, Experimental Pathology*

1970 J. B. GAVIN, BDS N.Z., PhD DDS Otago

*Professor, Microbiology*

1980 J. D. WATSON, MSc PhD

*Associate-Professor, Anatomical Pathology*

1970 J. F. ARTHUR, MD BS Lond., FRCPath

*Associate-Professor, Haematology*

1971 J. G. BUCHANAN, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., FRCPEd., FRACP, FRCPath, FRCPA

*Associate-Professor, Forensic Medicine*

1975 F. J. CAIRNS, MBChB MD N.Z., FRCPath, FRCPA

*Associate-Professor, Oncology*

1976 J. C. PROBERT, MA BMBCh Oxf., DMRT Lond., FRCR, MRACR, DipAmerBdRad.

*Senior Lecturer, Microbiology*

1971 D. A. BREMNER, MBChB N.Z., FRCPA

*Senior Lecturer, Anatomical Pathology*

1978 BETH J. L. SYNEK, MBChB Otago, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturer, Forensic Medicine*

1978 W. M. I. SMEETON, MBChB Otago, FRCPA (on leave)

*Senior Lecturer, Anatomic & Forensic Pathology*

1981 T. D. KOELMEYER, MBBS Ceyl., FRACS

*Senior Lecturer in Haematology*

1981 CYNTHIA J. RUTHERFORD, BMedSc MBChB Otago, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturer, Microbiology*

1980 P. N. GOLDWATER, BSc Sur., MBBS Lond., FRCPA

*MRC Career Fellow*

J. MARBROOK, MSc PhD

*Senior Research Fellows*

R. N. SEELYE, MSc N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

LOIS C. ARMIGER, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD

**PHARMACOLOGY and CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1978 D. M. PATON, MBChB Cape T., MD DSc Witw., FRCPCan, FRACP.

*Associate Professor*

1980 K. M. TAYLOR, MPharm PhD Otago, ANZIC

*Associate-Professor in Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*

1977 G. S. M. KELLAWAY, MDChB N.Z., FRCP, FRCPEd, FRACP

*Associate-Professor of Anaesthesia*

1978 R. A. BOAS, MBChB N.Z., FFARACS

*Honorary Associate-Professor*

1980 R. M. NORRIS, MBChB N.Z., MD Birm., FRCP, FRACP

*Senior Lecturer*

1979 SHEILA A. DOGGRELL, BSc PhD S'ton

*Senior Research Fellow*

J. W. PAXTON, BSc PhD Glas.

*Research Fellow*

DIANNE R. WEBSTER, MSc PhD Lond., MNZIC

**PHYSIOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1968 J. D. SINCLAIR, BMedSc MBChB MD N.Z., FRACP

*Associate-Professors*

1969 R. O. FARRELLY, MSc MBChB N.Z., FRCPA

1971 P. McN. HILL, MA MBBCh PhD Dub.

*Senior Lecturers*

1970 M. N. EADE, MBChB N.Z., MD Birm., FRACP

1972 N. J. DAWSON, BSc PhD N.E., MIBiol

1976 MARY A. BULLIVANT (Mrs), BSc Lond., PhD (on leave)

1977 J. R. SLACK, BSc PhD Lond.

1977 B. H. SMAILL, BSc BE Cant., PhD Lond., DIC

*Lecturer*

1982 D. S. LOISELLE, MSc Alta., PhD Dal., DipPhEd Otago

*Junior Lecturer*

1980 A. A. YOUNG, MSc MBChB

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

W. G. HOPKINS, BA MSc PhD

*Senior Research Fellow*

R. J. MILNE, MSc Cant., PhD Otago

*Isaacs Research Fellow*

SUSAN POCKETT (Mrs), MSc PhD

## Research Fellow

ROSEMARY L. MARTIN-BODY (Mrs), MSc

**PSYCHIATRY***Professor, Head of Department*

1970 J. S. WERRY, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MD Otago, DipPsych McG., FRCPCan., FRANZCP

*Associate-Professor in Adult Psychiatry*

1976 J. J. WRIGHT, MBChB MD Otago, FRACP, MRCPsych MRANZCP (on leave)

*Senior Lecturers*

1972 J. M. RAEBURN, PhD Qu., MA MSc

1978 R. G. LARGE, MBChB DPM Cape T., FFPsych SA, MRANZCP,

1981 G. J. TURBOTT, MBChB Otago, FRACS, MRANZCP

*Senior Research Fellow*

G. J. LEES, BSc PhD Melb.

*MRC Research Fellow*

M. G. AMAN, MA Ill., PhD

**SURGERY***Professor, Head of Department*

1980 G. L. HILL, MBChM Otago, MD Leeds, FRACS, FRCS

*Sir William Stevenson Professor of Orthopaedic Surgery*

1975 D. H. GRAY MBChB N.Z., MMedSc ChM Otago, FRACS (on leave)

*Honorary Professor*

1971 SIR BRIAN BARRATT-BOYES, KBE, MBChB N.Z., ChM Otago, FRACS, FACS, FRSNZ

*Associate-Professor*

1970 R. G. KAY, MBChB, N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

*Sir William Stevenson Associate-Professor of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery*

1979 D. F. LIGGINS, MBMS Syd., FRACS

*Sir William Stevenson and Lady Stevenson Senior Lecturer in Ophthalmology**Senior Lecturers*

1974 W. T. MORRIS, MBChB Brist., PhD Sheff., FRCS

1979 J. P. COLLINS, MBMCh N.U.I., FRCS, FRCSEd, FRACS

1981 D. L. ROTHWELL, MBChB Otago, MMedSc, FRACS

*Senior Lecturer in Orthopaedic Surgery*

1979 G. D. TREGONNING, MBChB Otago, FRACS, FRCSCan

*MRC Career Fellow*

M. H. FLINT, MBBS Lond., FRCS, FRACS

*Senior Research Physicist*

A. H. BEDDOE, MSc PhD Leeds, MInstP

*Connective Tissue Biochemist*

G. J. GIBSON, MSc Monash, PhD Alta.

*Research Fellow*

C. A. POOLE, BSc PhD Otago

**CLINICAL TEACHERS TO THE SCHOOL OF MEDICINE***\*Clinical Readers*

D. M. O. Becroft

B. R. Cant

T. P. Casey

J. C. Cullen

R. H. Culpan

A. O. M. Gilmour

G. L. Glasgow

in Pathology

in Physiology

in Pathology

in Surgery

in Psychiatry

in Medicine

in Medicine

G. C. Hitchcock

H. Le Grice

J. B. Lowe

J. Dilworth Matthews

P. W. Eisdell Moore

O. R. Nicholson

W. Sealy Wood

in Pathology

in Surgery

in Medicine

in Paediatrics

in Surgery

in Surgery

in Surgery



*\*Clinical Lecturers*

R. H. Acland	J. C. Gillman	J. D. Murdoch
S. F. Aftimos	L. K. Gluckman	M. E. Neill
M. R. Ali	R. J. Goodey	J. N. Neutze
J. S. Allan	P. J. Gow	J. E. Newman
R. J. Anderson	R. R. Grigor	A. J. Newson
T. M. Astley	Tania Gunn	G. I. Nicholson
A. N. Barker	F. J. Hall	R. M. Norris
P. F. Bartley	W. W. Hallwright	K. P. O'Brien
J. J. Baskett	A. E. Hardy	J. P. O'Connor
N. M. Base	E. A. Harris	N. M. F. Officer
Elizabeth W. Berry	A. C. Harrison	S. J. Ogle
A. D. Bird	H. H. Hart	Penelope G. Palmer
J. Boulton	A. J. Haslam	P. W. B. Pease
P. W. T. Brandt	R. K. Haydon	L. I. Phillips
Robin H. Briant	J. W. Henley	G. G. Powell
A. D. Cameron	P. G. Henley	H. H. Rea
D. G. Campbell	R. C. Hindle	C. P. Ring
P. E. Capelle	I. M. Holdaway	M. D. J. Robertson
J. F. Carter	J. E. Horton	S. M. Robinson
D. E. Caughey	A. J. S. House	A. H. G. Roche
Joan Chapple	M. E. Jagusch	D. B. Rogers
K. E. Clark	A. G. James	R. P. G. Rothwell
A. G. Clarke	D. L. Jamison	J. D. Rutherford
E. D. Clarke	J. A. Judson	Janet P. Say
Patricia M. Clarkson	G. F. Lamb	D. A. Scollay
R. J. Coates	P. A. T. Leightley	A. J. Scott
A. C. A. Coombes	A. Liang	J. P. Simcock
M. S. Croxson	D. E. M. MacCormick	Alan Smith
S. J. Culpán	D. MacCulloch	H. L. McI. Smith
C. G. Cumming	A. MacIntosh	W. M. Smith
J. C. Cunningham	J. R. D. Matthews	D. L. Snow
J. G. Davison	A. B. McCallum	V. F. Sorrell
P. B. Doak	J. M. McDougall	J. H. Stewart
G. W. Dodd	D. A. R. McKay	R. J. Sturt
R. G. Dreadon	R. N. McKegg	D. S. Sumner
A. Duke	A. R. McKenzie	D. Tomlinson
M. D. Eilenberg	M. R. McLean	A. B. Tomkins
R. B. Ellis-Pegler	J. W. McLeod	A. Rae Varcoe
K. McD Ewen	C. J. Mercer	W. E. Wallis
Keitha Farmer	W. H. Mercer	M. W. Watt
G. F. Farr	R. J. Methven	A. W. Wesley
R. S. Ferguson	K. N. P. Mickleson	R. M. L. Whitlock
Florence A. Fraser	S. W. Miles	F. Wilmott
P. A. Frengley	T. E. Moore	D. G. Woodfield
M. B. Gill	D. S. Morris	

**MUSIC***Professor, Head of Department**Associate-Professors*

1965 G. R. SEAMAN, MA DPhil Oxf.

1969 E. D. K. MEWS, DMus Lond., FRCO, FTCL

*Senior Lecturers*

1974 J. F. RIMMER, BA N.Z., MusD Tor., MA

1977 G. W. J. DRAKE, BA N.Z., PhD Ill., MA

*Senior Lecturer (Violoncello)*

1979 CORAL BOGNUDA (Mrs), Ier Prix (Violoncello) Ier Prix (Musique de Chambre) Paris, A.C.M. Melb.

*Senior Lecturers (Violin)*

1974 D. NALDEN, BA N.Z., Ier Prix (Violin) Ier Prix (Musique de Chambre) Brussels

1976 MARY O'BRIEN, DipPedagog Paris Cons.

*Senior Lecturer (Singing)*

1968 P. R. TODD, ARAM

*Senior Lecturer (Piano)*

1975 B. A. SAYER, BA DipMus, LRSM, ARCM, LTCL

*Senior Lecturer (including Organ and Harpsichord)*

1976 A. J. JENNINGS, BMus Well., DipSup Ier Prix Brussels, CertAdvStud, GSM (Lond)

*Lecturer*

1980 FIONA E. McALPINE, MA Well., DèSL Paris

*Lecturer (Piano)*

.....

*Lecturer (Viola)*

.....

## OBSTETRICS & GYNAECOLOGY

*see Medicine and Human Biology*

## OPTOMETRY *see Psychology*

## PAEDIATRICS PATHOLOGY PHARMACOLOGY AND CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY

} *see Medicine  
and  
Human Biology*

## PHILOSOPHY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1980 K. K. SEGERBERG, BA Col., Fil Dok Uppsala, PhD Stan.

*Senior Lecturers*

1959 C. I. PEARSON, MA PhD Q'ld.

1971 M. M. TWEEDALE, BA Prin., PhD Calif.

1969 R. NOLA, BSc N.Z., PhD A.N.U., MA MSc

1971 J. P. YOUNG, MA Camb. & Wayne State, PhD Pitt. (on leave)

1974 F. W. KROON, MA PhD Prin., MA

*Lecturers*

1978 CHRISTINE H. M. SWANTON, DPhil Oxf., MA

1981 J. C. BISHOP, BA A.N.U., PhD Camb.

1982 S. J. SURMA, PhD DSc Cracow

## PHYSICS

*Professor of Geophysics, Head of Department*

1969 A. C. KIBBLEWHITE, MSc N.Z., DIC PhD Lond., FIP, FASA (on leave)

*Professors*

1963 D. J. HOOTON, MSc N.Z., PhD Edin., FIP

1969 A. R. POLETTI, MSc N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FIP, FAPS, FRSNZ

*Associate-Professors*

- 1963 R. E. WHITE, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FIP  
 1953 J. B. EARNSHAW, MSc *Manc.*, PhD, FNZIE  
 1958 R. F. KEAM, BA *Camb.*, MSc DipHons N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1966 A. P. STAMP, MSc N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*, FIP  
 1967 P. C. M. YOCK, MSc N.Z., PhD *M.I.T.*  
 1969 C. D. STOW, BSc PhD *Manc.*, FIP  
 1971 P. H. BARKER, BA *Oxf.*, PhD *Manc.*, FIP

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1960 R. J. CLEGG, MSc N.Z., MIEE (on leave)  
 1963 J. R. STOREY, MSc PhD N.Z., MIP  
 1961 R. GARRETT, BA MSc N.Z., PhD, MIP  
 1963 A. CHISHOLM, MSc N.Z., PhD, MIP  
 1969 Z. C. TAN, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, MIP, CEng, MIEE  
 1970 G. E. J. BOLD, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, MIP, MIEE  
 1970 M. D. JOHNS, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, MIP, MIEE  
 1971 G. D. PUTT, BSc PhD *Melb.*, MAIP, MIP  
 1972 C. T. TINDLE, PhD *Br. Col.*, MSc, MIP, MASA  
 1979 B. J. BRENNAN, BSc PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Biophysics*

- 1975 J. D. HARVEY, PhD *Sur.*, MSc

*Lecturer, Physico-Chemistry*

- 1981 P. R. WILLS, BSc PhD

**PHYSIOLOGY, see Medicine and Human Biology****POLITICAL STUDIES***Professor, Head of Department*

- 1948 R. M. CHAPMAN, MA N.Z.

*Associate-Professors*

- 1965 RUTH H. BUTTERWORTH, MA DPhil *Oxf.*  
 1972 J. S. HOADLEY, BSc *Purdue*, MA *Calif. State*, PhD *Calif.*  
 1967 G. W. A. BUSH, MA N.Z., PhD *Brist.*, DipEd

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1968 B. S. GUSTAFSON, MA N.Z., DipEd *Massey*, DipSovStud *Glas.*, PhD  
 1969 E. P. AIMER, MA N.Z., PhD *A.N.U.*  
 1971 R. A. SHARP, BA N.Z., MA *Cant.*, PhD *Camb.*  
 1969 R. I. D. TAYLOR, BA MSc PhD *Lond* (on leave)  
 1970 J. D. PRINCE, MA *Case W. Reserve & Auck.*

*Lecturer*

- 1979 J. B. ATKINSON, MA *Cant.*, MPhil *Yale*  
 1982 J. VOWLES, PhD *Br. Col.*, MA

**PSYCHIATRY, see Medicine and Human Biology****PSYCHOLOGY***Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

- 1968 G. M. VAUGHAN, MA N.Z., PhD *Well.*, FNPpS

*Professors*

- 1961 H. SAMPSON, MA *Br. Col.*, PhD *McG.*, FNZPpS  
 1962 R. J. IRWIN, MA N.Z., PhD *Tufts.*, FNZPpS  
 1978 M. C. CORBALLIS, BA MSc N.Z., PhD *McG.*, MA, FRSNZ

*Associate-Professors*

- 1964 I. L. BEALE, MSc N.Z., PhD

1969 M. C. DAVISON, BSc Brist., PhD Otago, DSc

*Associate-Professor, Optometry*

1970 L. A. F. STOCKLEY, FBOA, FSMC, FAAO

*Senior Lecturers*

1965 J. A. GRIBBEN, MA N.Z., PhD Well.

1966 P. J. RIDDICK, BA N.Z., MA PhD

1968 G. D. de F. von STURMER, BA N.Z., MA Melb., PhD

1969 B. J. KIRKWOOD, BA N.Z., MA PhD

1972 VALERIE D. HOLLARD, MA PhD

*Senior Lecturers in Behavioural Science*

1962 BETTY M. BERNARDELLI (Mrs), MA Camb.

1970 JUDITH M. DUBIGNON, PhD Qu., MA

1970 D. M. WEBSTER, MA PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Optometry*

1978 L. F. GARNER, BAppSc Melb., PhD Syd., LicOptSci, VCOMelb., DCLP, FAAO

*Senior Tutor in Behavioural Science*

1975 R. G. R. NAIRN, MSc

*Lecturers*

1981 P. A. WHITE, BA Nott., DPhil Oxf.

1981 J. FIELD, BA Macq., PhD A.N.U.

*Honorary Lecturer*

G. G. TALBOT, MBChB, N.Z., FRCSEd, FRCS, FRACS

*\*Associates in Clinical Psychology*

J. P. A. Allen

Aloma H. Colgan

Brigid A. Barrer

Susanne Deveraux

A. D. Bauer

J. P. E. McDowell

*\*Clinical Associates, part-time in Optometry*

K. W. Atkinson

I. K. Laird

G. R. Kearney

H. M. Laird

R. J. Kinnear

*\*Academic Associates in Optometry*

H. G. L. Bowen

D. Hayden

M. J. Frith

J. Klinger

L. B. Grocutt

A. J. Nelson

*\*Visiting Ophthalmologist*

A. T. MORRIS, MBChB Otago, FRCS

J. D. Rainey

J. R. Reeves

A. J. R. White

J. M. Raby

N. G. Ritchie

P. D. Skeates

E. M. Wood

## ROMANCE LANGUAGES

*Professor of French, Head of Department*

1953 K. J. HOLLYMAN, MA N.Z., DU Paris

*Associate-Professor of French*

1960 A. S. G. BUTLER, MA N.Z., DU Paris

*Senior Lecturers in French*

1957 W. F. POLLARD, MA Dub.

1970 M. DANIELLE JAMIESON (Mrs), LèsL, Dipd'EtSup Lille

1966 JUDITH I. A. GRANT, MA N.Z., PhD Tor., Dipd'EtSup Paris, CertPhon Inst. de Phon., Paris

1969 J. C. CORNE, MA PhD

1970 B. D. McKAY, DU Paris, MA

1972 GLENN Y. EKAMBI (Mrs), Dipd'EtSup Besançon, MA

1978 P. A. PETIT, MèsL DèsL Bordeaux, MA Penn (on leave)

*Senior Lecturers in Italian*

1968-70, 1974 M. D. HANNE, BA Oxf. (on leave)

1971 R. B. BACKHOUSE, MA

*Senior Lecturers in Spanish*

1969 J. G. HOWLEY, MA Glas.

1974 CELIA M. W. MUNUERA (Mrs), BA *Birm.*, PhD *Lond.*

*Lecturer in French*

1961 GISELLE SCHENIRER (Mrs), BA *N.Z.*

*Lecturer in Italian*

1980 L. E. SIMMONS, MA

*Lecturers in Spanish*

1981 R. C. BOLAND, BA *Syd.*, MA *Flin.*, DipEd *Adel.*

1981 M. K. READ, BA *MLitt Brist.*, PhD *Wales*

*Senior Tutor in Italian*

1968 MEME CHURTON (Mrs)

*Tutor in Spanish*

1978 FIONA M. TALER (Mrs), MA

## RUSSIAN

*Senior Lecturer (in charge)*

1970-72, 1975 H. P. STOFFEL, DrPhil *Zür.*

*Senior Lecturer*

1975 I. K. LILLY, MA *Cant. & Monash*, PhD *Wash.*

*Lecturer*

1962 ALEKSANDRA CASSELTON (Mrs), BA *N.Z.*, MA

*Tutor*

\*1981 HANNA BRODSKY-PEVZNER (Mrs), DipPhil *Latvian State*

## SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES,

*see Germanic Languages and Literature*

## SOCIOLOGY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1982 I. R. CARTER, BSc *Bath*, MA *Essex*, PhD *Aberd.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1965-68, 1970 R. S. OPPENHEIM, BA *N.Z.*, DPhil *Waik.*, MA

1972 D. R. BEDGGOOD, MA *Cant.*, DPhil *Waik.*

1974 K. MALALGODA, BA *Ceyl.*, DPhil *Oxf.*

1973 IVANICA M. VODANOVICH, BA *N.Z.*, PhD DipSocAnthrop *Lond.*

1973 A. J. C. MACPHERSON, MA DPhil *Waik.*

1977 N. H. PERRY, BA *Strath.*, BSc (Soc) *Lond.*

*Lecturer*

1982 C. H. G. CROTHERS, BA *Waik.*, BA PhD *Well.*

## SPANISH, *see Romance Languages*

## SURGERY, *see Medicine and Human Biology*

## THEORETICAL AND APPLIED MECHANICS, *see Engineering*

## TOWN PLANNING

*Professor, Head of Department*

1969 I. E. BOILEAU, MA *Camb.* PhD *Manc.*, DipTP *Lond.*, FRTPI, MNZPI

*Senior Lecturers*

1963 J. R. DART, MSc *DIC Lond.*, DipTP, MNZIS, MNZPI (on leave)

- 1965 M. H. PRITCHARD, BSc *Wales*, DipTP, MNZPI  
 1968 D. R. HALL, LLB *N.Z.*, DipTP, LLM  
 1974 M. A. TAYLOR, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Lond.*, MRTPI, MNZPI  
 1978 D. BOLT, FRAIA, FRAPI Hon. FAILA, MNZPI  
 1970 L. R. B. MANN, BSc *N.Z.*, MSc *Well.*, PhD *Calif.* (on leave)

*Lecturer, part-time*

\*H. A. TURBOTT, BArch *N.Z.*, MLA *Harv.*, DipUrbVal

## ZOOLOGY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1972 E. C. YOUNG, MSc *N.Z.*, DIC, PhD *Lond.* (on leave)

*Senior Professor*

1960 J. E. MORTON, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRSNZ

*Professor*

1957 PATRICIA R. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD *N.Z.*, DSc, FRSNZ (on leave)

*Associate-Professors*

1958 M. C. MILLER, BSc PhD *Liv.*

1970 B. A. FOSTER, PhD *Wales*, MSc

*Senior Lecturers*

1958 D. R. COWLEY, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD (on leave)

1968 P. F. JENKINS, BSc *N.Z.*, PhD

1968 R. D. LEWIS, BSc PhD *Wales*

1972 J. H. CHOAT, MSc *Well.*, PhD *Q'ld.*

1972 J. A. MacDONALD, AB *Stan.*, PhD *Texas*

1976 R. M. G. WELLS, PhD *Lond.*, MSc

1976 J. L. CRAIG, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Massey*

1977 B. H. McARDLE, BSc *Bris.*, DPhil *York (U.K.)*

*Lecturer*

1978 J. C. MONTGOMERY, BSc *Otago*, PhD *Brist.* (on leave)

*Senior Tutors*

1961 JOAN M. MILLER (Mrs), BSc *Liv.*

1963 CATHERINE A. TIZARD (Mrs), BA *N.Z.*

1965 SHIRLEY M. MARTIN, BSc *Well.*

1967 MAUREEN H. LEWIS, MSc PhD

1972 R. MERE ROBERTS (Mrs), BSc *Cant.*, MSc

*Junior Lecturers*

1980 D. M. LAMBERT, MSc *Q'ld.*, PhD *Witw.*

1981 ROBYN H. FAIRCLOUGH, BSc *Otago*

1982 C. G. QUILTER, PhD *Otago*, BSc

*Honorary Research Fellow*

JOAN ROBB, MSc *N.Z.*, DipAgr *Cant. U. Coll.*

*University Post-Doctoral Fellow*

V. TETENS, Cand. Scient. *Aarhus*

## UNIVERSITY STAFF (LIBRARY)

### *Librarian*

P. B. DUREY, BA *Durh.*, FLA, ALAA, FNZLA

### *Deputy-Librarian*

### *Head of Acquisitions*

ALISON M. GRANT, BA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

### *Head Cataloguer*

CHRISTINE I. WILSON, BA, DipNZLS

### *Head of Circulation*

N. J. GIBSON SMITH, MA *N.Z.*, DipNZLS, ANZLA

### *Head of Reference*

A. CATHERINE HUTCHINSON, MA *Well.*, DipNZLS, ANZLA

### *Head of Serials*

K. I. PORTER, MA *N.Z.*, DipNZLS, ANZLA

### *Architecture Librarian*

WENDY S. GARVEY (Mrs), BA *Well.*, DipNZLS

### *Asian Languages Librarian*

K. H. LUN, BA, *Nan & Well.*, MA *Well.*, DipNZLS

### *Biological Sciences Librarian*

FLAVIA A. CLIFFORD-WHITE, BSc *Otago*, DipNZLS, ANZLA

### *Engineering Librarian*

M. D. SCOTT, NZLACert., ANZLA

### *Fine Arts Librarian*

VALERIE RICHARDS (Mrs), NZLACert., ANZLA

### *Geography Librarian*

B. W. MARSHALL, BA *Massey*, MA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

### *Geology Librarian*

ELVA LEAMING, NZLA Cert

### *Law Librarian*

E. JULIA McMAHON O'HIGGINS, BA *N.Z.*, MA LLB, NZLACert

### *Librarian, Centre for Continuing Education*

MARY A. CRICK, BA, NZLSCert

### *Librarian, School of Medicine*

MARGARET A. GIBSON SMITH (Mrs), MA, NZLACert

### *Music Librarian*

BEVERLEY A. ANSCOMBE, BMus *Well.* DipNZLS, ANZLA, LTCL

### *Science Librarian*

MAXINE R. WATT (Mrs), BA, DipLib *Lond.*

### *Senior Librarians*

SUSAN M. FOGGIN (Mrs), MA, DipNZLS

JENNIFER J. HART, MA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

GAIKA E. HAWKINS (Mrs), BA *Stell.*, LibDip *Cape T.*

B. A. HOWIE, BA *Well.*, DipNZLS

PATRICIA D. HULSE, BA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

HELEN R. RENWICK, BA *Cant.*, DipNZLS

ELAINE M. ROBINSON, NZLA Cert, ANZLA

### *Assistant Librarians*

CORAL D. ASHFORD (Mrs), BA, CertNZLS

\*HANNA BRODSKY-PEVZNER (Mrs), DipPhil *Latvian State*

DAPHNE CARRUTHERS, MA *N.Z.*, DipNZLS

ESTHER S. CHANG (Mrs), BA, DipLib *Toyo*

HEATHER M. CORMACK, NZLACert

ANN DUNCAN, BSocSc *Waik.*, DipNZLS

MARGARET I. FREEMAN, MA, NZLACert

THERESA B. GRAHAM, MA, DipNZLS

MARGARET GREVILLE, BA *Cant.*, MA, NZLSCert  
N. C. HEINZ, MA *Well.*, DipNZLS  
MARGARET E. KNIGHTBRIDGE, NZLACert  
JOAN M. LAW, MA, DipNZLS  
R. M. LOVE, BA *Well.*, BMus *Well.*, DipNZLS  
J. MARKHAM, BA *Well.*, MA *Syd.*, DipLibr *Well.*  
JANICE C. MOGFORD, BA  
SARAH M. NEILL (Mrs), NZLACert  
RACHAEL W. K. NG, BA BSc, DipNZLS  
MASAKO TAKAGAKI, BA *Aoyama Gakuin*  
RAINER WOLKE, Staatsexamen *Hamburg*, DipLibr *Well.*  
JENEFER M. WRIGHT, BA, NZLACert



---

## UNIVERSITY STAFF (ADMINISTRATION)

*Vice-Chancellor*

C. J. MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Assistant Vice-Chancellors*

J. L. WOODWARD, BE N.Z., MSc Tor., FIEE, FIEAust, MIPENZ

P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD Camb., FRAS, FRHistS

A. C. KIBBLEWHITE, MSc N.Z., DIC PhD Lond., FIP, FASA

*Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor (Buildings and Site Development)*

D. HALL, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ

*Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor (Student Accommodation and Welfare)*

R. C. CAMBIE, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil Oxf., DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ

*Registrar*

W. B. NICOLL, BCom, ACA

*Vice-Chancellor's Secretary*

JOCELYN I. HIGGINS (Mrs)

*Council Committee Clerk*

VALRAE J. COLLINS

*Registrar's Secretary*

RAE WILKIN (Mrs)

---

## REGISTRAR'S SECTION

*Head of the Audio-Visual Centre*

R. H. BOYD-BELL, BA

*Senior Administrative Assistant, Student Accommodation*

MARGERIE MACKY

*Managing Editor, Auckland University Press*

R. D. McELDOWNNEY

*Information Officer*

P. S. RUSSELL, BA N.Z., MA

*University Binder*

B. P. PICKARD

---

## ACADEMIC SECTION

*Academic Registrar*

LORNA A. WILSON (Mrs), JP

*Deputy Registrars, Academic*

R. D. STARK, BSc (Econ) Lond.

.....  
*Assistant Registrars, Academic*

J. R. CLARKE

V. PREECE, JP, MA N.Z.

*Senior Administrative Assistants*

K. G. BRADFORD

M. G. CRONIN

F. R. V. MILNE, BA Lond.

K. M. MILNE, DipAgr C.U.C. N.Z.

F. A. C. NICHOLSON, MA

K. W. SALMON, MA

R. J. WATKINS, MA

*Administrative Assistant*

W. A. KENNEDY

---

## FINANCE SECTION

*Finance Registrar*

B. M. COCKER, ACA

*Assistant Registrars, Finance*

R. J. TOWNSEND, ACA

R. PRESTON, ACA, ACIS

*Assistant Registrar, Purchasing*

G. J. SANDERSON, BSc Massey, MNZIC

*Senior Administrative Assistant, Purchasing*

A. P. HOLLOWAY

*Assistant Registrar, Salaries*

M. WONG SHEE

*Internal Auditor*

P. G. DORMON, ACA

*Senior Administrative Assistants*

ELSIE E. CARR

W. T. GARRATT, BCom

FAYE GROOM (Mrs)

GWYNNE E. McGOUGH (Mrs)

RAEWYN M. WHYMAN

---

## PERSONNEL SECTION

*Staff Registrar*

D. J. McINTYRE

*Assistant Registrars*

M. V. LELLMAN, BA

ELIZABETH P. PORT (Mrs)

G. E. W. THOMAS, BA

*Senior Administrative Assistant*

ROBIN V. HUDSON

*School of Architecture**Assistant Registrar*

D. J. S. HARVEY, BMus

*Faculty of Commerce**Senior Administrative Assistant*

JOY L. GILCHRIST

*Centre for Continuing Education**Assistant Registrar*

G. J. DIGLEY, BA

*Senior Administrative Assistants*

BETTY FITZGERALD

*Administrative Assistants*

ANNE DAVIS (Mrs), MA

R. D. D. QUATERMASS, BA Warw.

MARILYN KOHLHASE, BSocSc Waik.

*School of Engineering**Assistant Registrar (Engineering)*

G. C. BEACH

*School of Law**Administrative Assistant*

ROBYN HOPKINS

*School of Medicine**Assistant Registrar (School of Medicine)*

M. A. ROBINSON, BA Cant.

*Senior Administrative Assistant*

GEORGINA A. JONES (Mrs), BA

*Administrative Assistant*

MARILYN O. HAY

*Department of Anthropology**Senior Administrative Assistant*

SANDRA JONES (Mrs), BA Q'd.

*Department of Chemistry**Senior Administrative Assistant*

PEGGY W. PARKINSON

*Geothermal Institute**Administrative Assistant*

O. HUYASSE

*Department of Psychology**Senior Administrative Assistant*

W. A. P. FACER, BCom

*Department of Zoology**Administrative Assistant*

GRETCHEN A. L. SPALINGER (Mrs), BA Calif.

---

**WORKS SECTION***Works Registrar*

R. W. NICOL, BSc N.Z., CEng, MIEE

*Deputy Registrar, Services*

S. B. THORN, CEng MIMarE, MBIM, MIPENZ

*Assistant Registrars, Works*

G. LONG, BA

R. K. JOHNSON, FCIS

*Electrical Engineer*

K. G. LONGDIN-PRISK, ME

*Building Supervisor*

E. V. ROSCOE

*Senior Administrative Assistant, Services*

C. B. M. JACKSON, BA

*Senior Administrative Assistant, Buildings*

J. M. SWEENEY

*Draughtsman, Works and Services*

D. K. CAMPBELL

*Accountant, Services*

G. F. ERKKILA

*Senior Administrative Assistants*

P. M. WHITE, BArch

D. R. AGATE

*Administrative Assistant, Stores*

J. G. HARROP

*Administrative Assistant, Works and Services*

R. F. ATTWELL

*Superintendent of Horticulture*

A. PALMER, NCH DipHort Hert.Inst.Hort.

*Assistant Superintendent of Horticulture*

J. P. ADAM, DipHort Dip P &amp; R Cant.

*University Custodian*

A. E. YATES

*Deputy University Custodian*

J. D. CLARK

**N.Z. ENERGY RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT COMMITTEE***Executive Officer*

G. S. HARRIS, PhD N.S.W., ME

*Programme Manager*

A. R. ARNOUX, IngEnsia Massey (Fr), D  sL Paris

**APPLIED RESEARCH OFFICE***Executive Officer*

J. P. BLAKELEY, ME Cant., MS Ill., CEng, MICE, MIPENZ

**WELFARE SERVICES***Director of Welfare Services and Medical Director of the Student Health Service*

D. H. FINLAYSON, MBChB Glas., MRCGP

*Nursing Sister*

R. D. GINA PARRY-JONES (Mrs), NZRN

*Head of the Counselling Service*

LORNA A. McLAY (Mrs), BA DipEd N.Z.

*Counsellors*

D. W. SIMPSON, BA Cant., MA Well. DipEdPsych

B. R. LYTHER, MA

*Maclaurin Chaplain to the University*

K. J. SHARPE, (Rev. Fr.) BSc Cant., PhD LaT., MDiv Episc. Div. Sch. Camb. Mass. MTh Melb. Div. Coll.

*National Council of Churches Chaplain to the University*

J. M. KER, BA BD N.Z.

*Roman Catholic Chaplain*

D. HALSTEAD, (Rev. Fr.), OP

**RECREATION SERVICES***Physical Recreation Officer*

S. C. HOLLINGS, DipPE Madeley Coll., Keele

*Gymnasium Supervisor*

L. T. HADFIELD

*Grounds Superintendent, University Park*

L. A. ALLPORT

**LIAISON OFFICE***Liaison Officer with Secondary Schools*

M. G. SEGEDIN, MSc N.Z., MA Indiana

*Deputy Liaison Officer*

R. A. SPURDLE, DipEd Cant., MA

*Maori and Pacific Island Student Adviser*

SHIRLEY T. POTAKA (Mrs), BA

---

## **CAREERS ADVISORY SERVICE**

*Careers Adviser*

W. G. NASH, ANZIM, ANZIPM

---

## **HIGHER EDUCATION RESEARCH**

*Higher Education Research Officer*

J. JONES, BSc PhD *Wales*, MA *Malawi*

---

## **COMPUTER CENTRE**

*Operations Manager*

J. D. LUFF

*Senior Computer Programmer*

J. R. POWELL

---

## **STUDENT UNION**

*Assistant Registrar*

J. S. CLARKE

*Accountant*

G. BOWERS, BCom DipBIA

*Artistic Director*

R. S. RODGER, DipAct. N.I.D.A. Sydney

*Theatre Administrator (Maidment Arts Centre)*

F. C. HOBSON

Blank Page

---

# General Statutes and Regulations

## *Contents*

---

60	Admission Regulations
61	Enrolment and Course (General) Regulations
74	Enrolment 1983
74	Pre-enrolment
77	Enrolment Timetable 1983
80	Extramural Enrolment Statute
81	Extramural Enrolment Regulations
81	Examination Regulations
85	Conferring of Degrees and Academic Dress Regulations
86	Award of Honorary Degrees Regulations
88	Fees Regulations
91	Discipline
91	Disciplinary Regulations
94	The Library

## GENERAL STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

### ADMISSION REGULATIONS

#### Prerequisites

1. To be placed on the books of the University of Auckland as a student (to matriculate), subject always to a place being available, a person must have been granted
  - (a) the University Entrance qualification by the New Zealand Universities Entrance Board either by accrediting or examination, or
  - (b) admission by the New Zealand Universities Entrance Board at the Standard of the University Entrance examination, or
  - (c) admission by the University Council at its discretion at a standard to be determined in respect of work done in any other University or other place of learning substantially corresponding or equivalent to courses taught at the University of Auckland, or
  - (d) provisional admission.

**\*Notes:** (i) Overseas students not previously enrolled at a university who are seeking admission to New Zealand Universities at entrance level are required to apply for a place, and for recognition of overseas educational qualifications, to: The Secretary, Overseas Students Admissions Committee, P.O. Box 12348, Wellington North, N.Z.

(ii) New Zealand students and others who are ordinarily resident in New Zealand who have obtained University Entrance qualifications for countries outside New Zealand and who seek admission to New Zealand Universities at entrance level must apply for recognition of their qualifications to: The Secretary, Universities Entrance Board, P.O. Box 12348, Wellington North, N.Z.

- 2.(a) Persons may be admitted to lectures or laboratories without being placed on the books of the University (i.e. as non-matriculated students) provided they comply with all other regulations governing admission.
- (b) A non-matriculated student may not take university examinations.

#### Matriculation

3. Except where the Senate approves otherwise, no person shall be eligible to be on the books of the University
  - (a) while enrolled for full-time instruction in a secondary school, area school or technical institute
  - (b) while remaining on the books of another University
  - (c) unless sixteen years or over by 31 December in the year preceding the year of first enrolment at the University; but the Senate may in exceptional circumstances permit a person under that age to enrol.

**Note:** to paragraph (b) Approval has been given for Auckland Secondary Teachers College physical education and music students enrolled at Massey University for BED to be enrolled in the same year in approved courses at the University of Auckland.

4. Every student shall upon first enrolling at the University make the following declaration "I promise to obey the Statutes, Regulations and requirements of the University of Auckland".

#### Admission ad eundem statum

**Note:** For students applying to transfer to this University from another university, the Council pursuant to S24 of the University of Auckland Act 1961

- (a) may grant admission with credits and exemptions for papers towards the course for a Bachelor's degree or a diploma for work which in the option of the Senate is substantially corresponding or equivalent.
  - (b) may grant admission to the status of a degree holder or diploma holder with the right to proceed to a specific higher degree or diploma with or without Honours.
- Credits may be specified or unspecified and the grant of admission may include permission to advance in specified subjects. Prerequisites may be prescribed as a condition of the approval to proceed to a higher degree or diploma.

- 5(a) A student from another University wishing to transfer or be admitted to the University of Auckland shall apply on the appropriate form not later than 15 January and pay the prescribed fee.
- (b) Each such application shall be accompanied or supplemented by such evidence as the Senate may require as to:
  - (i) identity
  - (ii) academic standing, and
  - (iii) any degree or diploma obtained by the applicant at another university.
6. A student from another University in New Zealand shall be granted admission only if in the opinion of the Senate there are compelling circumstances for transfer to this University.

#### Provisional Admission

7. A person who does not hold a University entrance qualification but who has attained the age of twenty-one years by 31 December in the year preceding that for which application is made may be granted provisional admission to any course of study. The Senate may waive that age requirement where the applicant is in its opinion otherwise fit to be admitted and in particular has



- (a) satisfied any qualification for admission specified in the regulations for that course of study; or
- (b) completed two years of study at a Teachers College and attained a sufficient standard therein; or
- (c) passed School Certificate and attained the age of 16 years by 31 December in the year before enrolment, where granted a place in the course for the Diploma in Music; or
- (d) obtained any other qualification approved by the Senate.

8. A student's admission shall cease to be provisional when the student

- (a) having been admitted direct to a Professional year in Architecture, Engineering, or Fine Arts, or to a Town Planning Examination, has qualified to proceed to the next Professional Year or Town Planning Examination as the case may be, or
- (b) having been admitted to the course of study for the degree of Bachelor of Arts has passed not fewer than 6 papers, or
- (c) having been admitted to any Course of Study other than those specified in this regulation, has passed an equivalent full-time course approved for a particular Course of Study.

9.(a) While admission remains provisional, a student may enrol only for papers or subjects of the Course of Study for which admission is granted.

(b) When admission ceases to be provisional the student may enrol for any other Course of Study subject to any requirement for enrolment in that course.

10. A person seeking provisional admission to the University shall apply on the appropriate form by the prescribed date, submit evidence of age and educational qualifications, and pay the prescribed fees. The dates and fees shall be as from time to time prescribed by the Council.

**Notes:** (i) If candidates are under the age of 25, they will generally be advised by the Senate to sit the University Entrance examination unless their applications show professional or technical qualifications such as nurses, mariners or air pilots certificates.

(ii) Closing date for applications for Provisional Admission is 15 January (except: DipG&O – 1 March or 1 September; DipObst – 1 May or 1 November; DipPaed – 1 October).

(iii) On payment of a late fee of \$20 an application for any course of study (except DipG&O, DipObst and DipPaed) may be considered if it is made not later than the Friday preceding the enrolment week.

(iv) On payment of a fine of \$20 in addition to the prescribed fees and late fee subject to the permission of the Senate, an application made after the Friday preceding enrolment week may be considered.

(v) In courses such as DipBIA, DipTP, or in Fine Arts, where practical qualifications may receive merit classification, students should apply for a place on the appropriate enrolment form and if they are offered a conditional place they should then apply for provisional admission where this is required.

## ENROLMENT AND COURSE REGULATIONS (GENERAL)

### Dates of Terms

1.(a) There shall be in each year three terms. The first term shall begin on the first Monday after 25 February and shall end on the Saturday preceding the 19th Monday of the calendar year. The second term shall begin on the 22nd Monday of the calendar year and shall end on the Saturday of the 11th week thereafter. The third term shall begin on the 36th Monday of the calendar year and shall end on 31 October of each year. The Easter recess shall extend from Good Friday to the Tuesday of Easter week, both days inclusive. The mid-term break during the second term shall consist of the whole of the 6th week.

(b) For the purpose of the holding of such examinations as may be required at the conclusion of the University year, all lectures and laboratory courses shall cease about the end of the fifth week of the third term in each year. Under special circumstances lectures may be continued to a date not later than 28 October.

(c) Examinations in Engineering shall be held in the fifth week of the second term and after the eighth week of the third term.

Lecture and laboratory courses in Engineering shall be suspended for the fourth and fifth weeks of the second term and shall end in the seventh week of the third term.

### General Course Provisions

2.(a) Subject to the admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations and to the express provisions of any other regulations every candidate for a degree, diploma or certificate course shall be required to

- (i) be a matriculated student of the University;
- (ii) follow the prescribed Course of Study in the order prescribed or indicated in accordance with the regulations governing the Course;
- (iii) carry out the prescribed practical work (if any);
- (iv) comply with the provisions of the Examination Regulations;
- (v) pass the prescribed examinations.

(b) The personal Course of Study of every student shall require the approval of the Senate provided that (i) the Senate may delegate to the Dean of the Faculty within which the student is enrolled the power to give such approval;

- (ii) the Senate may in exceptional circumstances approve a personal Course of Study which does not in every particular satisfy the regulations for the degree or diploma for which the student is enrolled;
- (iii) Any person who produces evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate of inability to attend classes and who wishes to take any paper or papers the equivalent of which is not available by extramural enrolment at Massey University may, in exceptional circumstances be permitted to enrol at the University of Auckland with such dispensations and upon such conditions as the Senate thinks fit;
- (iv) where approval of a personal Course of Study has been withheld by a decision of the Dean acting under delegation of that power the student may appeal to the Senate against that decision;
- (v) where options are prescribed for a Course of Study the Senate may at its discretion determine which of them shall be available in any year: provided always that sufficient options shall be available to enable a candidate to complete his Course.
- (c) Where in the opinion of a Head of Department an insufficient number has enrolled for a paper taught in the Department or there are insufficient staff to teach it, that Head of Department may, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty, withdraw that paper for the current year within one week of the beginning of the first Term, if the essential prerequisites for any candidate's course of study are not thereby affected. No candidate shall be charged a fee for any change of course required because of the withdrawal of a paper.
- (d) In relation to the time limit for the presentation of a dissertation, original investigation, or thesis 'academic year' shall in these and all other regulations of the University, unless the context requires otherwise, mean the period from the first day of March in one calendar year to the last day of February in the calendar year next following.
- (e) *Applications for approval of Senate as required by Regulations governing intended Course of Study.*  
A student who wishes to take in any year a Course of Study which under any regulation for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Degree of Master of Arts requires the specific approval of the Senate, shall make application to the Registrar on the appropriate form not later than 31 January in the year in which he wishes to enrol, provided that with the permission of a Head of Department an application may be accepted after this date.
- (f) Except (i) as provided in the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1962 and the Extramural Enrolment Regulations and (ii) otherwise with the special permission of the Senate, no student shall enrol or continue to be enrolled at the University of Auckland while enrolled at any other university or university college.

### **Eligibility to Enrol**

3.(a) Students entitled to enrol at the University of Auckland subject to places being available, and who otherwise fulfil the eligibility requirements shall include

- (i) those previously enrolled whose official record remains at this University;
- (ii) those living in the area defined in the Appendix of these regulations who wish to enrol for the first time at a university in a course of study in the Faculties of Arts (including the Course for the Diploma in Education but excluding other Diploma Courses);

Commerce

Law, for the Intermediate Examination

Music, for the Degree of Bachelor of Music

Science (including the subjects of the Architecture and Engineering Intermediate examinations but excluding the Course for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry);

- (iii) those living in New Zealand south of the area defined in the Appendix of these regulations who wish to enrol for the first time at a university in a Course of Study approved for the purposes of this subclause by the Senate.

Each student who wishes and is entitled to enrol must complete a pre-enrolment form by the date prescribed and shall in his enrolment be subject to any restrictions or conditions imposed by the Senate and by the Faculty or Faculties in which he enrolls.

**Notes:** (i) For 1983, pre-enrolment is required for some of the Courses of Study provided for in Regulation 3(a) (see pre-enrolment).

(ii) There is a limitation on the number of students that can enrol for certain Courses of Study and for certain papers (see pre-enrolment).

(b) Students who may be permitted by the Senate to enrol at the University of Auckland, subject to places being available, and who otherwise fulfil the eligibility requirements shall include

- (i) those who wish to enrol for the first time in a Course of Study in the Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning, for the Professional Examinations or Town Planning Examinations, Engineering, for the examinations for the professional years,

Fine Arts,

Medicine and Human Biology,

Music for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance), Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours, Diploma in Music or Diploma in Music with Honours

Science for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry or for the following Diploma Courses: Broadcast Communication, Business and Industrial Administration, Clinical Psychology, Computational Mathematics, Criminology, Drama, Educational Psychology, Energy Technology (Geothermal), Guidance and Counselling, Gynaecology and Obstetrics, Local Government and Administration, Mathematical Education, Obstetrics, Paediatrics, Psychiatry, Statistics, Town Planning, Valuation;

(ii) those who wish to enrol at a university for the first time and are not entitled to enrol under subclauses (ii) and (iii) of Regulation 3(a) of these regulations;

(iii) those who have failed to make satisfactory academic progress in their University studies or have been excluded from the University;

(iv) those transferring from another university in New Zealand who satisfy the Senate as required by the *Ad Eundem Statum* Regulations that there are compelling reasons for their transfer;

(v) those who wish to enrol to complete the Course requirements of another university in New Zealand;

(vi) those overseas students granted Admission *Ad Eundem Statum* with credits; or

(vii) those overseas students selected for admission at entrance level.

Each student not entitled to enrol but who wishes to enrol must complete a pre-enrolment form by the date prescribed, and if permission to enrol is granted shall in his enrolment be subject to any restrictions imposed by the Senate and by the Faculty or Faculties in which he enrolls.

**Notes:** (i) For 1983 pre-enrolment is required for some of the Courses of Study provided for in Regulation 3. (b), (see pre-enrolment).

(ii) There is a limitation on the number of students that can enrol for certain Courses of Study and for certain papers (see pre-enrolment).

## Enrolment

4.(a) Every internal student shall enrol at the university in person before the beginning of the first term in accordance with the detailed enrolment timetable published in this *Calendar*; provided that where a student is, by reason of illness or of any exceptional circumstances beyond his control, unable to enrol in due time, he may with the permission of the Senate enrol late without penalty if he

(i) applies for that permission on or before 31 January, or as soon as reasonably possible in any case where it is after that date the student becomes ill or the exceptional circumstances arise; and

(ii) produces with his application a medical certificate or reasonable evidence of the exceptional circumstances relied upon.

(b) Students whose dissertations, original investigations, or theses for a degree, or diploma, are incomplete shall be required to re-enrol at the beginning of each academic year until the dissertation, original investigation, or thesis is presented.

(c) (i) Candidates for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination.

(ii) Candidates for the Diploma in Obstetrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination.

(iii) Candidates for the Diploma in Paediatrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 October or such date as approved by the Senate.

(iv) Candidates for the final year of the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 15 November or such date as approved by the Senate for the commencement of the Trainee Internship year.

(d) Extramural students shall enrol in accordance with the provision of the Extramural Enrolment Statute and Regulations.

(e) A student who has applied for *Ad Eundem Statum* Admission, or Provisional Admission, or Special Admission to be eligible to matriculate, and who has not received a decision before the beginning of enrolment week, shall enrol and pay fees as if his application had been granted. If his application is refused he shall be admitted as a non-matriculated student to lectures and laboratories only; provided that his enrolment may be cancelled and his fees fully refunded if within fourteen days of the posting to him of notice of refusal he lodges at the Registry an appropriately completed 'Alteration to Course' form.

(f) A student who is enrolled at another university in New Zealand and who wishes to enrol at the University of Auckland shall submit to the Registrar an application to transfer on the prescribed form not later than 15 January in the year in which he wishes to enrol, provided that a late application may be accepted only with the permission of the Senate and on payment of a fee of \$20.

**Note:** A student wishing to apply for credits towards a degree or diploma offered by the University of Auckland must also comply with the provisions of the Admission *Ad Eundem Statum* Regulations.

(g) No student shall be enrolled in the same year for more than two distinct Courses of Study for degrees and diplomas. A student enrolling for two such Courses of Study shall be permitted to sit for examination in only two papers or their equivalent more than the maximum allowed in either Course of Study.

(h) No student shall be enrolled in any paper or subject for which they have received credit for another degree or diploma or in any paper or subject with content substantially similar to any other paper for which they have received credit.

(i) Subject to the provisions of the Regulations for any degree or diploma no student shall be enrolled in two stages of a subject in the same year, provided that the Senate may waive this requirement in the case of a student of proven merit.

(j) Students who satisfy the Senate that they are unable to attend the full Course of Study for which they are enrolled may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department concerned, be granted partial exemption from lectures.

5. (a) Each student (except for DipG&O, DipObst, DipPaed, or for final year MBChB) shall enrol on the appropriate day and morning or afternoon as set out in the enrolment timetables. Provided that on payment of the prescribed late fee and penalties as Senate may in its discretion impose an enrolment may be accepted after the day prescribed but in no case shall

(i) a student whose home is outside New Zealand be accepted later than the commencement of the second week of lectures, or

(ii) a student permanently resident in New Zealand be accepted later than 31 March, or

(iii) a student be accepted for enrolment in a laboratory subject (including the subject Studio in the Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning and Faculty of Fine Arts) and any subject prescribed for the First, Second or Third Law Examination for LLB or LLB (Hons) Degree or for the Law Professional Examination and any subject in the Faculty of Engineering except with the special permission of the Senate.

**Notes:** (i) A late fee of \$20 is prescribed.

(ii) Where enrolment is applied for after the end of the first week of term an additional fine of \$4 is payable for each week or part of a week after the first week of term by which the application to enrol has been delayed.

(b) Each student for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics or the Diploma in Obstetrics shall enrol not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination in that year.

**Note:** On payment of a fine of \$4 for each week or part of a week after 1 March or 1 September a late application to enrol may be considered.

(c) Each student for the Diploma in Paediatrics shall not enrol by 1 October or such later date as approved by the Senate.

**Note:** On payment of a fine of \$4 for each week or part of a week after 1 October a late application may be considered.

(d) Each student for the final year for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery shall enrol by 15 November or such later date as approved by the Senate.

**Note:** On payment of a fine of \$4 for each week or part of a week after 15 November a late application may be considered.

### *Choice of Course of Study*

(e) The Courses of Study of those enrolled after the date prescribed will be determined by the Senate and will not necessarily conform with those proposed by the students concerned. In determining such Courses, the Senate will have regard to the prior claims upon both laboratory and classroom space of those students who have enrolled at the approved time.

### *PhD Enrolments*

(f) The provisions of this regulation do not apply to enrolments for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

### **Payment of Fees**

6. (a) All fees that cannot be claimed under a study grant or bursary shall be paid in full at enrolment: provided that the Registrar or his deputy may, in exceptional circumstances grant an extension of time for the payment of fees.

(b) A charge of \$10 shall be paid with any application to defer payment of fees provided that the Registrar or his deputy may at his discretion waive payment of this charge.

(c) In any case where fees remain unpaid, a student shall not be entitled to have his record transferred to another University or to sit the final examination.

**Note:** A student who is unable to pay fees at enrolment must interview the Registrar or his deputy and complete an agreement regarding payment. Extension of time for payment of fees is not granted as a matter of course but only in exceptional circumstances.

**Alterations to Courses of Study****7. Additions, or Deletions of Papers and Subjects**

(a) A student who having completed enrolment wishes to alter the course of study may apply to the Senate upon the conditions in the schedule of this regulation for leave to add or delete, from any paper or subject. Any application made after the commencement of the first term in each year shall be submitted to the Registry on the appropriate form with the prescribed fees.

**Notes:** (i) It is not sufficient to notify a change of course of study solely to a Department. An "Application to Alter Course" form must be handed in at the Registry.

(ii) The prescribed fee is \$10.

(iii) On payment of a late fee of \$4 for each week or part of a week a late addition (but not a late deletion) may be considered.

**Schedule**

Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning	<p>Intermediate and papers in other Faculties – refer appropriate Faculty</p> <p><b>ADDITIONS</b> BArch, DipVal, and Special Examination of NZIA and AERB the second Friday after the commencement of lectures. All other courses: 31 March</p> <p><b>DELETIONS</b> 31 March provided that where lectures in any paper commence after 31 March application to withdraw from that paper will be accepted on or before the second Friday after commencement of lectures.</p> <p><b>SUBSTITUTIONS</b> Masters courses: 30 April</p>
Faculties of Arts, Commerce, Music, and Science	<p>Subjects in other Faculties – refer appropriate Faculty</p> <p><b>ADDITIONS</b> Papers commencing after the beginning of the academic year and laboratory papers: The second Friday after the commencement of lectures in the papers concerned. All other papers: 31 March</p> <p><b>DELETIONS</b> Papers commencing after the beginning of the academic year: The second Friday after the commencement of lectures in the papers concerned. All other papers: 31 March</p> <p><b>SUBSTITUTIONS</b> Masters courses and linked corequisite papers: 30 April</p>
Faculty of Engineering	<p>Intermediate and subjects in other Faculties – refer appropriate Faculty</p> <p><b>ADDITIONS</b> The first Friday after the commencement of lectures in the subjects concerned.</p> <p><b>DELETIONS</b> 31 March for full-year and first half-year subjects and 8 August for second half-year subjects.</p> <p><b>SUBSTITUTIONS</b> Masters courses: 30 April</p>
Faculty of Fine Arts	<p>Papers in other Faculties – refer appropriate Faculty</p> <p><b>ADDITIONS</b> Papers commencing after the beginning of the academic year: The second Friday after the commencement of lectures for those papers. Studio: The second Friday after the commencement of lectures. All other papers: 31 March</p> <p><b>DELETIONS</b> Papers commencing after the beginning of the academic year: The second Friday after the commencement of lectures for those papers. All other papers: 31 March</p> <p><b>SUBSTITUTIONS</b> Masters courses: 30 April</p>

*General Statutes & Regulations, Enrolment & Course (General)*

Faculty of Law	<p>Intermediate and papers in other Faculties — refer appropriate Faculty ADDITIONS</p> <p>LLB, LLB(Hons), and Law Professional</p> <p>The second Friday after the commencement of lectures.</p> <p>All other papers: 31 March</p> <p>DELETIONS</p> <p>All papers: 31 March</p> <p>SUBSTITUTIONS</p> <p>Masters courses: 30 April</p>
Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology	<p>ADDITIONS</p> <p>Laboratory papers excluding those papers taught entirely in the second half of the year:</p> <p>The second Friday after the commencement of lectures for those papers.</p> <p>Papers, including laboratory papers, taught entirely in the second half of the year:</p> <p>The Friday preceding the mid-term study break for those papers.</p> <p>All other papers: 31 March</p> <p>DELETIONS</p> <p>DipG&amp;O and DipObst:</p> <p>1 April for June examinations or 1 October for December examinations.</p> <p>DipPaed: 1 November</p> <p>Final year for MBChB: 15 December in the year of enrolment</p> <p>All other papers: 31 March</p> <p>SUBSTITUTIONS</p> <p>Masters courses: 30 April</p>

**Notes:** (i) A student ceasing to take a paper after the prescribed date for deletion is strongly advised to notify the Registrar as soon as possible but not later than three weeks before lectures for the paper finish. The date of notification will be entered against the enrolment for the year in that paper on the student's academic record. (A notification form is available from the Inquiry counter at the Registry.)

(ii) A student should refer to Regulation 7(c)(iii) if the reason for ceasing to take a paper is illness or injury, or any exceptional circumstances beyond his control.

*Fees**(b) Payment of Additional Fees or Late Fees*

Any additional tuition fees and all late fees shall be paid at the time of the lodging of the application.

*(c) Refund of Fees*

(i) Where a candidate applies under paragraph (a) of this Regulation and within the appropriate time limit to delete all the papers for which he has enrolled, he shall receive a full refund of all tuition fees and of the Students' Association Fee.

(ii) Where the student has within the appropriate time limit applied under paragraph (a) to delete a paper (but not all papers for which he has enrolled), or to add a paper for which a lesser fee is prescribed than that which he has paid, he shall receive a refund of the difference between the total tuition fees paid and the total due on acceptance of the application for addition or deletion.

(iii) Where a student for reasons of illness or injury or any exceptional circumstances beyond his control makes a late application for deletion, the Senate may in its absolute discretion grant a partial refund of tuition fees, but in no case of the Students' Association fee.

**Note:** Students who have their tuition fees paid under University Scholarships, Education Department Bursaries, Government Study Awards, Training College Bursaries, Secondary Teachers' Studentships, or Bilateral Aid Programme should note that if they do not comply with the Regulations relating to 'Alterations to Course of Study' they may prejudice their scholarship or bursary in a future year.

**Non-matriculated Students**

8. Admission to lectures or laboratories may be granted to non-matriculated students provided they comply with all other Regulations governing admission. The Council may from time to time restrict entry of non-matriculated students to one or more subjects by reason of shortage of accommodation or other special circumstances.

**Note:** A non-matriculated student may not enter for any degree, diploma, or certificate of proficiency examinations as he is unable to comply with the course Regulations.

**Exclusion**

9(a) Heads of Departments may exclude any student from further study in any paper or subject in their departments on the grounds of unfitness or of unsatisfactory progress in the paper or subject.

A student so excluded shall be informed by the Head of Department.

(i) not later than the Friday preceding the mid-term break for a paper or subject taught over the full teaching year

(ii) within seven weeks of the commencement of a paper or subject taught over half of the teaching year

(iii) within four weeks of the commencement of a paper or subject taught over one-third of the teaching year.

A student may lodge an appeal to the Senate against the decision of the Head of Department not later than seven days after the notice of exclusion is given.

**(b) Failure in a Paper or Subject Twice**

Any student who has twice enrolled for, but has failed to be credited with a pass in an optional paper or subject shall not be entitled to enrol again for that paper or subject without the prior permission of the Head of the Department in which it is taught.

**Exclusion for failure to make satisfactory academic progress in a Course of Study as a whole**

10(1) In this Regulation and the schedule to it: 'a particular Faculty' means a Faculty named in the left hand column of the Schedule to this Regulation;

'unsatisfactory student' (i) means, in relation to a particular Faculty, a student who has made insufficient academic progress in that he has failed to the extent described opposite the name of that Faculty, in the right hand column of the Schedule to this Regulation, in any Course of Study there specified; (ii) includes any student who fails to comply with conditions of enrolment imposed under clause (5) of this Regulation. In the case of any student, a 'year of academic studies' means a year in which he is enrolled and has not withdrawn enrolment by the prescribed dates.

(2)(a) No unsatisfactory student may enrol in a particular Faculty without the prior permission of the Senate.

(b) This clause of this Regulation does not apply to a student

(i) enrolling to complete Case Studies, Dissertation, Original Investigation or Thesis for any degree or diploma, or

(ii) enrolling for further study within the two years next following the completion of a degree or diploma or for a prerequisite for a Master's degree or postgraduate diploma, or

(iii) enrolling for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

(3) No student may enrol in the University, without the prior permission of the Senate,

(a) who has been excluded from any university on the ground that he has failed to make sufficient academic progress; or

(b) who wishes to transfer to this university from another university under the Regulations of which he requires special permission to enrol having failed to make sufficient academic progress.

(4) Application for permission to enrol under clause (2) or clause (3) of this Regulation must be made on the appropriate form and submitted with the prescribed fee to the Registrar not later than 10 January in the year in which the student wishes to enrol.

**Notes:** (i) Under the Fees Regulations a late application may be received with a late fee of \$20 after 10 January and not later than the Friday preceding enrolment week.

(ii) on payment of a fine of \$20 in addition to the prescribed fee and late fee an application made after the Friday preceding enrolment week may be considered.

(5) In granting a student permission to enrol under clause (2) or clause (3) of this Regulation, the Senate may impose on the student such conditions as it thinks fit.

(a) in relation to the minimum academic progress he must make in the year of enrolment (so as to be entitled to enrol in the next year without application under this Regulation);

(b) otherwise in relation to his future Course of Study.

(6) Any student

(a) to whom the Senate refuses permission to enrol under clause (2) or clause (3) of this Regulation; or

(b) who objects to any condition of enrolment imposed by the Senate under clause (5); may within 14 days appeal to the Council against the refusal or imposition.

(7) This Regulation is subject to Regulation 11 of these Regulations.

## Schedule

Faculties of Architecture and Town Planning, Commerce, Engineering, Law, and Science	Any Course of Study: any student who has, over the last two years of his academic studies, failed to pass the equivalent of one year's full-time Course of Study.
Faculties of Arts, and Music	Any Course of Study: any student who has over the last two years of his academic studies, failed to pass six papers.
Faculty of Fine Arts	A Course of Study arranged in Professional Years: any student who has failed all the papers of a Professional Examination or has, over the last two years of his academic studies, failed to complete all the papers of a Professional Examination. A Course of Study not arranged in Professional Years: any student who has over the last two years of his academic studies, failed to pass in the equivalent of one year's full-time course.
Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology	Bachelor of Human Biology: any student who has failed Part I as a whole; any student who on two occasions has failed to pass Part II as a whole, or on two occasions has failed to pass Part III as a whole; any student who has failed to pass any two parts of the course as a whole. Any other Course of Study: any student who has failed his previous year of academic study as a whole.

**Note:** A full-time Course of Study is as defined in the Scholarships, Bursaries and Awards Section.

### Application of Foregoing Regulation to Students who have been Enrolled Part-time

11. Regulation 10 of these Regulations shall not apply to a student who, over the last two years of his academic studies, has been enrolled in this University part-time for a Course of Study and has passed at least half of the paper or subjects for which he was so enrolled.

### Cross Credits

12(a) In this Regulation, cross-credits means papers of subjects which:

- (i) are common to two or more Courses of Study;
  - (ii) have been passed by a candidate for the purpose of one of those Courses of Study; and
  - (iii) that the candidate desires to transfer to another of those Courses of Study.
- (b) A candidate may, on payment of the prescribed fees under the Fees Regulations, transfer to the Course of Study for any degree or diploma named or referred to in the left hand column of the Schedule to this regulation cross-credits as shown opposite the degree or diploma so named or referred to in the right hand column of that Schedule (Subject to any other provisions of this regulation).
- (c) No Stage III paper that fulfils the Stage III requirement of a Course of Study may be cross-credited to meet the Stage III requirement of another Course of Study.  
e.g. Stage III Maths credits passed as the only Stage III credits for BSc, could not be credited to BA unless three other Stage III papers were passed for the BA Course of Study.
- (d) No candidate may transfer as a cross-credit any paper or subject passed with a conceded pass or restricted pass; and if that paper or subject is compulsory any other paper or subject may be substituted for it as the Senate may approve.
- (e) No candidate may transfer as a cross-credit any paper or subject already so transferred under this regulation.
- (f) In any case where an application for the transfer of cross-credits
- (i) is not otherwise covered by this regulation or not covered by special provisions made elsewhere in the Regulations of the University or
  - (ii) is subject to any doubt or difficulty in the interpretation of these or any other Regulations of the University — the Vice-Chancellor may approve any such transfer of credit, or give any such direction in relation to the application, as he thinks fit.



---

**Schedule**


---

**Architecture and****Town Planning**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (i) Degree of<br>Bachelor of<br>Architecture    | The papers of subjects of the Intermediate<br>Examination |
| (ii) Diploma in<br>Valuation                    | Not more than eleven subjects.                            |
| (iii) Degree of<br>Bachelor of<br>Town Planning | The papers of subjects in the Intermediate<br>Examination |
- 

**Arts**

- |                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (iv) Degree of<br>Bachelor of Arts | Not more than seven papers. |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
- 

**Commerce**

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| (v) Degree of<br>Bachelor of<br>Commerce | Not more than eight papers. |
|--|-----------------------------|
- 

**Science**

- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| (vi) Degree of<br>Bachelor of<br>Science    | Not more than 36 credits. |
| (vii) Degree of<br>Bachelor of<br>Optometry | Not more than 48 credits. |
- 

**Other Degrees****and Diplomas**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (vii) Any<br>Bachelors degree<br>other than those<br>named above   | Not more than six papers or three subjects.                       |
| (vii) Any<br>diploma other<br>than those<br>named above<br>and other than<br>the Diploma in<br>Town Planning | Not more than one-third of the paper requirements of the diploma. |
- 

Notes: (i) In the case of Master's degrees no cross-credits are available, except where the course regulations so provide.

(ii) A student taking two Courses of Study may be permitted to transfer as cross-credits no more than the maximum allowed for one Course or the other but not for both.

**Credit**

13(a) A candidate may with the approval of the Senate and on payment of the prescribed fees under the Fees Regulations be granted towards a degree or diploma named or referred to in the left hand column of the Schedule to this Regulation, credit not exceeding that shown opposite the degree or diploma so named or referred to, in the right hand column of that Schedule.

(b) No candidate may be granted credit for work already so credited under this Regulation.

---

**SCHEDULE**


---

**Arts**

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| (i) Degree<br>of<br>Bachelor of Arts | (a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1977 a three-year course full-time Division A at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than four unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. |
|--------------------------------------|--|

(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1978 a three-year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, seven unspecified papers, four at Stage I level and three at Stage II level. For the purpose of BA Regulation 5, the papers so credited shall count as papers in two subjects. For the purpose of BA Regulations 3, three papers shall count as papers in Group A in the schedule to the BA Regulations and four papers shall count as papers in Group B in the schedule to the BA Regulations.

(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1979 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA regulations. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a three year Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, three unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who had successfully completed in or after 1980 a two year full-time Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

(d) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1979 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teacher's College not more than four unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College, seven unspecified papers, four at Stage I level and three at Stage II level. For the purpose of BA Regulation 5 the papers so credited shall count as papers in two subjects. For the purpose of BA Regulation 3, three papers shall count as papers in Group A in the Schedule to the BA Regulations and four papers shall count as papers in Group B in the BA Regulations.

(e) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1976 a two-year full-time Course in Division A at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council not more than two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

(f) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a two-year full-time Course in Division E at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council not more than two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the schedule to the BA Regulations.

(g) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for a Certificate Course of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade B or higher, one or two papers to count as one unspecified Stage I subject.

---

## **Commerce**

### (ii) Degree of Bachelor of Commerce

(a) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for a Certificate in Personnel Management of the centre for Continuing Education with a grade B or higher, one or two unspecified Stage I papers.

(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a three-year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than three unspecified papers to count as elective papers.

(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 and up to and including 1979 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council not more than one unspecified paper to count as an elective paper. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' College Council three elective papers for the three year Division B course, or two elective papers for the two year Division B course.

(d) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a three-year full-time Division Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College not more than three unspecified papers to count as elective papers.

---

<b>Law</b> (iii) Degree of Bachelor of Law or Diploma in Criminology	(a) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for a Certificate in Criminology of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade B or higher, one or two unspecified papers.
<b>Music</b> (iv) Degree of Bachelor of Music	<p>(a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three-year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, one or two unspecified papers (not being papers in Music) in lieu of the BA papers prescribed for the Degree. For a student specializing in music in the above three-year course, a further one or two unspecified Stage I papers.</p> <p>(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council not more than one unspecified paper (not being papers in Music) in lieu of a BA paper prescribed for the Degree.</p> <p>(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three-year full-time Division Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College not more than one unspecified paper (not being a paper in Music) in lieu of a BA paper prescribed for the Degree.</p>
<b>Science</b> (v) Degree of Bachelor of Science	<p>(a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three-year full-time Division A course or a three-year full-time Division Home Economics and Commercial course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than twelve unspecified Stage I credits.</p> <p>(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1976 and up to and including 1980 a two-year full-time course in Division A at a Teachers College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than six unspecified Stage I credits.</p> <p>(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1980 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers Colleges Council, not more than six unspecified Stage I credits.</p> <p>A student granted credit under these provisions (a, b and c) shall not be eligible for further credit under Regulation 8 of the BSc Degree course regulations.</p> <p>(d)(i) For a student who has completed in or after 1981 a three-year Division B (concurrent study non-BSc) course at a Teachers College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, twelve unspecified Stage I credits. A student granted this credit shall not be eligible for further credit under Regulation 8 of the BSc Degree course regulations.</p> <p>(ii) For a student who has completed in or after 1981 a three-year Division B (concurrent Study BSc) course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, twelve unspecified Stage I credits. A student granted this credit will only be eligible to gain six credits under Regulation 8 of the BSc Degree course regulations.</p> <p>(e) For a student who has completed in or after 1981 a two or one year course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, the credits referred to in part (d)(i) or (d)(ii) shall be reduced to two-thirds and one-third respectively of the values given in (d)(i) or (d)(ii).</p>

**Note:** The progress of students granted credit for Certificate Courses of the Centre for Continuing Education will be reviewed following their first year of study after the granting of the credit.

### Exemptions

14(a) A candidate for a degree or diploma, who has passed in a paper or subject not prescribed for that degree or diploma but the same as or substantially equivalent to a paper or subject so prescribed, may at the discretion of the Senate be exempt from that prescribed paper or subject; subject, however, to the provisions of any other regulation.

(b) A candidate exempted either under this or any other regulation for a paper or subject shall pay the prescribed fee under the Fees Regulations to be exempted from that paper or subject.

15. Except as permitted either by Regulation 12 of these Regulations or by the Regulations for any particular Course of Study, no candidate may be granted in all more than one-third of the paper requirements of a Course of Study as cross-credits, credit, or exemptions.

#### **Abandonments**

16. A student may apply on the appropriate form and on payment of the prescribed fee to abandon one Course of Study before completion and to proceed to another Course. Any appropriate papers or subjects already credited may be transferred to the new Course.

**Note:** The prescribed fee for an "Abandonment" application is \$10.

#### **Completion of Degree or Diploma at another University**

17. A student who leaves the University of Auckland district either to reside in another university district within New Zealand or to reside overseas, and who has passed for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland such part of the work as the Senate may from time to time determine to be the major part of the work for that degree or diploma may, with the approval of the Senate in order to complete that degree or diploma, take appropriate examinations at another University and may, with like approval be granted credits under these regulations for such examinations.

#### **Additional Lectures**

18. A student while pursuing a Course of Study in the University may with the approval of the Vice-Chancellor, after consultation with the Heads of Departments concerned, take lectures in a subject which he is not offering for examination without payment of fee for the Course provided that this facility shall be granted only where the additional lectures would be useful in supplementing the student's Course of Study.

#### **Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers**

19(a) The Vice-Chancellor may give such direction, or make such provision as he shall think fit for the relief of undue hardship where it is shown to his satisfaction.

(i) that an alteration or amendment to statutes or regulations involving a change in a Course of Study or in examination requirements has caused a candidate hardship; or

(ii) that official advice has been given and acted upon, and it is later found that a candidate's Course of Study is not in accordance with the governing regulations and hardship would be caused if the candidate were to be compelled to comply with the full requirements of the regulations.

(b) Where a candidate for a Master's degree writes a script outside the prescribed time for the examination, the Vice-Chancellor shall have power to

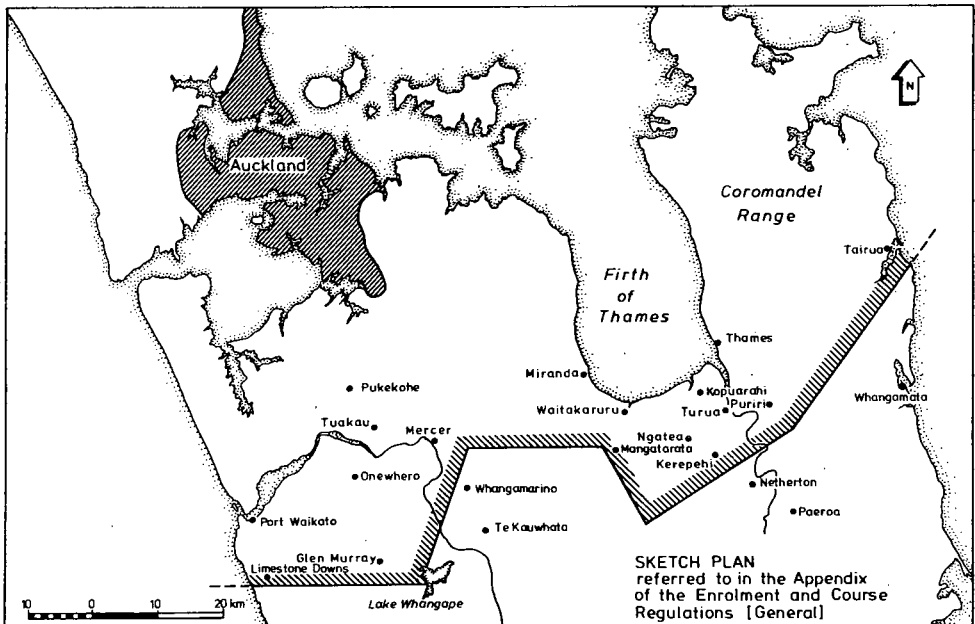
(i) admit or reject the script as part of the examination.

(ii) authorise the Head of Department to conduct an oral examination, and that the Head of the Department where appropriate and if necessary, shall submit a mark based on the year's work and the oral examination.

(c) A candidate may appeal against any decision of the Vice-Chancellor under this Regulation to the Council which shall have power to make such provision as it may think fit.

## APPENDIX

That portion of the Provincial District of Auckland north of a line commencing on the west coast thence in a straight line east through Trig 76E No 2 to the outlet of the Awaroa Stream into Lake Whangape thence in a straight line in a north-north-easterly direction to the confluence of the Kopura Stream and the Maramarua River thence due east to Trig CXXVA thence in a straight line in a south-easterly direction to a point south-west of Kaihere thence in a straight line in a north-easterly direction to the junction of Townsend Road and Highway 26 thence in a straight line in a north-easterly direction through Tairua hill Trig.



## ENROLMENT

### PRE-ENROLMENT

Because of insufficient accommodation and restrictions on staffing there will be a limitation on the number of students who can be enrolled for certain courses at the University in 1983. With a few exceptions (see Notes) those wishing to enrol in 1983 for any of the Courses of Study listed below must complete a pre-enrolment application by the date prescribed. Application forms are available from the Registrar, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland, or at the Inquiries Counter, Administration Building, 24 Princes Street. Intending students will not be permitted to enrol in any of the Courses of Study listed below unless they have received notice in reply to their pre-enrolment applications that a place is available in 1983. Students wishing to enrol for Courses of Study other than those listed below do not need to pre-enrol.

#### Architecture and Town Planning

Intermediate:

Art History, all Stage II and III papers

Commerce: Any BCom Part I papers

Computer Science all papers (as for BSc)

Psychology papers 32.109, 32.206, 32.207 (as for BA)

BArch First Professional

DipVal Intermediate and DipVal Professional (For the first time)

BTP First Town Planning Examination (for the first time)

DipTP (For the first time)

MTP (for the first time)

#### Closing Date

15 January

#### Arts

BA Accounting 01.102, 01.103 (as for BCom Part I)

Music: Papers 28.101, 28.102, 28.103 taken as a three paper first year course

15 January

15 November for the following year

Papers for MA

All other students in Music including 28.103 students only

Anthropology; Papers 03.204, 03.206, 03.207, 03.210 and all Stage III papers

Art History, all Stage II and III papers

Computer Science, all papers

DipBrC

DipDrama

English, 18.328

Psychology, papers 32.109, 32.206, 32.207 and Masters papers

DipEdPsych

15 January

31 October for the following year

30 November for the following year

DipGuid

#### Commerce

BCom, any Part I papers

Accounting Stage I and Commercial Law Stage I for any course of study

Computer Science, all papers (as for BSc)

Management Studies, papers 72.220, 72.221

DipBIA/MBA

15 January

#### Engineering

BE Professional (for the first time)

15 January

#### Fine Arts

BFA, Studio for all courses and Art History Stage II & III

MFA, Studio and Art History papers

15 January

**Law**

Intermediate LLB/BCom:

Accounting; 01.100; 01.101 or 01.102; 01.103 (as for BCom part I)

Art History, all papers (as for BA)

Computer Science, all papers (as for BSc)

Psychology, papers 32.109, 32.206, 32.207 (as for BA)

LLB &amp; LLB (Hons) (except for Intermediate)

LLM, MJur

DipCrim

Law Professional

15 January

15 January

**Medicine and Human Biology**

BHB Part I (for the first time)

1 October for the following year

BHB II and III

MBChB I and II

MHB, MMedSc applications close with Head of Department

15 January

1 December for the following year

DipPaed

1 October for the following year

DipObst

DipG&amp;O

1 March and 1 September

**Music**

BMus (for the first time)

15 November for the following year

BMus (Performance) (for the first time)

DipMus (for the first time)

30 June for the following year

BMus (Performance) (Hons)

DipMus (Hons)

MMus, MA and MPhil in Music

All other students in the Faculty of Music (including those who have been interviewed for a Performance course in Music and have received confirmation of a place)

15 November for the following year

15 January

**Science**

Accounting 01.102, 01.103 (as for BCom Part I)

Biochemistry 66.201, 66.301, 66.302

Botany 06.201/06.301, 39.213

Cell Biology 40.303, 40.304, 40.305

Computer Science, all papers

Geology, all Stage II and III papers

Physiology 67.201, 67.301

Psychology 32.109, 32.206, 32.207 and Masters papers

Zoology 38.201, 38.301, 38.310, 39.211, 39.207/307, 39.315, 39.316

MSc Zoology (for the first time)

BOptom (for the second year of the course)

DipClinPsych (for the first time)

15 January

31 October for the following year

DipCompMaths

DipOpt Div II (for the first time)

15 January

Pre-enrolment applications that are received late are subject to a late fee of \$20. Students pre-enrolling late are warned that they may not be given equal priority with those pre-enrolling by the due date. The above pre-enrolment requirements do not apply to applicants in the categories mentioned in Notes 1 – 3 below

*Notes:***1. Admission Ad Eundem Statum***(a) Students from other New Zealand Universities wishing to transfer to the University of Auckland*

Students on the books of another University in New Zealand wishing to transfer to the University of Auckland are required to make application to transfer on the appropriate form (Form C) to the Registrar not later than 15 January. A late application may be accepted until the Friday preceeding enrolment week with the permission of the Senate and subject to availability of places and upon payment of a late fee of \$20, and after the Friday preceeding enrolment week upon payment of an additional fine of \$20.

Because the University of Auckland is unable adequately to accommodate all of the students who in 1983 will seek to gain admission, students wishing to transfer to the University of Auckland for any undergraduate course shall be admitted **ONLY IF THERE ARE COMPELLING CIRCUMSTANCES FOR TRANSFER TO AUCKLAND**. Students wishing to enrol for papers at Stage I level in Arts, Science and Intermediate examinations will be selected on priority gradings based largely on their previous academic record. They may be required to nominate alternative papers and may be re-distributed to these alternative papers if there are inadequate places in the papers of their first choice.

*(b) Students from Overseas*

Overseas students wishing to be admitted for the first time to a New Zealand university must

(i) if applying for undergraduate status, to this University apply for admission not later than 1 September if they are in New Zealand or Fiji and not later than 1 May if they are in another country to the Overseas Students Admissions Committee (OSAC), Box 12-348, Wellington North, N.Z. for a place for the following year.

(ii) if applying for graduate status, apply to the University for admission not later than 30 November.

Late applications may be accepted until the Friday preceeding enrolment week upon payment of a late fee of \$20 and after the Friday preceeding enrolment week upon payment of an additional fine of \$20.

**2. Provisional Admission**

Applications close 15 January, but late applications may be accepted up to the Friday preceeding Enrolment week and then only with the permission of Senate and on payment of a late fee of \$20, and subject to places being available. Applications may be accepted after the Friday preceeding enrolment week upon payment of an additional fine of \$20. Application forms are available from the Registry. A limitation has been placed on the number of students that may be enrolled for the first time at this University with Provisional Admission.

**3. Failure to make Sufficient Progress in Course of Study – Prior Permission of Senate to Re-enrol**

Students, both graduate and undergraduate, including those transferring from another university, shall not be accepted for enrolment in 1983 unless they have made satisfactory progress or have previously obtained the permission of the Senate to enrol in 1983. For definition of satisfactory progress refer to Enrolment and Course Regulations (General). A student will be deemed to have been engaged in academic studies whether or not he attempted the final examination if at 31 March in that year he was enrolled for a paper or subject as an internal student or had been granted Terms Carried Forward in a paper or subject.

Applications for permission to re-enrol, with the prescribed fee of \$20 close 10 January, but late applications will be accepted up to the Friday preceeding enrolment week upon payment of a late fee of \$20 and after the Friday preceeding enrolment week upon payment of an additional fine of \$20.

**4. Pre-Enrolment Interviews**

A General Information and Advisory Centre in the Student Union, 6 Alfred Street, will be open from 14 February until the end of enrolment week on 25 February. The Liaison Office will be open from 19 January.

**5. Late Enrolments**

Students enrolling late in the Faculties of Arts or Science, and for Intermediate examinations, if they have obtained prior permission to enrol late, must name any Stage I Arts and Science papers for which they wish to enrol. At enrolment they may be required to nominate alternative papers and to accept re-distribution into these alternatives.

Students who have failed to seek prior permission to enrol late but who have been accepted for late enrolment, will be allocated the lowest priority grade for acceptance into those Stage I papers where there is a restriction on enrolment.

**Note:** This applies to all students who apply to enrol or who enrol late including transfers, provisional admissions, exclusion students and ad eundem admissions.



## 6. Penalties

### (a) Late Pre-Enrolment

A late fee of \$20 will be imposed on students who have failed to apply for pre-enrolment by the prescribed date. Students pre-enrolling late are warned that they may not be given equal priority with those pre-enrolling by the due date.

### (b) Late Enrolment

A student who wishes to enrol or who has been granted a place and fails to enrol on the appropriate day and morning or afternoon as set out in the enrolment timetable may forfeit his place, or if permitted to enrol (i) may be subject to a penalty of \$5 for enrolling during enrolment week on the wrong day, morning or afternoon, or

(ii) if re-enrolling after enrolment week will be subject to a penalty of \$20 together with a further penalty of \$4 for each week or part of a week that the enrolment is late.

The \$5 late fee may be waived if the student makes application before enrolment to enrol during the enrolment week but not in accordance with the timetable.

### (c) Late Additions or Deletions to Courses

A fine of \$4 for each week or part of a week that the application is late for alterations after the following dates:

**Note:** Late application for pre-enrolment for BHB will only be accepted up to 1 November on payment of the late fee.

(i) Laboratory subjects including the subjects Studio, in the Faculty of Architecture and Fine Arts and any subject of the First, Second, or Third Law Examination for LLB or LLB (Hons) Degree or for the Law Professional Examination ..... *After Friday, 12 March*

(ii) Subjects of an Engineering Professional year. *After the First Friday after the commencement of lectures.*

(iii) All other papers and subjects which are taught from the beginning of the academic year ..... *After 31 March*

(iv) All other papers and subjects commencing after the beginning of the academic year. **After the Second Friday, after the commencement of lectures in the papers concerned.**

(v) Subjects for BArch, DipVal or NZIA/AERB Special Examination. *After the Second Friday, following commencement of lectures.*

(vi) Masters courses and linked co-requisite papers where other linked co-requisites are being substituted ..... *After 30 April.*

### (d) Choice of Course

The Course of study of a student making a late enrolment will be determined by the Senate and will not necessarily conform with that proposed by the student concerned. In determining such Course the Senate will have regard to prior claims upon both laboratory and classroom space of students who have enrolled in accordance with the above timetable.

## 7. Refund of Fees

Students are advised to note particularly Regulation 7 of the Enrolment and Course (General) Regulations with regard to refund of fees where they alter their Course of Study after enrolment. Under this regulation a full refund of fees paid will be allowed in respect of papers or subjects deleted on or before 31 March, or on or before a later date as listed in Regulation 7. No refund of fees will be made for papers or subjects deleted after 31 March, except as previously listed. Holders of Education Department bursaries, Government study awards, Training College bursaries, Secondary Teachers' Studentships, etc, should note that the University will claim tuition fees from the Department of Education, or authority concerned in respect of those papers or subjects for which they are enrolled as at 31 March and that no amendment to Courses involving alteration to a claim for tuition fees can be accepted after that date.

# 1983 ENROLMENT TIMETABLE

Students wishing to enrol at the University of Auckland in 1983 are required to attend at the University, Princes Street, to enrol during the hours of 9 a.m. to 5 p.m., Monday to Friday 21–25 February 1983 inclusive in accordance with this timetable. Enrolment is not completed until all fees payable in cash are paid in full. Students who were required to pre-enrol are asked to bring with them their 'confirmation of place'.

Students enrolling for the first time at a university should bring their UE, HSC, 6th Form Certificate, Bursary or Scholarship results or evidence of admission ad eundem statum at entrance level.

Any student who has changed name since last enrolment should produce a marriage certificate, a deedpoll, or a statutory declaration.

Students enrolling in more than one Faculty should note that only one enrolment form is required. Students may collect their enrolment forms from Lecture Theatre B28, Basement of Library Building, 5 Alfred Street, the day before they are required to enrol (Friday 18 February for those enrolling on Monday the 21st). Postgraduate students in Engineering may complete their departmental enrolment on Friday 18 February.

**ARCHITECTURE AND TOWN PLANNING****INITIALS OF SURNAME****MORNING AFTERNOON**

Intermediate for BArch, BTP, DipVal	21 Monday	A - K	L - Z
BArch, MArch, MPhil, PhD, NZIA/AERB Special Dip Val, BTP, DipTP, MTP, COP	24 Thursday	A - D	E - K
	25 Friday	L - R	S - Z

**ARTS**

BA, COP and all BA students enrolling in Music All courses of study except those listed below	21 Monday	A - C	D - G
	22 Tuesday	H - J	K - M
	23 Wednesday	N - R	S - V
	24 Thursday	W - Z	

If your 1983 course of study includes papers in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics or Management Studies, or in the Faculty of Law	23 Wednesday	A - K	L - Z
---	--------------	-------	-------

If your surname initial is S - Z your 1983 course of study includes papers in Science subjects other than Geography or Mathematics	21 Monday	S - V	W - Z
--	-----------	-------	-------

If you are enrolling for Arts papers for an Intermediate Course, refer to the appropriate Faculty.

MA, MPhil, DipBrC, DipDrama, DipEd, DipGuid, DipLGA, PhD	24 Thursday	A - G	H - Z
DipEdPsych	21 Monday	A - Z	

**COMMERCE**

BCom, COP	23 Wednesday	A - B	C - E
All courses of study except those listed below	24 Thursday	F - J	K - M
	25 Friday	N - S	T - Z

If your 1983 course of study includes papers in the Faculties of Arts and/or Law	23 Wednesday	A - K	L - Z
--	--------------	-------	-------

If your 1983 course of study includes papers in the following subjects: Biochemistry, Biology, Botany, Cell Biology, Chemistry, Computer Science, Geology, Physics, Physiology, Zoology	22 Tuesday	A - G	H - O
	23 Wednesday	P - Z	

MCom, MPhil, PhD	23 Wednesday	A - K	L - Z
DipBIA/MBA	25 Friday	A - K	L - Z

**ENGINEERING**

Intermediate for BE	22 Tuesday	A - K	L - Z
BE, COP	24 Thursday	A - D	E - K
	25 Friday	L - R	S - Z
ME, MPhil, PhD	21 Monday	A - Z	

**ENGINEERING**

		<b>INITIALS OF SURNAME</b>	
		<b>MORNING</b>	<b>AFTERNOON</b>
DipBIA/MBA	25 Friday	A - K	L - Z
DipEnTech (Geotherm)	25 Friday	A - Z	

**FINE ARTS**

BFA, MFA MPhil, PhD, COP	21 Monday	A - K	L - Z
--------------------------	-----------	-------	-------

**LAW**

Intermediate for Law

All course of study except those listed below	24 Thursday	A - K	L - Z
If your 1983 Course of Study includes papers in Science subjects other than Geography or Mathematics	23 Wednesday	A - Z	

LLB, LLB (Hons), LLM, MJur, MPhil, PhD,  
Law Professional, DipCrim, COP

All courses of study except those listed below	22 Tuesday	A - D	E - I
	23 Wednesday	J - Q	R - Z

If your 1983 Course of Study includes papers in Commerce or Science subjects other than Geography or Mathematics	23 Wednesday	A - Z	
--	--------------	-------	--

**MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY**

BHB, MHB, COP	25 Friday	A - Z	
---------------	-----------	-------	--

MBChB, MMedSc, MD, MPhil, PhD, DipPsychiat	25 Friday		A - Z
--	-----------	--	-------

**MUSIC**

BMus, BMus(Performance), BMus(Performance)(Hons)	21 Monday		A - G
MMus, MPhil, PhD, DipMus, DipMus(Hons), Instruction in Single Instrument, COP	22 Tuesday	H - O	P - Z

BA Students enrolling in Music refer to Faculty of Arts timetable

**SCIENCE**

BSc, BOptom, DipOpt, COP and papers to qualify for entry at other NZ Universities to courses of study including Agric, Engin	21 Monday	A - C	D - H
Food Tech, and Surveying	22 Tuesday	I - M	N - R
	23 Wednesday	S - Z	

If your 1983 course of study includes papers in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Studies, or in the Faculty of Law	23 Wednesday	A - Z	
---	--------------	-------	--

BSc(Hons), DipCompMaths, DipMathEd, DipStats, MSc, MPhil, PhD	23 Wednesday	A - Z	
---	--------------	-------	--

Dip Clin Psych	21 Monday	A - Z	
DipEnTech(Geotherm)	25 Friday	A - Z	

## EXTRAMURAL ENROLMENT STATUTE

1.(1) This Statute may be cited as the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1981.

(2) This Statute shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

2. Any person qualified to enrol at a University in New Zealand who in any year is living in the urban area of Auckland and who satisfies the Senate of the University of Auckland that he or she should not be required to attend classes at the University, shall, subject to the provisions of this Statute and upon such conditions as Senate thinks fit, be permitted to enrol extramurally in that year.

3. No person who is already on the books of another University in New Zealand as a candidate for any degree, diploma or other qualification shall be permitted to enrol extramurally without the permission of that other University.

4. Except where the Senate otherwise permits, a person who is permitted to enrol extramurally in any paper or papers for which extramural tuition is provided at Massey University, shall—

- (a) be required to register or enrol for tuition in each such paper at Massey University;
- (b) not enrol in the same year for any other paper or papers at the University of Auckland;
- (c) take the examinations of Massey University, and appropriate credit shall be granted at the University of Auckland for the paper or papers passed.

5. Save with the permission of the Senate granted in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, no person on the books of the University of Auckland may be enrolled extramurally in respect of

- (a) any Stage III paper;
- (b) any work for a Masters degree;
- (c) any work for a diploma;
- (d) any paper requiring practical or laboratory work;
- (e) any paper or other work which, in the opinion of Senate, requires internal tuition at a University.

6.(1) A person who is on the books of the University of Auckland as a candidate for any degree, diploma or other qualification but who lives outside the urban area of Auckland but within New Zealand, may be permitted to enrol extramurally.

2. Permission for the purpose of subsection (1) of this section shall be at the discretion of Senate, but it shall be granted—

- (a) in the case of a person not living in the Auckland University District, only with the approval of the appropriate other University;
- (b) in the case of a person living in the urban area of Dunedin, Christchurch, Wellington, Palmerston North or Hamilton, only if he or she is unable to attend classes at the appropriate other University.

(3) For the purpose of subsection (2) of this section “the appropriate other University” is Massey University or the University of Waikato, as the case may be, when the person lives in the urban area of Palmerston North or Hamilton; and is otherwise the University of the District in which the person lives (that is, the University of Otago, the University of Canterbury, or the Victoria University of Wellington, as the case may be).

7. A person on the books of this University who ceases to reside in New Zealand, and who requires to pass in the final paper or papers for any degree, diploma or other qualification, may enrol extramurally in the paper or papers at the discretion of Senate and upon such conditions as it thinks fit.

8. For the purposes of this Statute—

the urban area of each University town named is as defined from time to time by the Council of the University concerned;

the Auckland University District is as defined in the First Schedule to the University of Auckland Act 1961 but with the exclusion of the urban area of Hamilton.

New Zealand includes Cook Islands, Niue and Tokelau.

9. The Extramural Enrolment Statute 1962 is repealed.

**Notes:** A person who is already on the books of another University in New Zealand who is not qualified to enrol extramurally in accordance with Section 2 of this Statute, is, unless the Senate otherwise decides in exceptional circumstances, expected either to transfer to the University of Auckland or to enrol for such paper or papers at the University of Auckland as may be acceptable to the other University.

(ii) A student living in the urban area of Auckland who has been permitted to enrol extramurally at another University in any particular year will be expected, in any subsequent year of university study, either to enrol at the University of Auckland or to obtain the Senate's permission to continue to enrol extramurally.

(iii) The Senate normally permits Auckland Secondary Teachers College physical education or music students, who are enrolled for BEd at Massey University, to enrol at the University of Auckland for a paper or papers other than those in respect of which extramural enrolment is permitted.

## EXTRAMURAL ENROLMENT REGULATIONS

1. Every person wishing, in any year, to enrol extramurally under the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1981 shall apply to the Registrar of the University not later than 10 January of that year.
2. Every application shall state –
  - (a) the papers or other work in respect of which extramural enrolment is sought;
  - (b) the grounds of the application;
  - (c) whether the applicant is already on the books of, or (where it may be permitted or required) proposes to enrol at, any other University and if so, which University and for what course, papers or other work;
  - (d) (i) the applicant's current business and residential address;
  - (ii) whether to the best of the applicant's knowledge and belief there will be any change of residence during the year of enrolment; and if so the expected new address and approximate date of change.
3. The applicant if living within the urban area of Auckland shall provide such evidence as the Senate deems fit that he or she is unable or should not be required to attend classes at the University of Auckland.
4. The application for extramural enrolment under section 6 of the Statute by a student already on the books of this University who lives in the urban area of a University town other than Auckland must be supported by a certificate from the Registrar of the appropriate University that the applicant is unable to attend classes at that University.
5. Every student permitted to enrol extramurally –
  - (a) shall pay the prescribed fees for course approval (in addition to any fees payable at another University);
  - (b) may withdraw from his or her studies by written notice to the Registrar not later than 31 March; and, having done so by that date, shall be entitled to a full refund of fees (but not any late fee or fine).
- 6(1) The studies of students permitted to enrol extramurally under the Statute are subject to Regulation 10 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).
- (2) For the purpose of this Regulation students who have not withdrawn under Regulation 5(b) or, being enrolled also at Massey University, have not withdrawn in accordance with the Regulations of that University, shall be deemed engaged in academic studies in the relevant year.
7. The Extramural Regulations last published in the 1981 Calendar are revoked.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

## EXAMINATION REGULATIONS

### Eligibility to Sit Examinations

1. To be eligible to present himself for examination in a paper or subject, a candidate
  - (a) must have been enrolled as an internal student, have attended classes to the satisfaction of the Senate, and performed to the satisfaction of the Senate such oral, practical, written, and other work as the Senate may require.

**Note:** Students will be informed by each department of the specific requirements for courses in that department and the extent to which the year's work will be taken into consideration in assessing final results. In some cases students may not be permitted to sit the final examinations.

- (b) not being enrolled as an internal student, must have been granted exemption in accordance with the Extramural Statute and Regulations.

### Time of Examinations

2. The examinations shall be held at the times specified in the Timetable each year.

### Place of Examinations

3. All internal students must sit their examinations at Auckland. Extramural students who do not wish to sit their examinations at Auckland may sit at one of the centres specified in the Extramural Enrolment Regulations, provided that, with the approval of the Senate, a special examination centre may be established under special circumstances subject to the payment of the extra fee prescribed in the Fees Regulations.

### Conduct of Examinations

- 4(a) The examinations shall comprise such written, oral and practical examinations as the examiners may determine.
- (b) Candidates shall write out answers to the questions in the presence of a supervisor, who shall be appointed or approved by the Council in accordance with such detailed instructions as may be furnished by the Council.
- (c) No candidate shall communicate with an examiner in regard to an examination except through the Registrar.
- (d) No candidate may be examined in any subject or part of a subject at any time other than that set down for him in the timetable.

(e) No candidate shall be allowed to enter the room:

(i) for a 3-hour examination later than one hour thirty minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination,

(ii) for a 2-hour examination later than one hour after candidates have begun writing the examination,

(iii) for a 1½-hour examination later than forty-five minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination,

(iv) for a 1-hour examination later than thirty minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination.

(f) No candidate shall be permitted to leave the room:

(i) of a 3-hour examination until one hour forty-five minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began,

(ii) of a 2-hour examination until one hour fifteen minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began,

(iii) of a 1½-hour examination until one hour has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began,

(iv) of a 1-hour examination until forty-five minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began,

and then only with the permission of the supervisor and upon handing in his script.

(g) Candidates shall be allowed to read their examination papers for a period of not more than ten minutes before the examination commences but may not begin writing their answers until the room supervisor announces that they may do so.

(h) No candidate shall bring to an examination any written or printed matter except by direction of the examiner. All books and papers not approved for use in the examination, along with any spare personal belongings brought to the examination shall be left in such part of the room as the supervisor shall direct. All paper used during the examination must be handed to the supervisor before the candidate leaves the examination room.

(i) No candidate shall communicate with another in the examination room.

(j) No candidate shall continue writing an answer after the supervisor has announced the expiration of time. In no circumstances is any time over and above the time allotted to any paper to be allowed a candidate for reading over his scripts or making any amendment or addition to his scripts.

(k) Any complaint that a candidate has committed an examination offence shall be referred to the Deans Committee of the Senate (to which the Senate has delegated power to deal with all matters relating to examinations) to determine whether the complaint should be investigated. For the purposes of this Regulation an examination offence includes any breach of any rules relating to the conduct of examinations and any dishonest practice occurring in the preparation or submission of any work (whether in the course of an examination or not) which counts toward the attainment of a pass in any subject or otherwise occurring in connection with any examination.

(l) The Discipline Committee of the Senate (to which the Senate has delegated the appropriate powers) shall hear and determine any complaint which the Deans Committee has resolved should be investigated. The candidate concerned shall be notified in writing of the subject matter of the complaint and the time and place of the hearing. He shall be invited to state in writing his answer to the complaint and may attend the hearing.

(m) The Senate shall have power (which it may delegate to its Discipline Committee) to do all or any of the following things in the case of a candidate found guilty of an examination offence:

(i) Impose upon him any of the penalties prescribed in the Disciplinary Regulations

(ii) Disqualify him from sitting any examinations for such period as may be prescribed

(iii) Cancel any pass with which he may have been credited in the subject or examination in respect of which the offence has occurred.

(n) Where the Senate or any committee of the Senate is satisfied that a candidate has not complied with any Regulation of the University whether in respect of any examination or any other matter having given the candidate such opportunity as it considers reasonable of remedying his non-compliance with the Regulation or Regulations, then the Senate shall have power (which it may delegate to its Discipline Committee) to suspend for such time as may be prescribed the release to the candidate of the results of any examination, or to decline to credit to his course any subject or subjects, or to impose both those penalties.

(o) A candidate may appeal to the Council from any decision of the Senate or its Discipline Committee under paragraphs (m) or (n) of this Regulation by giving notice in writing to the Registrar within 14 days of being notified of the decision. A candidate so appealing shall be entitled to make submissions in writing and may, with the consent of the Council, appear when the appeal is determined. The Council may dismiss or allow the

appeal or vary the penalty but shall not impose any penalty which the Senate or its Discipline Committee could not have imposed. The decision of the Council on any appeal under this Regulation shall be final.

### Marking of Scripts

5(a) In determining a candidate's result the examiners:

- (i) may take into consideration the work done by the candidate during the year;
- (ii) shall give due weight to reports on practical work done by the candidate wherever these are required;
- (iii) shall include marks obtained by the candidate where the Senate has allotted a percentage of marks for awarding on the year's work of the candidate in any paper or subject.

### Passes — Grades and Marks

(b) A pass mark in any paper or subject including papers and thesis for a Masters degree is: for a single paper, 50%;

for two more combined or linked papers, an average of 50%;

for one or more papers and a thesis, an average of 50%;

provided that

- (i) the Senate may give approval for a thesis to count as more than one paper;
- (ii) a candidate not attaining a minimum of 37% in any combined or linked paper except in the papers or thesis for a Masters degree and mid-year examinations, will fail the subject as a whole provided that this requirement may be waived in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Senate;
- (iii) a candidate taking papers in the Faculty of Music not attaining a minimum of 37% of the marks allocated for the end of the year examination, will fail the paper as a whole. This does not apply to examinations in Performance.
- (iv) a candidate for the Degree of Master of Engineering must pass in each of eight subjects or in each of three subjects and a thesis;
- (v) where oral work is required for a paper of a language, unless otherwise provided, a pass in both oral work and written papers is necessary;
- (vi) where both practical and written work is required for a paper or subject a pass in both practical work and written papers is necessary;

There are eleven pass grades and two fail grades as set out:

#### Pass Grades

A + high first	B + high second	C + sound pass
A clear first	B clear second	C pass
A — bare first	B — bare second	C — marginal pass

**Notes:** (i) Candidates for LLB and LLB(Hons), who pass a subject of a Law examination with a grade of C- will have that grade credited to their course only at the discretion of the Senate.

(ii) Candidates for BMus (Performance) who pass the subject Performance 28.120 with a grade of C- and are therefore not eligible to proceed with the Course of Study for BMus(Performance) may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage I Music papers toward the course of study for the Degree of BMus.

#### Restricted

A restricted pass shall apply only to a paper in the Faculty of Arts, Commerce, or Science. A candidate at the discretion of the appropriate Faculty (or Department for the Faculty of Science) may be considered for restricted passes. No application by the candidate for consideration is required. A restricted pass in a paper which is pre-requisite for enrolment in another paper shall not be accepted as fulfilling that pre-requisite except with the approval of the relevant Head of Department in each case.

**Note:** A student with a Restricted Pass in a paper who wishes to take the paper again may do so for Certificate of Proficiency only.

#### Conceded

A conceded pass shall apply only to the following Courses of Study and may not be transferred to another course of Study: Bachelor of Architecture, Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration, Bachelor of Engineering, Bachelor of Fine Arts, Bachelor of Human Biology, Bachelor of Laws, Bachelor of Laws with Honours, Law Professional Examination, Bachelor of Medicine and Surgery, Bachelor of Music, Bachelor of Music (Performance), Diploma in Music, Diploma in Music with Honours, Bachelor of Science, Bachelor of Town Planning.

A candidate at the discretion of the appropriate Faculty may be considered for a conceded pass. No application by the candidate for consideration is required.

#### Fail Grades

D indicates that the candidate is advised to consult the Head of Department concerned before deciding to re-enrol if a paper or subject is optional or elective.

E indicates a serious failure to meet the requirements for the paper or subject: the candidate must consult the Head of Department concerned as to the advisability of re-enrolling in an optional or elective paper or subject.

**Open Book and Restricted Book Examination**

- (c) (i) Where an examination is designated "Open Book", candidates may take into the examination room any material including books, Acts, etc, and there will be no check on items taken into the examination room.  
 (ii) Where an examination is designated "Restricted Book", candidates may take into the examination room only the material specified by the examiner.

**Work at Standard of Honours**

6. A candidate whose work is at the standard of Honours or a First or Second Class Pass under the relevant degree or diploma regulations but who is ineligible for the award of Honours or First or Second Class Pass under the regulations shall be informed of the standard that he would have been awarded had he been eligible.

**Recount of Marks**

7. By making application within four weeks from the date of the mailing of his official result of the examinations, any candidate sitting for an examination for a degree, diploma, professional qualification, or certificate of proficiency may have the marks awarded his scripts recounted in any paper or subject which he has failed. The fee for such a recount shall be as prescribed in the Fees Regulations. A recount of marks covers a careful rechecking of the marks recorded by the examiner and ensures that no answer or any portion of an answer submitted by a candidate has been overlooked. No information relative to the application will be placed before the examiner. Candidates for the degree of Bachelor of Architecture, Bachelor of Fine Arts, Master of Fine Arts, Bachelor of Music (Performance), Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours, or for the Diploma in Music, or the Diploma in Music with Honours may apply for a recount of marks for written papers only.

**Note:** The prescribed fee for an application for recount of marks is \$20 and is refundable only if the recount shows that a pass rather than a fail grade should be recorded.

**Aegrotat Pass**

8. A candidate who has been prevented by illness or injury from presenting himself at any examination in any paper or subject, or who considers that his performance in any examination in any paper or subject has been seriously impaired by illness or injury may on application and with the approval of the Senate be granted an aegrotat pass in such paper or subject if the following conditions are satisfied:

- (a) that the candidate is enrolled as an internal student for the course of instruction in the paper or subject in question;
- (b) that the illness or injury was reported in writing to the Registrar within one week of the date upon which the examination affected took place or if more than one examination has been affected then within one week of the last of such examinations;
- (c) that as soon as practicable after reporting the illness the candidate furnish to the Registrar a certificate (on the form provided) from a registered medical practitioner stating
  - (i) that he examined the candidate medically on a certain date;
  - (ii) that in his opinion the candidate was unable through illness or injury to present himself for the examination, or that in his opinion the candidate's performance in the examination was likely to have been seriously impaired by illness or injury. The nature of the illness or injury shall be stated in sufficient detail to make it clear that the candidate was not responsible for his disability, and in a form suitable for submission in cases of doubt to a medical referee;
- (d) that the candidate's responsible teachers in the paper or subject of the examination in question certify that his work therein during the course of instruction was well above the minimum pass standard (or where relevant the minimum standard for a class of Honours or Pass) and that he is in their opinion clearly worthy to pass in that paper or subject (or where relevant to be awarded First or Second Class Honours OR First or Second Class Pass),

or

alternatively that the Senate is satisfied upon considering the quality of the candidate's work during the course of instruction and of any work which he has completed in the current examinations (whether in the paper or subject in question or any other paper or subject) that the candidate is clearly worthy to pass in the paper or subject in question or (where relevant) to be awarded First or Second Class Honours OR First or Second Class Pass therein,

provided that in either case

- (i) Honours or a First or Second Class Pass may not be given to a candidate who has been awarded a pass under this regulation in respect of more than one paper for a degree or diploma involving not more than four papers; or in respect of more than two papers for a degree involving five or more papers;
- (ii) a candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Engineering may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be given Honours irrespective of the number of aegrotat passes awarded.

**Note:** The fee prescribed under the Fees Regulations for each application for an Aegrotat Pass is \$5.



### Compassionate Pass

9. Where by reason of any exceptional circumstances beyond his control and other than his own illness or injury a candidate has been prevented from presenting himself at any examination in any paper or subject or considers that his performance in any examination in any paper or subject has been seriously impaired, he may on application and with the approval of the Senate be granted a compassionate pass subject to compliance with the same conditions (with necessary changes) as those appearing in clauses (a) and (d) of Regulation 8. Such an application must be made to the Registrar on the form provided within one week of the date upon which the examination affected took place, or, if several examinations have been affected, then within one week of the last of those examinations, and must be supported by such evidence as the Registrar shall require.

**Note:** The fee prescribed under the Fees Regulations for each application for a Compassionate Pass is \$5.

10(a) The provisions of Regulations 8 and 9 shall apply to:

- (i) any final written examination presented for a paper or subject of a Course of Study for a Degree, or for a Diploma, or for a Certificate of Proficiency, or for a Professional qualification;
- (ii) any final practical examination presented for a paper or subject of a Course of Study for a Degree, or for a Diploma, or for a Certificate of Proficiency, or for a Professional qualification;
- (iii) any terms examination which has been allotted a percentage of the marks awarded for the final examinations for a Degree, or for a Diploma, or for a Certificate of Proficiency, or for a Professional qualification;
- (b) The provisions of Regulations 8 and 9 shall apply (with necessary changes) to:
  - (i) the final submission in each year of work for the practical subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, or the Degree of Master of Fine Arts;
  - (ii) the final submission in each year of studio work for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture as if such final submission were an examination and as if the date upon which such final submission was due were the date of examination.

### Viva Voce Examination

11. A candidate who is eligible to apply and has applied for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in any paper or subject may, in exceptional circumstances and on a recommendation from the Head of the Department concerned, be granted permission by the Senate to take a viva voce examination in any paper or subject of his aegrotat or compassionate pass application.

### Concessions

12. Where degree Regulations or prescriptions permit, or the Senate upon such conditions as it thinks fit approves, the examiners may in respect of any examination:

- (a) release to the candidates, the examination paper in advance of the sitting of the examination;
- (b) allot a percentage of marks for awarding on the year's work of the respective candidates;
- (c) require or permit the candidates, either wholly or partly in lieu of taking an examination held in accordance with Regulations 2 to 5 inclusive and 7 to 9 inclusive of these Regulations, to submit for examination such written assignments of work as may be required.

### Theses

13. Where a thesis is required as part of an examination the following conditions shall apply:

- (a) *Diplomas, Bachelors, and Masters Degrees* (i) The candidate shall submit two copies of the thesis to the Registrar and a short abstract bound in each copy of the thesis provided that a candidate for the degree of Master of Engineering shall submit three copies and a short abstract bound in each copy.
- (ii) The Registrar shall transmit the submitted copies to the examiners.
- (iii) On completion of the examination the supervisor of the thesis shall be responsible through the Head of the Department for the deposit of two copies with the University Library.
- (iv) On completion of the examination for the Degree of Master of Engineering the disposal of the third copy submitted shall be at the discretion of the Head of the Department.
- (v) Where more than the required number of copies of a thesis are submitted any additional copies shall be returned to the candidate.
- (b) *Degree of Doctor of Philosophy*
  - (i) The candidate shall submit three copies of the thesis to the Registrar and a short abstract bound in each copy of the thesis.
  - (ii) On completion of the examination two copies shall be deposited with the University Library. The disposal of the third copy shall be at the discretion of the Head of the Department.

**Notes:** (i) The examination copy of any written thesis presented for a degree or diploma shall be the first copy, unless the thesis is cyclostyled printed, reproduced photographically or by electrostatic process and be bound in a form sufficiently durable for preservation and use in the University Library. The second copy may consist of a carbon duplicate of the typescript only. The Library will, if necessary, copy illustrated material such as maps and will bind this second copy of the thesis. This copy may be placed in a Departmental reading room.

(ii) Candidates are recommended to obtain the booklet 'Pointers on the Binding of Theses' from the Bindery before proceeding with the typing and binding of the thesis.

(iii) The author of a thesis has a right to impose conditions restricting the publication of his work to ensure for such a period as he may stipulate, without however curtailing the University Librarian's right to make and supply copies thereof in terms of subsection (3) of Section 21 of the Copyright Act (1962).

(iv) Where it is suspected that a thesis contains defamatory material the University Librarian may restrict access to the thesis subject to confirmation by the Library Committee.

(v) Supervisors are requested to notify the University Library when a thesis is submitted if it is believed to contain material which could be considered defamatory.

(vi) Where a thesis has been presented as part of a degree which

(a) has been awarded but the thesis itself is a failed thesis restrictions on its use in the library may be imposed

(b) has not been awarded the thesis will not be deposited in the Library irrespective of whether the thesis itself has a pass or fail grade.

(vii) For the Fourth Professional Examination for BArch one bound copy only of the thesis is required to be submitted.

(viii) Candidates for DipBIA are required to consult the Course Director concerning the binding of the Project for the Diploma course.

## **Abstracts**

14. Where a thesis, dissertation, research essay, or original investigation is submitted as part of an examination for a Bachelor's or Master's degree, a Diploma, or the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy a candidate shall at the same time submit a short abstract not exceeding 500 words, suitable for publication. The abstract shall be bound in each copy of a thesis submitted.

## **Examination Centres**

15. Pursuant to Regulation 1 hereof the University of Auckland will conduct examinations in the following centres: Apia, Auckland, Dargaville, Gisborne, Lautoka, Nuku'alofa, Paeroa, Rotorua, Rarotonga, Suva, and Whangarei. Internal candidates are required to sit their examinations at Auckland.

---

# **CONFERRING OF DEGREES AND ACADEMIC DRESS REGULATIONS**

1. Every Degree and every Diploma of the University shall be conferred or awarded in pursuance of a resolution of the Council in that behalf and at a meeting of the Council by the Chancellor or if he is absent from New Zealand or incapacitated by sickness or otherwise then by the Vice-Chancellor.

2. Every recipient of a Degree shall receive a certificate in appropriate form, under the Common Seal of the University, that his degree has been conferred and stating the class of honours (if any) awarded to him.

3. Every Diploma shall be in appropriate form under the Common Seal of the University.

4. In May of each year the Council shall meet in Convocation of the University for a ceremony of conferring Degrees and awarding Diplomas. Persons desiring to have their Degree conferred or Diploma awarded (whether in person or in absentia) at a ceremony in May shall make application to the Registrar not later than 31 March in the year of the ceremony.

5. The form of words to be used by the Chancellor (or Vice-Chancellor) in conferring a Degree shall be as follows

'By authority vested in me as Chancellor (or vice-Chancellor) I now proceed to confer the Degrees stated upon those who, within their several Faculties, have satisfied the requirements of this University.'

6. The form of words to be used by the Chancellor (or Vice-Chancellor) in awarding a Diploma shall with the necessary changes be the same as for the conferring of a Degree.

7. The regulations for academic dress shall be as follows.

(a) Graduates must appear at all public ceremonies of the University in the academic costume proper to their degree, but doctors may on special occasions wear a scarlet gown and graduates admitted Ad Eundem Statum may wear the academic costume of their own University. Unless the holder of a diploma is also a graduate, the only academic dress he may wear is an undergraduate gown.

(b) The robe for the Chancellor of the University is a blue damask gown with facings of gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms of the University. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold lace and tassel. The robe for the Pro-Chancellor is a black silk gown with facings of blue silk and gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold tassel. The robe for the Vice-Chancellor is a blue silk gown with facings of silver lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with silver lace and tassel.

The robe for the Registrar is a gown of black silk with facings of blue silk, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with black silk tassel.

(c) The gown for a Bachelor's degree is as for the Cambridge Bachelor of Arts. The gown for a Master's degree is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for every degree is the size and shape as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for a Bachelor's degree is lined with coloured silk and bordered with white fur. The hood for a Master's degree is lined with coloured silk only.

The colours of the linings of the hoods for the Bachelors' and Masters' degrees are as follows:

Architecture	lemon (BCC 111 primrose)
Arts	pink (BCC 32 rosepink)
Commerce	orange (BCC 57 spectrum orange)
Engineering	violet (BCC 179 violet)
Fine Arts	gold (BCC 114 gold)
Laws	light blue (BCC 194 pompadour)
Medicine	
BHB	lilac (BCC 228 mayflower lilac)
MBChB, MMedSc	crimson (BCC 240 medici crimson)
Music	white (BCC 1 white)
Science	dark blue (BCC 87 empire blue)
Town Planning	light green (BCC 171 chartreuse green)

(d) The gown for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts with the addition of facings four inches wide of scarlet satin (3in-BCC 209 post office red) edged with gold satin (1in-BCC 114 gold). The hood is made wholly of scarlet silk.

(e) The gown for a Doctor's degree other than that of Doctor of Philosophy is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts but it is made of black silk or of scarlet silk or cloth. The hood is made wholly of silk and is of the following colours for the different degrees:

Laws	light blue (BCC 194 pompadour)
Literature	pink (BCC 32 rosepink)
Music	white (BCC 1 white)
Science	dark blue (BCC 87 empire blue)

(f) The cap for all graduates other than Doctors and the officers of the University is a black trencher with a tassel.

(g) The cap for all Doctors other than the officers of the University is as for the full dress Cambridge Doctor of Philosophy, namely a round black velvet bonnet with a gold cord around the crown ending in tassels.

**Notes:** (1) The colour of the lining of the hood for the Degree of Master of Philosophy is that of the Faculty in which the Degree is taken.  
 (2) Number references are from the British Colour Council Dictionary of Colour Standards. Approximate colours in the substitute material satin may be seen on a chart at the inquiry counter at the Registry.  
 (3) Satin or taffeta is frequently used as a substitute material for silk which is not always obtainable.

## AWARD OF HONORARY DEGREES

Clause 19 (3) of the University of Auckland Act 1961 gives Council power to confer any degree as an honorary degree in accordance with such conditions as it may prescribe:

Provided that no honorary degree shall be conferred on any person by the Council unless that person has been recommended therefor by a joint committee of the Council and the Senate set up in accordance with the Statutes or Regulations of the University. Pursuant to the above clause of the Act, Council has drawn up regulations and set up an Honorary Degrees Committee for the conferment of the following honorary degrees.

Doctor of Laws

Doctor of Science

Doctor of Literature

Doctor of Music

Any Master's Degree

Information regarding the procedure and criteria for the nomination of a candidate for one of the above honorary degrees may be obtained from either the Vice-Chancellor or the Registrar.

## FEES REGULATIONS

The following fees have been prescribed by Council:

### GENERAL FEES

<b>Abandonment</b> .....	each application	\$ 10
<b>Ad Eundem Statum Admission</b> (from overseas) .....		100
<b>Additions or Deletions to a Course of Study</b> .....	each application submitted	10
<b>Academic Certificates</b> .....	one copy	2
.....	extra copies, each	50c
<b>Aegrotat and Compassionate Pass</b> .....	each application per examination period	5
<b>Cross-credits, Credit or Exemptions</b> .....	each paper	15
.....	each credit	3

There is a \$50 maximum for each full-time course as defined under the Tertiary Assistance Grants Regulations, with an overall maximum of \$120, e.g. BA 4–7 papers \$50; BSc, 17–36 Stage I credits \$50; BE Intermediate 42 credits \$50; BE Intermediate and 1st Professional \$100. When an application for cross-credits, credit or exemptions is based on a grant of Provisional Admission for which the \$25 fee was paid the cross-credits, credit or exemptions fee is reduced by \$25 (e.g. A student granted Special Admission to BE with exemption for the Intermediate and First Professional Engineering Examinations having paid \$25 on that application would pay \$75 (\$100 less \$25) on his cross-credits, credit or exemptions application.)

<b>Deferred Payment of Fees</b> .....		10
<b>Extramural Enrolment</b> (University of Auckland) .....	each paper	10
.....	each credit	2
<b>Extramural Enrolment</b> (Massey University)		
any student whose record is held at the University of Auckland who wishes to enrol extramurally for tuition at Massey University while remaining on Auckland's books .....		10
<b>Permission to Enrol</b> – having failed to make satisfactory progress .....		20
<b>Provisional Admission</b> .....		25
<b>Recount of Marks</b> .....	each paper	20
<b>Special Admission</b> .....		25
<b>Examination Centres</b> Special Centres in New Zealand .....	each paper	20
.....	each credit	4
Special Centres Overseas .....	each paper	35
<b>Special Statements</b> (e.g. Admission to the Bar, etc.) .....	each statement	10
<b>Terms Carried Forward</b> .....	each paper	10
.....	each credit	2

### EXAMINATION FEES

MusD, DSc, LittD, LLD .....	each	250
MD, application to be examined .....		100
on submission of thesis .....		200

### COURSE MATERIAL

Departments may charge for materials supplied. Briefly these materials will be in lieu of text books and charges will vary from department to department.

### STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION FEE

Students' Association Fee ..... 52

All students are required to pay the Students' Association Fee (which includes a building levy) except that

(i) The following internal students need not pay the Fee:

those enrolled for DipG&O; DipObst; DipPaed; DipPsychiat; PhD part-time, Masters Degree from 3rd year onwards; MTP Thesis only; DipEd Original Investigation only; Part II only for DipEdPsych, DipClinPsych, DipGuid; Dissertation only for LLB(Hons), BSc(Hons), Dip Crim, Dip Opt, DipVal (Hons); Research Essay only for BTP, Dip LGA; Project only for Dip BIA, Dip Stats, Dip Comp Maths, Dip Math Ed; Condensed course held in April for medical research workers for Certificate in Radiochemistry only; one paper for Certificate of Proficiency only by graduates or graduands. If a student is not joining the Students' Association the Identity Card will be over-stamped "NOT AUSA MEMBER".

(ii) Students concurrently enrolled full-time at the Auckland Technical Institute may pay a reduced fee of \$6 per paper (general fee \$4, building levy \$2). To claim the reduction such students must complete the appropriate application form obtainable from the Students' Association Office, have the form certified by the Managing Secretary of the Students' Association of the Auckland Technical Institute and submit it to the University Registry before enrolment week.

#### Building Levy:

The Students' Association Fee includes a building levy of \$12, or \$2 per paper if a student is concurrently enrolled full-time at the Auckland Technical Institute. Students who since January 1961 have paid a building levy five times or more at this or any other NZ University may be exempted from further payment of the levy. To claim the exemption such students must complete the appropriate application form obtainable from the Students' Association Office and submit it to the Registry before enrolment week. Late applications will be considered but in no case after 30 November in the year for which the exemption is sought. If the levy was previously paid at another NZ University evidence of this should accompany the application.

Graduates or graduands taking one Certificate of Proficiency paper only but wishing to join the Students' Association are exempt from payment of the building levy.

## WELFARE FEE

Welfare Fee \$8.50\*

All students are required to pay the Welfare Fee (with limited exceptions)

(i) The following students if they wish to use the Welfare Services must pay the Welfare Fee and the Students' Association Fee.

Students living outside Auckland and not using the University Facilities other than the Library who are enrolled only for thesis, dissertation or research essay.

Students not required to pay the Students' Association Fee (see under Students' Association see para. (i) above).

(ii) Students enrolled full-time at Auckland Teachers College, Auckland Technical Institute, North Shore Teachers College or Secondary Teachers College may pay a reduced Welfare Fee of \$5. Evidence of having paid a welfare charge at the College or Institute in the same year must be produced at enrolment.

(iii) Students on an approved cadetship may pay a reduced Welfare Fee of \$5.

(iv) Full-time members of staff who are enrolled for courses may not use the Welfare Services except by payment of standard charges for non-student users. The Student Health Service is available only in an emergency.

(v) Students sponsored by the United Nations for DipEnTech (Geotherm) and students under approved University exchange schemes may use the Welfare Services without payment of the Fee.

\*These fees are liable to increase for the 1983 academic year subject to the Price Freeze Regulations.

## PENALTIES

**Note: General fees, late fees, fines and penalties are not refundable.**

### Late Enrolments

#### (A) Internal Students

##### (a) During Enrolment Week

Failure to enrol on the appropriate day, morning or afternoon as required by the enrolment timetable .....

5

##### (b) After Friday of Enrolment Week .....

20

In addition after end of first week of first term ..... per week or part of a week

4

##### (c) DipG&O, DipObst – after 1 March or September .....

4

..... per week or part of a week

##### (d) DipPaed – after 1 October .....

4

..... per week or part of a week

##### (e) MBChB (final year) – after 15 November .....

4

#### (B) Students for Instruction in a Single Instrument (Music)

##### After Friday of Enrolment Week .....

20

In addition after end of first week of first term ..... per week or part of a week

4

### Late Fees for Late Applications

**Note:** Late fees are payable in addition to the General fee.

#### (i) Additions or Deletions to Courses of Study

Applications received after the date prescribed in the Enrolment and

Course Regulations (General) Regulation 7 ..... per week or part of a week

4

(ii) Admission Ad Eundem Statum	\$
from a New Zealand university	
After 15 January and until the Friday preceding enrolment week	20
from an overseas university	
After 1 September for an undergraduate course and until the Friday preceding enrolment week	20
After 30 November for a graduate course and until the Friday preceding enrolment week	20
(iii) Permission to Re-enrol –	
After 10 January and not later than the Friday preceding enrolment week	
Failure to make satisfactory progress	each 20
Extramural Enrolment (University of Auckland)	each 20
After 15 January and not later than the Friday preceding enrolment week	
Provisional Admission	each 20
<b>A fine of \$20 in addition to the prescribed fee and late fee is payable on any application under (ii) &amp; (iii) above if application made after the Friday preceding enrolment week.</b>	
(iv) Pre-enrolment after due date	20

## TUITION AND RESEARCH FEES

Notes: 1. Fees for private overseas students are shown at the end of this list.

2. A Master's candidate required to resubmit a thesis must re-enrol and pay the prescribed fee.

3. Students may be required to pay towards the cost of their field trips.

4. No refund of fees will be made unless an 'Application to Alter Course' form is handed in to the Registry on or before the appropriate date prescribed in Regulation 7 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and approved.

5. Definitions of full-time study are listed under Scholarships, Tertiary Assistance Grants and Awards.

### Doctor of Philosophy

First and Second year of full-time study	each 208
Each subsequent 6 months or part of 6 months of full-time study	104
(Candidates registered part-time for PhD are required to pay each year half the fee prescribed for full-time study.)	

### Masters Degrees

First and Second years	each 208
Third and subsequent years	each 23
MBChB Year III	70
DipG&O Part I and II	each 40
Dissertation	14
DipObst, composite fee	40
DipPaed, composite fee (and DipPsychiat, each year)	67
DipClinPsych Part I	year one 70
	year two 208
Part II	first year 104
	subsequent years, each 12

### Instruction in Single Instrument

Half hour per week or one hour per fortnight	per term 80
--	-------------

### All Other Courses of Study

<b>Full-time</b> (including limited Full-time) course of study	each year 208
<b>Part-time</b> course of study (with a maximum fee of \$208)	
Papers – including Law subjects, Performance (as weighted for Music), and Studio (as weighted for Fine Arts)	each paper 35
Credits – including Studio (as weighted for Architecture)	each credit 7
Half year papers in Engineering and Law	17.50
For the half year papers in Engineering refer to the prescriptions for BE. Half year papers in Law are: Introduction to Commercial Law, Introduction to Company Law, Introduction to Family Law, Commercial Papers and Practice, Land Conveyancing Papers and Practice, Wills and Trusts Practice.	
Dissertation, Original Investigation, Research Essay, Research Topic,	
Project 44.421 for DipOpt, DipGuid Part II	first year 35
	subsequent years, each 12
DipCompMaths, DipEdPsych part II; DipEnTech (Geotherm),	
DipMathEd, DipStats	second and subsequent years, each 23

**PRIVATE OVERSEAS STUDENTS**

	\$
A private overseas student on a student permit beginning a new Course of study from 1980:	
Full-time .....	1500
Part-time .....	pro rata proportion of 1500

**Notes:**

1. The charge covers all tuition fees but not the Students' Association fee and some other charges such as late fees, notes for courses, field trips.
2. Students exempted from the charge pay tuition fees as prescribed for the appropriate course of study.
3. The following are exempted from the charge:
  - (a) students continuing the same course of study for which they were enrolled in 1979 (A student completing a course such as BA and enrolling for MA is regarded as beginning a new course).
  - (b) students from Australia, the Cook Islands, Niue, the Tokelau Islands and specified South Pacific countries namely the Federated States of Micronesia, Fiji Islands, Kiribati, Nauru, Vanuatu, Papua New Guinea, Solomon Islands, Tonga, Tuvalu, Western Samoa.
  - (c) holders of a scholarship or bursary awarded by the New Zealand Government or any international intergovernmental organisation or agency.
  - (d) students under a reciprocal exchange scheme approved by the Minister of Education.
  - (e) students studying with substantial financial assistance that, in the opinion of the Director-General of Education, is provided directly or indirectly from Government funds.
  - (f) students under the Commonwealth Postgraduate Scholarship Scheme.
  - (g) students who began a school or university course before 1980 and who, with the approval of the Professorial Board, change their course within two years for academic reasons.
  - (h) students enrolled in New Zealand secondary schools before 1 January 1980, when they began their first course of study.
  - (i) students beginning a postgraduate course before 1 January 1981 who in 1979 completed a preparatory bridging course.
  - (j) students who are dependents and are not on a study permit. (A dependent must return home when the permit on which he or she depends expires.)

**DISCIPLINE**

Under the provisions of the University of Auckland Act 1961, the Senate has, subject to a right of appeal to the Council, the power to deal with all questions relating to the discipline of students. During the intervals between meetings of the Senate, and subject to a right of appeal to the Senate, the Vice-Chancellor may exercise alone the powers of the Senate as to discipline.

**DISCIPLINARY REGULATIONS**

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Disciplinary Regulations 1972.
2. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1973.
3. In these Regulations unless the context otherwise requires:
 

'Class' means any lecture, tutorial, seminar, laboratory, or other assembly of students at which tuition is being given and includes any lecture or address within the University at which students are present;

'Hall' means any hostel or hall of residence or other student accommodation under the control of the Council;

'Student' means a duly enrolled student of the University and includes for the purposes of Regulation 4 hereof a person applying so to enrol;

'Students' Association' means the Auckland University Students' Association Incorporated;

'Warden' means the person who is for the time being in charge of any Hall and includes his duly appointed deputies;

'The Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961 and its amendments;

'The University' includes any institution under the control of the Council;

'University property' includes property occupied by the University, property owned by any institution under the control of the Council, and any property held by the Crown on behalf of or for the purposes of the University. Words and expressions defined in the Act have the meanings so defined.
- 4(a) Every student shall on enrolling at the University sign a declaration in the following form or to the like effect:
 

'I hereby solemnly promise that I will faithfully obey the rules and regulations of the University and be bound by the same.'
- (b) The Senate shall have the power to impose conditions on the attendance at classes of any student and to obtain his undertaking to observe those conditions, either at his enrolment, or in the course of his attendance at the University in all cases where in the reasonable opinion of the Senate it is necessary so to do in order to prevent any possible disturbance to the carrying out of normal activities at the University or otherwise to maintain order and discipline.
- (c) The Senate or the Discipline Committee of the Senate may as delegate of the Council exercise the powers conferred on the Council by s. 24 (2) of the Act without however preventing the Council from exercising those powers.
5. No student or other member of the University shall:
  - (a) act in a manner contrary to the good government of the University or prejudicial to its functioning as such;
  - (b) wilfully or recklessly damage or deface, or wilfully move without authority, any property of the University or any other property within the University; precincts;

- (c) wilfully impede the activities of the University, whether in teaching, research or otherwise;
- (d) wilfully create any nuisance in or on the University precincts;
- (e) wilfully obstruct any officer or member of the University employed at the University in the due performance of his functions or of the work he is required to perform;
- (f) be in a part of the University precincts in which he is not, at that time, entitled to be, knowing that he is not entitled to be there at that time;
- (g) (i) start, ride, or park without prior permission, a cycle, a motorcycle, or a motor vehicle in University grounds;
- (ii) fail to comply with the University Parking Regulations at all times;
- (h) fail to comply with the directions on any notice erected with the authority of the Council and governing entry, speed and exit of vehicles, and the location of parking spaces;
- (i) commit any criminal offence in the University precincts;
- (j) smoke
- (i) in the Library except with the permission of the Librarian; or
- (ii) in any General Lecture Theatre; or
- (iii) in any Seminar Room except with the express consent of all those present;
- (k) commit a breach of any University Statute or Regulation or of any rule of conduct made by any person authorized by the Council or the Senate to make such rule, provided that the Statute Regulation or rule has been published in the University Calendar or that reasonable notice thereof has been given by other means, to students generally or to the student charged with misconduct, before the misconduct is alleged to have taken place.

6. No student shall

- (a) knowingly fail to identify himself if required or to comply with such directions as may be reasonably made by the Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, any Professor, member of the Senate, or Lecturer in order to maintain good order and discipline;
- (b) knowingly fail to comply with any reasonable direction given to him by the person in charge of a group of students going to, engaged in, or returning from a field trip or any other academic activity conducted by the University beyond the University precincts, or, while a member of such a group, do anything which would constitute misconduct if done within the University precincts;
- (c) fail to comply with any specific Departmental or Faculty Regulation in regard to appropriate dress in relation to safety or to professional courses;
- (d) bring or consume alcoholic liquors within the precincts of the University for other than official functions except with the permission of the Senate. Permission for alcoholic liquors to be consumed at other functions will be subject to the following conditions.
- (i) where the function is held in a lecture theatre, reading room, seminar room, staff study or staff common room, one senior member of the staff shall be present throughout the function;
- (ii) where the function is held within the facilities under the control of the Student Union Management Committee, a senior member of the staff or a member of the Student Executive or a member of the Student Union Management Committee shall be present throughout the function;
- (e) post student notices elsewhere than on the permanent notice boards provided for this purpose, and in accordance with the conditions laid down by the Students' Association.

7. The person in charge of a class may reprimand, or exclude from not more than three successive meetings of the class, any student whom he considers guilty of misconduct in class. Any exclusion from more than one meeting of the class under this Regulation shall be reported promptly to the Vice-Chancellor. A student reprimanded or excluded under this Regulation may appeal to the Vice-Chancellor or to the Senate for the matter to be reviewed. The Vice-Chancellor may suspend the operation of an order for exclusion from class until the appeal has been heard and determined.

8. The Senate shall have power

- (a) to impose on any student who does not observe the provisions of these Regulations; or the conditions (if any) attached to his attendance at classes pursuant to Regulations 4 and 16 thereof; or any direction given under Regulation 11 hereof; or who otherwise commits any breach of University discipline; any one or more of the following penalties as it thinks fit.
- (i) such sum by way of restitution as may be appropriate for any damage so caused;
- (ii) a fine not exceeding \$300;
- (iii) a suspension from attendance at the University or any of its classes for such period as it thinks fit;
- (iv) expulsion from the University;
- (v) a limitation or prohibition on his attendance at any class or classes at the University or his use or enjoyment of any of the facilities of the University;
- (b) to prohibit the sitting of examinations by any student who is in default with any payment due by him to



the University under these or any other Regulations or any Statute;

(c) to delegate the powers conferred on it by these Regulations to the Discipline Committee of the Senate without thereby preventing itself or the Vice-Chancellor pursuant to Regulation 9 hereof from exercising any such delegated power.

9. The Vice-Chancellor shall have power (subject always to Regulation 14 hereof) to exercise all the powers and authorities of the Senate under these Regulations and under the Act, including any powers delegated by the Senate to any committee of the Senate, during the intervals between meetings of the Senate or that Committee.

10. The Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, or any Professor, member of the Senate or Lecturer shall have power to report any student to the Discipline Committee for any breach of these regulations.

11. Any Warden shall have the power (subject always to Regulation 14 hereof)

(a) from time to time to give such directions as he reasonably thinks fit for the maintenance of good order and discipline within the Hall under his charge provided however that all such directions shall if of general application be exhibited on the main notice board of the Hall to which they relate forthwith after they are given;

(b) to impose as he thinks fit on any student who does not observe any of the directions so given, any one or more of the following penalties:

(i) such sum by way of restitution as may be appropriate for any damage so caused;

(ii) a fine not exceeding \$50;

(iii) a suspension from attendance at the Hall for such period as the Warden thinks fit;

(iv) expulsion from the Hall.

12. The Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, or any Professor, member of the Senate, or Lecturer may, in addition to reporting any breach of these Regulations to the Discipline Committee, order any student to pay the cost of replacing or repairing any University property lost, damaged or destroyed by reason of the wilfulness, negligence, or misconduct of that student. Any penalty so ordered shall be paid within 14 days.

13. The Executive of the Students' Association shall (without prejudice to the powers of the Senate under s. 34(3) of the Act) have power of disciplinary control over students within the Student Union Buildings or the precincts of the Student Union Buildings and in exercise of that power may

(i) impose a fine not exceeding \$25 on any student guilty of any act prejudicial to the maintenance of discipline therein, and

(ii) (whether or not in addition to imposing a fine) order any student to pay as a penalty the cost of replacing or repairing any property therein lost, damaged or destroyed by reason of the wilfulness, negligence, or misconduct of that student.

14(a) All fines and other penalties imposed under Regulations 9, 11, and 12 hereof or by the Discipline Committee under powers delegated to it under Regulation 8 hereof shall forthwith be reported to the Senate by the person or body imposing them.

(b) Any student on whom a fine or other penalty is imposed under Regulations 9, 11 and 12 hereof or by any committee of the Senate under powers delegated under Regulation 8 may within seven (7) days of imposition of that penalty, by giving notice to the Registrar in writing, appeal to the Senate against it. The Senate may hear and determine an appeal in such manner as it thinks proper.

(c) Any student who suffers any penalty under these Regulations by a decision of the Senate or the Discipline Committee of the Senate or the Executive of the Students' Association or whose appeal under the preceding clause of this Regulation is dismissed by a decision of the Senate may within seven (7) days of that decision, by giving notice to the Registrar in writing, appeal against it to the Council which may hear and determine the appeal in such manner as it thinks proper. The decision of the Council shall be final.

15(a) The grounds of Old Government House are open to all members of the University for their individual use for the purpose of quiet recreation;

(b) No organised group activities will be permitted in those grounds without the specific permission of the Vice-Chancellor, acting on behalf of the Council, given in each case and in such terms as are appropriate;

(c) Members of the University may bring guests into the University grounds but not into the grounds of Old Government House except in terms of clauses (a) and (b) above;

(d) At all times, and more particularly at night, members of the University and their guests shall act in such a way as not to cause disturbance or inconvenience to those living in the grounds (both occupants of Old Government House and members of the custodial staff), or to residents in the immediate neighbourhood.

**Notes:** (i) If the above requirements are observed, no time limit on the use of the grounds will be necessary, nor shall there be any need for the Police to be on the campus by invitation or otherwise.

(ii) Members of the University while in the grounds are free to observe demonstrations which may occur in the adjoining streets, but they are reminded that the Statutory and Common Law powers of the Police enable the Police to enter the University campus and to take appropriate action in relation to offences committed thereon and to prevent a breach of the peace.

(iii) Whenever it appears likely that demonstrations of the kind mentioned in note (ii) above will occur, the Vice-Chancellor shall consult with the appropriate representatives of staff and students.

(iv) Any privileges of staff, students, and their guests in respect of the use of the grounds, may be withdrawn by the Vice-Chancellor, acting on behalf of Council; the Vice-Chancellor shall report the circumstances to the next following meeting of the Senate and Council.

16(a) No member of the Security Service enrolled as a student at the University shall carry out any inquiries into security matters within the precincts of the University.

(b) The proposed attendance of a member of the Security Service at the University shall be discussed between the Security Service and the University Authorities before his enrolment.

17. After the discussions contemplated in the preceding sub-clause 16(b) have been held, the Senate shall determine each year what special conditions (if any) as to attendance at classes shall apply to students who are members of the Security Service in order to maintain discipline among the students of the University by preventing any possible disturbance to the carrying out of normal teaching activities.

18. Nothing in these Regulations shall prejudice the rights and remedies of the University under the general law in respect of the misconduct or negligence of any student.

## THE LIBRARY

The University Library was established in 1884 with a grant of £37 for books which were 'to be bought in England and uniformly bound in full calf with golden lettering'. Since then the Library has grown into a collection of more than 900,000 volumes, excluding thousands of unbound periodicals, pamphlets, and reprints. Over 11,000 periodical titles are currently received. The Library has benefited by a number of generous gifts among them being the collection of books in Classics and Old Testament Literature bequeathed by the late Professor A. C. Paterson and an extensive collection of material relating to the Labour movement in New Zealand and other countries presented by Mr P. W. G. McAra.

The University Library comprises the General Library in the Library Building on the corner of Princes Street and Alfred Street, divisional libraries in Architecture, Biological Sciences, Continuing Education, Engineering, Fine Arts, Geography, Geology, Law, Medicine, Music, Science. In addition there are departmental reading rooms in a number of subjects. The General Library contains most of the books needed for under-graduate reading in arts subjects. It also contains more advanced material in Accountancy, Anthropology, Education, Geography, History, Languages and Literature, both classical and modern, Philosophy, Psychology.

A separate Undergraduate Reading Room has been opened in the former Ballroom of Old Government House. This contains 140 seats for readers and a collection of works in heavy demand.

More information about the Library, its services and organisation, can be found in the *Library Guide* and in the pamphlet *Books and Reading Accommodation in the University of Auckland*. These are available from the Information Desk in the General Library. Library tours are offered during the week preceding enrolment and during the first week of lectures. Readers are encouraged to seek assistance throughout the year from Reference Department staff.

## LIBRARY REGULATIONS

1. These regulations may be cited as the Library Regulations 1970 and shall come into force on 1 January, 1971.

2. Except where otherwise stated

(a) these regulations shall apply to all sections of the University Library, that is, the General Library, Undergraduate Reading Room, Architecture, Biological Sciences, Centre for Continuing Education, Engineering, Fine Arts, Geology, Geography, Law, Medicine, Music, and Science, and such other sections as may be added by the Senate;

(b) in these regulations 'books' includes all types of printed, written and photographic material, and (except where the context otherwise requires) gramophone records and tapes.

**Hours of Opening** (*General Library only*)

3. The hours of opening shall be:

	Mondays to Thursdays	Saturdays
	8.30 am – 11 pm	9 am – 5 pm
	Fridays 8.30 am-8 pm (Third Term – 11 pm)	(Third Term – 9 pm)
May Study Break (first two weeks)	9 am – 6 pm	9 am – 1 pm
Summer Vacation	9 am – 5 pm	9 am – 12 noon
	(Wed – 8 pm)	

The Library shall be open on Sundays in first and second terms and August Study Break from 9 am to 5 pm and in third term from 9 am to 9 pm. No lending services shall be available on Sundays. The Library shall be closed on Anniversary Day, Waitangi Day, Good Friday, Easter Saturday, Easter Sunday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, Queen's Birthday and for up to three weeks from and including Christmas Eve.

These hours may be varied at the discretion of the University Librarian and any variation shall be appropriately notified in the General Library.

### Readers

4(a) All members of the University Council, all professors lecturers and junior lecturers, all enrolled students of the University, and all library, administrative and technical staff shall be readers for the purpose of these Regulations and may

(i) use all sections of the Library; and

(ii) on completion of such registration formalities as the University Librarian requires, borrow books from it; provided that no person shall be deemed an undergraduate member of the University unless he is currently enrolled as such.

(b) By special permission of the University Librarian any person not included among those authorised by clause (a) of this Regulation may be a reader and accorded full or partial use of Library facilities.

(c) The University Librarian may at any time require from any reader as a condition of that reader's use of the Library and borrowing facilities that he pay to the University a sum of not more than \$15 as a deposit to be applied in payment or part payment of any sum for which he may become liable under Regulation 6 (d). Any balance of the deposit shall be refunded on the termination of his use of the library.

(d) Persons admitted as approved readers under clause (b) of this Regulation may be charged an annual fee which shall be determined by the Library Committee from time to time\*. No fee shall be charged retired members of the University staff or such persons as the Librarian may determine.

\*The fee for 1983 will be \$30.

### Borrowing

5(a) No reader shall borrow any book otherwise than in accordance with these regulations.

(b) (General Library only). Borrowing starts at 9 am and ceases 20 minutes before closing time. No borrowing on Sundays. The hours during which books may be borrowed may be varied at the discretion of the University Librarian. Borrowers shall write their name and address clearly and legibly on the book card of each book and present book and card at the exit for stamping along with their identity card. The address given shall be that to which any notices should be sent. The desk assistant shall stamp the book with the date on which it is to be returned.

(c) Any person on leaving the Library shall on demand present all books and personal property for inspection.

(d) (General Library only). Any book on the open shelves which has a book card and date slip may be borrowed until the next end of term or for such shorter periods as the Librarian may decide. Borrowers shall be required to check the date stamped in the book by the desk assistant. Glass case books without 'not to be borrowed' labels may be borrowed for a fortnight only. All other materials shall be used only in the Library except that Teaching Staff and Postgraduate Students may borrow bound volumes of periodicals for fourteen days, and theses for fourteen days.

(e) Books from any section of the Library other than the General Library shall be borrowed direct from that Section.

(f) All books shall be subject to recall within 24 hours. Borrowers who fail to respond to a recall notice within 24 hours shall incur a fine of 50c plus 50c for each further 24 hours that the book is overdue. Borrowers who retain other books beyond the date for return stamped on the date slip incur a fine of 10c per day whether a notice has been sent or not.

(g) The librarian shall be under no obligation to notify borrowers when books are overdue and a fine may still be charged when books are returned after the date stamped, even though no notice has been received.

(h) Borrowers who wish to renew a book on limited loan for a further period may apply by letter (giving author, title and call number on the spine of the book) or in person, or (in the case of theses, periodicals or glass case books) by telephone. Renewal, will be refused if the book is reserved, and may be refused at the discretion of an authorised librarian. At the end of term, all out-standing books shall be returned or presented for renewal at the Lending Desk. They cannot be renewed by letter or by telephone at this time.

(i) Readers may reserve for borrowing one book a day by filling in a reservation card at the Lending Desk. The length of loan allowed shall depend on the number of other readers who are also waiting for the book. Borrowers who return limited loan reserve books late shall incur a fine of 50c per volume for each 24 hours the book is overdue.

(j) Books which are in heavy demand may be kept behind the Lending Desk. These Desk Copies shall be available for a specified period (advertised in the Library concerned) on surrender of the reader's identity card and may not be removed from the Library except in the case of overnight loans. Failure to return Desk Copies on time shall incur a fine of 25c per volume for each quarter hour or part of a quarter for which the book is not returned.

(k) Teaching staff and postgraduate students may apply to borrow books from another library through the Interloans Assistant. Such books are subject to the conditions imposed by that library.

(l) The gramophone records held in the General Library shall be available for borrowing on payment of a subscription determined by the University Librarian from time to time.\*

(m) Library books may be taken out of New Zealand only with the prior permission of the University Librarian.

(n) Authorised librarians may refuse to issue excessive numbers of books to any one reader.

\*Current subscriptions are: students \$9; staff and graduate borrowers \$10.

### **Discipline**

6(a) Bags, satchels and briefcases shall not be taken into the Library.

(b) Under no circumstances shall a book be passed on to another reader without being reissued in that reader's name. Where this regulation is broken the reader in whose name the book is issued shall remain liable for all fines payable by reason of failure to return a book which is overdue or recalled.

(c) Every reader shall immediately notify to the Library any change of his address and thereupon renew the borrowing of all books issued to him.

(d) (i) Readers shall be responsible for, and shall make good, any loss of or damage to books on loan to them or being used by them in the Library. In addition to the cost of replacement or repair, readers may be charged an administration fee of \$5, whether or not the book if lost is subsequently found and returned in good order.

(ii) The loss of a book shall be reported immediately to an authorised librarian.

(iii) A lost book remains the property of the University, notwithstanding payment of the bill for its replacement, and must be returned if found. A refund (in whole or part, according to the condition of the book on return) will be made for it but the administration fee may be retained.

(e) No reader shall deface or mark any book.

(f) The reservation of seats in the Library shall not be permitted. Books and any other articles left for any length of time on chairs or tables may be removed by any of the Library staff. No responsibility is accepted for personal belongings left in the Library.

(g) Silence shall be observed in all public reading areas.

(h) Bottles of ink shall not be brought into the Library.

(i) No reader shall smoke or shall consume food or drink in any part of the Library open to readers.

(j) A warning signal will be given 15 minutes before closing time and all readers shall vacate the Library by closing time.

(k) Library fines or bills shall be paid at the lending desk of the Library concerned.

(l) Where a fine or charge is not paid within 14 days of becoming due.

(i) the University Librarian may withdraw library privileges from the reader in default for such period as he thinks fit;

(ii) the Senate may impose on the reader any of the following penalties; prohibit the sitting of examinations; withholding of examination scripts; refusal of re-enrolment for the next academic year; disqualification from graduation.

(m) No reader may borrow from the Library while any fine or charge payable by him is outstanding.

(n) Any authorised librarian may require any reader who is guilty of disorderly or improper conduct or of any breach of these regulations to withdraw from the Library and the University Librarian may withdraw library privileges from that person for such period as he thinks fit. Nothing in these regulations shall limit the application to the Library (where relevant) of the Disciplinary Regulations 1972.

**Note:** The unauthorised borrowing or removal of books is regarded as a serious disciplinary offence.

### **Copyright**

7. Every reader using copying facilities in the Library shall duly comply with the laws on copyright.

**Note:** (i) Readers are warned that if a copyright work is copied the copying must be a "fair dealing for the purpose of research or private study only" to comply with the laws on copyright.

(a) No more than one copy of the work must be taken.

(b) No whole copyright work by any author can be copied.

(c) Single extracts must not exceed 4000 words. If a series of extracts is required, each extract must not exceed 3000 words to a total of 8000 words. In neither case must the total amount copied exceed 10% of the whole work.

(ii) These rules apply to coin-operated copying machines and not to photocopying supplied by librarians.

(iii) Failure to observe these rules may be treated as a breach of discipline. Users who are in doubt as to whether an item is in copyright should consult a member of the Library Staff.

---

# Faculty of Arts

## Contents

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	98 Degree of Bachelor of Arts
	100 Schedule of Papers for Bachelor of Arts
	131 Degree of Master of Arts
	132 Schedule of Papers for Master of Arts

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	139 Department of Anthropology
	145 Department of Art History
	145 Department of Asian Languages and Literatures
	149 Department of Botany and Zoology (for Biology)
	149 Department of Classics and Ancient History
	158 Department of Economics
	159 Department of Education
	162 Department of English
	165 Department of Geography
	166 Department of Germanic Languages and Literature
	169 Department of History
	174 Department of Mathematics and Statistics
	174 Department of Music
	175 Department of Philosophy
	177 Department of Political Studies
	178 Department of Psychology
	180 Department of Romance Languages
	185 Department of Russian
	187 Department of Sociology

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	189 Diploma in Broadcast Communication
	190 Diploma in Drama
	191 Diploma in Education
	192 Diploma in Educational Psychology
	193 Diploma in Guidance and Counselling
	194 Diploma in Local Government and Administration

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS BA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.
2. The course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-one papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are classified in three stages, I, II, and III.
3. Every course of study shall include at least fourteen papers selected from subjects in Group A in the Schedule.
4. Every course of study for the Degree shall include
  - (a) at least six papers in one subject of which three are at stage III level;
  - (b) at least eleven papers higher than stage I level selected from two or more subjects;
  - (c) no more than eleven papers in any one subject.
5. Every course of study shall consist of four, five or six subjects:
 

provided that in exceptional circumstances the Senate may, upon the recommendation of the Heads of Departments in which the candidate proposes to take advanced papers, approve a course consisting of more than six subjects.
6. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than nine papers for this Degree.

#### Requirements for Particular Subjects.

7. A candidate wishing to be enrolled in any subject which is also a subject of examination for the Degree of Bachelor of Science shall comply with such of the course Regulations for that Degree relating to prerequisites, combinations of subjects, and practical work, as are applicable to that subject, save where the Senate in individual cases allows otherwise.

#### Botany, Chemistry, Economics, Geography, Mathematics, Physics, Zoology

8.(a) A candidate may with the permission of the Senate enrol for Stage II papers of a subject to which this Regulation applies without having been credited with the Stage I papers. If a candidate is credited with stage II papers he shall not also have the stage I papers of the subject credited to his course. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a stage II paper or papers, attained the standard of a pass at stage I of the subject, the candidate shall have the appropriate stage I paper or papers credited to his course.

(b) This Regulation applies to the following subjects:

Botany	Economics	Mathematics	Zoology
Chemistry	Geography	Physics	

#### Chinese, Indonesian, Japanese

9.(a) A candidate with previous knowledge of any subject to which this Regulation applies may be required by the Senate to take stage II papers of that subject without having passed stage I papers. If the candidate passes stage II papers he shall be credited with stage II papers but shall not be credited with stage I papers as papers for any University degree of diploma. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a stage II paper or papers, attained the standard of a pass at stage I of the subject, the candidate shall have the appropriate stage I paper or papers credited to his course.

(b) This Regulation applies to the following subjects: Chinese, Indonesian, Japanese.

#### Law

10.(a) This Regulation applies (notwithstanding the provisions of Regulations 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6) to a candidate for this Degree who has been credited for this Degree with not less than fourteen papers (in this Regulation called 'arts papers'), of which three are at stage III level in one subject and six others are at a higher level than stage I.

(b) Where the candidate:

(i) has been credited with fourteen arts papers and

(ii) has been credited with the Degree of LLB or LLB (Hons) with five subjects from those listed in Parts I and II of the Schedule to this Regulation, of which at least two are from Part II — he shall be entitled to be credited with those five subjects as the remaining seven papers for this Degree.

(c) Where the candidate:

(i) has been credited with more than fourteen but less than twenty-one arts papers and

(ii) has been credited for the Degree of LLB or LLB (Hons) with one or more subjects from those listed in Parts I and II of 10(f) below then, if the Dean of the Faculty of Arts deems the subject or subjects (so credited) to be of sufficient weight, the candidate shall be entitled to be credited with it or them as the remaining paper or papers for this Degree.

(d) A candidate who has completed or is completing his course for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) under the Regulations published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* 1966, and who invokes this Regulation, may be credited with the subject Constitutional and Administrative Law in place of the subject Constitutional Law.

(e) Part I

Administrative Law

Constitutional Law

Copyright, etc.

Criminology

Family Law

Industrial Law

International Institutions

International Law

Jurisprudence (before 1978)

Legal History

Legal Process (before 1978)

Legal System

Local Government Law

Any two of Law and Society

Legal Analysis

Legal Theory (25.227 after 1977).

Part II

Advanced Administrative Law

Advanced Constitutional Law

Advanced Criminology

Advanced Family Law

Advanced Industrial Law

Advanced International Law

Comparative Law

International Trade

Law Reform

Legal Philosophy

Legal Theory (25.317 — before 1978)

Planning Law

## Music

11.(a) Except with the leave of the Senate, no candidate may advance in Music (that is take any papers in that subject beyond Stage I level) unless he has, before enrolling for any Stage I paper in Music, satisfied the Head of Department that he has attained a suitable standard in the subject.

(b) A candidate advancing in Music shall comply with Regulations 6 and 7 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music as if he were enrolled for that Degree.

## Oral Work

12. In each of the subjects Chinese, Indonesian and Japanese a candidate shall be required to pass in the oral work as well as the written papers.

## Cross-credits, Credit, and Exemptions

13.(a) Except in the case of students to whom Regulations 10 applies, the total cross-credits, credits and exemptions granted to a candidate under Regulations 12, 13 and 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall not exceed ten papers for this Degree.

(b) In the case of students to whom Regulation 10 applies, the maximum number of cross-credits, credits and exemptions granted to a candidate under Regulations 12, 13 and 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall be determined by the Dean.

14. Notwithstanding anything in these Regulations a candidate who has successfully completed:

(i) a course or courses at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council; or

(ii) the requirements for a Certificate Course of the Centre for Continuing Education, as listed in the Schedule to Regulation 13 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), may be granted credit for this degree as provided by that Regulation.

15. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of Study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations. Such a course may include papers offered in other Faculties.

16.(a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the Course of Study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units under any of the former Regulations for this Degree, shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate shall determine.

(c) For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1973 the subject prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department concerned.

(d) A candidate who gained credit in any paper or papers under any of the former Regulations may complete the Degree under these present regulations;

(e) These Regulations shall come into force on January 1 1981.

### Schedule

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, prerequisites, corequisites, subjects, restrictions and other conditions applying to courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.

2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

3.(a) The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.

(b) Where a prerequisite has been waived by a Head of Department and re-imposed as a corequisite the paper or papers as to which that corequisite is imposed may not be credited as a pass for the candidate's Course of Study unless and until he has passed that corequisite.

4.(a) The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, if a corequisite of a paper is failed then the paper passed cannot be used as a prerequisite to other courses.

(b) Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, the corequisites marked\*\* in the Schedule are linked in the sense that they (i) must be attempted in the same year and will not be credited separately.

(ii) will be treated as a unit for the purpose of Examination Regulation 5(b), of the Examination Regulations.

5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.

6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule.

The papers prescribed for this Degree are:

## SCHEDULE

Title of Paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>GROUP A</b>					
<b>ANCIENT HISTORY</b>					
Egyptian Options					
12.100	Near Eastern History			11.100	
*12.200	Egypt in Dynasty XVIII	12.100 or 11.100	12.102 or 12.103	12.320	By special permission of the Head of Department the corequisites may be waived
12.210	Egyptian Language 1	as 12.200			
12.220	Egypt in Dynasties V-XI	as 12.200	as 12.200	12.300	as 12.200
12.300	Egypt in Dynasties V-XI	12.200, 12.210		12.220	The prerequisite 12.210 may be waived for students who have passed, or are taking one of 12.322, 12.332, 12.303, 12.313, 12.323 with the language prerequisite



Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
12.310 Egyptian Language II	12.210			
*12.320 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII	12.220, 12.210		12.200	as 12.300
Greek Options				
12.102 Greek History				
12.202 Greece and Persia	12.102 or Greek II	12.100, 11.100 or 12.103	12.332	If 12.202 is taken as part of Greek III no corequisite is required; also as 12.200
*12.222 Tyranny	as 12.202	as 12.202	12.322	as 12.202
*12.322 Tyranny	10.100, 12.202		12.222	The prerequisite 10.100 may be satisfied by 10.200 and may be waived for students who have passed or are taking one of 12.300, 12.303, 12.313, 12.320, 12.323 with their language prerequisite
12.332 Greece and Persia	10.100, 12.222		12.202 10.309	as 12.322
Roman Options				
12.103 Roman History				
12.203 Pax Romana	11.103 or 12.103 or Latin II	12.100, 11.100 or 12.102	11.103 12.323 09.102	If 12.203 is taken as part of Latin III no corequisite is required; also as 12.200
*12.213 A subject in Roman History	as 12.203	as 12.203	12.313	as 12.203
12.303 Roman Britain	09.102, 12.203		03.319	The prerequisite 09.102 may
*12.313 A subject in Roman History	as 12.303		12.213	be satisfied by 09.100 or 09.200, and may be waived
12.323 Pax Romana	as 12.303		12.203 09.308	for students who are taking, or have passed, one of 12.300, 12.320, 12.322, 12.332 with their language prerequisite
Other Options				
†12.201 Assyrian History	as 12.200	as 12.200		as 12.200
†12.211 Akkadian Language	as 12.200			
*12.301 Mesopotamian History	12.201, 12.211			
*12.304 Greek and Roman Historiography	12.102, 12.103 one of 12.200- 12.222			Students who are taking, or have taken, Greek III or Latin III may take this paper without the prerequisites

1. One approved paper from another subject may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be substituted and counted as part of the subject Ancient History for the purposes of Regulation 4 and MA Regulation 1(b)). With the consent of the Head of Department students may offer as Stage III papers one or two of the papers 12.400, 12.402, 12.404, 12.406, 12.412, 12.414 as prescribed for the MA Degree.

2. Students who passed any of 12.200, 12.201, 12.202, 12.203 with language before 1977 shall take such prerequisites for Stage III as the Head of Department may require; the Head of Department may approve other linguistic qualifications which are in his opinion appropriate.

**Note:** 11.103 is a valid prerequisite to 12.203 only under the conditions given in the prescription under 11.103.

## ANTHROPOLOGY

### Anthropology I

- 03.100 Introduction to Social  
Anthropology
- 03.101 Elementary Prehistoric  
Archaeology and Physical  
Anthropology

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
03.102	Introduction to Maori Society			04.101	Students who have already passed 03.211/04.202 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.306/04.302 may not take this paper
Anthropology II					
03.200	Ethnography of Island Polynesia	03.100			Available to a candidate who has not passed 03.100 provided that he has passed four papers in any subject or subjects and takes 03.100 as a corequisite
03.201	Melanesian Ethnography	03.100			As for 03.200
03.202	Social Organization	03.100			As for 03.200
†03.203	Ethos and World View	03.100			Available to a candidate who has not passed 03.101 provided that he has passed four papers in any subject or subjects and takes 03.101 as a corequisite
03.204	Economic Prehistory	03.101			As for 03.204
03.206	Origins of Civilisation	03.101			Available to a candidate who has not passed 03.101 and/or 03.100 provided that he has passed four papers in any subject or subjects and takes 03.101 and 03.100 as corequisites
03.207	Human Evolution	03.100, 03.101			
03.208	The Coming of the Maori	One of 03.100, 03.101, 03.102, 04.101, 12.100, 24.120		04.203	
03.209	Music of the World's Peoples		28.101, 28.102, 28.103	28.214	
03.210	Ethnic Groups and Interethnic Relationships	03.100			As for 03.200
03.211	Traditional Maori Society	03.102 or 04.101 or 24.120 or permission of Head of Department		04.202	
03.212	Sociolinguistics	03.100 or 83.102	83.102 and 03.100	83.202	
03.213	Development of Ethnography	03.100		03.300	As for 03.200
Anthropology III					
*03.300	History of Anthropology	03.100	03.202, or any two of 03.200, 03.201, 03.203, 03.210, 03.211, 04.202, 03.202		
*03.301	Kinship and Marriage	03.100			
03.302	Contemporary problems in Social Anthropology	03.202 or 03.203			
*03.303	Political Anthropology	03.100	03.202		
03.304	Anthropology of Law	One of 03.202, 03.210 03/04.202, 03.306/04.302	25325		
*03.305	Special Topic In Melanesia	03.100	03.201		

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
†03.306	Topics in Contemporary Maori Society	04.202 or 03.211 or permission of Head of Department		04.302	
03.307	Folk Classification	03.100	03.202		
03.308	History, Theory and Introduction to Method in Archaeology	03.101 and either 03.204, or 03.208/04.203 or permission of Head of Department	03.100		
03.309	Advanced Physical Anthropology	03.207			By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisite may be waived provided appropriate science papers have been passed
*03.310	Social Movements	03.100 and permission of Head of Department			
03.311	Studies in Oral Literature	03.202 or 03.203			
*03.312	Ecological Studies in Anthropology	03.202; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department			
*03.313	Contemporary Polynesia	03.100	03.200		
†03.314	Problems in Asian Prehistory and Physical Anthropology	03.101	03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203		
03.315	Regional Prehistory: Oceania	03.101	03.208/04.203		
*03.316	Regional Prehistory	03.101	One of 03.204, 03.206, 03.207, 03.208/04.203		
03.317	Language and Society	03.100, and permission of Head of Department	83.308		
03.318	Music of Oceania	03.209	28.209	28.314	
03.319	Roman History: Britain from the Iron Age to the Anglo Saxons	12.103 and 03.101		12.303	By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisite may be waived
03.320	The Anthropology of Agriculture	03.101 and 03.202; or 03.100 and 03.101 and permission of Head of Department		03.321	
*03.321	Economic Anthropology	03.202, or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department			
03.322	Regional Ethnography	03.202; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department			
†03.323	Ethnohistory	03.202 or 03.200 or 03.201 or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department			
*03.324	Special Topic in Social Anthropology	Three Papers in social anthropology and permission of Head of Department			
03.325	Experimental and Ethnographic Archaeology	03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203			

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
03.327	Special Topic in Physical Anthropology	03.207 or permission of Head of Department given appropriate Science papers.			
†03.328	Special Topic in Social Anthropology	03.100 and 03.211/04.202			
03.329	Contemporary South Pacific Societies	03.200 or 03.201		03.305 03.313	
†03.330	Special Topic in Archaeology	03.101	} 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203		
†03.331	Special Topic in Prehistory	03.101			
03.332	Special Topic in Social Anthropology	03.100 and Permission of Head of Department			
†03.333	Special Topic in Social Anthropology	03.100 and permission of Head of Department			

## ART HISTORY

### Art History I

- 19.151 Renaissance Art to c.1520  
19.152 Western Art from c.1840 to the present day

### Art History II

- 19.259 Topics in 18th and early 19th Century Art  
19.260 Topics in Baroque Art  
19.261 Topics in 17th and early 18th Century Art in Northern Europe

### Art History III

- 19.301 Special Topic in Medieval Art to be prescribed by the Head of Department  
Two of 19.257, 19.258, 19.259, or two of 19.251, 19.251, 19.252, 19.253
- 19.302 Mid 19th Century Painting in France and Britain  
19.304 Durer and his sources and influence  
19.305 NZ Art (General)  
19.306 Special Topic in Western Art after 1500  
19.307 Art in the USA, 1945 to the present day  
19.308 Topics in Early 20th Century Art  
19.309 Women in Art  
\*19.310 Topics in 17th Century Graphic Art
- As for 19.301
- 19.302 or 19.307 or 19.308
- 19.306 under 1981 Regs.

Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>ASIAN GEOGRAPHY</b>				
Asian Geography I				
†20.130 Geography of East Asia				
Asian Geography II				
20.240 Geography of Malaysia Singapore and Indonesia	20.102 and 20.130		20.310	With permission of the Head of Department a student may enrol in this course without fulfilling prerequisites if two papers in Asian Studies have been passed

**ASIAN HISTORY**

Asian History I				
24.130 China since the Opium War				If a candidate attempts papers in both History and Asian History at the same level they will count as papers in separate subjects but not otherwise.
24.132 Nationalism and Revolution in Vietnam, Thailand and Indonesia			24.221 under 1980 regulations	
Asian History II				
24.222 China under the Ming and Qing dynasties	Two stage I papers in History and/or Asian History As for 24.222			Candidates with a better than average pass in one prerequisite History or Asian History paper will normally be exempted by the Head of Department from a second prerequisite History or Asian History paper; the Head Of Department may exempt students from both prerequisite papers if they have a better than average pass in a paper or papers in other relevant subject or subjects in the languages or social sciences. Papers 24.222, 24.223, 24.224 are not corequisite, but candidates are strongly advised to take 24.223 and 24.224 in the same year.
*24.223 State and Society in Pre-Colonial Island S.E. Asia			24.220 under 1980 regulations	
24.224 State and Society in pre-colonial Mainland S.E. Asia	As for 24.222		24.220 under 1980 regulations	
Asian History III				
24.312 Sino-Japanese relations since the Meiji restoration	Two Stage II papers in History and/or Asian History			
24.324 Trade and Society in pre-colonial S.E. Asia				
24.330 British Imperialism in S.E. Asia				

**ASIAN POLITICS**

Asian Politics I				
30.103 China since 1949; The Politics of an Emerging Superpower		30.104		If a candidate attempts papers in Political Studies and Asian Politics at the same level they will count as papers in separate subjects, but not otherwise
30.104 Armies and Politics in Burma, Thailand and Vietnam		30.103		
Asian Politics II				
30.205 The Politics of Race and Prosperity in Malaysia and Singapore	2 papers from 30.100, 30.101, 30.102, 30.103, 30.104, 30.105 As for 30.205	One other paper from 3 0200-30.209		Candidates may not enrol for this paper if they have been credited with a pass in Asian Politics I as prescribed in 1969-1973
*30.206 Generals, Technocrats and Muslims in Indonesian Politics	As for 30.205	As for 30.205		
30.207 Japan Since 1945: Images and Realities	As for 30.205	As for 30.205		

Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>BIBLICAL HISTORY AND LITERATURE</b>				
Biblical History and Literature I				
*11.100 The History of the Near East from Neolithic Times to Alexander the Great		11.101	12.100	By special permission of the Head of Department 11.100 may be taken without 11.101
*11.101 Biblical Literature of the Old Testament		11.100		
†11.103 Roman History			12.103	By special permission of the Head of Department 11.103 may be taken without 11.113
†11.113 Biblical Literature of the New Testament		11.103		This paper may not be taken without prior or concurrent enrolment in paper 11.103 or 12.103

## Biblical History and Literature II (Not available until further notice)

- \*11.200 The History of Israel to AD 135
- \*11.201 The History of Christian Origins to AD 135
- \*11.202 The Biblical Archaeology of a prescribed period
- \*11.203 The Apocrypha with prescribed texts

**BIOLOGY**

## Biology I

- |  |  |                        |  |
|--|--|------------------------|--|
| 39.111 Unifying Concepts in Biology (1983)       |  | 39.101, 06.102, 38.102 | Candidates are required to complete 2 hours practical work each week |
| *39.112 Biological Diversity and Function (1984) |  | As for 39.111          |  |

**CHINESE**

## Chinese I

- |   |  |          |  |
|---|--|----------|--|
| 48.100 Language Acquisition A           |  | **48.101 | By special permission of the Head of Department the corequisites may be waived |
| 48.101 Language Acquisition B           |  | **48.100 |  |
| †48.102 Introduction to Chinese Thought |  |          |  |

## Chinese II

- |  |                |                  |  |
|--|----------------|------------------|--|
| 48.200 Language Acquisition                                      | 48.100, 48.101 | **48.201, 48.202 | By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived |
| 48.201 Introduction to 20th Century Chinese Literature           | 48.100, 48.101 | **48.200, 48.202 |  |
| 48.202 Introduction to Classical Chinese Language and Literature | 48.100, 48.101 | **48.200, 48.201 |  |

Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
Chinese III				
48.300 Language Acquisition	48.200, 48.201, 48.202	**48.301, 48.302		By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived
48.301 Readings in 20th Century Chinese Literature	48.200, 48.201, 48.202	**48.300, 48.302		
48.302 Readings in Classical Chinese Literature	48.200, 48.201, 48.202	**48.300, 48.301		

## CLASSICAL STUDIES

### Classical Studies I

*73.102 Epic and Elegiac	73.100
*73.103 Comedy and Satire	
†73.104 Tragedy and Literary Criticism	

## ECONOMICS

### Economics I

Note: Students planning to take stage II papers should offer 13.100 and 13.101. Some Economics III papers require mathematics and statistics prerequisites. Students planning to take Stage III papers should consult the Head of Department for advice.

13.100 Microeconomics		13.103, 15.147 15.116, 15.136
13.101 Macroeconomics	13.100	13.103, 15.147 15.116, 15.136
13.102 Statistical Methods		26.180; 26.181
13.103 Principles of Economics		13.100; 13.101; 15.147; 15.116
13.104 Applied Economics	13.103 or 13.100 and 13.101	15.136

### Economics II

Note: The Head of the Department may waive the prerequisites for candidates with sufficient previous knowledge (including candidates with a good pass in 13.103 and 13.104).

13.200 Microeconomics	13.100; 13.101	
13.201 Macroeconomics	13.100; 13.101	
13.203 Managerial Economics	13.100 or 13.103	
13.204 Public Economics	13.100; 13.101	
13.205 Introduction to Econometrics	13.100; 13.101 13.102 or 13.202 or 26.180 or 26.181	
13.210 The Industrialisation of Britain to 1870	13.100; 13.101	17.200
13.211 The International Economy since 1870	13.100; 13.101	17.201
*13.212 Economics of Socialism	13.100 and 13.101, or 13.103	The Head of Department will waive the prerequisites for candidates with B— or better pass in 13.103
13.213 Economic History of USA 1776-1940	13.100; 13.101	
13.214 The New Zealand Economy	13.101	

13.104 and 13.214 may not be taken concurrently

Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>Economics III</b>				
<b>NOTE:</b> Students taking papers 13.300, 13.301, 13.302, 13.303 and 13.305 must have previously passed 26.122, 26.142, 13.102 or 13.202 or alternatives approved by the Head of the Department. Students are strongly recommended to have taken 13.205.				
13.300 Theory of Value	13.200			
13.301 Macroeconomic Theory and Policy	13.200; 13.201			
13.302 Econometrics	13.200 or 13.201		26.381	
*13.303 Operations Research	13.203		72.308	
13.304 International Trade	13.200	13.201		
13.305 Financial Economics	13.200			
13.306 Classical, Marxist and Modern Economic Ideas	13.200 or 13.201			
13.307 Public Expenditure	13.200 or 13.204			
13.308 Economics of Labour	13.200 and 13.201			
*13.309 Special Topic				Enrolment in Special Topic papers is subject to approval of the Head of Department
13.310 Economic History of Australia and NZ	Any two Stage II Economics papers		17.300	
*13.312 Special Topic				
13.313 Management and Enterprise in the British Economy 1750-1939	Any two Stage II Economics papers			

**EDUCATION****Education I**

14.100 An introduction to Educational Thought				A candidate intending to take Stage III papers in Education or more than two Stage II papers in Education must have passed in both 14.100 and 14.101
14.101 Introduction to Developmental Psychology				

**Education II**

14.200 Comparative Education				The Head Of Department may waive the prerequisites or restrictions in special circumstances
†14.201 History of Education				A candidate intending to take two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers
14.202 New Zealand Education				A candidate intending to take only one or two Stage II papers not having passed 14.100 and 14.101 must have the permission of the Head of Department
14.203 Educational Psychology				
14.204 Evaluation of Individual Differences				
14.206 School and Society: A Sociological Perspective	A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage II papers			
14.207 Evaluation in Classrooms	must have passed 14.100 and 14.101			This paper is not available to a student who passed 14.204 before 1977
14.208 The Philosophy of Education				This paper is not available to students who passed 14.315 before 1978
14.209 Introduction to Methods of Research in Education				



Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
Education III				
14.300	Twentieth Century Educational Thought			The Head of Department may waive the prerequisite or restrictions in special circumstances. A candidate intending to take only one or two Stage III papers must have the permission of the Head of Department
14.301	Comparative Education			
†14.302	History of Education			
14.303	Sociology of Education			
*14.304	The Context of Educational Planning	A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers		
*14.305	The Guidance Process			
14.306	Introduction to Counselling in the Community			
14.307	Principles of Curriculum Development			
14.308	Educational Psychology A Behavioural Approach			
14.309	Developmental Psychology			
14.310	Psychology of Adolescence			
14.311	Education of Exceptional Children			
14.312	Issues in Special Education			
14.313	Methods of Research in Education			
†14.314	Pre-school Education			
14.316	Early Determinants of Behaviour			
14.317	Organizational Effectiveness	A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers		
*14.318	Studies in Higher Education			
14.319	Special Topic: The Reading Process			
14.320	Special Topic in Moral Education			
14.321	The Nature of Educational Theory			
14.322	Adult Learning and Education			
14.323	Special Topic: Issues Related to Reading Difficulties			
14.324	Special Topic			
14.325	Environmental Psychology: Applications to Education			

Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications	
<b>ENGLISH</b>					
<b>English I</b>					
18.100	Introduction to Chaucer, Shakespeare and The Study of Language			Candidates intending to advance papers at English II are advised to take paper 18.100	
18.101	20th Century Literature			Candidates should note that for entry to English II it is essential to have passed <i>two</i> English I papers	
18.103	New Zealand Literature				
18.104	19th Century Literature				
<b>English II</b>					
18.200	Mediaeval Literature	Any two English I papers	See Note	Students are advised that it is in their interest to take three English II papers in the same year	
18.201	English Language	As for 18.200			
18.210	16th and 17th Century Prose and Poetry	As for 18.200			
18.211	16th and 17th Century Drama	As for 18.200		18.313	Candidates may take a fourth paper in English II either concurrently or in a later year. The taking of a fifth paper requires Head of Department's permission, which will only be given in rare cases
18.212	Shakespeare: Selected Plays: Tragedies and Comedies	As for 18.200		18.204	
18.220	The English Novel 1900-1945	As for 18.200		By permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived; such action will however be virtually limited to single papers for students who have fulfilled or are fulfilling Regulation 4(a) with three Stage III papers in another subject	
18.222	Modern Poetry, 1900-1945	As for 18.200	18.321		
<b>Note:</b> Candidates should note that for entry to English III it is essential to have passed one of 18.200 or 18.201; one of 18.210 or 18.211; and one other English II paper.					
<b>English III</b>					
18.300	The English Language from Chaucer's day to the present	18.200 or 18.201 18.210 or 18.211 and one other English II paper	One paper from 18.306-18.308 and one from 18.310-18.328	Candidates taking more than three papers in English III may take the extra papers or a fourth English II paper without co-requisites	
18.301	Old English: Language, Literature and Society	As for 18.300	As for 18.300		
18.302	Middle English Literature	As for 18.300 but including 18.200	As for 18.300		
18.303	The Linguistic Analysis of Literature	As for 18.300	As for 18.300	83.305	Any one English paper from English III not previously taken may be taken for MA with the approval of the Head of Department

Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
18.304 Phonology and New Zealand Speech	As for 18.300	As for 18.300	83.307	
18.306 Prose, Poetry and Drama of the Eighteenth Century	As for 18.300	One paper from 18.300-18.304 and one from 18.310-18.328	18.202	By permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived. Such action will be virtually limited to candidates who have fulfilled or are fulfilling Regulation 4(a) with three Stage III papers in another subject
18.307 Romantic Poetry	As for 18.300	As for 18.306	18.203, 18.324	
18.308 18th Century Novels	As for 18.300	As for 18.306	18.322	By permission of the Head of Department pre-requisites may be waived. Such action will be virtually limited to candidates who have fulfilled or are fulfilling Regulation 4(a) with three Stage III papers in another subject and who wish to enrol in a single English III paper.
18.310 Shakespeare: Selected Plays for 1983: Late Plays	As for 18.300	One paper from 18.300-18.304 and one from 18.306-18.308		
18.314 Major Works, 16th and 17th Centuries	As for 18.300	As for 18.310	18.311, 18.312	
18.320 Victorian Literature	As for 18.300	As for 18.310		
18.323 American Literature: Poetry	As for 18.300	As for 18.310		
18.325 Special Topic II as prescribed by the Head of Department: Novels from the Post-Colonial World 1950-1980	As for 18.300	As for 18.310		
18.326 Special Topic III as prescribed by the Head of Department: Women Writers of the 20th Century	As for 18.300	As for 18.310		
18.327 Special Topic IV as prescribed by the Head of Department: Australian Literature	As for 18.300	As for 18.310		
18.328 Special Topic V as prescribed by the Head of Department: Creative Writing	As for 18.300	As for 18.310		

## FRENCH

French I Language papers		All French I language papers are mutually exclusive except that, the consent of the Head of Department, may be taken after passing any other French I language paper except 34.110	Selection of a French I language paper is subject to the consent of the Head of Department By permission of the Head of Department the co-requisite requirements may be waived, in particular so that a candidate may (a) present 34.100 or 34.110 alone, (b) present 34.102 instead of 34.100 as corequisite to a Text paper The marks for 34.100 or other French 34.110 bear a relative weighting of 3 to 2 for a corequisite paper except Text paper.
34.100 Language Acquisition or 34.110	**One French, I Text paper		
34.102 Language comprehension			
34.104 Language comprehension in specific areas A: Science			

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
34.106	Language comprehension in specific areas B (*Social Science, Art History, Music)				
*34.150	Language acquisition for beginners				
Text papers					
34.101	20th Century literary texts		**34.100 or 34.110		Exceptionally, the Head of Department may waive the co- requisite requirement.
34.103	20th Century texts		As for 34.101		
*34.109	Contemporary French Civilisation		As for 34.101		
French II					
34.200	Language Acquisition	34.100 or 34.110	**Two French II papers other than 34.210		The marks for 34.200 shall bear a relative weighting of 3 to 2 for each corequisite paper. By special permission of the Head of Department (i) the corequisites may be waived so that a candi- date may present separately one or two French II papers; and (ii) the prerequisites may be waived in exceptional circumstances
*34.203	19th Century literary texts	34.100 or 34.110, and one of its corequisites As for 34.200	**34.200 and one French II paper other than 34.210 As for 34.203		
34.204	19th Century language	As for 34.200	As for 34.203		
34.209	Nineteenth Century French Civilisation	As for 34.203	As for 34.203		
34.201	19th and/or 20th Century literary texts	As for 34.203	As for 34.203		
34.202	19th and/or 20th Century literary texts	As for 34.203	As for 34.203		
34.205	Mediaeval texts	As for 34.200	As for 34.203		
34.210	Translation of written texts	As for 34.200			Enrolment only by permission of Head of Department
34.214	Language studies for teachers	As for 34.200	As for 34.203		
French III					
34.300	Language Acquisition	34.200	Two other **French III papers		The marks for 34.300 shall bear a relative weighting of 3 to 2 for each corequisite paper By the special permission of the Head of Department the pre- requisite and corequisite require- ments may be waived, in particu- lar so that a candidate may present 34.300 or any other French III paper or papers, if he has passed in 34.200 or, in ex- ceptional circumstances 34.100, 34.110 or 34.102
34.310	17th and 18th Century texts	34.200 and two other French II papers	34.300 and one other French III paper		
34.302	17th and 18th Century texts	As for 34.310	As for 34.310		
34.305	17th and/or 18th Century language	As for 34.310	As for 34.310		
34.318	Social and Lexical History of French in the Pacific	As for 34.310	As for 34.310		
34.306	Old French language and literature	As for 34.310	As for 34.310		
34.308	A topic in 19th and/or 20th Century literature	As for 34.310	As for 34.310		
34.309	A topic in 19th and/or 20th Century literature	As for 34.310	As for 34.310		
34.307	A literary topic	As for 34.310	As for 34.310		

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>GEOGRAPHY</b>				
Geography I				
20.101	Introductory Physical Geography			
20.102	Introductory Human Geography			
Geography II				
20.201	Physical Geography	20.101 and 20.102		With special permission of the Head of Department (i) A student may enrol in one Stage II paper without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites
20.202	Human Geography	As for 20.201		
20.203	Remote Sensing Techniques	As for 20.201		
20.204	Statistical Techniques in Geography	As for 20.201		
20.205	Man's Role in the Environment	As for 20.201		
Geography III				
20.301	Geography of New Zealand	20.204 (or either 26.180 or 26.181) and any two of the following papers: 20.201, 20.202, 20.203, 20.205		With special permission of the Head of Department (i) A student may enrol in one or two Stage III papers without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) Prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites
20.303	Geomorphology	As for 20.301		
20.304	Biogeography and/or Climatology	As for 20.301		
20.305	Urban and Population Geography	As for 20.301		
20.306	Spatial Organisation of Third World Economies	As for 20.301		
20.310	Area Study	As for 20.301		
*20.311	Historical-Cultural Geography	As for 20.301		
*20.312	Special Topic	As for 20.301		
20.313	Advanced Statistical Techniques in Geography	As for 20.301		
20.316	Advanced Remote Sensing	20.203		
20.320	Resources and environmental management	As for 20.301		

**GERMAN**

German I				
22.100 Language Acquisition	**22.101	22.103	By special permission of the Head of Department the corequisites may be waived	
22.101 Literature and Texts	**22.100			
22.102 German Civilisation				
†22.103 Arts Reading Knowledge		22.100		

Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
German II					
22.200	Language Acquisition	22.100, 22.101	**22.201, 22.202		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
22.201	Aspects of Literature and Language	As for 22.200	**22.200, 22.202		
22.202	20th Century Literature	As for 22.200	**22.200, 22.201		
German III					
23.300	Language Acquisition	22.200, 22.201, 22.202	**22.301, 22.302		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived By special permission of the Head of Department a student may take up to three MA papers which will count as papers at Stage III level.
22.301	Medieval and Romantic Texts	As for 22.300	**22.300, 22.302		
22.302	Modern German Classics	As for 22.300	**22.300, 22.301		

**GREEK**

Greek I					
10.100	Greek reading. Prescribed texts with grammatical questions		**10.101		The papers may not be taken separately except under the most exceptional circumstances
10.101	Greek Reading. Prescribed texts with grammatical questions		**10.100		

Note: If 10.100 and 10.101 are taken concurrently, they are linked corequisites. 10.101 may not be taken without prior or concurrent enrolment in 10.100.

**Greek II**

10.200	Prescribed Books	10.100, 10.101	**10.201, 10.202		The Head of Department may waive prerequisites for students with sufficient previous knowledge and corequisites in special cases.
10.201	Greek Literature		**10.200, 10.202		
10.202	Greek History Unprepared Translation Use of the Language		**10.200, 10.201		

**Greek III**

10.300	Prescribed Books		**10.301, 10.302		
10.301	Greek Literature	10.200, 10.201, 10.202	**10.300, 10.302		Permission of Head of Department required. Not all Papers will be available every year
10.302	Greek Language Greek History or †Philosophy Unprepared Translation and Composition		**10.300, 10.301		
10.303	Advanced Language Study Prose Composition or †Verse Composition		10.300, 10.301, 10.302		
*10.304	Greek Poetry	As for 10.300	10.300, 10.301, 10.302		
10.305	Literary Topic	As for 10.300	As for 10.304		
10.306	Greek History	As for 10.300	As for 10.304	10.307	
10.307	Greek Philosophy	As for 10.300	As for 10.304	10.306	
10.308	Greek Language	As for 10.300	As for 10.304		
10.309	Greece and Persia	As for 10.300	As for 10.304	12.202	

**HEBREW****Hebrew I**

23.100	Classical Hebrew -- Language	**23.101			
--------	------------------------------	----------	--	--	--

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
23.101	Classical Hebrew — Texts		**23.100		
*23.102	Modern Hebrew				
*Hebrew II					
*23.200	Classical Hebrew — Language	23.100, 23.101	**23.201 and one of 23.202, 23.203		
*23.201	Classical Hebrew — Texts	23.100, 23.101	**23.200 and one of 23.202, 23.203		
*23.202	Modern Hebrew — Language and Texts	23.100, 23.101	**23.200, 23.201		
*23.203	Classical Hebrew — Further Texts	23.100, 23.101	**23.200, 23.201		

## HISTORY

### History I

- 24.100 From Versailles to Pearl Harbor; issues of peace and war
- 24.101 The Russian Revolution
- 24.103 Fascism in the inter-war years
- 24.104 The Development of Modern Cities
- 24.105 The U.S.A. in the 20th Century
- 24.106 Marxism in Perspective
- \*24.107 Special Topic: To be prescribed by Head of Department
- 24.120 Race Relations in New Zealand
- 24.121 New Zealand Society and Politics

### History II

- 24.200 Rome and the Barbarians Two Stage I papers in History and/or Asian History or two of 12.100, 12.102, 12.103
- 24.201 Medieval English Kingship from Alfred to Henry III As for 24.200
- 24.208 Early Modern Spain and its Silver Colonies As for 24.200 but excluding 12.100, 12.102, 12.103
- 24.212 The French Enlightenment As for 24.208
- 24.213 Society and Revolution in France 1750-1800 As for 24.208
- 24.214 Parliaments, Estates and Revolutions 1550-1660 As for 24.208
- 24.215 Society in Crisis: Europe 1550-1660 As for 24.208
- In relation to all Stage II prerequisites, a candidate with a better than average pass in one prerequisite History or Asian History paper will normally be exempted by the Head of Department from the second prerequisite paper.
- The Head of Department may exempt a candidate from both prerequisite papers if he has a better than average pass in a paper or papers in other relevant subject or subjects
- Not available to students who have been credited with 24.210
- Not available to students who have been credited with 24.211

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
24.230	Polynesian and European Exploration of the Pacific	As for 24.208			
24.232	Colonial Society and the American Revolution	As for 24.208			
24.233	Australian Society 1788-1983	As for 24.208			
†24.235	Special Topic: To be prescribed by Head of Department	As for 24.208			
†24.236	Special Topic: To be prescribed by Head of Department	As for 24.208			

## History III

24.301	The Mexican Revolution
24.302	The Reign of Henry VIII
24.303	The History of the Family in France and England
24.304	The Hapsburg Empire 1848-1918
24.307	The Origins of the First World War
24.309	British Labour History 1850-1918
*24.310	The American Civil War And Reconstruction
24.314	Race in the Antipodes: New Zealand, Australia and South Africa in the 19th Century
24.315	Pacific History: Culture contact to about 1900
†24.320	Special Topic: To be prescribed by Head of Department
24.321	American Labour History 1865-1940
24.322	Women in New Societies
†24.325	Special Topic: To be prescribed by the Head of Department
24.326	Aspects of the History of European Antisemitism
24.327	Communism in Western Europe
24.328	Religion in Changing Societies
†24.329	Special Topic: To be prescribed by Head of Department
24.331	Justinian: Triumph or Disaster?

Two Stage II papers  
in History and/or  
Asian History

Students taking History III papers should note that it may prove impossible, owing to pressure of numbers in certain classes, to allow students to enrol for all the papers of their first choice.



Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
24.332 Early Monasticism	Two Stage II papers in History and/or Asian History.			
24.333 A History of Medieval Europe from Charlemagne To Philip the Fair				
24.334 Britain and Russia: a Century of Conflict				
*24.335 Historical Biography in New Zealand				
24.336 Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe				

## INDONESIAN

### Indonesian I

80.100	Modern Spoken Indonesian 1		**80.101	By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived
80.101	Modern Spoken Indonesian 2		**80.100	
80.103	Indonesian literatures and civilisations			

### Indonesian II

80.200	Advanced Spoken Indonesian	80.100, 80.101	**80.201, 80.202	By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived
80.201	Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay fiction	80.100, 80.101	**80.200, 80.202	
80.202	Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay poetry	80.100, 80.101	**80.200, 80.201	
80.203	The theatre in Indonesia: A study of Indonesian regional and national drama.	80.100, 80.101 Or permission of Head of Department		

### Indonesian III

80.300	Translation at sight of passages of Indonesian non-literary prose and translation at sight into Indonesian	80.200, 80.201, 80.202	**80.301, 80.302	By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived
80.301	Introduction to Classical Malay language and literature	80.200, 80.201, 80.202	**80.300, 80.302	
80.302	Modern Indonesian/Malay literature	80.200, 80.201, 80.202	**80.300 or 80.301	
80.306	An approved special topic	80.200, 80.201, 80.202	80.300, 80.301, 80.302	
80.307	Introduction to Javanese language and literature	80.200, 80.201, 80.202		

## ITALIAN

### Italian I

*35.102	Italian Language and Society 1		**35.103	35.106 35.107	In special cases the Head of Department may waive the corequisites
---------	--------------------------------	--	----------	------------------	--

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
*35.103	Italian Language and Society 2		**35.102	35.106 35.107	
*35.104	Italian Language in Opera and Song				
35.106	Italian Language Acquisition and Introduction to Italian Culture 1		**35.107	35.102 35.103	
35.107	Italian Language Acquisition and Introduction to Italian Culture 2		**35.106	35.102 35.103	
35.108	Italy in the 20th Century				
Italian II					
35.200	Language Acquisition	35.100, 35.101 or 35.102, 35.103 or 35.106, 35.107	**One or two from 35.202 – 35.230.		In special cases the Head of Department may waive the corequisites and prerequisites
35.202	14th Century Literary Texts: Dante	Two Italian I papers	35.200		These papers are normally available in odd years 1983, 1985, etc.
35.203	14th Century Literary Texts: Boccaccio and Petrarca	as for 35.202	35.200		
35.204	A Special Topic in 20th Century Literature or Culture	as for 35.202	35.200		
*35.210	Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture	as for 35.202	35.200		These papers are normally available in even years 1984, etc.
*35.211	A Special Topic in Italian Renaissance Literature I	as for 35.202	35.200		
*35.212	A Special Topic in Italian Renaissance Literature II	as for 35.202			
*35.221	A special Topic in Italian language	as for 35.202	35.200 and one other Italian II paper		
35.230	A Special Topic in Italian Literature	as for 35.202	35.200		
Italian III					
35.300	Language Acquisition	35.200	**One or two from 35.302 – 35.330	No paper may be taken at Stage III whose content corresponds to that of a paper already passed at Stage II	In special cases the Head of Department may waive the corequisites and prerequisites
35.302	14th Century Literary Texts: Dante	35.200	35.300		These papers are normally available in odd years, 1983, 1985, etc.
35.303	14th Century Literary Texts: Boccaccio and Petrarca	35.200	35.300		

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
35.305 A Special Topic in 20th Century Literature or Culture	35.200	35.300		
*35.310 Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture	35.200	35.300	}	These papers are normally available in even years, 1984, etc.
*35.311 A Special Topic in Italian Renaissance Literature I	35.200	35.300		
*35.312 A Special Topic in Italian Renaissance Literature II	35.200	35.300		
35.321 A Special Topic in Italian Language	35.200	35.300		
35.330 A Special Topic in Italian Literature	35.200	35.300		

## JAPANESE

### Japanese I

81.100 Translation at sight from and into Japanese		**81.101		By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived
81.101 Introduction to the Japanese Language		**81.100		
81.102 Japanese Literature in Translation				

### Japanese II

81.200 Translation at sight from and into Japanese	81.100, 81.101	**81.201, 81.202		By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived
81.201 Intermediate Japanese	81.100, 81.101	**81.200, 81.202		
81.202 Language Acquisition: Modern Japanese	81.100, 81.101	**81.200, 81.201		

### Japanese III

81.300 Translation at sight from and into Japanese	81.200, 81.201, 81.202	**81.301 and 81.302 or 81.303		By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived
81.301 Translation of and comments on prescribed modern texts	81.200, 81.201, 81.202	**81.300 and 81.302 or 81.303		
81.302 Translation of and comments on prescribed classical texts together with questions on the history of Japanese literature	81.200, 81.201, 81.202	**81.300, 81.301		
81.303 Modern Japanese	81.200, 81.201, 81.202	**81.300, 81.301		

## LATIN

### Latin I

09.100 Prescribed Books	09.101	Subject to consent of the Head of Department, students may enrol for either 09.102 or 09.100 and 09.101 or 09.200, 09.201 and 09.202. The Head of Department may waive corequisites in special cases. Students who have passed 09.102 may enrol for 09.100 or 09.101, but may not advance to Stage II without 09.100 and 09.101
09.101 Translation and Language	09.100	
09.102 Elementary Latin		

Note: If 09.100 and 09.101 are taken concurrently they are linked corequisites.

Title of paper		Prerequisite	iction	Qualifications	
Latin II					
09.200	Prescribed books Latin Literature Roman History, Unprepared Translation, Grammatical and Syntactical Analysis or Composition.	09.100, 09.101	**09.201, 09.202	For direct entry see Latin I above. The Head of Department may waive corequisites in special cases	
09.201		09.100, 09.101	**09.200, 09.202		
09.202		09.100, 09.101	**09.200, 09.201		
Latin III					
09.300	Prescribed books, Latin Literature Latin Language, Roman History. Unprepared Translation and Composition	09.200, 09.201, 09.202	**09.301, 09.302	The Head of Department may waive corequisites in special cases	
09.301			**09.300, 09.302		
09.302			**09.300, 09.301		
09.303	Advanced Prose Composition or †Verse Composition	09.300, 09.301 09.302	Permission of Head of Depart- ment required. Not all papers will be available every year		
09.304	Latin Poetry	As for 09.300		**09.300, 09.301, 09.302	
09.305	Literary Topic	As for 09.300		As for 09.304	
09.306	Latin Language	As for 09.300		As for 09.304	09.307
09.307	Roman History	As for 09.300		As for 09.304	09.306
09.308	Pax Romana	As for 09.300	As for 09.304	12.203	

## LINGUISTICS

### Linguistics I

83.102	Introduction to Descriptive Linguistics			
83.103	Introduction to Historical and Comparative Linguistics		83.102 or permission of Head of Department	

### Linguistics II

83.202	Sociolinguistics	83.102 or 03.100	83.102	03.212
83.203	Phonology	83.102		
83.204	Grammatical Analysis	83.102		

### Linguistics III

83.300	Recent Trends in Grammar	Permission of Head of Department		
†83.301	Special Topic in Linguistics	Permission of Head of Department		29.210
†83.302	Oceanic Comparative Linguistics	Permission of Head of Department		
83.303	Languages of Polynesia	83.103 or 04.204		04.305
*83.304	Theory of the Lexicon	Permission of Head of Department		

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
83.305	Linguistic Analysis of Literature	Permission of Head of Department		18.303	
†83.306	Philosophy of Language	Permission of Head of Department		29.202	
83.307	Phonology and New Zealand Speech	Permission of Head of Department		18.304	
83.308	Language and Society	Permission of Head of Department		03.317	
83.309	Field Methods	83.203 and 83.204, or permission of Head of Department			
†83.310	Special Topic in Linguistics	Permission of Head of Department			

## MAORI STUDIES

### Maori Studies I

04.100	Introduction to the Structure of Maori Language				
04.101	Introduction to Maori Society			03.102	Students who have passed any of 04.302, 03.306, 04.202, 03.211, 04.203, 03.208 may not take 04.101
04.104	Introduction to Spoken and Written Maori				Students who have passed U.E. Maori and native speakers of Maori may not take this paper.

### Maori Studies II

04.202	Traditional Maori Society	03.102 or 04.101 or 24.120 or permission of Head of Department		03.211	
04.203	The Coming of the Maori	04.101 or any one of 03.100, 03.101, 03.102, 12.100, 24.120		03.208	
04.204	Second Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts	04.100			} Prerequisite waived for native speakers and those who have passed UE Maori
04.205	Second Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills	04.104			
04.206	A Topic in Maori Material Culture	04.204, 04.205		03.306	

### Maori Studies III

†04.302	Topics in Contemporary Maori Society	04.202 or 03.211 or permission of Head of Department		03.306	
04.303	Maori Oratory: Whaikoorero, Non-Casual Speech Forms	Permission of Head of Department			

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
04.304	Maori Poetry and Song	04.204 or 04.205			
04.305	Languages of Polynesia	83.103 or 04.204		83.303	
04.306	Third Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts	04.204			
04.307	Third Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills.	04.204 and 04.205			
†04.308	Special Topic in Maori Studies	Permission of Head of Department			
†04.309	Special Topic in Maori Studies	Permission of Head of Department			

## MATHEMATICS

### Pure Mathematics

A detailed schedule of the papers available in this subject can be seen by reference to the Schedule to the BSc Regulations

The following rules must be read in conjunction with the schedule:

Six credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage I (BSc) is equivalent to one Stage I paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage II (BSc) is equivalent to one Stage II paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage III (BSc) is equivalent to one Stage III paper in Mathematics (BA)

## MUSIC

**Note:** The number enrolling in certain papers is restricted. Candidates should consult *Calendar Degree course Prescriptions for Department of Music*.

Music I					
28.101	Musicianship	As prescribed under Reg 11 (a)	28.102, 28.103		A candidate planning to enrol in any Stage II papers is reminded that he must have passed papers 28.101, 28.102 and 28.103 with an overall grade of C+ or better.
28.102	Materials of Music		28.101		
28.103	History of Musical Style				
†28.109	Style analysis		28.103		Not available to candidates who are taking or have passed 28.101
Music II					
28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint	} 28.101, 28.102, 28.103 with an grade of C+ or better }	28.209		
	History of Musical Style				
28.203	The Middle ages**				
*28.204	The Renaissance††				
28.205	The Baroque Era**				
*28.206	The Classical Era††				
28.207	The Romantic Era**				
*28.208	The Twentieth Century††				
28.209	Materials and Analysis			One of 28.110, 28.112 or 28.202; one of 28.203 to 28.208	

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
28.214 Ethnomusicology	28.101, 28.102, 28.103 with an overall grade C+ or better	28.209	03.209	
28.215 Orchestration		28.209		
28.216 Studies in Electronic Music		28.209		
*28.217 Music Education		28.209		
28.218 Choral Conducting	B pass in 28.101, 28.102, 28.103	28.209		
†28.221 Technique and Repertoire		28.209		
28.222 History of Church Music	28.101, 28.102, 28.103 with an overall grade of C+ or better	28.209		
28.110 Composition				
28.112 Keyboard Harmony and Score-playing	B pass in 28.101, 28.102, 31.105	28.209		
28.113 Acoustics				
28.122 Introduction to Harmony and counterpoint	28.101, 28.102, 28.103 with an overall grade of C+ or better	28.209	28.202	
<b>Music III</b>				
28.302 Advanced Harmony and Counterpoint	28.209, 28.202 and one of 28.203-208	28.309 and one of 28.303-308		A candidate enrolling for courses in Music III is required to take paper 28.309 and one of 28.303-308
History of Musical Style				
28.303 The Middle Ages**	As for 28.309	28.309	28.203	
*28.304 The Renaissance††			28.204	
28.305 The Baroque**			28.205	
*28.306 The Classical Era††			28.206	
28.307 The Romantic Era**			28.207	
*28.308 The Twentieth Century††			28.208	
28.309 Analysis	28.209, and 28.110 or 28.122 or 28.202, and one of 28.203-208	One of 28.303-308		A candidate planning to enrol for MA in Music is reminded that the passes in 28.309 and one of 28.202, 28.210 or 28.211 and one of 28.303-308 are prerequisites
28.314 Ethnomusicology	28.214 and as for 28.309	28.309	03.318	
28.316 Studies in Contemporary Music	As for 28.309	28.309		
†28.318 Conducting	28.215, 28.209	28.309	28.302	By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived
†28.323 Special Topic	As for 28.309	28.309		
*28.324 Special Topic	As for 28.309	28.309		
28.202 Harmony and Counterpoint	B pass or better in 28.122 and 28.209	28.309		
28.210 Composition (which shall count as two papers)	B pass or better in 28.110 and 28.209			
28.211 Renaissance Polyphony	B pass or better in 28.122 and 28.209			
28.212 Keyboard Harmony and Score-playing	B pass or better in 28.112 and 28.209			

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years

†† Taught in even-numbered years

† This paper may not be taught in the current Calendar year

\* This paper will not be taught in the current Calendar year

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>PHILOSOPHY</b>				
Philosophy I				
29.100	Introduction to Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge			Students planning to enrol in any Philosophy II papers are reminded that they must have passed two Philosophy I papers
29.101	Introduction to Logic			
29.102	Ethics			
29.103	Social Philosophy			
Philosophy II				
†29.200	Philosophy of Mind	Any two of 29.100 to 29.103		83.306  By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived
29.201	Logic II	29.101 and one of 29.100, 29.102, 29.103		
†29.202	Philosophy of Language	As for 29.200		
29.203	Philosophy of Science	As for 29.200		
29.204	Greek Philosophy	As for 29.200		
29.205	Political Philosophy	As for 29.200		
*29.206	History of Scientific Ideas	As for 29.200		
29.207	Philosophy of Religion	As for 29.200		
29.208	Metaphysics II	As for 29.200		
*29.209	History of Philosophy	As for 29.200		
*29.210	Special Topic	As for 29.200		
29.211	Existentialism and Phenomenology	As for 29.200		
†29.212	Special Topic	As for 29.200		
Philosophy III				
29.300	Theory of Knowledge	29.208 and one other Philosophy II paper		26.315  By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites or corequisites may be waived.
*29.301	Metaphysics III	29.101, 29.208 and one other Philosophy II paper		
29.302	History of Philosophy (Ancient and Mediaeval)	29.204 and 29.208		
*29.303	History of Philosophy (Modern)	29.208 and one other Philosophy II paper		
29.304	Ethics	As for 29.303		
29.305	Logic III	29.201 and 29.208		
*29.306	Contemporary Analytic Philosophy	29.101, 29.208 and one other Philosophy II paper		
*29.307	Special Topic	29.208 and one other Philosophy II paper		
†29.308	Special Topic	29.208 and one other Philosophy II paper determined by Head of Department		



Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>POLITICAL STUDIES</b>				
Political Studies I				
30.100 American Government: Themes and Practices in a Liberal Democracy.		One other paper from 30.101, 30.102 or 30.105		In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of the Head of Department, a corequisite may be waived.
30.101 Soviet Communism in Theory and Practice		One other paper from 30.100, 30.102 or 30.105		
30.102 Law, Property and individualism: An Introduction to Political Thinking		One other paper from 30.100, 30.101 or 30.105		
30.105 Public Administration: Central and Local		One other paper from 30.100, 30.101, or 30.102		
Political Studies II				
*30.200 Major Figures in Political Thought	2 papers from 30.100, 30.101, 30.102, 30.103, 30.104, 30.105	One other paper from 30.200-30.209		In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites, and corerequisites may be waived
30.201 British Politics and Society	As for 30.200	As for 30.200		
30.202 New Zealand Parties, Elections and Political Behaviour	As for 30.200	As for 30.200		
30.203 New Zealand Government and Policy-making	As for 30.200	As for 30.200		
30.204 A Topic in the Structure of International Relations: New Zealand and Australian Foreign Policy	As for 30.200	As for 30.200		
30.208 A topic in European Politics: The Politics of Small States – Scandinavia	As for 30.200	As for 30.200		
30.209 Modern Political Ideologies	As for 30.200	As for 30.200		
Political Studies III				
30.301 US Foreign Policy	Two papers from 30.200 to 30.209			In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of the Head of Department, prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites
30.302 Political Development in Africa	As for 30.301			
30.303 Introduction to Statistics and Political Research	As for 30.301			
30.304 Political Learning and Political Behaviour	As for 30.301			
30.305 Studies in Contemporary Political Ideas	As for 30.301			
30.307 The European Community and COMECON: Nationalism Versus Integration in East and West Europe	As for 30.301			

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
*30.308 The Foreign Policy of An Asian Nation: Japan Incorporated	As for 30.301			In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of the Head of the Department, prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites
30.309 Explaining Political Action	As for 30.301			
30.310 Public Administration: Theory and Process	As for 30.301			

## PSYCHOLOGY

### Psychology I

32.108 Introduction to General Psychology			See Note	A candidate who has been credited with courses in Psychology for BSc may be exempted from the corresponding papers in Psychology for BA. Any such papers shall be treated as transferred papers as provided in Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)
32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology			See Note	

**Note:** Any student who has been credited with 32.100, 32.101, 32.103, 32.104, 32.105 or both 33.106 and 107 is not eligible to enrol in papers 32.108 and 109. Any student who has been credited with 33.106 only is not eligible to enrol in 32.109. Any student who has been credited with 33.107 only, may enrol for either 32.108 or 32.109 but not both.

### Psychology II

32.206 Theory and Method: Learning and Motivation	32.100 and 32.101 or 32.102 and 32.103 or 33.106 and 33.107 or 32.108 and 32.108		Students who have passed both 32/33.202 and 32/33.205 prior to 1977 may not enrol in 32.207	In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites
32.207 Sensory Processes: Physiological Psychology				
32.208 Developmental Psychology: Interpersonal Behaviour				

### Psychology III

32.301 Psychology of Individual Differences	Three of 32.201 to 32.205; or 32.206 and 32.207 and 32.208			In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites
32.302 Psychological Theory	As for 32.301			
32.303 Cognitive Process	As for 32.301			
32.304 The Theory and Systems of Personality	As for 32.301			
32.305 Physiological Psychology	As for 32.301			
32.306 The Design of Psychological Experiments	As for 32.301			
32.307 The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing	As for 32.301			
32.308 Research Topic	As for 32.301	Four of 32.301 to 32.311	Enrolment requires approval of the Head of Department	
32.309 Learning	As for 32.301			
*32.310 Comparative Psychology	As for 32.301		32.203	
32.311 Social Behaviour	As for 32.301		32.204	
32.312 Organizational Psychology	As for 32.301 and permission of Head of Department	72.204		

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>RUSSIAN</b>				
Russian I				
43.100 Russian Language Acquisition 1		**43.101	43.111 may not be taken in the same year	By special permission of the Head of Department this restriction may be waived.
43.101 Russian Language Acquisition 2		**43.100	43.111 may not be taken in the same year	By special permission of the Head of Department this restriction may be waived
43.111 Serbo-Croatian Language Acquisition				
43.112 Russian Civilization				
43.113 The Classics of Russian Literature				
Russian II				
43.210 Language Acquisition: Russian	43.100 43.101	**43.211 **43.212	}	By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
43.211 (i) Introduction to Modern Russian and (ii) The Russian Lyric in the Nineteenth Century	43.100 43.101	**43.210 **43.212		
43.212 The Russian Short Story in the Nineteenth Century	43.100 43.101	**43.210 **43.211		
Russian III				
43.310 Language Acquisition: Russian	43.210 43.211 43.212	two from **43.311 to **43.313	}	By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
†43.311 Introduction to Russian and Slavonic Linguistics	43.210 43.211 43.212	**43.310 and either 43.312 or 43.313		
43.312 The Russian Novel in the Nineteenth Century	43.210 43.211 43.212	**43.310 and either 43.311 or 43.313		
43.313 Introduction to Russian Literature of the Twentieth Century	43.210 43.211 43.212	**43.310 and either 43.311 or 43.312		

**SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES**

Scandinavian Studies I				
46.100 Language Acquisition		**46.101	}	By permission of the Head of Department the corequisites may be waived.
46.101 Prescribed texts in Swedish for translation. Selected works of Scandinavian literature, an outline of Scandinavian history, geography and literature		**46.100		

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
Scandinavian Studies II				
46.200 Language Acquisition	46.100, 46.101	**46.201, 46.202	}	By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
46.201 The development of the Scandinavian languages, 20th century Swedish literature	46.100, 46.101	**46.200, 46.202		
46.202 Scandinavian drama	46.100, 46.101	**46.200, 46.201		
Scandinavian Studies III				
46.300 Language Acquisition	46.200, 46.201, 46.202			By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites may be waived

**SOCIOLOGY****Sociology I**

- 82.100 Introduction to Sociology
- 82.101 The Social Structure of New Zealand
- 82.102 A History of Sociological ideas

**Sociology II**

- 82.200 Sociological Theory      Two from 82.100, 82.101, and 82.102
- 82.201 Sociological Method      Two from 82.100, 82.101, and 82.102

By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites or corequisites may be waived in any paper

- 82.202 A Topic in Comparative Sociology. Community Studies

- †82.203 Sociology of a Selected Region

- 82.204 Contemporary Social Problems

- 82.205 Social Stratification

- \*82.206 Regional & Community Development

- †82.207 Sociology of the Family

- 82.208 Special Topic to be prescribed by Head of Department

One of 82.100  
82.102, 82.101

Not available to students who have taken 82.302

**Sociology III**

- 82.300 Industrial Sociology

- 82.301 A Topic in Political Sociology

- \*82.392 A Topic in the Sociology of the Family and Socialization

- 82.303 A Topic in the Sociology of Religion

82.200, 82.201

Not available to students who have taken 82.207

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
82.304 A Topic in Minority and Ethnic Relations	82.200, 82.201			Students including three Stage III Sociology papers in their degree must enrol in 82.31 as one of them
82.305 Social Stratification in Australia and New Zealand				
*82.306 Community Studies				
82.307 Social Change and modernisation				
†82.308 Special Topic — to be prescribed by the Head of Department				Not available to students who took 82.206 in 1982
82.309 Special Topic — to be prescribed by the Head of Department				
83.310 Special Topic to be prescribed by the Head of Department				
†83.311 Special Topic to be prescribed by the Head of Department				
82.312 Sociological Analysis				Not available to students who took 82.308 in 1978 & 1979
†82.313 Sociology of a Selected Region				Not available to students who took 82.203 before 1980
†82.314 Deviance				
82.315 Sociology of the Arts				Not available to students who have sat 82.309 Sociology of the Arts before 1980

NOTE: Students including three Stage III Sociology papers in their degree must attempt 82.312 as one of them.

## SPANISH

### Spanish I

45.100 Language Acquisition		**45.101 or 45.103	No candidate may be credited with both 45.100 and 45.102	The marks for 45.100 shall bear a relative weighting of 3 to 2 for each of the corequisite papers.
45.101 20th Century Literary Texts		**45.100		By permission of the Head of the Department corequisite requirements may be waived.
45.102 Language: Oral, Aural and Translation from Spanish to English				
45.103 Contemporary Hispanic Civilisation		**45.100		

### Spanish II

45.200 Language Acquisition	45.100	**Two other Spanish II papers		The marks for 45.200 shall bear a relative weighting of 3 to 2 for each of the corequisite papers
45.201 Medieval and Golden Age Literary Texts	45.100 and 45.101 or 45.103	**45.200 and one other Spanish II paper		

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
45.202	19th and 20th Century Literary Texts	As for 45.201	As for 45.201		By special permission of the Head of the Department a candidate may present one or more papers at Stage II level provided that he has passed in one Stage I paper
45.203	Literary Analysis with Prescribed Texts				
45.204	Twentieth Century Latin American Texts				
Spanish III					
45.300	Language Acquisition	45.200	Two from **45.301-45.305		The marks for 45.300 shall bear a relative weighting of 3 to 2 for each of the corequisite papers
45.301	Medieval Literary Texts	45.200 and two other Spanish II papers	**45.300 and one from **45.302-305		
45.302	Golden Age Literary Texts	As for 45.301	**45.300 and one from **45.301, 45.303-45.305		By special permission of the Head of the Department a candidate may present: (a) 45.300 only provided that he has passed in 45.200, (b) one or more papers other than 45.300, provided that he has passed in either 45.200 or in one Stage I paper
45.303	19th Century Literary Texts		**45.300 and one from **45.301, 45.302, 45.304-45.305		
45.304	20th Century Literary Texts		**45.300 and one from **45.301-45.303 and 45.305		
45.305	20th Century Latin American Literary Texts		**45.300 and one from **45.301-45.304		

---

**Group B**


---

Subject	
Accounting	Papers 01.102 and 01.103 as prescribed for the Degree of BCom.
Management Studies	Management Studies papers as prescribed for the Degree of BCom.
*72.200	Any four Part I papers
72.203	or BA/BCom equivalents
72.204	
72.303	72.200 or 72.203;
72.307	and 72.204
72.311	
Applied Mathematics	Six credits in each subject Stage I (Bsc) is equivalent to one Stage I paper in that subject (BA)
Botany	Four credits in each subject at Stage II (BSc) is equivalent to one Stage II paper in subject (BA)
Computer Science	Four credits in each subject at Stage III (BSc) is equivalent to one Stage III paper in that subject (BA)
Chemistry	
Environmental Studies	
Geology	
Physics	
Physiology	
Zoology	

\* Starred papers will not be taught during the current Calendar year.

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current Calendar year unless sufficient staff is available.

\*\* Linked corequisite papers must be attempted in the same year and will not be credited separately.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ARTS

### MA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Arts shall before his enrolment for this Degree

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, except as provided in Regulation 2 below, and

(b) (i) have fulfilled the prerequisites for his subject as listed in the Schedule to these Regulations and have obtained a grade higher than an average of C in the Stage III papers in the subject he proposes to attempt for MA;

(ii) provided that in special circumstances where the Head of Department so recommends the Senate may accept an average grade of less than C+ or waive such prerequisites as it thinks fit.

2. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate may enrol for this Degree after having completed at least nineteen papers, including eleven papers at advanced level, for the Bachelor of Arts Degree, provided that

(a) his proposed course for this Degree will extend over not fewer than two academic years;

(b) he has obtained grades averaging B – or above in the advanced papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree of the subject which he proposes to take for this Degree;

(c) he satisfies the conditions in Regulation 1(b) above, or is exempted from them;

(d) the remaining paper or papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree are not in the subject which he proposes to take for this Degree nor prerequisite to it;

(e) he enrolls for these two papers in the first year of his course for this Degree;

(f) should he not pass the remaining paper or papers in the first year of his Master of Arts course, his Master's course shall be suspended until he has passed the remaining paper or papers.

3. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of study that may extend over one year or more according to the requirements for the respective subjects in the Schedule but, except with the special permission of the Senate, shall not exceed three years in duration.

4. A candidate presenting subject 17, Languages and Literature, shall satisfy the requirements of Regulation 1(b) (i) in respect of each of the languages in his course. A candidate presenting subject 21 Mathematics, shall satisfy the requirements of Regulation 1(b) (i) in respect of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.

5. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements and pass the examination in one of the subjects prescribed in the Schedule provided that the Head of Department may require a student who fails to achieve a sufficient level in his paper or papers to substitute a further paper or papers for a thesis, dissertation or research essay where these are prescribed.

6. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a candidate for this Degree may with the permission of the Senate take:

(i) one Stage III or one Master's paper or:

(ii) one Stage III and one Master's paper or:

(iii) two Master's papers, in a subject other than the one in which he is taking his Degree, or:

(iv) two Master's papers or one Master's and one Stage III paper in

subjects that both differ from the one in which he is taking this Degree, if in each case such a paper is related to the candidate's research interests. Each such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the Master's course of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.

7. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other paper he has passed or is taking and obtain credit for both for this Degree.

8. No candidate who has previously failed in a subject for this degree shall enrol a second time in the same subject without the permission of the Senate. For the purpose of this regulation, subject 17 Languages and Literature and any one of the individual subjects which under Clause 16 of the appended Schedule may be used to make up a combined Languages and Literature course, shall be regarded as the same subject..

9. The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Head of Department.

**Theses**

10. Where a thesis is required the following conditions shall apply.

(a) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject; or with the approval of the Senate shall consist of a review of the literature of some special problem, which may be combined with the repetition of some standard investigation on an aspect of that problem.

(b) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, a certificate shall be supplied to the Registrar by the supervisor stating that laboratory work has been carried out within the University.

(c) Except where otherwise provided in the schedule, the candidate must present his thesis in the year in which he first sits papers for his degree or, with the consent of the Head of Department concerned, in either of the subsequent two years, provided that the time may be extended, in exceptional cases, by Senate.

(d) The candidate shall submit his thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the academic year in which it is presented or at a subsequent date within that academic year if so arranged with the Head of his Department. The Registrar shall deliver the thesis to the Head of the Department concerned.

(e) If the examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date specified by the examiner and approved by Senate.

11. Where a dissertation or research essay is required the following conditions shall apply.

(a) The candidate shall present the dissertation or research essay in the year prescribed under the appropriate Departmental heading in the Schedule

(b) Except as provided in the Schedule, the candidate shall submit the dissertation or research essay to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which it is due to be completed or at a subsequent date within the same academic year if so approved by the Head of Department concerned, provided that the period may be extended, in exceptional cases, by Senate. The Registrar shall deliver the dissertation or research essay to the Head of Department.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of a thesis, dissertation or research essay, see Examination Regulation 14.

**Honours**

12.(a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

(b) Honours shall be awarded only if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers taken and in the thesis at its first presentation, provided that, subject to sub-clause (c) of this Regulation, a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:

(i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in papers not in excess of the number permitted to a candidate for Honours under the Examination Regulations, or

(ii) to sit or resit in the year next following all the papers affected, or

(iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to sit or resit the remainder as in (ii) above.

(c) A candidate permitted under Regulation 3 to take a course of study for this Degree for a longer period than three academic years shall not be eligible for honours unless the Senate so decides.

13. A candidate shall not take for this Degree a subject in which he has already passed for the Degree of Master of Commerce, or for the Degree of Master of Science, or as a principal subject for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours).

14. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Departments concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations or to the Schedule below.

**Schedule****(1) Ancient History**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject of Ancient History including three Stage III papers OR six papers in Ancient History if a student has passed three Stage III papers in Latin or Greek.

**Requirements:** Four papers and a special subject which counts as two papers and an essay which counts as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 12.400–12.414, except that one paper not already taken may be taken from 12.300–12.332. The special subject shall be one of those from 12.502/512 to 12.520/12.530.



Normally a candidate shall present three or four papers in the first year and the remaining paper (if any), the special subject (2 papers) and essay (12.603) or dissertation (12.604) in the next year following.

A candidate in full time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to take three papers in the first year, the special subject in the second year and one paper and the essay or dissertation in the third year OR (with special permission) two papers in the first year, the special subject and one paper in the second year and one paper and the essay or dissertation in the third year. Other combinations may be approved by the Head of Department in special cases provided that candidates for Honours must complete the work within three years.

## (2) Anthropology

*Prerequisites:* Either eight papers in Anthropology and Maori Studies, or Anthropology and Linguistics, including three Stage III papers in Anthropology;

*Requirements:* Seven papers, or four papers and a thesis (03.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 03.400 to 03.419, 03.300 to 03.333, 83.300 to 03.310, 04.302 to 04.307 with no more than three papers from the following group of papers: 03.300 to 03.333, 83.300 to 03.310, 04.302 to 04.309.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year and if taking seven papers, present the remaining papers in the following year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present three papers in the first year, or in special circumstances, two papers in the first year, and if taking seven papers, shall present all papers within three years of first enrolment for the Degree.

## (3) Art History

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Art History including three Stage III papers plus a pass in Stage I of Greek, Latin or a modern European language other than English.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (19.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from eight papers 19.400 to 19.409; or three papers 19.400 to 19.409 and one paper from options prescribed for Art History III; provided that no paper that has been credited to the degree of Bachelor of Arts shall be taken for this Degree, and that papers 19.305 and 19.401 may not both be taken for this Degree. A candidate shall present the four papers in the first year: except that a candidate in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to spread the papers over two years, at least two being taken in the first year.

## (4) Asian Studies

*Prerequisites:* Three Stage III papers in an Asian language: and such Stage II or III papers in the other subjects as the respective Heads of Departments shall approve.

*Requirements:* Five papers and a thesis (97.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a dissertation or research essay (97.604) which counts as one paper.

In either case candidates shall include three papers selected from those available at Masters level in Chinese, Indonesian or Japanese subject to the approval of the Head of Department. The remaining two or three papers shall, subject to the approval of the Heads of Departments, be selected from the Masters papers in one or two different subjects. At the discretion of the Heads of Departments one Stage III paper may be substituted for one of these Masters papers. In the thesis or dissertation, sources in the Asian language being studied will be used.

## (5) Chinese

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Chinese including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Six papers and a dissertation (48.604) which counts as one paper.

Papers 48.400 and 48.401 and four others selected from 48.402 to 48.417.

A candidate may present the six papers and a dissertation in the same year or four papers in the first year including 48.400 to 48.401, and the two papers and dissertation in the year next following. The dissertation must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course provided this period may be extended to 28 February of the following year with the permission of the Head of Department and provided further that the time may be extended by the Senate in special cases.

## (6) Economics

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Economics including three Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** Six papers; or four papers and a thesis (13.601) which counts as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (13.603) which counts as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 13.400 to 13.413.

A candidate presenting five papers and a research essay or six papers shall either present all papers and the research essay in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present the remaining two papers or the one paper and research essay in the year next following.

### **(7) Education**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject Education including three Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** (i) Four papers and a thesis (14.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 14.400 to 14.418.

OR (ii) Four papers and a folio of casework (14.606) in the area of guidance and counselling with associated seminars counting three papers. The four papers shall include 14.405, 14.410 and two other papers approved by the Head of Department. No more than ten students chosen on academic criteria and personal qualities may in any one year be permitted to prepare a folio of casework in guidance and counselling. Those not so chosen may complete this Degree by presenting a thesis.

OR (iii) Four papers and a folio of casework (14.607) in the area of reading problems with associated seminars counting three papers. The four papers include 14.407, 14.412 and two other papers approved by the Head of Department. No more than ten students chosen on academic criteria and personal qualities may in any one year be permitted to prepare a folio of casework and attend a seminar course on Achieving Change in Low Reading Performance. Those not so chosen may complete this Degree by presenting a thesis.

OR (iv) Five papers and a thesis (14.611) which counts as two papers.

In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may permit a candidate who has commenced a thesis or folio of casework instead to complete the MA as either:

(v) Six papers and a dissertation (14.604) which counts as one paper

OR (vi) Seven papers.

A candidate may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be permitted to present three papers or two papers in the first year and remaining papers in the year next following.

**Note:** In considering applications to attempt two or three papers only in the first year, the Head of Department may take into account the extent of a student's employment or other responsibilities outside the University.

### **(8) English**

**Prerequisites:** (i) Two approved papers in a language other than English (normally two Stage I papers of a European language or two approved language papers from Maori Studies) and

(ii) Eight papers in English including 3 papers at Stage III chosen in accordance with the corequisites.

**Requirements:** Seven papers; or five papers and a thesis (18.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a dissertation (18.604) which counts as one paper. A research essay (18.603) may be substituted for the dissertation.

A candidate presenting

(a) Seven papers or

(b) Six papers and a research essay or dissertation shall present all papers or all papers and the research essay or dissertation in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present the remaining three papers or two papers and research essay or dissertation in the year next following. Other combinations may be presented only with permission of the Head of Department, provided that no candidate may present fewer than three papers in the first year. The papers shall be selected from 18.400 to 18.407, 18.409 to 18.422, 18.424 to 18.428 and from (but shall include not more than one of) the Stage III English papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.

### **(9) French**

**Prerequisites:** Eight papers in the subject French including three Stage III papers.

**Requirements:** Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (34.601) which counts as three papers.

Paper 34.400 and either six or three papers selected from 34.401 to 34.423. Paper 34.421 may only be taken with the permission of the Head of Department.

A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the same year or having presented four papers, one of which shall be paper 34.400, in the first year, shall present, with the approval of the Head of the Department, his thesis or the remaining three papers in the year next following. Other combinations may be presented only with permission of the Head of Department, provided that no candidate may present fewer than three papers in the first year.

### (10) Geography

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Geography including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (20.601) which counts as three papers. A candidate shall present four papers in the first year, and the thesis in the following year. In exceptional circumstances a candidate may, with the consent of the Head of Department be permitted to present the papers in two consecutive years with at least two papers in the first year, the thesis then being submitted in the third year.

Papers shall be selected from 20.400 to 20.442.

### (11) German

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject German including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or, with the approval of the Head of Department, five papers and a thesis (22.601) which shall count as two papers. Paper 22.400 and six papers selected from 22.401 to 22.440.

A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, shall present the remaining three papers, or the thesis and one paper, in the year next following.

Those students taking their MA over two years in this Department may present all papers at the end of their second year, if they have within their first year been officially admitted to a university of a German-speaking country to pursue a course of bona-fide study for no longer than six months.

### (12) Greek

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Greek including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Six papers, comprising 10.400 and 10.401 and four papers selected from 10.402 to 10.408. By special permission of the Head of Department a student may be allowed to substitute another paper for 10.401. The choice of papers is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

A candidate in full time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to spread the papers over two years, provided that at least three papers are taken in the first year. Normally three papers will be taken in each year.

### (13) History

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subjects History or Asian History or both including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Five papers and a research essay (24.603) which shall count as one paper; or four papers and a thesis (24.601) which shall count as two papers.

The papers shall be selected from 24.400 to 24.423.

A candidate presenting a research essay may attempt the five papers and present the essay in one year, or attempt four papers in the first year and present the remaining paper and research essay in the second year, or with the permission of the Head of Department attempt three papers in the first year and present the remaining two papers and research essay in the second year. A candidate presenting a thesis must attempt four papers in the first year.

### (14) Indonesian

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Indonesian including three papers at Stage III or Masters level.

*Requirements:* Six papers and a dissertation (80.604) which counts as one paper.

Papers 80.400, 80.401, 80.402 and three papers selected from 80.403 to 80.409.

A candidate may present the six papers and a dissertation in the same year or four papers in the first year and the two papers and the dissertation in the year next following.

The dissertation must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course provided that this period may be extended to 28 February of the following year with permission of the Head of Department and provided further that the time may be extended by the Senate in special cases.

### (15) Italian

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Italian including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (35.601) which counts as three papers. Paper 35.400 and either six or three papers selected from 35.401 to 35.424.

A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the same year or having presented four papers, one of which shall be paper 35.400, in the first year, shall present, with the approval of the Head of the Department, the thesis or the remaining three papers in the year next following.

## (16) Japanese

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Japanese including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Six papers and a dissertation (81.604) which counts as one paper.

Papers 81.400, 81.401 and four papers selected from 81.402 to 81.408.

A candidate may present the six papers and a dissertation in the same year or four papers in the first year including 81.400, 81.401 and the two papers and the dissertation in the next year following.

The dissertation must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course provided that this period may be extended to 28 February of the following year with permission of the Head of the Department and provided further that the time may be extended by the Senate in special cases.

## (17) Languages and Literature

*Prerequisites:* For the specific prerequisites for the individual courses a candidate is referred to the individual subjects making up a combined Languages and Literature course.

*Requirements:* Seven papers in any two of the subjects (i) to (viii); three papers to be taken from each language chosen and the seventh paper to be taken from either language chosen to be approved by the Head of the Department concerned.

### (i) English

Two papers selected from 18.400 to 18.403 inclusive and one or two other papers from 18.404 to 18.407, 18.409 to 18.422 and 18.424 to 18.428. This selection of papers may be varied by permission of the Heads of the Departments concerned.

### (ii) Greek

Paper 10.400, and two or three from 10.401 to 10.408.

### (iii) Latin

Paper 9.400 and two or three from 9.401 to 9.407.

### (iv) French

Paper 34.400 and two or three from 34.401 to 34.423.

### (v) German

Three or four papers from 22.400 to 22.440.

### (vi) Italian

Paper 35.400 and two or three from 35.401 to 35.420.

### (vii) Russian

Paper 43.410 and two or three from 43.411 to 43.425.

### (viii) Spanish

Paper 45.400 and two or three from 45.401 to 45.419.

A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the first year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present three papers in the year next following.

## (18) Latin

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Latin including three Stage III papers, together with Greek 10.100, 10.101 or approved alternatives.

*Requirements:* Six papers comprising 09.400 and 09.401 and four other papers selected from 09.402 to 09.407. By special permission of the Head of Department a student may be allowed to substitute another paper for 09.401. The choice of papers is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

A candidate in full time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to spread the papers over two years, provided that at least three papers are taken in the first year. Normally three papers will be taken in each year.

## (19) Linguistics

*Prerequisites:* Either eight papers in the subject Linguistics including three papers at Stage III level; or, with the permission of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, five papers in the subject Linguistics and three papers at Stage III level in the subject Maori Studies or in a language subject other than English.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (83.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 83.400 to 83.404, 83.300 to 83.310 except that not more than two papers may be selected from 83.300 to 83.310.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in the first year and two papers in the following year.

### (20) Maori Studies

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Maori Studies including three papers at Stage III level.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (04.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 04.400 to 04.402 and 04.302 to 04.309 except that not more than two papers may be selected from 04.302 to 04.309.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in the first year and two papers in the following year.

### (21) Mathematics

*Prerequisites:* Mathematics 220 or 221, 240 or 241, at least one of 260, 280, 281 plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Mathematics and Statistics Department.

Of those twenty credits at least 16 shall be from courses in Mathematics and Computer Science, except that in special circumstances the Head of Department may approve a minimum of 12 such credits from Mathematics and Computer Science.

*Requirements:* Papers totalling 20 credits and a thesis (26.601) which will count as 16 credits or papers totalling 20 credits and an advanced course of study (26.605) which will count as 16 credits.

A selection approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics of papers from Mathematics 400 to 499 and Computer Science 490 to 499 with total value as shown in the *Prescriptions* of 20 credits together with a thesis or an advanced course of study, provided that up to four of these credits may be replaced by four stage three credits from papers in Mathematics and Computer Science not already taken for any degree or Diploma.

### (22) Music

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Music including 28.309, at least one of 28.202, 28.210 and 28.211 and at least one of 28.303 to 28.308; the candidate must satisfy the Head of the Department of his proficiency as a performer and his ability to read an approved language other than English.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (28.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall consist of 28.423, at least one of 28.402, 28.406, 28.407, 28.409, 28.414, and the remainder selected from 28.400 to 28.402, 28.404 to 28.407, 28.409, 28.411, 28.414 to 28.416, 28.419 and 28.422. Candidates may with the approval of the Head of the Department include one paper not previously taken from those listed for Music III, but their course must include two examinable papers from 28.400 to 28.402, 28.404 to 28.407, 28.409, 28.414, 28.419 and 28.422.

### (23) Philosophy

*Prerequisites:* Either: Eight papers including 29.101 and 29.306 and three other Stage III papers in the subject Philosophy.

Or: Eight papers including 29.101 and 29.306 in the subject Philosophy with two other Stage III papers in Philosophy and three other Stage III papers in any subject or subjects.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (29.601) which shall count as three papers. One and only one paper may be selected from those at Philosophy III (29.300 to 29.308) which the student has not previously passed. All other papers must be selected from 29.400 to 29.420. A candidate shall present either all papers in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, either present the remaining three papers in the year following or, with the approval of the Head of Department, a thesis.

The Head of Department may, in special circumstances (e.g. if the student is part time), approve a different sequence of papers over a period of time which accords with Regulation 3, no less than two papers being taken in any one year.

### (24) Political Studies

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subjects Political Studies and Asian Politics including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (30.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research

essay (30.603) which shall count as one paper; or seven papers.

The papers shall be selected from 30.400 to 30.413.

Each candidate shall present four papers in the first year and the remainder in the year next following, except that, with the consent of the Head of Department, the candidate may present three papers in the first year and the remainder in the year next following or, in special circumstances, four papers in the first year, two in the second year and the remainder in the third.

A candidate presenting a research essay must submit it at the end of the second term in the year of presentation.

### **(25) Psychology**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Psychology including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers, or four papers and a thesis (32.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 32.401 to 32.421. Except with special permission of the Head of Department, a candidate may enrol for a thesis subsequent to the first year of enrolment for this Degree only if he obtains an average grade of at least B- in the four papers.

A candidate shall present 4 papers in the first year and if taking 7 papers present the remaining papers in the following year. A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to present 3 papers or in special circumstances, 2 papers in the first year; and if taking 7 papers shall present the papers within three years of first enrolment for the degree.

**Note:** From 1984 students who have not passed 32.306 will be required to take paper 32.419.

### **(26) Russian**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Russian including three Stage III papers (43.310 and two others).

*Requirements:* Seven papers, or five papers and a thesis (43.601) which shall count as two papers. Papers 43.410 and at least one paper from 43.411 to 43.416 and at least one from 43.418 to 43.425. Paper 43.418 is a requirement for students intending to present a thesis in Russian literature. A candidate presenting seven papers may present four papers in the first year and the remaining three papers in the year next following, or, with the consent of the Head of Department, three papers in the first year and the remaining four in the next following. A candidate presenting a thesis shall present either four or five papers in the first year and the remaining paper (if any) and the thesis in the year next following.

### **(27) Sociology**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Sociology including three Stage III papers (normally including 82.312).

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (82.601) equivalent to 3 papers.

OR 6 papers and a research paper (82.603.)

A candidate shall present either all papers in the same year, or not fewer than three papers in the first year and the remaining paper or papers in the year following. The date for the presentation of the research paper shall be not later than 1st of November in the year for which enrolment is accepted.

### **(28) Spanish**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Spanish including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (45.601) which counts as three papers.

Paper 45.400 and either six or three papers selected from 45.401 to 45.421. A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the same year or, having presented four papers, one of which shall be paper 45.400, in the first year, shall present, with the approval of the Head of Department, the thesis or the remaining three papers in the year next following. Other combinations may be presented only with permission of the Head of Department, provided that no candidate may present fewer than three papers in the first year.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF ANTHROPOLOGY

The Department of Anthropology includes three subjects: Anthropology, Maori Studies and Linguistics.

Some papers in this Department are offered under more than one subject. Such a paper will be listed under the same short title, but with a different code number for each subject. Thus *Introduction to Maori Society* is listed both under Anthropology with the code number 03.102, and Maori Studies, with the code number 04.101. Students will choose the subject under which they wish to take such double-listed papers.

No paper may be credited twice to the same degree.

**Note:**\* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

† This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

### Anthropology Stage I Level

#### Social Anthropology Papers

#### 03.100 Introduction to Social Anthropology

Basic anthropological issues and approaches to the study of culture.

(1 hour lecture per week, 1 hour tutorial; taught in two streams)

#### 03.102 Introduction to Maori Society

Traditional Maori society; the effects of European contact; the contemporary culture. This same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.101. Students who have already passed 03.211/04.202 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.306/04.302 may not take this paper.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour tutorial)

#### Prehistory paper

#### 03.101 Elementary Prehistoric Archaeology and Physical Anthropology

Biological variation and evolution in human populations; evolution of the human species; evolution of culture up to the emergence of the first cities.

(1 hour lecture per week and 1 hour tutorial; taught in two streams)

### Anthropology Stage II Level

Students should note that papers 03.200, 03.201, 03.202, 03.203, 03.204, 03.206, 03.207, 03.208 and 03.209 are pre or corequisite to certain Stage III and MA papers. Papers 03.200, 03.201, 03.202, 03.203, 03.204, 03.206, 03.207, 03.210 and 03.213 are available to a candidate who has not completed the normal prerequisite, provided that he has passed four papers

in any subject, or subjects, and takes the normal prerequisites as a corequisite.

#### Social Anthropology Papers

#### 03.200 Ethnography of Island Polynesia

A survey of a number of pre-European and contemporary rural Polynesian societies with emphasis on traditional Polynesian social, economic and political organisation. Prerequisite 03.100

(2 hour lecture)

#### 03.201 Melanesian Ethnography

A survey of Melanesian societies, with emphasis on traditional and changing social, economic, political and cultural features, especially on the village level. Prerequisite 03.100

(2 hour lecture, discussion; taught in two streams)

#### 03.202 Social Organisation

A survey of various methods for the description and analysis of social organisation. Prerequisite 03.100.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial required)

#### 03.203 Ethos and World View

Anthropological approaches to belief systems. Prerequisite 03.100

(1 hour lecture, followed by 1 hour discussion; tutorials as necessary)

#### 03.210 Ethnic Groups and Inter-ethnic Relationships

Anthropological approaches to ethnicity. Prerequisite 03.100

(2 hour lecture and discussion)

#### 03.211 Traditional Maori Society

Some accounts of traditional Maori life.

Prerequisites: 03.102 or 04.101 or 24.120 or permission of Head of Department

(1 hour lecture, 1 tutorial fortnightly required)

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.202.

#### 03.212 Sociolinguistics

The study of language in its social context. Prerequisite: 03.100, plus 83.102 as corequisite; or 83.102, plus 03.100 as corequisite

The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.202.

(2 hours per week)

#### 03.213 Development of Ethnography

A historical survey of various ethnographies and schools of social anthropology. Prerequisite: 03.100 Restriction: 03.300

(1 hour lecture followed by 1 hour discussion)

**Prehistory and Physical Anthropology Papers****03.204 Economic Prehistory**

The evolution of human economic systems. Prerequisite: 03.101

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour tutorial fortnightly required)

**03.206 Origins of Civilisation**

The study of the early civilisations of the Near East and a comparative survey of early Chinese, American and other civilisations.

Prerequisite 03.101

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial required)

**03.207 Human Evolution**

The evolution of humankind; the fossil evidence for human evolution as well as comparative data on the other primates and from fields such as behavioural genetics and neurology. One term is spent looking at the evolution of the brain and specifically human behaviours such as language.

Prerequisite 03.101, 03.100

(1 hour lecture, regular 2 hour tutorial/labs arranged)

**03.208 The Coming of the Maori**

Polynesian origins, initial adaptations to New Zealand, local cultural development, classic Maori society, history to 1840 A.D. Prerequisite any one of 03.100, 03.101, 03.102 or Maori Studies 04.101, or Ancient History 12.100, or History 24.120

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.203.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial required).

Field trips and short practical project required)

**Ethnomusicology Papers****03.209 Music of the World's Peoples**

Corequisites: 28.101, 28.102, 28.103

The same paper is offered as Music 28.214. For prescription see under Music Department.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour listening)

**Anthropology Stage III Level**

Students should note that paper 03.308 is a prerequisite to paper 03.401 at MA level

**Social Anthropology Papers****\*03.300 History of Anthropology**

Anthropology and its history of ideas – the theorists, the theories, and their social contexts.

Prerequisite: 03.100. Corequisites: 03.202, or any two of 03.200, 03.201, 03.203, 03.210, 03.211, 04.202

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**\*03.301 Kinship and Marriage**

A survey of the anthropological literature on kinship and marriage with emphasis on different models of

interpretation. Prerequisite 03.100; corequisite 03.202 (2 hour lecture/seminar)

**03.302 Contemporary Problems in Social Anthropology**

Selected contemporary issues in social anthropology.

Prerequisite 03.202 or 03.203

(2 hour lecture and discussion)

**\*03.303 Political Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.100; corequisite 03.202, although students are strongly advised to take 03.202 before enrolling in this paper

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**03.304 Anthropology of Law**

An anthropological study of legal processes and their interrelationship with polity, social control, legitimacy, and morality in various cultural contexts.

Prerequisite: one of 03.202, 03.210, 03.211/04.202, 03.306/04.302

Restriction: 25.325

**\*03.305 Special Topic in Melanesia**

Prerequisite: 03.100; corequisite 03.201

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**†03.306 Topics in Contemporary Maori Society**

A survey of current Maori institutions, social groupings and events.

Prerequisites: 03.211 or Maori Studies 04.202 or permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture and discussion)

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.302.

**03.307 Folk Classification**

Studies of the ways information about human beings and their environment is ordered in different cultures with particular attention to classifications of animals and plants.

Prerequisite: 03.100; corequisite 03.202, although prior completion of this paper will be to the student's advantage

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**\*03.310 Social Movements**

The origins, structure, and ideology of a variety of movements of protest and change.

Prerequisite: 03.100 and permission of Head of Department

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**03.311 Studies in Oral Literature**

Various theoretical frameworks and analytical techniques are applied to a body of oral literature from the Pacific.

Prerequisite: 03.202 or 03.203. Recommended 03.200 (2 hour seminar)



**\*03.312 Ecological Studies in Anthropology**

Environmental relations in man-dominated ecosystems.

Prerequisites: 03.202; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department  
(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**\*03.313 Contemporary Polynesia**

A survey of recent social, economic and political changes in Fiji and Island Polynesia.

Corequisite 03.200; prerequisite 03.100  
(2 hour lecture)

**03.317 Language and Society**

The ethnography of communication.

Prerequisites: 03.100, and permission of Head of Department. The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.308  
(2 hour lecture)

**03.320 The Anthropology of Agriculture**

Ecological and economic aspects of interactions between plants and human subsistence activities in traditional and developing societies, with emphasis on Pacific humid tropics.

Prerequisites: 03.101 and 03.202; or 03.100 and 03.101 and permission of Head of Department  
Restrictions: 03.321  
(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**\*03.321 Economic Anthropology**

Non-industrial economic institutions in traditional and changing social settings.

Prerequisites: 03.202, or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department  
(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**03.322 Regional Ethnography**

Urban Anthropology

Prerequisite: 03.202, or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department

**†03.323 Ethnohistory**

Prerequisites: 03.202 or 03.200 or 03.201, or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department  
(2 hour lecture seminar)

**\*03.324 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Prerequisites: three papers in Social Anthropology and permission of Head of Department

**†03.328 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.100 and 03.211/04.202

**03.329 Contemporary South Pacific Societies**

Recent cultural, social, economic and political developments in Melanesia, Fiji and Island Polynesia.

Prerequisite: 03.200 or 03.201

Restrictions: 03.305 and 03.313  
(2 hour lecture/discussion)

**03.332 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.100 and permission of Head of Department

**†03.333 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.100 and permission of Head of Department

**Prehistory and Physical Anthropology Papers****03.308 History, Theory and Introduction to Method in Archaeology**

Prerequisites: 03.101, and either 03.204 or 03.208/04.203 or permission of Head of Department.  
Corequisite: 03.100  
(2 hour lecture/tutorial)

**03.309 Advanced Physical Anthropology**

A choice of topics in advanced physical anthropology that allows a consideration of the relevance of information from the study of human biology to the understanding of our species. Primate sexuality, behaviour and social structure are examined comparatively and in an evolutionary framework.

Prerequisite: 03.207 (or permission of the Head of Department given appropriate science papers)  
(2 hour lecture/seminar, regular tutorial/labs arranged)

**†03.314 Problems in Asian Prehistory and Physical Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisite: either 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203  
(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**03.315 Regional Prehistory: Oceania**

Archaeology, prehistory, historical linguistics, settlement pattern, and ethnohistory of a region.

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisite: 03.208, or 04.203  
(2 hour lecture/tutorial)

**\*03.316 Regional Prehistory**

Prerequisites: 03.101

Corequisites: one of 03.204, 03.206, 03.207, 03.208/04.203  
(2 hour lecture/seminar weekly)

**03.319 Roman History**

Britain from the Iron Age to the Anglo Saxons (c. AD 800).

Prerequisites: 12.103 and 03.101, or permission of the Head of Department

(1 hour lecture twice weekly)

The same paper is offered as Ancient History 12.303. For prescription, see under Ancient History III. (Students taking this paper for anthropology do not have to take language option).

### **03.325 Experimental and Ethnographic Archaeology**

Prerequisites: 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

### **03.327 Special Topic in Physical Anthropology**

For 1983: Human Osteology for the Archaeologist

Prerequisite: 03.207 or permission of Head of Department given appropriate science papers

(1 hour lecture/seminar; 2 hours practical work per week)

### **†03.330 Special Topic in Archaeology**

For 1983: Problems in Far Eastern and Australasian Prehistory

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisites: 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203

(2 hour lecture/tutorial; some lab work required)

### **03.331 Special Topic in Prehistory**

For 1983: Archaeological Resource Management

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisites 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203

(2 hour lecture/seminar; 5 days field work required)

## **Ethnomusicology**

### **03.318 Music of Oceania**

Prerequisite: 03.209, Corequisite: 28.209

(1 hour lecture)

The same paper is offered as Music 28.314. For prescription see under Music Department.

## **Anthropology for MA and Honours**

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate may present either seven papers, or four papers and a thesis (03.601) counting as three papers.

Students wishing to regard their degree as a qualification in social anthropology are required to take not fewer than three 03.400 level papers, other than "Special Topic" papers, in this subdiscipline, and when their course consists entirely of papers, to take not fewer than four such papers. Students wishing to regard their degree as a qualification in prehistory or physical anthropology are required to take 03.401 or 03.412 and at least one other paper in Anthropology at 03.400 level, and, where their course consists entirely of papers, are required to take 03.409.

Full-time students are, except with the special per-

mission of Senate, required to present four papers in their first year of enrolment and either three papers or a thesis in their second year. Part-time students who are engaged in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present three papers in the first year or in special circumstances two papers in the first year; and if taking seven papers shall present all papers within three years of first enrolment for the degree.

Students presenting theses who are candidates for scholarships and prizes will be required to meet appropriate deadlines determined by their supervisors and Head of Department.

## **Social Anthropology Papers**

### **03.400 Advanced Theory in Social Anthropology**

A study of several contemporary theoretical works which focus upon central issues in anthropology or attempt to undertake a critical re-assessment of basic premises.

Prerequisites: at least two papers from 03.300–03.307, 03.310–03.313, 03.317, 03.320–03.323, 03.328–03.329, 03.332

(2 hour seminar)

### **03.402 Advanced Topic in the Social Anthropology of Polynesia**

Recent studies of Polynesian culture are examined and past studies re-examined from a comparative and structural/historical perspective.

(2 hour seminar)

### **03.404 Ritual and Symbolism**

Anthropological interpretations of religion, ritual and systems of belief.

(2 hour seminar)

### **03.405 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

### **03.408 Ethical Problems in Social Research**

An examination of questions of responsibility, relevance, and the place of values in the conduct of social research.

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

### **†03.411 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Topic to be announced.

### **†03.413 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Topic to be announced.

### **03.414 Field Methods in Social Anthropology**

An examination of the experience, methods and techniques of anthropological fieldwork, in relation to particular research problems.

(2 hour seminar)

**03.415 Research topic in Social Anthropology**

Corequisites: at least two 03.400 level papers in social anthropology excluding those labelled "Special Topic". This paper is not available to students who are intending to enrol for a thesis (03.601), except with special permission of Head of Department.

**\*03.417 Classification in its Social Context**

Recent developments in the study of folk classification.

**†03.419 Topic in Social Anthropology**

For 1983: Special topics selected in consultation with appropriate staff according to field of research.  
(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**Prehistory and Physical Anthropology Papers****03.401 Archaeological Method**

Laboratory techniques, field survey and excavation. Prerequisite 03.308 (or permission of Head of Department). Previous field-work is also required for enrolment in this paper.

(3 hour lecture and laboratory; 4 weeks field-work required)

**03.403 Prehistoric Ecology and Economics**

A study of concepts and the archaeological evidence. A current or previous enrolment in 03.308 is strongly advised.

(2 hour lecture or seminar)

**03.409 Research Topic in Physical Anthropology and/or Archaeology**

Research problems in archaeology and/or physical anthropology such as computer applications and other special topics selected in consultation with staff. The paper requires either a series of research essays, or one major essay in the form of a short (40–50 pp.) research paper. Required of students who wish to regard their degree as a qualification in physical anthropology or prehistory and whose course consists entirely of papers. Also available to students doing a thesis degree, but not in the form of a single research essay.

**03.412 Method and Theory in Physical Anthropology**

A study of concepts and laboratory methods used in modern Physical Anthropology. Prerequisite 03.309 (or permission of Head of Department given appropriate Science papers)

(2 hour lecture and laboratory)

**03.416 Special Topic in Archaeology or Physical Anthropology**

For 1983: Special topics selected in consultation with appropriate staff according to field of research.

**03.418 Special Topic in Archaeology****Ethnomusicology****03.410 Advanced Theory and Method in Ethnomusicology**

The same paper is offered as Music 28.414. For prescriptions see under Music Department.

Corequisite 03.318

(1 hour lecture)

**03.601 Thesis**

---

**MAORI STUDIES**

Full details concerning Maori Studies papers are contained in *Courses in Maori Studies for 1983* available from Maori Studies secretary.

Students who are beginning their study of Maori language should take 04.100 and 04.104 concurrently. Native speakers of Maori and those who have passed UE Maori are not permitted to take 04.104 which is intended for beginning students of the language. Such students should obtain the Head of Department's permission to enrol for higher level papers.

**Maori Studies Stage I Level****04.100 Introduction to the Structure of Maori Language****04.101 Introduction to Maori Society**

Traditional Maori society; the effects of European contact; the contemporary culture.

The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.102.

**04.104 Introduction to Spoken and Written Maori****Maori Studies Stage II Level**

Students should note that 04.204 and 04.205 are designed to be taken together and should be enrolled in concurrently.

**04.202 Traditional Maori Society**

Some accounts of traditional Maori life.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.211.

**04.203 The Coming of the Maori**

Polynesian origins, initial adaptation to New Zealand, local cultural development, classic Maori society, history 1840 AD.

The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.208.

**04.204 Second Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts**

showing the prophetic, political and cultural perspectives of Maori leaders.

**04.205 Second Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills****†04.402 A topic in Maori Culture and Society****04.206 A Topic in Maori Material Culture**

For 1983: Maori weaving and plaitwork. *Ngaa mahi o te whare pora.*

**04.601 Thesis****Maori Studies Stage III Level**

The language papers 04.306 and 04.307 are designed to be taken together and students should enrol in them concurrently.

**†04.302 Topics in Contemporary Maori Society**  
A survey of current Maori institutions, social groupings and events.

**Note:** The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.306.

**04.303 Maori Oratory: *Whaikoorero* and other Non-Casual Speech Forms****04.304 Maori Poetry and Song**

A study of selected traditional song texts, their musical and literary form, and the traditional circumstances of their composition.

**04.305 Languages of Polynesia**

A comparative-historical survey.

The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.303.

**04.306 Third Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts****04.307 Third Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills****†04.308 Special Topic in Maori Studies****†04.309 Special Topic in Maori Studies****Maori Studies for MA and Honours**

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate must present four papers and a thesis (04.601) counting as three papers. Up to two papers listed under Stage III level Maori Studies, if not credited for a BA degree, may be offered as papers for MA.

**04.400 a topic in Maori language**

For 1983: Recent developments in the study of Maori and Polynesian grammar.

The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.404.

**04.401 A topic in Maori Literature**

For 1983: Unpublished manuscripts, 1860–1920,

**LINGUISTICS**

Fuller details concerning Linguistics papers are contained in *Courses in Linguistics for 1983* available from Linguistics secretary.

**Linguistics Stage I Level****83.102 Introduction to Descriptive Linguistics**

The structure of human languages. Methods of analysis and formal description.

**83.103 Introduction to Historical and Comparative Linguistics**

The study of language change and historical relationships among languages.

**Linguistics Stage II Level****83.202 Sociolinguistics**

The study of language in its social context.

The same paper is taught as Anthropology 03.212.

**83.203 Phonology**

Phonological and phonetic theory. The study of sound systems and rules. Course work will include practical problems of analysis.

**83.204 Grammatical Analysis**

Grammatical theory. Types of grammatical systems. Descriptive problems in morphology and syntax.

**Linguistics Stage III Level****83.300 Recent Trends in Grammar****†83.301 Special Topic in Linguistics**

Semantics. The same paper is offered as Philosophy 29.210.

**†83.302 Oceanic Comparative Linguistics****83.303 Languages of Polynesia**

A comparative-historical survey.

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.305

**\*83.304 Theory of The Lexicon**

**83.305 Linguistic Analysis of Literature**

For prescription see under English 18.303

**†83.306 Philosophy of Language**

For prescription see under Philosophy 29.202.

**83.307 Phonology and New Zealand Speech**

For prescription see under English 18.304.

**83.308. Language and Society**

The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.317

**83.309 Field Methods**

Practical work with a native speaker of an unfamiliar language. Phonological and grammatical description of the informant's language.

**†83.310 Special Topic in Linguistics****Linguistics for MA and Honours**

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate must present four papers and a thesis (83.601) counting as three papers.

A candidate who has passed three papers at Stage III level in the subject Maori Studies or in a language subject other than English and five papers in Linguistics may proceed to MA in Linguistics with the permission of Senate upon recommendation of the Head of Department.

Up to two papers listed under Stage III Linguistics, if not credited for a BA degree, may be offered as papers for MA.

**83.400 A Topic in Descriptive Linguistics****†83.401 A Topic in Descriptive Linguistics****\*83.402 A Topic in Sociolinguistics****†83.403 A Topic in Comparative Linguistics****83.404 Special Topic in Linguistics**

Recent developments in the study of Maori and Polynesian grammar. The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.400.

**83.601 Thesis**\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available**Art History for MA and Honours**

(Four papers and a thesis (19.601) which counts as three papers).

*Either:*

(a) Four papers from 19.400 to 19.409,

*or*

(b) Three papers from 19.400 to 19.409 and one paper from the options prescribed for Stage III Art History.

*or*

(c) Two papers from 19.400 to 19.409 and two papers from the options prescribed for Stage III Art History.

**†19.400 Topics in 17th Century Drawing****19.401 Topics in Australian and New Zealand Art (Advanced)****19.402 Special Topic in Western Art before 1600, to be prescribed by the Head of Department****\*19.403 Watteau and his Sources and Influences****19.404 Film Studies****†19.405 Nicolas Poussin and 17th Century Classicism****Note:** A candidate who has been credited with a pass in paper 19.303 may not take this paper.**19.406 Art Historiography****\*19.407 A Topic in Mediaeval Art****19.408 A Topic in 19th Century Art****19.409 Topics in the Theory of Modern Art**

The thesis (19.601) shall not exceed 30,000 words, and two copies must be handed in to the Registrar, not later than 1 November.

The subjects for the thesis shall be chosen in consultation with the Head of the Department.

Book lists will be distributed at the beginning of the year.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

---

**DEPARTMENT OF ASIAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES**

---

**Chinese I**

A detailed guide to Chinese studies at Auckland is available from the Department of Asian Languages. Students are invited to refer to this or to consult

---

**DEPARTMENT OF ART HISTORY**

For Art History prescriptions for BA, BFA, MFA see Faculty of Fine Arts, Degree Prescriptions.

members of staff before enrolment.

Papers 48.100 and 48.101 are linked corequisites, and entail six hours of teaching per week. A candidate's final result will be determined over the two papers.

#### **48.100 and 48.101 Language Acquisition A and B**

Written and oral use of modern Chinese, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation into and from Chinese, conversation, dictation, reading, comprehension, comments on grammar.

#### **†48.102 Introduction to Chinese Thought.**

A survey in English translation of traditional Chinese philosophical and religious literature (Confucian, Taoist, Buddhist, etc.) and of the ideas which have helped shape Chinese culture. This paper is open to all interested students, whether or not they are taking Chinese language papers.

### **Chinese II**

Papers 48.200, 48.201 and 48.202 are linked corequisites, and entail six hours of teaching a week. A candidate's final result will be determined over the three papers.

#### **48.200 Language Acquisition**

Advanced written and oral use of modern Chinese, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation into and from Chinese, conversation, dictation, reading, comprehension, comments on grammar.

#### **48.201 Introduction to Twentieth Century Chinese Literature**

A survey of the major developments in modern Chinese literature, together with readings of selected passages from the works of representative authors.

#### **48.202 Introduction to Classical Chinese Language and Literature**

### **Chinese III**

Papers 48.300, 48.301 and 48.302 are linked corequisites, and entail six hours of teaching a week. A candidate's final result will be determined over the three papers.

#### **48.300 Language Acquisition**

#### **48.301 Readings in Twentieth Century Chinese Literature**

#### **48.302 Readings in Classical Chinese Literature**

### **Chinese for MA and Honours**

With the approval of the Head of Department certain

papers prescribed for Chinese MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III level papers.

Six papers (which must include 48.400 and 48.401) and a dissertation (48.604) of 10,000 words or more on a selected topic for which Chinese sources will be used. Students intending to enrol for MA should consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss the availability of papers and obtain advice on vacation reading.

#### **48.400 Translation at Sight into Chinese and Free Composition**

#### **48.401 Translation at Sight from Modern and Classical Chinese together with Questions on Chinese Bibliography**

#### **48.402 Chinese Prose Literature of the Tang and Song Dynasties**

#### **48.403 Introduction to Chinese Historiography and Translation of Historical Texts**

#### **48.406 Readings in the Confucian and Taoist Classics**

#### **48.408 Introduction to Chinese Buddhist Literature**

#### **48.411 The Novel in Imperial China**

#### **48.412 Twentieth Century Chinese Fiction, with Special Reference to Lu Xun and Mao Dun**

#### **48.413 Traditional Chinese Drama, with Special Reference to the *Xixiang Ji***

#### **48.414 Modern Chinese Drama, with Special Reference to the Plays of Cao Yu**

#### **48.415 A study of Newspaper and other Non-literary Forms of Modern Chinese**

#### **48.416 An approved Topic**

#### **48.417 A Special Topic in Chinese Poetry**

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination on the oral use of the language. In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, the dissertation, the oral examination and in coursework will be taken into consideration. The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

**INDONESIAN****Indonesian I**

Papers 80.100 and 80.101 are linked corequisites and entail six hours of teaching per week plus language labs. No previous knowledge of Indonesian is required.

**80.100 and 80.101 Modern Spoken Indonesian 1 and 2**

Formal and informal spoken Indonesian with an introduction to written styles.

**80.103 Indonesian literatures and civilizations**

A survey of social, religious and intellectual forces which have contributed to the formation of Indonesian literatures. This paper is available to students whether or not they are taking Indonesian language papers.

**Indonesian II**

Papers 80.200, 80.201 and 80.202 are linked corequisites. A candidate's result in the final examination will be determined over three papers. Students may take 80.203 as an additional paper.

**80.200 Advanced spoken Indonesian**

Language acquisition: oral and written use of Indonesian/Malay.

**80.201 Twentieth century Indonesian/Malay fiction****80.202 Twentieth century Indonesian/Malay poetry****80.203 The theatre in Indonesia: a study of Indonesian regional and national drama****Indonesian III**

Papers 80.300, 80.301, and 80.302 are linked corequisites. A candidate's result in the final examination will be determined over three papers. With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Indonesian MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III papers.

**80.300 Translation at sight of passages of Indonesian non-literary prose and translation at sight into Indonesian****80.301 Introduction to Classical Malay language and literature****80.302 Modern Indonesian/Malay literature****80.306 An Approved Special Topic****80.307 Introduction to Javanese language and literature****Indonesian for MA and Honours**

Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of the Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss optional papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

Twelve hours per week of lectures and tutorials (Six papers comprising 80.400, 80.401, and 80.402 and three others, together with a dissertation (80.604) of 10,000 words or more on a selected topic for which Indonesian sources will be used.)

**80.400 Translation at sight from and into Indonesian and free composition****80.401 A study of modern Indonesian/Malay literature with special reference to the problems of literary criticism****80.402 A study of selected classical Malay texts****80.404 An introduction to textual criticism with special reference to classical Malay****80.405 Muslim mysticism in classical Malay literature****80.406 An introduction to the structural analysis of Indonesian/Malay****80.407 A study of another Indonesian language****80.409 An approved special topic**

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination on the oral use of the language. In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, the dissertation, the oral examination and in course work will be taken into consideration.

The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

**JAPANESE****Japanese I**

Many students enrolling for Japanese I have studied Japanese previously at school. They will receive four

hours of lectures and two hours of tutorials per week. Students enrolling without a previous knowledge of the subject may receive a total of seven hours of teaching per week.

A candidate's result in the final examination will be determined over 2 papers and an oral test.

Papers 81.100 and 81.101 are linked.

### **81.100 Translation at Sight from and into Japanese**

#### **81.101 Introduction to the Japanese Language**

Basic spoken and written Japanese. Candidates will be examined on the prescribed textbooks.

#### **81.102 Japanese Literature in Translation**

A survey of Japanese literature in English translation from earliest times to the modern period. Papers 81.100 and 81.101 are linked. Paper 81.102 is open to any interested student, whether or not he or she is studying Japanese language.

## **Japanese II**

Four hours of lectures and two hours of tutorials in modern Japanese per week. Papers 81.200, 81.201, and 81.202 are linked.

A candidate's result in the final examination will be determined over three papers and an oral test.

### **81.200 Translation at Sight from and into Japanese**

#### **81.201 Intermediate Japanese**

This paper will be a continuation of 81.101. Candidates will be examined on the prescribed textbooks.

#### **81.202 Language Acquisition: Modern Japanese**

Written and oral use of Modern Japanese tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, and grammar.

## **Japanese III**

Four hours of lectures and two hours of tutorials in Japanese per week.

Candidates must take either 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302 or 81.300, 81.301 and 81.303. The groups of papers are linked. A candidate's result in the final examination will be determined over three papers and an oral test. 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302 are prerequisites for the MA degree. Students may take 81.303 as a fourth paper in addition to 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302. As a fourth paper 81.303 must be passed with a minimum mark of 50%.

### **81.300 Translation at Sight from and into Japanese**

#### **81.301 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Modern Texts**

#### **81.302 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Classical Texts together with Questions on the History of Japanese Literature**

#### **81.303 Modern Japanese**

Written and oral use of Japanese utilising selected non-literary texts. The tests will be based upon the materials covered.

With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Japanese MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III level papers.

## **Japanese for MA and Honours**

Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of the Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss optional papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

Prerequisite: Eight papers in Japanese including 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302

Students are strongly advised to take 81.102 and 81.302 as part of their BA degree.

Twelve hours of lectures and tutorials. (Six papers comprising 81.400 and 81.401 and four others, together with a dissertation (81.604) of 10,000 words or more, on a selected topic for which Japanese sources will be used, or an annotated translation of a Japanese text).

### **81.400 Translation at Sight into Japanese and Free Composition**

#### **81.401 Translation at Sight from Modern Japanese Texts together with Questions on Japanese Bibliography**

#### **81.402 Translation at Sight from Modern Japanese Texts together with Questions on Japanese Bibliography**

#### **81.403 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Classical Prose**

#### **81.404 Translation of and Comments on Selections from Japanese Poetry**

#### **81.405 Translation of and Comments on Selections from Japanese Drama**

#### **81.406 Special Study of either a Particular Classical Text or Body of Texts, or of a Modern Author**



### **81.407 Translation of and comments on Modern Non-Literary Texts including Selections from Newspapers and Periodicals**

### **81.408 Introduction to Japanese Linguistics**

The course will include a study of the history of the Japanese language, the development of the writing systems, changes in the phonetic system, problems in Japanese grammar and special problems associated with teaching Japanese as a second language.

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination on the oral use of the language. In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written paper, the dissertation, the oral examination and in coursework will be taken into consideration.

The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

### **Asian Studies for MA and Honours**

Five papers and a thesis (97.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a dissertation or research essay (97.604) which counts as one paper.

In either case candidates shall include three papers selected from those available at Masters level in Chinese, Indonesian or Japanese subject to the approval of the Head of Department. The remaining two or three papers shall, subject to the approval of the Heads of Departments, be selected from the Masters papers in one or two different subjects. At the discretion of the Heads of Departments one Stage III paper may be substituted for one of these Masters papers. In the thesis or dissertation, sources in the Asian language being studied will be used.

## **BIOLOGY: DEPARTMENTS OF BOTANY AND ZOOLOGY**

### **Biology for BA**

This is a Stage I course for students who do not plan to take a science degree. The course is intended as a general survey of the biological sciences, with elementary chemistry, physics and mathematics being introduced as necessary. The course cannot be used as a prerequisite for advanced Botany or Zoology. The two courses in the Biology for Arts series are taught in alternate years.

### **39.111 Unifying Concepts in Biology**

Taught during 1983.

Cell Structure: Energy relationships: photosynthesis

and respiration: Molecular Biology: control of synthesis of nucleic acids, proteins and macromolecules; Genetics: mechanisms of inheritance: Physiology.

### **\*39.112 Biological Diversity and Functions**

Presented during 1984. Resume of the Plant and Animal Kingdoms, with emphasis on human importance. Principles of Ecology and Organic Evolution.

## **DEPARTMENT OF CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY**

The Department of Classics and Ancient History includes six subjects. Latin, Greek and Ancient History are taught to MA with Honours level, Classical Studies, Biblical History and Literature and Hebrew at Stage I only.

Hebrew II and Biblical History and Literature II will not be available until further notice.

Students should note that in the Classics and Ancient History Department most of the language papers at Stage I and II, and the basic papers at Stage III, are normally linked to other papers and must be taken, and passed, concurrently; the Ancient History papers may all be taken individually by students with the necessary prerequisites and corequisites, but students wishing to advance beyond Stage I should plan their courses carefully in consultation with a member of staff.

An MA with Honours in Latin and Greek (Combined Honours) requires that students pass Latin III and Greek III before enrolling in their MA year. Students planning this course should therefore start Latin and Greek together in their first year. Students who have taken the scholarship papers in Latin or Greek or who are sufficiently advanced in their studies may be enrolled for Stage II papers in place of Stage I papers. Such students should see the Head of Department at the earliest possible date.

One paper in Elementary Latin (09.102) is now available for those students who have not passed U.E. Latin. It is intended that students with no Latin at all should be able to take this course, which is designed to lead on to Latin in a subsequent year, as well as to equip a student with the linguistic knowledge required for reading the documentary source materials needed for Ancient and Medieval History and for Renaissance Studies in many subjects.

Students who intend to advance to MA with Honours in Latin or Greek are strongly advised to enrol for the other as well in their first year. The prerequisites are stated in the MA Degree Course Regulations.

Students who intend to advance to Stage III in Ancient History are required to cope with documents in an ancient language, and must pass a prerequisite paper before enrolling for Stage III. The prerequisite

paper for Paper 12.300 and 12.320 is 12.210, for 12.322 and 12.332 is 10.100, for 12.303 is 09.102. After 1977 all students must fulfil these prerequisites. Students who wish to take the Greek or Latin options at MA are advised to enrol in Greek or Latin papers in their first year, and do more than the prerequisite minimum. Students who wish to take the Egyptian option must pass paper 12.310 before enrolling for MA, and 12.410 before enrolling for papers 12.520/530. As much of the scholarly work on Ancient History (especially Egyptian and Akkadian subjects) is in foreign languages, students planning to take these options should enrol for German I and French I papers, in their first year preferably. Students should note that Greek III and Latin III may be used as the Stage III prerequisite to Ancient History MA with Honours provided that six Ancient History papers have been passed (see the MA Degree Course Regulations).

Students who intend to take Latin or Greek are advised that Ancient History papers, at least in the field relevant to their language, will be most useful, especially for those advancing beyond Stage I, since outlines of Roman (Greek) History are now no longer taught within the language courses. Students considering enrolling for any subject in the Department are strongly advised to come and see a member of staff during the pre-enrolment period. External students should consult the Department as early in the year as possible.

**Note:**

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## **LATIN**

### **Latin I**

(Four hours per week for papers 09.100 and 09.101 which are linked if taken concurrently).

#### **09.100 Prescribed books**

Books, or groups of works, will be set; candidates will be given passages to translate, and questions will be asked on points of grammar and syntax and on prosody where relevant, and on the content of the books and their literary and historical background and on relevant Roman institutions.

#### **09.101 Translation and Language**

(i) (50%) Translation at sight from Latin. A passage, or passages of Latin prose or verse or both will be set for Translation from Latin into English.

(ii) (50%) A course on the structure and use of the language. Students will attend a course appropriate to their interest and experience in one of the following alternatives:

(a) Elementary Prose Composition;

(b) Latin Composition: exercises in grammar and syntax;

(c) Linguistic and syntactical analysis of passages of Latin.

Each course will comprise coursework and a formal examination.

#### **09.102 Elementary Latin**

(Two hours per week)

This paper is not linked to Latin 09.100 and 09.101 and may not be taken in the same year.

Entry to this course for credit is restricted to those who have not passed U.E. Latin, or an equivalent examination. Others may apply to the Head of Department for permission to take this paper and not 09.100, 09.101.

A pass in the course is intended to enable students to:

(a) read classical documents as required for Paper 12.303

(b) read medieval documents as required for Papers in Medieval History

(c) enrol for Latin Papers 09.100, 09.101 in the following year.

### **Latin II**

(Five hours per week. Papers 09.200, 09.201 and 09.202 are linked)

Prerequisite 09.100, 09.101 unless direct entry is approved

#### **09.200, 09.201, 09.202**

(i) Prescribed Books:

Books, or groups of works, will be set; candidates will be given passages to translate and questions will be asked on points of grammar and syntax and on prosody where relevant, and on the content of the books and their literary and historical background, and on relevant Roman institutions.

(ii) Reading courses in Latin Literature.

Two courses of reading each on a prescribed subject connected with one of the set books; each course will be examined (i) by a coursework essay and (ii) by a number of passages for translation and comment in a formal examination.

(iii) Roman History:

Passages from specified works for translation and comment in examination and a coursework essay.

(iv) Unprepared Translation:

A passage, or passages, of prose and verse will be set for translation from Latin into English.

(v) One of the following:

(a) Prose Composition: Elementary or more advanced;

(b) Latin Composition: exercises in grammar and syntax.

Students will attend the course appropriate to their interest and previous experience. Each course will

comprise coursework and a formal examination. The proportion of the marks awarded on coursework and the detailed requirements will be announced at the beginning of the year.

### Latin III

(Five hours per week. Papers 09.300, 09.301 and 09.302 are linked; for the remaining papers see under each paper).

Prerequisites 09.200, 09.201, 09.202.

#### 09.300, 09.301, 09.302

(i) Prescribed books, and (ii) Reading Course

As for Latin II

(iii) Roman History.

As for Latin II

(iv) Latin Language.

History of the Latin Language from earliest times to the Augustan Age.

(v) Unprepared Translation.

As for Latin II.

(vi) Composition.

A number of passages will be set for translation into Latin. These will include coursework exercises and a final examination.

A higher standard of work will be expected for Latin III in all sections of these papers. The proportion of the marks available which will be allotted to coursework and the detailed requirements will be announced at the beginning of the year.

#### 09.303 Advanced Prose Composition or †Verse Composition

(One hour per week)

Prerequisite: 09.300, 09.301, 09.302 for prose composition. For verse composition, permission of Head of Department

Passages will be set for translation into Latin. A proportion of the marks available will be allotted to coursework.

#### 09.304 A Subject or Subjects in Latin Poetry

(One hour per week). (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 09.300, 09.301, 09.302

The works (or selections of the works) of an author or authors will be set for translation and comment or criticism. The author(s) will normally be as for paper 09.402 or part of it, and students who offer this paper will not be able to offer 09.402 at MA and Honours level unless there has been a change of syllabus.

#### 09.305 Literary Topic

(One hour per week). (Restricted entry)

Corequisites: as for 09.304

The topic will normally be as for paper 09.402 or 09.406 (or part thereof) and students who offer this paper will not be able to offer that paper at MA and

Honours level unless there has been a change of syllabus.

#### 09.306 Latin Language

(One hour per week). (Restricted entry)

Corequisites: as for 09.304

More advanced Latin Language. The syllabus will be as for paper 09.404; students who offer this paper will not be able to offer paper 09.404 at MA and Honours level unless there has been a change of syllabus.

#### 09.307 Roman History

(One hour per week). (Restricted entry)

Corequisites: as for 09.304.

A period of Roman History to be studied with Latin texts. The syllabus will be as for paper 09.405; students who offer this paper will not be able to offer paper 09.405 at MA and Honours level unless there has been a change of syllabus.

#### 09.308 Pax Romana

(Two hours per week) Paper 12.203 restricted

Syllabus as for 12.203.

**Note:** For papers marked *Restricted entry* (09.304 – 09.307) permission of the Head of Department is required to enrol; permission will normally be granted if there is an Honours candidate wishing to take the equivalent paper.

### Latin for MA and Honours

#### Honours in Latin (six papers)

Normally candidates must offer papers 09.400, 09.401 and *four* others, the selection to be approved by the Head of Department. By special permission of the Head of Department a student may be permitted to substitute another paper for 09.401—

Except for paper 09.401 there are no special paper prerequisites, though there are certain restrictions.

Prerequisite: Eight papers in Latin, including 09.300–09.302

**Note:** All papers may not be available in 1983.

#### 09.400 Unprepared Translation of Latin Prose and Verse

#### 09.401 Prose Composition or Verse Composition

Passages of English Prose or Verse for translation into Latin. Some passages will be assessed as coursework. In a final examination one passage will be set for prose composition, either one or two shorter passages or a choice of passages will be set for verse composition. Candidates may not offer verse composition unless they have already taken and passed the verse option in paper 09.303.

#### 09.402 Latin Poetry

(09.304 or 09.305 restricted without syllabus change) Two subjects will normally be set with reference to prescribed texts. The examination will consist of pas-

sages for translation, and candidates will be required also to write commentaries on a choice of passages or at least one essay, or both. Passages may also, or alternatively, be set for practical criticism.

#### 99.403 Latin Prose Writers

Two subjects will normally be set with reference to prescribed texts. The examination will consist of passages for translation, and candidates will be required also to write commentaries on a choice of passages or at least one essay, or both.

#### 99.404 Latin Language

(99.306 restricted without syllabus change)

##### *Either* Vulgar Latin

The phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary of Vulgar Latin, as seen in the set texts. Comparison with inscriptional texts will be made where relevant. A knowledge of the history and literary background and significance of the set texts will also be required.

##### *Or* Early Latin

The phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary of Early Latin as seen in the set texts. Comparison with inscriptional texts will be made where relevant. A knowledge of the sources and characteristics of Plautine comedy will also be required.

#### 99.405 Roman History

(99.307 restricted without syllabus change)

A subject with reference to the original Latin sources; candidates will be required to translate and comment on a selection of passages, and to write essays chosen from a selection.

#### 99.406 A Subject in Latin Literature to be prescribed by the Head of Department

An author or group of similar authors will be chosen for special study. Candidates will read widely in the prescribed texts and be expected to translate passages, and write commentaries and essays on the subject matter of the texts and on their literary genre.

#### 99.407 A Subject to be proposed by the student and approved by the Head of Department

The subject may be literary, philological, historical or philosophical and must be approved not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

#### Combined Honours (Languages and Literature)

See MA Degree Course Regulations.

## GREEK

### Greek I

Papers 10.100, 10.101 are linked. Four lectures and a tutorial per week throughout the year.

#### 10.100 Prescribed Texts with Grammatical Study

Texts will be prescribed for reading; translation of passages will be required in examination, and questions will be set which will require a candidate to

show an understanding of the grammatical and syntactical usages in the texts.

#### 10.101 Prescribed Texts with Grammatical Study

A different group of texts from 10.100 may be set.

### Greek II

(Five hours per week) Papers 10.200, 10.201 and 10.202 are linked.

Prerequisites 10.100, 10.101 or direct entry

#### 10.200, 10.201, 10.202

##### (i) Prescribed Books

Books or groups of works will be set; candidates will be given passages to translate, and questions will be asked on points of grammar and syntax and on prosody where relevant, and on the content of the books and their literary and historical background, and on relevant Greek institutions.

##### (ii) Reading course in Greek Literature.

A course of readings in Greek literature and practice in Translation. An essay will be set for coursework, and passages will be set for Translation in examination with questions on their grammar and syntax.

(iii) Greek History with reference to specified texts. Passages for translation and comment in examination and a coursework essay.

##### (iv) Unprepared Translation.

Passages of Greek Prose and Verse will be set for translation into English.

(v) Use of the Language. The coursework will consist of practice in writing Greek (sentences and an introduction to prose composition) and studies in Greek grammar and syntax. These elements will be tested in a final examination.

### Greek III

(Six hours per week Terms I and II, five hours per week Term III for papers 10.300, 10.301, 10.302; for the remaining papers see under each paper). Papers 10.300, 10.301 and 10.302 are linked.

Prerequisites: 10.200, 10.201, 10.202

#### 10.300, 10.301, 10.302

##### (i) Prescribed Books

As for Greek II

##### (ii) A reading course in Greek Literature.

Normally one work will be specified for reading; a coursework essay will be set on Greek Literature, normally on the specified work. In examination, passages from the reading course will be set for Translation with comment, literary and/or grammatical and syntactical.

##### (iii) Greek History.

As for Greek II

*Or*

##### †Philosophy

The philosophy of Plato with special reference to one or more dialogues.

A coursework essay and passages for translation and comment in examination conditions.

(iv) Greek language. The Homeric dialect, including discussion of the Homeric hexameter, and a portion of Homer for special study.

Translation of a passage and questions on the dialect will be set in a formal examination.

(v) Unprepared Translation

As for Greek II

(vi) Composition.

A number of passages will be set for translation into Greek; these will include coursework exercises and a final examination.

A higher standard of work will be expected for Greek III in all sections of these papers.

The proportion of the marks available which will be allotted to coursework will be announced at the beginning of the year.

### 10.303 Advanced Language Study

Prerequisites: 10.300–10.302

Prose composition, verse composition or Studies in Greek grammar and syntax. (One class per week).

Passages will be set for translation into Greek or for study in Greek. A proportion of the marks available will be allotted to coursework.

### \*10.304 Greek Poetry

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 10.300–10.302

Translation of pieces of Greek poetry from specified texts; passages may also be set for comment and a selection of essays will be set.

### 10.305 Literary Topic

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 10.300–10.302

Translation from prescribed texts. Passages may also be set for comment, and a selection of essays will be set.

### 10.306 Greek History

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 10.300–302

Syllabus as prescribed for paper 10.405, which is restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus. May not be offered with 10.307.

### 10.307 Greek Philosophy

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 10.300–302

Syllabus as prescribed for paper 10.406, which is restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus. May not be offered with 10.306.

### 10.308 Greek Language

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 10.300–302

Syllabus as prescribed for paper 10.404, which is restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus.

### 10.309 Greece and Persia

(Two hours per week)

Corequisite: 10.300–302

Syllabus as prescribed for paper 12.202, which is restricted.

**Note:** For papers marked *Restricted entry* (10.304–10.308) permission of the Head of Department is required to enrol; permission will normally be granted if there is an Honours candidate wishing to take the equivalent paper among 10.404–10.408.

## Greek for MA and Honours

### Honours in Greek (six papers)

Normally, candidates must offer papers 10.400, 10.401 and four others, the selection to be approved by the Head of Department. By special permission of the Head of Department a student may be permitted to substitute another paper for paper 10.401. Except for paper 10.401, there are no special paper prerequisites, though there are certain restrictions.

Prerequisite: Eight papers in Greek, including 10.300–10.302.

**Note:** All papers may not be available in 1983.

### 10.400 Unprepared Translation

Passages of prose and verse will be set for translation into English.

### 10.401 Advanced Language Study

Prose Composition and verse composition or studies in Greek grammar and syntax. Passages will be set for translation into Greek or for study in Greek. The verse option in paper 10.303 is prerequisite for verse composition. Without the special permission of the Head of Department, the studies in Greek Grammar and Syntax option may not be taken by students who have taken that option in paper 10.303. For each option, some passages will be assessed as course work and passages will be set for final examination.

The proportion of the marks allocated to coursework will be announced early in the year.

### 10.402 Greek Poetry

A subject or subjects will be set with reference to prescribed texts. In the final examination candidates will be required to translate passages and may be required to comment on a selection of other passages; they will also be required to write at least one essay.

### 10.403 Greek Prose Writers

A subject or subjects will be set with reference to prescribed portions of the authors to be studied. In the final examination candidates will be required to translate passages and may be required to comment on a selection of other passages; they will also be required to write at least one essay.

### 10.404 Greek Language

(Paper 10.308 restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus)

An advanced study of one or more Greek dialects with special reference to prescribed texts.

**10.405 Greek History**

(Paper 10.306 restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus)

A subject in Greek History with reference to prescribed sources.

Permission of the Head of Department is required to take both this paper and 10.406.

**†10.406 Greek Philosophy**

(Paper 10.307 restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus)

A subject in Greek Philosophy with reference to prescribed texts.

Permission of the Head of Department is required to take both this paper and 10.405.

**10.407 A subject in Greek Literature to be prescribed by the Head of Department**

An author or group of similar authors will be chosen for special study. Candidates will read widely in the prescribed texts and be expected to translate passages, write commentaries and essays on the subject matter of the texts, and on their literary genre.

**10.408 A subject to be proposed by the student and approved by the Head of Department**

The subject may be literary, philological, historical or philosophical and must be approved not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

**Combined Honours: (Languages and Literature)**

See MA Degree Course Regulations.

**CLASSICAL STUDIES****Classical Studies I****\*73.102 Epic and Elegiac**

(Two hours per week)

Epic will be taught for the first sixteen weeks of the course and Elegiac for the remaining eight weeks. The principal authors to be studied will be Homer and Virgil (Aeneid) and in Elegiac Archilochus, Solon, Tyrtaeus, Simonides and the Greek Anthology, and in Latin, Catullus, Tibullus, Ovid, Propertius and Martial.

**Note:** This paper will be taught in 1982 and at three-yearly intervals.

**\*73.103 Comedy and Satire**

(Two hours per week)

Each topic will occupy half the course. Plays from Aristophanes, Plautus and Terence will be studied in the comedy section and the main authors in the satire section will be Horace and Juvenal.

**†73.104 Tragedy and Literary Criticism**

(Two hours per week)

Tragedy will occupy the first sixteen weeks of the course, and Literary Criticism the remaining eight weeks. In Tragedy, plays of the Greek dramatists Aeschylus, Sophocles and Euripides will be read together with those of Seneca. Literary Criticism will consist of a study of Aristotle's *Poetics* and Horace's *Art of Poetry*.

**ANCIENT HISTORY****Ancient History I****12.100 Near Eastern History**

(Two hours per week)

This paper is a prerequisite to 12.200, 12.210, 12.220, 12.201, 12.211. Restricted 11.100.

An outline history of the ancient civilisations of Egypt, Mesopotamia and Israel from neolithic times to Alexander the Great; the course will include artistic and cultural questions, and the civilisations of Anatolia, Syria and Iran will be considered in less detail.

**12.102 Greek History**

(Two hours per week)

This paper is normally prerequisite to papers 12.202, 12.222

An outline of Greek History from the Mycenaean Age to the Peace of Apamea (188 BC). Special attention will be paid to social and cultural questions and some attention will be given to the intellectual history of the period.

**12.103 Roman History**

(Two hours per week)

This paper is normally prerequisite to papers 12.203, 12.213

An outline of Roman History from the earliest times till the foundation of Constantinople.

Particular attention is paid to the Romans' achievement in government and in spreading civilisation and culture.

For all Stage I papers tutorial classes will be arranged.

**Ancient History II****\*12.200 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII**

(Three or four hours per fortnight)

Prerequisite 12.100 or 11.100. Restricted 12.320

This paper is prerequisite to 12.300; one of 12.102, 12.103 is corequisite

Students planning to advance to 12.300 must take paper 12.210 with this paper unless they are taking, or have taken 10.100 or 09.102 or an approved alternative. Egypt in the XVIIIth Dynasty (c. 1570–1320 BC). This course concentrates on the internal organisation and foreign policy of the kings of this dynasty.

**†12.201 Assyrian History**

(Two hours per week)

Prerequisite 12.100 or 11.100

This paper is prerequisite to 12.301; one of 12.102, 12.103 is corequisite

Students taking this paper are advised to take paper 12.211 with it; when papers 12.301 and 12.501 become available, paper 12.211 will be necessary for them, but neither paper is available till further notice. The Neo-Assyrian Empire (c. 884–612 BC).

This course will include a study of the Assyrian State, the aims, methods and historical importance of Assyrian imperialism, and its reflection in art, literature and religion. Special attention will be paid to contemporary documents.

**12.202 Greece and Persia**

(Three or four hours per fortnight: 10.309, 12.332 restricted)

Prerequisite normally 12.102 or Greek II; one of 12.100, 11.100, 12.103 is corequisite except for students who have passed Greek II. This paper is prerequisite to 12.322

Students planning to advance to 12.322 must enrol for Greek I unless they have taken, or are taking, 12.210 or 09.102 or an approved alternative.

Greece and Persia (c. 546–323 BC)

This will involve a study of Herodotus' history and the first Persian War, the Greek countermeasures and the organisation of the Athenian Confederacy, Persian interventions in Greek inter-state struggles in the fifth and fourth centuries, and Alexander's anabasis.

**12.203 Pax Romana**

(Four hours per fortnight: 09.308, 12.323 restricted)

Prerequisite normally 12.103 or Latin II; one of 12.100, 11.100 or 12.102 is corequisite except for students who have passed Latin II. This paper is prerequisite to Paper 12.303.

Students planning to advance to 12.303 must have passed or enrolled for paper 09.102 or another approved Latin paper unless they have taken or are taking 12.210, 10.100 or an approved alternative.

The Pax Romana, with special reference to the first three centuries AD.

This will involve a study of Imperial Roman society – (the satirists' picture and other criteria), Roman Central and Provincial government, and their attitudes to their neighbours; social and economic problems in the empire and the intellectual and religious cross-currents.

**12.210 Egyptian Language and Documents**

(Two hours per week)

Prerequisite 12.100 or 11.100

This paper is prerequisite to 12.310, and to 12.300,

12.320 unless an alternative language paper is taken. The Egyptian Language, hieroglyphic writing, and selected documents up to Dynasty XVIII.

**†12.211 Akkadian Language and Documents**

(Two hours per week)

Prerequisite 12.100 or 11.100

This paper will be prerequisite to 12.301.

The Akkadian Language, cuneiform writing and selected documents of the Neo-Assyrian Empire.

**\*12.213 A subject in Roman History**

(Three or four hours per fortnight: 12.313 restricted)

Prerequisites, corequisites etc as 12.203

**12.220 Egypt in Dynasties V–XI**

(Three or four hours per fortnight; 12.300 restricted)

Prerequisite 12.100 or 11.100

This paper is prerequisite to 12.320; one of 12.102, 12.103 is corequisite

Students planning to advance to 12.320 must take paper 12.210 with this paper unless they have taken, or are taking 10.100, 09.102 or an approved alternative. A study of the decline of Old Kingdom Civilisation, the ferment of disillusionment and heartsearching which followed, and the re-establishment of an ordered government and society in the Middle Kingdom. The course will be based on Egyptian historical and literary documents in English translation.

**\*12.222 Tyranny**

(Three or four hours per fortnight; 12.322 restricted)

Prerequisite normally 12.102 or Greek II; one of 12.100, 11.100, 12.103 is corequisite except for students who have passed Greek II. This paper is prerequisite to 12.332; Students planning to advance to 12.332 must take Greek I with this paper unless they have taken or are taking, 12.210, 09.102 or an approved alternative.

A study of the causes of the tyrannies in the Greek city-states, the aims and methods of the tyrants and the reasons for their expulsion. The course will consider the VII–VI century tyrants at the Isthmus of Corinth, in Ionia, and in Sicily, and the connexions between tyranny and imperialism (collaboration and resistance), the tyranny in Athens, and the tyrants in Sicily and elsewhere in the late Vth and following centuries.

**Ancient History III****12.300 Egypt in Dynasties V–XI**

(Four hours per fortnight; 12.220 restricted)

Prerequisites normally 12.200, 12.210. Either this paper or 12.320 is prerequisite to 12.520

Syllabus as 12.220 with the addition of documents for study in Egyptian.

**\*12.301 Mesopotamian History****12.303 Britain from the Iron Age to the Saxons**

(Four hours per fortnight)

Prerequisites normally 12.203 and 09.102 or Latin I or II. This paper is prerequisite to 12.503

Paper 03.319 is restricted

Britain from the Iron Age to the Anglo-Saxons (c. AD 800).

**\*12.304 Greek and Roman Historiography**

(Four hours per fortnight)

Prerequisites normally 12.102, 12.103, one of 12.200–12.222, or Greek III or Latin III

A study of the principal historians of Greece and Rome, their aims and methods. The authors' works are studied in English translations.

**12.310 Egyptian Language II**

(Four hours per fortnight)

Prerequisite 12.210: this paper is prerequisite to 12.410

Hieroglyphic writing and a study of more advanced documents of either Dynasty XVIII or Dynasties V–XI

**\*12.313 A Subject in Roman History**

(Four hours per fortnight: 09.308, 12.213 restricted)

Prerequisites normally 12.203 and 09.102 or approved alternative

Either this paper or 12.303 or 12.323 is prerequisite to 12.503.

Syllabus as 12.213 with the addition of documents for study in Latin.

**\*12.320 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII**

(Four hours per fortnight: 12.200 restricted)

Prerequisites normally 12.210 and 12.220

Either this paper or 12.300 is prerequisite to 12.520.

Syllabus as 12.200 with the addition of documents for study in Egyptian.

**\*12.322 Tyranny**

(Four hours per fortnight; 10.309, 12.222 restricted)

Prerequisite normally 10.100 and 12.202 or approved alternative

Either this paper or 12.332 is prerequisite to 12.502. Syllabus as 12.222 with the addition of documents for study in Greek.

**12.323 Pax Romana**

(Four hours per fortnight; 09.308, 12.203 restricted)

Prerequisites normally 09.102 and 12.213 or approved alternative

Either this paper or 12.303 or 12.313 is prerequisite to 12.503.

Syllabus as 12.203 with the addition of documents for study in Latin.

**12.332 Greece and Persia**

(Four hours per fortnight; 10.309, 12.202 restricted) Prerequisites normally 10.100 and 12.222 or approved alternative

Either this paper or 12.322 is prerequisite to 12.502. Syllabus as 12.202 with the addition of documents for study in Greek.

**Ancient History for MA and Honours**

Normally candidates must offer three or four of the papers 12.400 – 12.414 or approved substitutes in their first year, one of the special subjects 12.502, 12.512; 12.503, 12.513; 12.520, 12.530, in their second year together with the fourth paper from papers 12.400 – 12.414 if not taken in the first year, and an essay (12.603) or dissertation (12.604) on a subject approved by the Head of Department. The prerequisites for papers 12.502 – 12.530 will not be waived save in the most exceptional circumstances.

Prerequisites: Eight papers from 12.100 to 12.332 including three of 12.300–12.332 or substitutes approved by the Head of Department. Note that papers 12.500 – 12.503 all have individual prerequisites.

Note: All papers may not be available in 1983.

**12.400 A topic in Near Eastern History after Alexander the Great**

The Jews in the Greco-Roman World

A study of the political and social developments in Judaea and the Diaspora, together with their cultural and ideological implications, from the Conquest of Alexander the Great to the outbreak of the First Revolt against Rome.

**\*12.402 A topic in Greek History after Alexander the Great**

The relations between Greeks and Romans from the end of the third century B.C. down to approximately A.D. 180. There are two main parts. The first deals with the political contacts and conflicts of the two peoples ending in the destruction of Corinth in 146 B.C. For this period the main literary sources are Polybius and Livy. The second main period begins with the reign of the Emperor Nero and deals more fully with the conditions of Greece and the Greek cities of Asia Minor as revealed by the works of Plutarch and the letters of the Younger Pliny. This part of the course will also touch on the revival of Greek letters known as the "Second Sophistic".

**\*12.403 A topic in Roman History**

The later Roman Empire A.D. 193–337

This course will include study of various developments – military, administrative, economic, religious, social – in a crucial period of change for the Roman Empire. Particular attention will be paid to the Severan period (A.D. 193–235).



**\*12.404 A topic in the social history of the Ancient World**

The institution of slavery in the Ancient World. The paper considers the composition of the slave population at different periods, their numbers, employments and treatment; modes of liberation and the position of emancipated slaves; the impact of slavery on society, especially the family, farming, commerce and government; the causes of slave wars and revolts; slavery and serfdom and the other part-slave part-free statuses, with special reference to debtors' contracts.

**\*12.405 A topic in the economic history of the Ancient World****†12.406 Political Thought and Practice in the Ancient World**

A study of the ideologies of the monarchies of the Near Eastern Kingdoms, the city-states of Greece and the Res Publica and Imperium of the Romans.

**12.409 A topic proposed by the student and approved by the Head of Department not later than 31 Decembert of the year preceding enrolment.**

**12.410 Late Egyptian Language**

Prerequisites 12.310 after 1982; in 1982, 12.300

This course will introduce a study of the changes to the Egyptian language in the New Kingdom period, and the study of the documents of Dynasties 19 and 20 will be begun.

**12.412 The hellenistic World and The Heritage of Hellenism****12.414 The Family in the Ancient World**

This course will consider the known sources of information about the family, including marriage customs, laws affecting kingship, property and succession in the ancient civilisations, and consider the importance of these for the history of the societies considered.

Approved substitutes for the above papers are:

One paper as prescribed for Ancient History III not already taken at Stage III

One, or two papers from other subjects as prescribed in MA Regulation 6

**The special subjects will be as follows:**

**\*12.501, \*12.511 Mesopotamian History**

Prerequisites: 12.211 and 12.301

Not available at present

**12.502, 12.512 Greek History**

Prerequisites: 12.302 or 12.332 with 10.100 or Greek III

A subject in Greek History based on specified Greek texts; the subject and texts are as for 10.405. In this and other special subjects the examination will consist of two papers, one on the texts, including transliteration (where relevant) and translation, and (where relevant) on linguistic questions and the tradition and veracity of the texts; the other on their historical significance.

**12.503, 12.513 Roman History**

Prerequisites: 12.303, 12.313 or 12.323 with 09.102 or other approved papers, or Latin III

A subject in Roman History based on specified Latin texts: the subject and texts are as for 09.405.

For the examination see paper 12.502

**12.520, 12.530 Egyptian History**

Prerequisites: 12.300 or 12.320 and 12.410

The New Kingdom, Dynasties XIX and XX, c. 1320–1085 BC, based on a detailed consideration of specified texts.

For the examination see paper 12.502

**12.603 Essay****12.604 Dissertation**


---

**BIBLICAL HISTORY AND LITERATURE**
**Biblical History and Literature I****\*11.100 Near Eastern History**

Lectures as for 12.100 plus 10 lectures and a test on Israel. Students who do not wish to advance to 12.200 or 12.201 may omit either the Egypt or the Mesopotamia lectures)

Corequisites: 11.101, restricted 12.100

An outline of the history of Israel is placed in the context of a general survey of the history of the ancient Near East, thus providing the necessary background to the literature of the Jewish people.

This paper may be used as a prerequisite to all Ancient History papers for which 12.100 is prerequisite provided that a piece of work in the relevant area has been presented in coursework or examination.

**\*11.101 Biblical Literature of the Old Testament (Two hours per week)**

Corequisite: 11.100, which normally must be taken concurrently or passed before enrolment in this paper. A survey of the biblical literature of the period illustrating the different forms of literature in the Old Testament; a special study of the books of Amos and Jeremiah from the standpoint of their literary form and their relationship to the history and the religion of their times.

**†11.103 Roman History**

(Lectures as for 12.103, plus 10 lectures and a test on the Jewish background to the New Testament. Students who do not wish to advance to Roman History Stage II need not offer either the first test or an essay on the Roman Republic half of paper 12.103, but all must take the test on the extra 10 lectures.)

Corequisite 11.113, restricted 12.103

An outline history of the Roman world up to and including the time of the rise of Christianity, and with special lectures on the background to the New Testament.

**†11.113 Biblical Literature of the New Testament**

A survey of the books of the New Testament from the standpoint of their content and significance and their literary forms; a special study of Matthew Chs. 1–10, the Acts of the Apostles, Chs. 1–7, and the Epistle to the Hebrews from this standpoint and as indicating the relationships between Jews and Christians in the 1st Century of the Christian era.

**\*Biblical History and Literature II**

This subject is not available until further notice. One of the papers at least may require as a prerequisite a pass in papers at Latin I, Greek I, or Hebrew I as well as in Biblical History and Literature I levels.

**\*11.200 The History of Israel to A.D. 135****\*11.201 The History of Christian Origins to A.D. 135****\*11.202 The Biblical Archaeology of a Prescribed Period****\*11.203 The Apocrypha with Prescribed Texts****HEBREW****Hebrew I**

(Four hours per week)

Classical Hebrew Papers 23.100 and 23.101 are linked. Paper 23.102 is not available at present.

**23.100 Classical Hebrew – Language**

Corequisite: 23.101

Translation of passages from selected portions of the Old Testament. Translation of a simple unprepared passage from a narrative portion of the Old Testament. Parsing of words, and questions on points of elementary syntax occurring in the prescribed work.

**Note:** No candidate who fails to satisfy the Examiner in the unprepared translation shall be deemed to fulfil the requirements in Hebrew.

**23.101 Classical Hebrew – Texts**

Corequisite: 23.100

Translation and pointing of a passage from the unpointed text taken from one of the selected portions of the Old Testament. Retranslation from English into Hebrew of an easy narrative passage from or based upon the prescribed prose. General questions on elementary grammar, with translations into pointed Hebrew of sentences chosen to test grammatical knowledge.

**\*23.102 Modern Hebrew.****\*Hebrew II****\*23.200 Classical Hebrew**

Prerequisites: 23.100, 23.101

Corequisites: 23.201 and one of 23.202, 23.203

Translation into idiomatic Biblical Hebrew of prose based on the prescribed texts, and of English sentences, illustrating Hebrew idiom and syntax; the pointing of passages from the prescribed texts; questions on the grammar and syntax of Biblical Hebrew.

**\*23.201 Classical Hebrew**

Prerequisites: 23.100, 23.101

Corequisites: 23.200 and one of 23.202, 23.203

Translation from prescribed texts from the Old Testament with questions on the grammatical and syntactical forms found therein. Translation of unprepared passages from the Old Testament including one from the unpointed text.

**\*23.202 Modern Hebrew**

Prerequisites: 23.100, 23.101

Corequisites: 23.200, 23.201

Modern Hebrew conversation and reading. Modern Hebrew grammar. Translation from selected Modern Hebrew texts.

**\*23.203 Classical Hebrew**

Prerequisites: 23.100, 23.101

Corequisites: 23.200, 23.201

Translation and annotation of selected portions of the Old Testament, together with the questions on the textual, literary and historical criticism of the books from which they are taken.

**DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS**

For Economics prescriptions see Faculty of Commerce.

## DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

### Education I

#### 14.100 An introduction to Educational Thought

Corequisite: 14.101, if planning to enrol in more than one Stage II paper  
Selected historical and philosophical aspects of Western educational ideas.

#### 14.101 Introduction to Development Psychology

Corequisite: 14.100, if planning to enrol in more than one Stage II paper  
An introduction to human development.

### Education II

#### 14.200 Comparative Education

Prerequisite: 14.100, 14.101, if enrolling in more than one paper  
Area studies: Great Britain and U.S.A.

#### †14.201 History of Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.200  
The period up to 1600.

#### 14.202 New Zealand Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.200  
Issues and problems associated with the organisation, administration and practice of education in New Zealand.

#### 14.203 Educational Psychology

Prerequisite: as for 14.200  
Educational psychology, with particular reference to learning theory and cognitive development.

#### 14.204 The Evaluation of Individual Differences

Prerequisite: as for 14.200  
An introduction to the theory and practical aspects of evaluating individual differences. A course of practical work and elementary statistics must be completed concurrently.

#### 14.206 School and Society: A Sociological Perspective

Prerequisite: as for 14.200  
An introduction to contemporary sociology of education.

#### 14.207 Evaluation in Classrooms

Prerequisite: as for 14.200  
An introduction to procedures for classroom evaluation. A course of practical work and elementary statistics must be completed concurrently.

#### 14.208 The Philosophy of Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.200

An introduction to contemporary philosophy of education with an emphasis on ethics.

### 14.209 Introduction to Methods of Research in Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.200

An introduction to techniques: experimental, descriptive, correlational, causal-comparative, and historical.

### Education III

#### 14.300 Twentieth Century Educational Thought

Prerequisite: Two Education papers at Stage II level if enrolling in more than two papers  
A study of selected educational philosophies.

#### 14.301 Comparative Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.300  
Selected area studies.

#### †14.302 History of Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.300  
The period from 1600 to 1900.

#### 14.303 The Sociology of Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.300  
An examination of techniques, concepts, and perspectives used in attempts to describe, predict and explain social phenomena in educational contexts.

#### \*14.304 The Context of Educational Planning

Prerequisite: as for 14.300  
An examination of the rationale, modes, and problems of educational planning, with particular reference to developed industrial societies.

#### \*14.305 The Guidance Process

Prerequisite: as for 14.300  
The history and present position of guidance principles and practice, and the organisation of guidance in education systems with particular reference to New Zealand and other selected countries.

#### 14.306 Introduction to Counselling in the Community

Prerequisite: as for 14.300  
An examination of the application of basic principles of counselling to the needs of individual children and adults and to couples, families and other groups.

#### 14.307 Principles of Curriculum Development

Prerequisite: as for 14.300  
A study of principles of curriculum development that may be derived from psychological, sociological and philosophical sources and their application to the analysis and construction of curricula in various institutions in New Zealand.

**14.308 Educational Psychology: A Behavioural Approach**

(First half of the year)

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of contemporary ideas and research in human learning and instruction. Topics will include the analysis of child and adult behaviour in school, home and residential settings.

**Note:** In 1983 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1984 in full-time hours.

**14.309 Development Psychology**

(Second half of the year)

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of selected aspects of infant and child development including the development of perception, cognition, language and problem solving.

**Note:** In 1983 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1984 in full-time hours.

**14.310 Psychology of Adolescence**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of research on the physical, emotional, social and intellectual development of adolescents, and its relevance to New Zealand society.

**14.311 Education of Exceptional Children**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300. Students who have completed 32.208 may be admitted to this course.

An examination of the special educational needs of children showing atypical development and of the effectiveness of current special educational strategies.

**14.312 Issues in Special Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A general treatment covering all types of atypical development and behaviour in children, dealing with basic concepts of development, home management, and educational organisation.

**14.313 Methods of Research in Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

Techniques used in educational research.

**†14.314 Pre-school Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

History and philosophy of pre-school education in New Zealand and in selected overseas countries; current New Zealand practices and provisions.

**14.316 Early Determinants of Behaviour**

(Starts second term)

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of research dealing with the influence on later behaviour of variables operating prior to and shortly after birth.

**14.317 Organisational Effectiveness**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of structural and interpersonal factors which influence the effectiveness of educational organisations.

**Note:** This course has special relevance to those with experience or interests in administration in educational or social service settings. In 1983 this paper will be taught in full-time hours and in 1984 in part-time hours.

**\*14.318 Studies in Higher Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

An introduction to the aims and characteristics of courses in higher education and a study of curriculum design and instructional strategy at this level.

**14.319 Special Topic: The Reading Process**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of contemporary ideas and research on the reading process.

**14.320 Special Topic in Moral Education****14.321 The Nature of Educational Theory**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A philosophical examination of problems in educational theory.

**14.322 Adult Learning and Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of the educational, developmental and psychological aspects of adulthood and of current issues in the fields of adult learning and education.

**14.323 Special Topic: Issues Related to Reading Difficulties**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of contemporary issues in reading difficulties and intervention programmes. This course has a limited enrolment of 12. Students should consult the Head of Department.

**14.324 Special Topic**

A subject to be proposed by a staff member or a student and approved by the Head of Department. This must be approved not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

**14.325 Environmental Psychology: Applications to Education**

A look at mechanisms underlying interrelationships between behaviour and environment.

A course of prescribed practical work, observational visits or special seminars will be associated with each Education III paper. Details of these requirements are available at enrolment. These will normally involve over the year about twenty-four hours of supervised work in laboratories and elsewhere and additional time for assignments.

## Education for MA and Honours

Four papers and a thesis (14.601) which counts as three papers or,

Four papers and a folio of casework in guidance and counselling (14.606) or in reading problems (14.607) or,

Five papers and a thesis (14.611) counting as two papers or, in exceptional circumstances for a candidate who has commenced a thesis or folio of casework instead to complete the MA as either:

Six papers and a dissertation (14.604) or,

Seven papers.

## 14.400 Philosophy of Education

Philosophical issues in education.

### 14.401 Comparative Education

The comparative analysis of a selection of educational problems.

### †14.402 History of Education

An introduction to historical method applied to education.

### 14.317 Organisational Effectiveness

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of structural and interpersonal factors which influence the effectiveness of educational organisations.

**Note:** This course has special relevance to those with experience or interests in administration in educational or social service settings. In 1983 this paper will be taught in full-time hours and in 1984 in part-time hours.

### \*14.318 Studies in Higher Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

An introduction to the aims and characteristics of courses in higher education and a study of curriculum design and instructional strategy at this level.

### 14.319 Special Topic: The Reading Process

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of contemporary ideas and research on the reading process.

### 14.320 Special Topic in Moral Education

### 14.321 The Nature of Educational Theory

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A philosophical examination of problems in educational theory.

### 14.322 Adult Learning and Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of the educational, developmental and psychological aspects of adulthood and of current issues in the fields of adult learning and education.

### 14.323 Special Topic: Issues Related to Reading Difficulties

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of contemporary issues in reading difficulties and intervention programmes. This course has a limited enrolment of 12. Students should consult the Head of Department.

### 14.324 Special Topic

A subject to be proposed by a staff member or a student and approved by the Head of Department. This must be approved not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

### 14.325 Environmental Psychology: Applications to Education

A look at mechanisms underlying interrelationships between behaviour and environment.

A course of prescribed practical work, observational visits or special seminars will be associated with each Education III paper. Details of these requirements are available at enrolment. These will normally involve over the year about twenty-four hours of supervised work in laboratories and elsewhere and additional time for assignments.

## Education for MA and Honours

Four papers and a thesis (14.601) which counts as three papers or,

Four papers and a folio of casework in guidance and counselling (14.606) or in reading problems (14.607) or,

Five papers and a thesis (14.611) counting as two papers or, in exceptional circumstances for a candidate who has commenced a thesis or folio of casework instead to complete the MA as either:

Six papers and a dissertation (14.604) or,

Seven papers.

## 14.400 Philosophy of Education

Philosophical issues in education.

### 14.401 Comparative Education

The comparative analysis of a selection of educational problems.

### †14.402 History of Education

An introduction to historical method applied to education.

### 14.303 New Zealand Education

A study of selected aspects of New Zealand education. Particular reference will be paid to major investigations in the areas selected.

**14.404 Sociology of Education**

A more intensive examination of some of the matters introduced in Stage III, paper 14.303.

**14.405 Education and Work**

A theoretical and practical examination of selected economic, sociological and psychological aspects of the transition from school to work.

**Note:** (i) This course has special relevance to careers teachers and vocational guidance and employment officers.

(ii) In 1983 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1984 in full-time hours.

**14.406 Educational Psychology**

An advanced treatment of the behaviour of normal children with special reference to learning and the conditions which promote it.

**14.407 Developmental Psychology**

An advanced treatment of research in selected aspects of cognitive and personality development.

**14.409 Methods of Research in Education**

An advanced treatment of selected aspects of the process of research.

**14.410 Principles and Practice of Counselling**

Prerequisite: 14.306 will normally be a prerequisite for this course.

An advanced examination of principles of counselling and consulting, together with practical experiences in selected procedures.

**14.412 Behaviour Analysis in Education**

An examination of the application of behaviour analysis techniques to contemporary problems in education, including supervised research and field experience.

**Note:** In 1983 this paper will be taught in full-time hours and in 1984 in part-time hours.

**14.413 Education of Exceptional Children**

Prerequisite: 14.311 will normally be a prerequisite for this course.

An advanced study of special educational provisions for exceptional children, including an intensive analysis of provision for mentally retarded children.

**14.414 Issues in Curriculum Development and Evaluation**

A consideration of current issues in curriculum development and evaluation in primary, secondary and tertiary education.

**14.415 Special Topic**

The topic to be proposed by the student after consultation with staff members and approved by the Head of Department. The topic must be approved not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

**14.416 Special Topic**

The topic proposed by a staff member and approved by the Head of Department will be announced in the Department by 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

**14.417 Special Topic**

The topic proposed by a staff member and approved by the Head of Department will be announced in the Department by 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

**14.418 Marriage and Family Counselling**

An advanced examination of counselling principles as applied to stresses arising within marital and family relationships.

**14.601 Thesis**

A candidate presenting a thesis, dissertation or folio of case work shall forward it to the Professor of Education, not later than 1 November in the year in which it is to be examined. A research seminar will be held periodically during the first half of the year for those preparing to write MA theses.

A timetable for these seminars will be available at enrolment.

**DEPARTMENT OF ENGLISH**

**Notes** (i) Since the supply of text-books continues to be uncertain, some changes in courses may be unavoidable. Students will be notified of any such changes at the beginning of the academic year.

The books mentioned in the appendix are *prescribed* books – ie those which students must have. Students should obtain from the department the fuller version of prescriptions and book lists, which include *recommended* books (ie additional to those prescribed); and also lists of further prescribed books which are required for those papers not mentioned in the appendix.

All students should possess a good Dictionary: *Collins English Dictionary* and the *Concise Oxford* are recommended.

(ii) Attention is directed to the MA prerequisites as set out in the regulations for that degree. Students intending to take MA in English should plan their courses with these requirements, particularly that of a foreign language in mind.

**English I**

To advance to English II two English I papers must have been passed. Students intending to advance papers at English II are advised to take 18.100. Paper 18.100 has one lecture weekly for the whole year. The other papers have one lecture per week with an additional weekly lecture for half the year. All courses have weekly tutorials.

**18.100 Introduction to Chaucer, Shakespeare and the Study of Language****18.101 Twentieth Century Literature****18.103 New Zealand Literature**

**18.104 Nineteenth Century Literature****English II**

To advance to English III three specific English II papers must have been passed. See BA Schedule under English II: Qualifications. Each paper involves one lecture per week; tutorials are also given.

**18.200 Mediaeval Literature****18.201 English Language****18.210 Sixteenth and Seventeenth Century Prose and Poetry****18.211 Sixteenth and Seventeenth Century Drama****18.212 Shakespeare: Selected Plays: Comedies and Tragedies****18.220 The English Novel 1900–1945****18.222 Modern Poetry: 1900–1945****English III**

The course consists normally of a minimum of three papers, and a maximum of six papers; students must take one paper from 18.300–18.304, one from 18.306–18.308 and one from the group 18.310 and 18.314–18.328. See BA Schedule under English III: Qualifications, and also MA prerequisites. Each paper involves one lecture per week (except 18.301 which has two lectures per week), with tutorial work as arranged.

**18.300 The English Language from Chaucer's day to the present****18.301 Old English: Language, Literature and Society****18.302 Middle English Literature**  
Prerequisite: 18.200**18.303 The Linguistic Analysis of Literature****18.304 Phonology, and New Zealand Speech****18.306 Prose, Poetry and Drama of the Eighteenth Century****18.307 Romantic Poetry****18.308 18th Century Novels****18.310 Shakespeare: Selected Plays**

For 1983: Late Plays

**18.314 Major Works, Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries****18.320 Victorian Literature****18.323 American Literature: Poetry****18.325 Special Topic II as prescribed by the Head of Department: Novels from the Post-Colonial World: 1950–1980****18.326 Special Topic III as prescribed by the Head of Department: Women Writers of the 20th Century****18.327 Special Topic IV as prescribed by the Head of Department: Australian Literature****18.328 Special Topic V as prescribed by the Head of Department: Creative Writing**

Entry to this course is restricted. Details for the procedure to be followed for pre-enrolment are available from the Department.

**Note:** 18.301 and 18.302 are normally prerequisites for MA paper 18.403. 18.301 is a prerequisite for MA paper 18.400, 18.302 is a prerequisite for MA paper 18.411 and normally a prerequisite for 18.401. 18.301 is normally a prerequisite for MA paper 18.402.

**English for MA and Honours**

**Note:** Intending MA students who are in doubt about the choice of courses should consult the Head of Department.

**(1) Single Honours – English**

Students will select seven of the papers set out below, their selection of papers to be approved by the Head of the Department. One paper listed under Stage III English, if not already credited for a BA degree, may be offered as a paper for an MA. Not more than three papers may be taken from the period after 1930. With the permission of the Head of Department, a thesis (18.601) may be substituted for two papers or a dissertation (18.604) or a research essay (18.603) for one paper. The dissertation may take the form of a documented essay of about 25,000 words; the thesis will normally be longer, and will be upon a topic requiring detailed research. Candidates who propose to present their papers over two years will normally be required to submit specified coursework before sitting the examination for each paper. Those who present all their papers in one year will be given the opportunity to submit coursework. All students taking a paper from English III will be required to submit the prescribed coursework for that paper.

**18.400 Old English**

Prerequisite: Old English at Stage III level

**18.401 Middle English**

Prerequisite: normally Middle English at Stage III level

**18.402 Norse (Icelandic)**

Prerequisite: normally Old English at Stage III level

**18.403 Introduction to English Philology**

Prerequisite: normally Old English and Middle English at Stage III level

**18.404 Victorian Studies (24.415 History paper)**

An interdisciplinary paper concerned with selected topics from English literature and British social and cultural history of the 19th Century.

**18.405 Twentieth Century Poetry****18.406 Shakespeare: Selected Plays and Poems****18.407 Literary Criticism****18.409 Twentieth Century Drama****18.410 English Linguistics**

For 1983: Transformational–Generative Grammar.

**18.411 Selected Author or Authors I, to be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1983: Chaucer

Prerequisite: Middle English at Stage III level.

**18.412 Bibliography and Textual Criticism****18.413 Essays Paper**

The course will consist of the supervised writing of short essays in a field or genre proposed by the student.

**18.414 Selected Author or Authors II, to be prescribed by the Head of Department**

For 1983: Early Twentieth Century Fiction.

**18.415 Ninetenth Century American Prose and Fiction****18.416 20th Century American Literature****18.417 New Zealand Literature**

The course will be based mainly on authors of prose and verse writing after 1910.

**18.418 Special Topic I: To be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1983: Restoration Literature.

**\*18.419 Special Topic II: To be prescribed by Head of Department.****18.420 Special Topic III: To be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1983: Film Studies (Art History paper 19.404)

This inter-departmental paper – shared by the Departments of English and Art History – will examine film as an art by studying the work of some major film-makers and also the major theories of film criticism.

**18.421 Special Topic IV: To be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1983: Literature and Thought 1590–1650. A course in which literature is studied in relationship to the history, ideology and religion of the time.

**\*18.422 Special Topic V: To be prescribed by Head of Department****18.424 Selected Author or Authors III: to be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1983: Major Victorian writers: Dickens.

**\*18.425 A Topic in Sociolinguistics****18.426 Special Topic VI: To be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1983: Concepts of Satire in Augustan Literature.

**†18.427 Special Topic VII: To be prescribed by Head of Department****†18.428 Special Topic VIII: To be prescribed by Head of Department****18.601 Thesis**

(equivalent to two papers).

**18.603 Research Essay**

(equivalent to one paper).

**18.604 Dissertation**

(equivalent to one paper).

**(2) Combined Honours – English with another language (Languages and Literature)**

Students will select three or four papers (set out above for Single-Honours) as approved by the Heads of Department concerned.



## DEPARTMENT OF GEOGRAPHY

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

### Geography I

Two papers are offered for Geography I. They may be taken separately or together, but students planning to advance in geography should enrol in both. Practical work, tutorials, and a field excursion form an integral part of the courses, and participation in these is required. A list of recommended books for each course is included in the departmental *Students' Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

#### 20.101 Introductory Physical Geography

Water in the environment is the unifying theme for a study of processes in physical geography.

#### 20.102 Introductory Human Geography

Social and economic processes that determine spatial inequality and access to resources both within and between nations.

### Geography II

Six papers are offered for Geography II. They may be taken separately, but students planning to advance in geography should enrol for 20.204 (or 26.180 or 26.181) and at least two others from 20.201, 20.202, 20.203, 20.205 and 20.240 (Asian Geography). A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Students' Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

#### 20.201 Physical Geography

Environmental processes in biogeography, climatology, and geomorphology are considered with energy flow and transformation as the unifying theme.

#### 20.202 Human Geography

Population, economic and social patterns and inter-relationships, together with the principles and modes of analysis employed in human geography.

#### 20.203 Remote Sensing Techniques

Photogrammetry, photo interpretation and an introduction to more recent techniques of remote sensing and their application.

#### 20.204 Statistical Techniques in Geography

Elementary statistical methods for the non-mathematical student, including descriptive statistics, the testing of simple statistical relationships, and the use of computer processing.

### 20.205 Man's Role in the Environment

### Geography III

Each paper will involve at least two hours of lectures, seminars, or laboratory work per week, but students must also attend such additional practical work and fieldwork as may be required. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Students' Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

#### 20.301 Geography of New Zealand

Patterns and processes of social and economic regional development are emphasised.

#### 20.303 Geomorphology

A selection of topics from coastal, slope, and karst geomorphology.

#### 20.304 Biogeography and/or Climatology

Concepts and methods in environmental climatology and biogeography.

#### 20.305 Urban and Population Geography

Spatial, structural, and behavioural models of urban centres and their populations.

#### 20.306 Spatial Organisation of Third World Economies

The historical, economic and political forces responsible for the spatial characteristics of Third World agriculture, marketing, industry, migration, and urbanisation.

#### 20.310 Area Study

For 1983: Geography of Malaysia, Singapore, and Indonesia.

#### \*20.311 Historical-Cultural Geography

A topical approach to man's attitudes toward nature, the transformation of natural landscape into cultural landscape through time, religious organisation of environment, and the geography of folklore and place names.

#### \*20.312 Special Topic

#### 20.313 Advanced Statistical Techniques in Geography

An examination of multivariate methods and spatial analysis.

#### 20.316 Advanced Remote Sensing

Advanced analysis and digital processing of multi-spectral remotely sensed data.

**20.320 Resources and Environmental Management**

The functioning of natural and man-modified ecological systems and the institutional structures determining their use.

**Geography for MA, MSc, and Honours**

[Four papers and a thesis (20.601)]

Students will be required to select any four of the papers set out below. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Students' Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

**\*20.400 History and Nature of Geography****20.410 Geography of the Southwest Pacific**

The patterns and processes of island bio-physical environments, population, economic organisation and resource use.

**20.420 Biogeography**

Major concepts, theories, and methods in studies of plant communities and populations.

**20.421 Climatology**

Topics in boundary layer and applied climatology.

**\*20.422 Geomorphology****20.424 Hydrology and Fluvial Geomorphology**

Pure and applied aspects of hydrology and fluvial geomorphology, incorporating field and laboratory techniques.

**20.430 Land Use Studies**

Principles of land use competition and land use planning in rural and urban areas of developed economies.

**\*20.431 Historical Geography**

A cross cultural study of man's association with nature through time.

**20.432 Inequality Among Nations: Development and Underdevelopment**

The historical processes that have led to increasing inequality between developed and underdeveloped countries.

**\*20.433 Political Geography****20.434 Population Geography**

Analysis and applications of the methods and materials of demography.

**20.436 Urban Geography**

Emphasis is on the evolution of urban systems and contemporary urban problems.

**20.440 Remote Sensing**

An advanced study of remote sensing applications involving analysis of a range of recent imagery and data.

**20.441 Special Topic**

For 1983: Coastal Studies

**\*20.442 Special Topic****Asian Geography****\*20.130 Geography of East Asia**

A topical and regional approach to the geography of China and Japan. The unity and diversity of East Asia, environment and cultural development, industrialisation and urbanisation, population problems, and environmental management are emphasised.

**20.240 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia**

Population composition and growth, urbanisation, economic structure and regional patterns, and problems of resource use are emphasised.

**DEPARTMENT OF GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE**

The Department of Germanic Languages and Literature teaches two subjects: German and Scandinavian Studies.

Information about the Department is contained in the Departmental Handbook and the Handbook of the Faculty of Arts, both of which are available from the University Office.

Students intending to take an MA course should at all stages throughout their undergraduate studies consult the Head of Department concerning their degree structure, and should note carefully in the Departmental Handbook the strong recommendations concerning related subjects.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

**GERMAN****German I**

Most students enrolling for German I have studied German previously. They are divided, on the basis of their knowledge, into streams. Each stream has five

hours of teaching per week.

Students may enrol without previous knowledge of the subject. Such students have a different syllabus (including prescribed texts) from the rest of the class, and receive a total of six hours of teaching throughout the year.

Papers 22.100 and 22.101 are linked corequisites. A candidate's result will be determined over the two papers. See BA schedule.

In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year and in particular his performance in class tests, will be taken into consideration.

### **22.100 Language acquisition**

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation.

### **22.101 Literature and texts**

Selected works of German literature for translation and comment. Literary criticism.

### **22.102 Aspects of modern German civilization**

This paper is open to any interested student, whether or not he or she is studying German language and literature. The paper is strongly recommended to students of German at all stages.

A survey of modern German history, thought and culture (i) Aspects of 19th and 20th century German history and thought; (ii) Literature (studied in translation), music, art and cinema of the period.

### **†22.103 Reading Knowledge for Arts students in selected disciplines**

## **German II**

A candidate's result will be determined over the three papers. Papers 22.200, 22.201 and 22.202 are linked corequisites – see BA Schedule.

In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year and in particular his performance in literature assignments and in class tests, will be taken into consideration.

### **22.200 Language acquisition**

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation.

### **22.201 Selected aspects of German literature and language**

### **22.202 Aspects of 20th Century German literature**

## **German III**

A candidate's result will be determined over papers 22.300, 22.301 and 22.302, which are linked corequisites. For the purposes of BA regulation 4 (a) these three papers must normally be taken. In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year and in particular his performance in literature assignments and in class tests will be taken into consideration.

### **22.300 Language acquisition**

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation.

### **22.301 Medieval and Romantic texts**

### **22.302 Classics of Modern German literature**

Students who have passed, or are taking concurrently, papers 22.300, 22.301 and 22.302 may, with the permission of the Head of Department, take up to three approved papers which are prescribed for German MA and Honours.

Recommendations for background reading for all papers will be circulated.

## **German for MA and Honours**

Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss optional papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

### **(1) Single Honours – German**

Seven papers comprising 22.400 and six others, to be selected with the approval of the Head of the Department. With the approval of the Head of Department five papers and a thesis (22.601) may be offered. No student may offer for MA any paper in which he or she has already been credited with a pass.

### **22.400 Language acquisition. Translation at sight from and into German – Composition and other written work in German**

### **22.401 Classical and post-classical Middle High German language and literature with special reference to *Tristan and Isolde* and the works of Hartmann von Aue**

### **22.402 Classical Middle High German language and literature with special reference to Wolfram von Eschenbach's *Parzival* and the *Nibelungenlied***

**22.403 The political, religious and social background to Middle High German literature. Aspects of textual criticism**

**\*22.404 Literatur der Goethezeit**

**\*22.405 The poetry of Rilke**

**22.406 The *Novelle* and the *Märchen* in the nineteenth century**

This paper is not available to candidates who have presented paper 22.411 prior to 1981.

**\*22.407 Selected works of Brecht**

**22.408 Post-war German prose with special reference to selected authors**

**22.409 Scandinavian drama with special reference to Ibsen and Strindberg**

This paper deals with Scandinavian drama in English translation and is therefore open to students who have no knowledge of Scandinavian languages.

**22.410 Linguistic analysis of contemporary written German**

**22.413 Selected works of Thomas Mann and Franz Kafka**

**22.417 Modern German poetry with special reference to Rilke, the Expressionists and Brecht**

**22.418 An approved special topic in German language or literature**

**22.419 An approved special topic in German language or literature**

**22.420 An approved special topic in German language or literature**

**22.421 An approved special topic in German language or literature**

**22.440 An approved special topic in Germanic languages, literature, thought or history**

With the approval of the Head of Department, a thesis may be substituted for two of the optional papers. Students receiving such approval will be required to do the thesis in a second year.

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination on the oral use of the language. In determining the Class of Honours, the Candidate's performance in the written papers, the oral examination and in course work will be taken into consideration.

**(2) Combined Honours — German with another language**

Three papers in German and three in the other subject, with the seventh paper selected from either subject.

Three or four papers in German as defined above for Single Honours, to be selected with the approval of the Head of Department.

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination on the oral use of the language. In determining the Class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, the oral examination and in course work will be taken into consideration.

**†22.002 Foreign Language Reading Course (German)**

This course is designed for students who must satisfy, in another faculty, a foreign language reading requirement in German.

---

## SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES

### Scandinavian Studies I

Students may enrol without previous knowledge of the subject. Such students will receive a total of six hours of teaching per week.

A candidate's result will be determined over two papers. Papers 46.100 and 46.101 are linked corequisites — see BA Schedule.

In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year will be taken into consideration.

#### 46.100 Language acquisition

Oral and written use of Swedish, tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, translation from and into Swedish, dictation, reading.

#### 46.101 (i) Prescribed texts in Swedish for translation

#### (ii) Selected works of Scandinavian literature

#### (iii) An outline of Scandinavian history, geography and literature

### Scandinavian Studies II

A candidate's result will be determined over three papers. Papers 46.200, 46.201 and 46.202 are linked corequisites — see BA Schedule.

In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year will be taken into consideration.

**46.200 Language acquisition**

Oral and written use of Swedish, tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, translation from and into Swedish, dictation, reading.

**46.201 (i) The development of the Scandinavian languages****(ii) Selected Danish and Norwegian texts since 1840****(iii) Aspects of 20th Century Swedish literature****46.202 Scandinavian drama with special reference to Holberg, Ibsen, Strindberg and Ingmar Bergman****Scandinavian Studies III**

In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year will be taken into consideration.

**46.300 Language Acquisition**

Advanced oral and written Swedish; comprehension of written Danish and Norwegian ("Bokmaal").

**DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY**

Fuller details concerning the Department's teaching programme and its requirements of students are contained in a guide which all students must obtain from the Department at 1A Wynyard Street. Students are advised to call at the Department before enrolment to discuss courses and to obtain reading lists and a leaflet entitled Advice on Books to Buy. This will list recommended texts for papers for which there are no prescribed texts.

**Note:** \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year  
†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

**History I****24.100 From Versailles to Pearl Harbor: issues of peace and war**

(first half of year)

The origins of the Second World War in Europe and Asia. The course examines the challenges Germany and Japan presented to the status quo and considers the outcome.

**24.101 The Russian Revolution**

(first half of year)

The origins of the 1917 revolution and the development of the Soviet state and society.

**24.103 Fascism in the inter-war Years**

(second half of year)

The nature of inter-war fascism with particular reference to the movement in Italy and Germany.

**24.104 The Development of Modern Cities**

(first half of year)

The process of urbanisation in Great Britain, the United States and Australia; the economic and industrial development in selected cities and the social consequences of urban growth.

**24.105 The USA in the 20th Century**

(second half of the year)

The role of the United States in world affairs and a survey of internal social and political developments.

**24.106 Marxism in Perspective**

(second half of year)

Marxism as theory and practice in nineteenth-century Europe. The course will follow the development of socialist theory in the context of industrialisation and the early labour movement.

**\*24.107 Special Topic:** To be prescribed by Head of Department

**24.120 A History of Race Relations in New Zealand**

(second half of year)

A history of racial and cultural interaction in New Zealand from the late eighteenth century to the 1970s.

**24.121 New Zealand Society and Politics**

(first half of year)

New Zealand history other than race relations and specifically Maori history) since 1840, but with the main emphasis on the period since 1870.

**Note:** Each of the above papers will be taught for half of the year, three lectures, one tutorial per week, in the following sequence: 24.100-24.103, 24.101-24.105; 24.121-24.120, 24.104-24.106. Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 20 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper, or two or more papers from different sequences.

**Asian History I****24.130 China since the Opium War**

(second half of year)

The collapse of Imperial China under the impact of foreign imperialism and internal upheavals and the subsequent struggle to rebuild a modern nation.

**24.132 Nationalism and Revolution in Vietnam, Thailand and Indonesia**

(first half of year)

An examination of the nineteenth-century roots of nationalism and the significance of the revolutionary struggle in the twentieth century.

**Note:** There will be three lectures and one tutorial a week for each paper. Paper 24.130 will start in the week beginning 20 June.

**History II****24.200 Rome and the Barbarians 300–800**

(first half of year)

Attention will focus on the historiographical work of Gregory of Tours and the establishment of the Frankish Kingdom in Gaul from about 480–591.

**24.201 Mediaeval English Kingship from Alfred to Henry III**

(second half of year)

Studies in the development of royal power in England from the Anglo-Saxon period until the thirteenth century.

**24.208 Early Modern Spain and its Silver Colonies**

(first half of year)

The growth of the powerful Spanish monarchy from the late fifteenth century, together with its colonisation of Mexico and Peru. In the seventeenth century, the emphasis is on the weakening of the Crown and the erosion of metropolitan control over the two colonial societies. The focus of the paper is Habsburg Spain.

**24.212 The French Enlightenment**

(second half of year)

A study of eighteenth-century French thought with some attention to its seventeenth-century background. An essential part of the course will be the study in translation of some specified works by Montesquieu, Voltaire and Diderot.

**24.213 Society and Revolution in France 1750–1800**

(second half of year)

The social and economic development of France, focussing on the medium-term background to the Revolution at the end of the eighteenth century. Specific topics include population growth, religiosity, industrialisation, urbanisation, popular *mentalities*, criminality and the development of institutions.

**24.214 Parliaments, Estates and Revolutions, 1550–1660**

(first half of year)

A study of representation and consent in early mod-

ern Europe and of the parliamentary assemblies which were the embodiment of these principles. The course falls into two parts: a static, institutional study of assemblies in the mid-sixteenth century; and a dynamic study of the rise, decline, or eclipse of those assemblies, and particularly of their role in the crises of the mid-seventeenth century.

**24.215 Society in Crisis: Europe 1550–1660**

(second half of year)

This course — with an emphasis on social history — attempts to capture something of the 'flavour' of the world of sixteenth- and seventeenth-century Europe as well as providing students with an introduction to some of the more important events of those centuries. Particular attention will be paid to three examples of crisis: the Thirty Years War, the English Revolution, and the French Fronde.

**24.230 Polynesian and European Exploration of the Pacific**

(first half of year)

European exploration of the Pacific and theories on the origin and migration of Polynesians, including Maori voyages to New Zealand.

**24.232 Colonial Society and the American Revolution**

(first half of year)

The development of the societies and institutions of colonial America leading to the American Revolution.

**24.233 Australian Society 1788–1983**

(second half of year)

A study of some of the main factors that have shaped Australian society and the attitudes and values of Australians.

**†24.235 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

**†24.236 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

**Note:** Each of the above papers will be taught for half of the year, two lectures, one tutorial per week, in the following sequence: 24.200–24.201; 24.208–24.213; 24.214–24.215; 24.230–24.233; 24.232–24.212.

Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 20 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper, or two or more papers from different sequences.

**Asian History II****24.222 China under the Ming and Qing Dynasties**

(second half of year)

The social, political and economic structure of the final period of the Chinese empire, and the practice of

imperial government under native and foreign rulers, China's relations with the outside world, and the development of her cultural heritage.

**\*24.223 State and Society in pre-Colonial Island S.E. Asia**

An introduction to the history and culture of Malaysia, Indonesia, and the Philippines up to the period of High Colonialism in the late nineteenth century, through a discussion of such themes as the ecological system, the monsoons and trade, state formation, religion, theatre, literature, etc.

**24.224 State and Society in pre-Colonial Mainland S.E. Asia**

(first half of year)

An introduction to the history and culture of Burma, Thailand, and the Indo-China states up to the period of High Colonialism in the late nineteenth century through a discussion of such themes as the ecological system, the monsoons and trade, state formation, religion, theatre, literature, etc.

**Note:** Each paper will be taught for half of the year, two lectures, one tutorial per week 24.224, 24.222 are taught in sequence, paper 24.222 starting in the week beginning 20 June.

### History III

**24.301 The Mexican Revolution**

(second half of year)

The revolution (1910–1920) and the subsequent attempts to carry out its objectives: a study in the problems of reforming a society in an inherited environment of internal political corruption and external economic exploitation.

**24.302 The Reign of Henry VIII**

(first half of year)

A study (involving the extensive use of primary sources) of King, Court, and Kingdom in the throes of a political revolution imposed from above and a religious reformation initiated from below.

**24.303 The History of the Family in France and England**

(second half of year)

The social and demographic aspects of the family. The twin foci are the relationship of the family to its social, economic and political environment, and relationships among various members of the family. Specific topics of study include: household structure, the law and practice of marriage and divorce, the social relationship of women and men, child-rearing, sexuality, inheritance practices, and contraception.

**24.304 The Habsburg Empire 1848–1918**

(first half of year)

The problems of the central administration of the Empire and its political and ethnic components. Foreign policy to be dealt with only insofar as it throws light on the Empire's problems and fate.

**24.307 The Origins of the First World War**

(second half of year)

The origins of the First World War through discussion of the foreign policies of the main European countries involved, including Italy, and an analysis of international relations from 1870, and particularly from 1890 to 1915.

**24.309 British Labour History 1850–1918**

(first half of year)

The conditions of life and work of the lower classes and the evolving nature of the industrial and political labour movements.

**\*24.310 The American Civil War and Reconstruction**

The problems of slavery, race relations, and sectionalism in nineteenth-century America.

**24.314 Race in the Antipodes: New Zealand, Australia and South Africa in the 19th Century**

(first half of year)

The evolution of ideas about race in the nineteenth century with case studies of New Zealand, Australia and South Africa.

**24.315 Pacific History: culture contact to about 1900**

(first half of year)

The relations between Pacific Islanders and Europeans (explorers, traders and missionaries) up to the colonial period.

**†24.320 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

**24.321 American Labour History 1865–1940**

(second half of year)

Economic and social conditions of manual workers; racial, ethnic and cultural divisions; mobility and class; trade unions; socialism and labour in politics.

**24.322 Women in New Societies**

(first half of year)

A comparative study of women's history in New Zealand, the USA and Australia.

**†24.325 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

**24.326 Aspects of the History of European Antisemitism**

(second half of year)

Introductory lectures will be given on attitudes to the Jews in the Ancient World, the New Testament, the Church Fathers and the Middle Ages. The main emphasis will be on the period since the Enlightenment. German antisemitism will be stressed and other topics will also be selected for study, including antisemitism in France, fascist Italy, the Habsburg monarchy and its successor states, and Russia.

#### **24.327 Communism in Western Europe**

(second half of year)

Communism in Western Europe from the Russian Revolution to the present. Topics include the German Revolution of 1918, Gramsci and Italian Communism, the British general strike of 1926, the French Popular Front, Spanish Civil War, the Resistance and recent trends in Eurocommunism.

#### **24.328 Religion in Changing Societies**

(second half of year)

A study of religion in mid-nineteenth century Britain and how that religion fared when transplanted to Australia and New Zealand.

#### **†24.329 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

#### **24.331 Justinian: Triumph or Disaster?**

(second half of year)

Did Justinian restore to a shattered empire unity, efficiency, and taste? Or did he destroy the political stability of Africa, Italy, and Gaul, and overlook new dangers in Persia and the Balkans?

#### **24.332 Early Monasticism**

(first half of year)

This paper traces the development and wider impact of Christian asceticism, in all its forms, but particularly coenobitic, and in both East and West, from its origins, particularly after the mid-third century, until, but probably not including, Benedict.

#### **24.333 A History of Medieval Europe from Charlemagne to Philip the Fair**

(first half of year)

Designed as a successor to 24.201, this paper will cover approximately the same period (c.800–c.1296) and will deal with the political and cultural history of medieval European States (excluding England).

#### **24.334 Britain and Russia: a Century of Conflict**

(first half of year)

During the nineteenth century one of the major factors in the formulation of British foreign policy was fear of the growth of Russian power. What was British policy in response? To what extent does an examination of Russian foreign policy warrant the nineteenth-century British interpretation of it?

#### **\*24.335 Historical Biography in New Zealand**

The art of biography and its problems, including those of psycho-biography, with particular reference to biographies of New Zealanders and biographies written in New Zealand.

#### **24.336 Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe**

(second half of year)

The attitudes and values of ordinary people in Europe c.1500–1750; in other words popular culture in the widest sense of the term. Topics will include political and social protest, religion and irreligion, witchcraft, healing, literature, recreations – though students will have the opportunity to concentrate on specific areas of interest. Other regions will be discussed, but the emphasis will be on England.

**Note:** Each of the above papers will be taught for half of the year, one one-hour and one two-hour period per week in the following sequences: 24.302–24.336; 24.304–24.326; 24.334–24.307; 24.309–24.321; 24.315–24.301; 24.322–24.303; 24.333–24.327; 24.314–24.321; 24.332–24.331. Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 20 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper or two or more papers from different sequences. But it may prove impossible owing to pressure of numbers in certain classes to allow students to enrol for all the papers of their first choice.

### **Asian History III**

#### **24.312 Sino-Japanese Relations since the Meiji Restoration**

(second half of year)

The relations of the two principal nations of the Far East, since the impact of the West; the breakdown of China's informal overseas empire; and the role of Japan in the development of Chinese nationalism.

#### **24.324 Trade and Society in pre-Colonial Southeast Asia**

(first half of year)

Trade and its impact on various societies in Southeast Asia prior to the nineteenth century. An important component of the course is a research essay which is intended to interest students in the historiographical problems involved in reconstructing the history of an area with limited written and oral sources.

#### **24.330 British Imperialism in Southeast Asia**

(first half of year)

A survey of British imperialism in the Southeast Asian context from the late eighteenth century to the year following the Second World War, with an emphasis on selected topics and areas.

**Note:** Each of the above papers will be taught for half of the year, one one-hour and one two-hour period per week, in the following sequence: 24.324–24.312; 24.330 will be taught in the first half of the year. Second half year papers start during the week beginning 20 June.



## History for MA and Honours

Five papers and a research essay (24.603) counting as one paper; or, with the permission of the Head of Department, four papers and a thesis (24.601). The research essay must be on a subject connected with one of the candidate's formally examined MA papers or, with the permission of the Head of Department, with one of the papers passed at History III. The thesis shall not exceed 50,000 words and two copies must be handed in to the Registrar. The research essay shall be between 10,000 and 20,000 words and two copies must be submitted to the Registrar. Candidates presenting a research essay may attempt the five papers and present the essay in one year, or attempt four papers in the first year and present the remaining paper and research essay in the second year, or with the permission of the Head of Department attempt three papers in the first year and present the remaining two papers and research essay in the second year. Candidates presenting a thesis must attempt four papers in the first year.

Students attempting the one-year MA must present their research essay by the last day of February in the calendar year following the examinations. Other students attempting research essays must present them by 1 December of the second year of the course. For the date for theses, see MA Regulations 10 (d). Students writing theses or research essays are expected to report regularly to their supervisors and to attend monthly graduate seminars on research methods.

### 24.400 Topics in New Zealand History

Aspects of New Zealand history at present engaging the attention of research workers, including political, social and racial questions.

### 24.401 The Political Development of the Pacific Islands from about 1870

An examination of political and related social change in the Pacific Islands from annexation to decolonization.

### 24.402 Racial Interaction in Southern Africa in the 20th century

The impact on race relations of the expansion and contraction of the South African frontier.

### \*24.403 Topics in Australian History since 1880

A study of some of the main social and political changes from about 1880 with emphasis upon how these changes affected Australians' values and attitudes to life. Topics to be considered include urbanisation, political radicalism and conservatism, the fate of the churches, the search for an Australian identity, the impact of war and depression, the family.

### 24.404 Kings, Lords, and Commons: Tudor Government and Society 1485-1603

This course involves the extensive use of primary materials. It concentrates on the changing role of parliament; the shifting relationship between king, lords, and commons; and parliament's response to a wide variety of political, economic and social problems ranging from religion and witchcraft to treason and inflation.

### 24.405 Topics in American History since 1880

In 1983 the course will focus on progressivism and the New Deal.

### 24.406 Individual and Community in Western Europe 1050-1200

The developments and changes in the relationship between communities (intellectual, religious, commercial, heretical) and the individuals which made them up. A reading knowledge of French or Latin (or perhaps German) is essential.

### 24.407 Indonesia and the Philippines: Colonial Experience and Post-colonial problems

This paper examines the similarities and contrasts in the colonial history of Indonesia and the Philippines and discusses some of the problems the two Republics have faced since independence.

### \*24.408 Russia since 1917

### \*24.409 British Social History 1870-1914

Social change in late nineteenth century Britain. Topics such as attitudes to poverty, social legislation, housing problems, the role of women and changes in education are covered.

### \*24.410 Philosophy of History

Identification of the main philosophical questions provided by the study of history in Western European Society and examination of the different ways in which those questions arose and were resolved at different periods in the Western European tradition.

### 24.411 Topics in the History of the Early American Republic

A study of early national American society and politics, with special reference to political culture, diplomacy and war in the years between 1776 and 1828.

### 24.413 The Origins of the Second World War

This course is mainly concerned with the origins of the war in Europe and lays particular emphasis upon the relationship between internal and international affairs.

**24.415/18.404 Victorian Studies**

An inter-disciplinary paper, shared with the English department, concerned with selected topics from English literature and British social and cultural history of the nineteenth century.

**\*24.419 New Zealand Oral History**

An examination of the techniques and problems of oral history.

**Note:** (i) Only students who have previously studied New Zealand (eg 24.120, 24.121 or 24.400) may take this course.  
(ii) With the permission of the Head of Department this course may be substituted for the research essay 24.603.

**24.420 China's Struggle for Modernity: The Republican Era**

An examination of China's fragmentation under the warlords and its tortuous development towards a new national unity.

**\*24.421 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

**\*24.422 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

**24.423 Marxist Historians and their Critics**

This paper is a concentrated study of historical method and debate. It is divided into three main sections. Section one deals with the contributions, methodologies and development of some prominent Marxist historians. Section two examines some specific controversies involving Marxist historians. Section three discusses some classic statements about the nature and value of history, using anti-Marxist, non-Marxist, and Marxist examples.

**Note:** (i) There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.  
(ii) If enrolment for any MA paper falls below five, students will be given the option of transferring to another MA paper. As an alternative it may be possible in some cases to arrange for the paper to continue as a reading course, meeting once a fortnight.  
(iii) All students intending to enrol for MA must see the Head of Department before formally enrolling, preferably at the end of the previous year.

**DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS**

For prescriptions see Index.

**DEPARTMENT OF MUSIC**

**Note:** \* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year  
† This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

Restrictions on Entry to Courses:

1. A candidate wishing to advance in Music for BA beyond Stage I is required to satisfy the Head of the

Department of Music that he or she has attained a suitable standard in music, at an interview to be held in the first weeks of February before University enrolment week. A candidate who has not taken Music for the University Entrance or University Bursary Examinations will be required during his or her interview to satisfy the Head of Department of Music that he or she has reached an acceptable standard in harmony and aural perception.

Application to the Registrar must be made on the prescribed form and forwarded to the Secretary, Music Department, by 15 November (for entry to a course in the following year).

2. Enrolments in the following papers will be restricted as follows:

Number	Title of Paper	Restricted to	Method of Restriction
<b>Stage I (BA)</b>			
28.101	Musicianship	40	Interview
28.102	Materials of Music	40	Interview
28.103	History of Musical Style	80	Interview
<b>Stage II (BA)</b>			
28.110	Composition	15	Results in Stage I papers
28.112	Keyboard Harmony & Score-playing	20	As for 28.110 plus sight-reading ability
28.122	Introduction to Harmony and Counterpoint	40	Results in Stage I papers
28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint	20	Results in Stage I papers
28.215	Orchestration	15	Results in Stage I papers
28.216	Studies in Electronic Music	10	Results in Stage I papers
28.217	Music Education	15	Results in Stage I papers and Interview
28.218	Choral Conducting	20	

**STAGE III(BA)**

28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint	20	Results in Stage II papers
28.210	Composition	10	
28.211	Renaissance Polyphony	20	
28.212	Keyboard Harmony and Score-playing	15	

28.302	Advanced Harmony and Counterpoint	15	Results in Stage II papers and interview
28.318	Conducting	5	Results in Stage II papers and interview

### Music I

28.101, 28.102, 28.103 as prescribed for BMus,  
28.109 as prescribed for BA.

### Prescriptions for BA

†28.109 Style Analysis (one paper)

A course based principally on compositions discussed more generally under 28.103.

### Music II

28.202, 28.203, \*28.204, 28.205, \*28.206, 28.207, \*28.208, 28.209, 28.214, 28.215, 28.216, \*28.217, 28.218, †28.221, 28.222, 28.110, 28.112, 28.113, 28.122 as prescribed for BMus.

### Music III

28.302, 28.303, \*28.304, 28.305, \*28.306, 28.307, \*28.308, 28.309, 28.314, 28.316, †28.318, †28.323, \*28.324, 28.202, 28.210 (2 papers); 28.211, 28.212 as prescribed for BMus.

### Music for MA and Honours

Restriction on entry to Courses:

1. Interview by Board of teaching members of Music Faculty; and
2. Performance where applicable.

A candidate reading for this Degree will be required to satisfy the Head of Department of Music of his proficiency as a performer and his ability to read an approved language other than English. (Four papers and a Thesis (28.601), which counts as three papers). The papers to be chosen from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.404, 28.405, 28.406, 28.407, 28.409, 28.411, 28.414, 28.415, 28.416, 28.419, 28.422, 28.423 as prescribed for MMus.

**Note:** (1) The availability of these papers will depend on the number of students and their choice of papers.

(2) The specific requirements for choice of papers are given in MA Schedule (22).

*partment of Philosophy: Course Outlines.* A copy can be obtained from the Philosophy Department Secretary, Room 214, first floor, Old Arts Building, Princes Street. The brochure also contains a full list of textbooks for each course. Students are strongly advised to consult the brochure and to seek advice from the Department concerning their proposed Course of Study before enrolment. Students enrolling in Philosophy must obtain a copy of the brochure.

All students who propose to enrol in Philosophy III from 1980 onwards will be required to have passed paper 29.208 Metaphysics II. Those who have passed Philosophy II papers in years up to and including 1978, but not 1979, and who have satisfied the prerequisites for Philosophy III as listed in the BA Schedule during those years, will be permitted to enrol in Philosophy III in subsequent years.

Prerequisites and corequisites for the various papers offered by the Department are set out in detail in the BA Schedule. Students should note that paper 29.101 is a prerequisite for some Philosophy III papers. Students may be able to obtain an exemption from the prerequisite or corequisite requirement of 29.101 for various papers by passing a special examination in logic to be held immediately before enrolment week. Interested students should see the Head of Department at the earliest opportunity, preferably before the vacation, as some study through the vacation will be needed. A pass in the special examination carries no credit towards a degree.

### Philosophy I

**Note:** Two hours per week for each paper including lectures and tutorials.

#### 29.100 Introduction to Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge

#### 29.101 Introduction to Logic

#### 29.102 Ethics

#### 29.103 Social Philosophy

### Philosophy II

**Note:** (i) Paper 29.208 is a prerequisite for all Philosophy III papers.

(ii) One two-hour period per week for each paper other than 29.201 (two one-hour periods per week).

(iii) The prerequisite for all Philosophy II papers is a pass in two Philosophy I papers.

(iv) Students majoring in a subject other than Philosophy who wish to enrol in Philosophy II papers and who have not passed any Philosophy I papers may enrol if the Head of Department deems they have adequate background in the subject matter of the papers.

#### †29.200 Philosophy of Mind

#### 29.201 Logic II

#### †29.202 Philosophy of Language

## DEPARTMENT OF PHILOSOPHY

Full details concerning the Philosophy Department, the content of its courses and its requirements of students are contained in a brochure entitled *De-*

**29.203 Philosophy of Science****29.204 Greek Philosophy****29.205 Political Philosophy****\*29.206 History of Scientific Ideas****29.207 Philosophy of Religion****29.208 Metaphysics II****\*29.209 History of Philosophy****\*29.210 Special Topic****29.211 Existentialism and Phenomenology****†29.212 Special Topic****Philosophy III**

**Note:** (i) Paper 29.208 is a prerequisite for all Philosophy III papers.  
(ii) One two-hour period per week for each paper other than 29.305 (two one-hour periods per week).  
(iii) Students who wish to advance to MA in Philosophy must pass four Philosophy III papers, including paper 29.306 (for which 29.101 is a prerequisite), and attain an average grade of C+ or higher. For those students who complete a double major in Philosophy and another subject, the prerequisite for advancing to MA in Philosophy is a pass in three Philosophy III papers, including paper 29.306 (for which 29.101 is a prerequisite), the average grade for the three Philosophy III papers being C+ or higher.

**29.300 Theory of Knowledge****\*29.301 Metaphysics III****29.302 History of Philosophy (Ancient and Medieval)****\*29.303 History of Philosophy (Modern)****29.304 Ethics****29.305 Logic III****29.306 Contemporary Analytic Philosophy****\*29.307 Special Topic****†29.308 Special Topic****Philosophy for MA and Honours**

Prerequisites for enrolment for MA in Philosophy are passes in eight Philosophy papers, including 29.101, 29.306, and three other Philosophy III papers (or two other Philosophy III papers for students taking a double major). All Philosophy III papers must be passed at an average grade of C+ or higher.

Seven papers are required for MA in Philosophy: either four papers to be taken in the first year and three in the second year of the course, or, with the approval of the Head of Department, four papers and a thesis counting as three papers (29.601). One paper may be chosen from those offered in Philosophy III which the student has not previously passed. All other papers are to be selected from 29.400 to 29.420, not all of which are offered in any one year. The selection must be approved by the Head of the Department, who will generally require that the chosen papers fall within at least three of the following areas of Philosophy: (i) Theoretical Philosophy (Metaphysics, Epistemology, etc); (ii) Practical Philosophy (Ethics, Political Philosophy, etc.); (iii) Logic; and (iv) History of Philosophy (either a period or an important figure). Students intending to enrol for an MA in Philosophy *must* consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss the availability of papers, the proposed MA course, and textbooks, reference works and vacation reading for each course.

**29.400 Ethics****29.401 Kant****29.402 Wittgenstein****29.403 Metaphysics****29.404 Philosophy of Language****29.405 Philosophical Psychology****29.406 Philosophy of Natural Science****29.407 Philosophy of Social Science****29.408 Philosophy of History****29.409 Philosophy of Mathematics****29.410 Philosophical Logic****29.411 Mathematical Logic****29.412 Topics in the History of Philosophy I****29.413 Topics in the History of Philosophy II****29.414 Topics in the History of Philosophy III****29.415 Topics in Modern Philosophy****29.416 Modern Continental Philosophy****29.417 Aesthetics**

**29.418 Special Topic****29.419 Special Topic****29.420 Special Topic**

Candidates for 29.420 will be required to write essays (to be submitted no later than the end of the fourth week of the third term) within a field of Philosophy to be specified by the Head of Department. There will be no examination paper.

---

**DEPARTMENT OF POLITICAL STUDIES**

\*Note: This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
 †This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

**Political Studies I**

**30.100 American Government: Themes and Practices in a Liberal Democracy**  
 (second half of year)

**30.101 Soviet Communism in Theory and Practice**  
 (first half of year)

**30.102 Law, Property and Individualism: An Introduction to Political Thinking**  
 (second half of year)

**30.105 Public Administration: Central and Local**  
 (first half of year)

**Asian Politics I**

**30.103 China Since 1949: The Politics of an Emerging Superpower**  
 (second half of year)

**30.104 Armies and Politics in Burma, Thailand and Vietnam**  
 (first half of year)

**Political Studies II****\*30.200 Major Figures in Political Thought**

**30.201 British Politics and Society**  
 (first half of year)

**30.202 New Zealand Parties, Elections and Political Behaviour**  
 (first third of year)

**30.203 New Zealand Government and Policy-Making**  
 (second third of year)

**30.204 A Topic in the Structure of International Relations**  
 In 1983: New Zealand and Australian Foreign Policy.  
 (third third of year)

**30.208 A Topic in European Politics**  
 In 1983: The Politics of Small States — Scandinavia  
 (second half of year)

**30.209 Modern Political Ideologies**  
 (first half of year)

**Asian Politics II**

**30.205 The Politics of Race and Prosperity in Malaysia and Singapore**  
 (second third of year)

**\*30.206 Generals, Technocrats and Muslims in Indonesian Politics**

**30.207 Japan Since 1945: Images and Realities**  
 (third third of year)

**Political Studies III**

**30.301 A Topic in the Structure of International Relations and the Formulation of Foreign Policy**  
 In 1983: United States Foreign Policy.  
 (second half of year)

**30.302 A Topic in the Politics of New States**  
 In 1983: Forms of Political Development in Africa.  
 (second half of year)

**30.303 Introduction to Statistics and Political Research**  
 (full year)

**30.304 Political Learning and Political Behaviour**  
 Social Change Political Environment and Voting Behaviour in Western Democracies  
 (first half of year)

**30.305 Studies in Contemporary Political Ideas**  
 (first half of year)

**30.307 The European Community and COMECON**  
 Nationalism Versus Integration in East and West Europe.  
 (first half of year)

**\*30.308 The Foreign Policy of an Asian Nation: Japan Incorporated****30.309 Explaining Political Action**  
(second half of year)**30.310 Public Administration: Theory and Process**

(second half of year)

Theories of the nature of decision-making in governmental agencies, of bureaucratic accountability and of organisational development. The course will examine the processes of political control, executive leadership, checks and malfunctions and also evaluate the delivery of services.

**Political Studies for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (30.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (30.603) which shall count as one paper; or seven papers. The papers shall be selected from 30.400 to 30.413. A candidate presenting a thesis must attempt four papers in the first year.

All candidates shall take four papers in their first year and will be expected to complete the remainder, being three papers, or a thesis, or two papers and a research essay, in the following year. Only in special circumstances and with the approval of the Head of Department will permission be given for a candidate taking seven papers or six papers and a research essay either to present three papers in the first year and the remainder in the following year, or to spread the course over three years by taking either one paper or the research essay in the third year.

A candidate presenting a research essay must submit it at the end of the second term in the year of presentation. The research essay must be on a topic approved by the Head of Department and shall not exceed 20,000 words.

The thesis shall not exceed 60,000 words.

The prerequisites for the MA course are eight papers in the subjects Political Studies and Asian Politics including three Stage III papers.

**\*30.400 Topic on Political Thought and Practice**  
The Role of Ideology in China.**30.401 A Topic on the Role of Minority Ethnic Groups in Politics**

In 1983: Maoris and American Blacks.

**30.402 A Topic on Urban Government and Politics****30.403 Special Topic to be Prescribed by the Head of Department**

In 1983: The Politics of Information: global and regional issues in news flows and communications technology.

**30.404 Australian Politics****30.407 Thomas Hobbes and His Times****30.408 Special Topic to be prescribed by the Head of Department**

In 1983: Mass Communications and Mass Beliefs.

**30.409 A Topic on the Politics of Asian Nations**

In 1983: Development Theory Policy and Practice.

**30.410 Special Topic to be prescribed by the Head of Department**

In 1983: New Zealand Political Ideas.

**30.411 A topic on Political Thought and Practice**

In 1983: Communist revisionism in Eastern Europe. This paper will not be available to those who have previously taken paper 30.300.

**30.412 A topic on American Politics**

In 1983: The American Presidency and the Supreme Court since 1960.

**\*30.413 Public Administration**

In 1983: Selected Issues with special reference to New Zealand.

**DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY**

**Note on textbooks:** Students taking advanced courses are advised to consult with the lecturers concerned before purchasing books.

**Notes on courses:** The Schedule attached to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BA should be consulted for pre and corequisites. The Arts Faculty Handbook contains further useful advice.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

**Psychology I****32.108 Introduction to General Psychology**

The psychological study of behaviour; biological and social determinants of behaviour; group behaviour; individual and group differences; development of behaviour; psychopathology and its treatments.

**32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

This paper will emphasise the application of the experimental methods to the study of behaviour, with particular stress on sensation, perception, learning and motivation. (Laboratory attendance of 2 hours per week is required).

## Psychology II

Three papers must be taken by students wishing to advance to Stage III.

### 32.206 Theory and method: Learning and Motivation

The first half of this course is a general introduction to techniques used by psychologists in the description and explanation of behaviour, with emphasis on statistical techniques of data analysis. The second half deals with the conditions under which learning occurs, and the nature of the learning process. Classical theories of learning and motivation are described, compared, and related to contemporary interpretations.

### 32.207 Sensory Processes: Physiological Psychology

The first half covers elements of psychophysics and detection theory, and an introduction to the coding of information in sensory systems, with an emphasis on vision and hearing. The second half provides an introduction to the comparative and physiological basis of behaviour.

### 30.208 Developmental Psychology: Interpersonal Behaviour

The first half of this course is concerned with the development of behaviour from birth to old age. The second half deals with individual aspects of social functioning, with an emphasis on perceptual and communicative processes.

(Laboratory attendance or other practical work of not less than two hours per week will be required for each paper at the Stage II level.

## Psychology III

A pass in three Stage III papers is necessary for entry to MA and Honours in Psychology.

**Note:** Paper 32.301 covers some of the essential skills required for professional work in psychology and should be taken by all candidates who may wish to work with clients.

### 32.301 The Psychology of Individual Differences

A study of genetic sources of individual differences of their measurement, and of the construction and use of psychometric tests.

### 32.302 Psychological Theory

A consideration of some continuing and contemporary psychological issues and problems.

### 32.303 Cognitive Processes

An examination of the psychology of attention, pattern recognition, memory, problem solving, language and thinking.

### 32.304 The Theory and Systems of Personality

An examination of different theoretical conceptions of personality; the major viewpoints are clinical, psychometric, behaviouristic and phenomenological.

### 32.305 Physiological Psychology

An advanced study of the comparative and physiological bases of behaviour with emphasis on research methodology.

### 32.306 The Design of Psychological Experiments

A consideration of multiple regression, parametric and non-parametric methods, factorial design, probability, analysis of variance, and techniques suitable for single-case studies.

### 32.307 The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing

Aspects of visual perception affecting behaviour in a variety of environments will be discussed. A study of the effects of noise on people will also be covered.

### 32.308 Research Topic

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

### 32.309 Learning

An examination of a wide range of data on learning and the control of behaviour. The topics will include: reinforcement, punishment, avoidance, law of effect, classical conditioning, conditioned reinforcement, anxiety and conditioned suppression, and stimulus control of behaviour.

### \*32.310 Comparative Psychology

The study of the differences and similarities in the behaviour of animals.

### 32.311 Social Behaviour

This course concentrates on social functioning in both intergroup and intragroup settings.

### 32.312 Organizational Psychology

An examination of personnel psychology, organizational psychology and human engineering.

## Psychology for MA and Honours

(Seven papers or four papers and a thesis 32.601 which is equivalent to three papers). Students in consultation with the Head of the Department will select their papers from among the following:

**32.401 History of Psychology**

An historical account of psychology with special reference to the aspirations and activities of influential psychologists.

**†32.402 Quantitative Psychology**

The quantitative analysis of psychological phenomena.

**32.403 Applied Analysis of Human Behaviour**

An examination of general issues in behaviour analysis, of approaches to psychological assessment, and of the application of behavioural techniques to psychological phenomena.

**32.404 Sensation and Perception**

An advanced treatment of modern psychophysics and of the psychology of vision and hearing.

**\*32.405 Comparative Psychology**

The range and variety of human behaviour considered with the behaviour of other animals as an essential context.

**32.406 Physiological Psychology**

A study of current issues in the physiological bases of behaviour.

**†32.408 Clinical Neuropsychology**

An examination of the relation between the brain and mental functioning with an emphasis on clinical cases of brain damage.

**32.409 Abnormal Psychology**

A consideration of the psychological analysis of mental disorders, including their aetiology, classification, assessment and treatment.

**32.410 Neuropsychology**

An advanced treatment of functional models of the human brain and of neurolinguistics, with an emphasis on the contributions of Lashley, Hebb and Luria.

**32.411 Advanced Operant Behaviour**

An advanced study of selected topics in learning at the level of current research.

**32.412 Social Psychology**

An examination of selected research topics in social psychology with a special emphasis on the underlying theories.

**32.413 Contemporary Issues in Development Psychology**

A study of psychological development in infancy and early childhood including an examination of the development of the learning process.

**32.415 Critical Issues in Psychology**

An examination of methodological, metatheoretical and social issues affecting the study and practice of psychology.

**32.416 Cognitive Psychology**

A study of selected aspects of human cognition, which includes perception, attention, memory, problem solving and language.

**32.417 Special Topic in Psychology**

Physiological psychology laboratory techniques.

**32.418 Special Topic in Psychology****32.419 The Design of Psychological Experiments**

A consideration of multiple regression, parametric and non-parametric methods, factorial design, probability, analysis of variance, introduction to computer packages, and techniques suitable for single case studies.

**Note:** Students who have already passed 32.306 are not eligible to take this paper.

**32.420 Research Topic in Psychology**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

**32.421 Theories and Systems of Psychotherapy**

A study of the theoretical bases of various systems of psychotherapy with particular emphasis on problems associated with matching systems to individuals.

**DEPARTMENT OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES**

**Note:** \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year  
† This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

**FRENCH****French Stage I****Language papers****34.100 or 34.110 Language Acquisition**

(Entry to 34.110 is given after a streaming test or a later decision by the Head of Department). Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.



**34.102 Language Comprehension**

Aural and reading comprehension using texts on contemporary issues, and (optionally) conversation on the same topics.

**34.104 Language comprehension in specific areas A: Science**

Aural and reading comprehension using general science texts.

**34.106 Language Comprehension in specific areas B: Social Science, Art History, Music**

Aural and reading comprehension using texts in areas or disciplines to be specified each year. (A minimum of five candidates per area is required).

1983: Art history, Music

**\*34.150 French for beginners: a full-skill course leading into 34.100****Text papers****34.101 Twentieth Century Literary Texts****34.103 Twentieth Century Texts****\*34.109 Contemporary French Civilisation****French Stage II****34.200 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**\*34.203 Nineteenth Century Literary Texts****32.204 Nineteenth Century Language****34.209 Nineteenth Century French Civilisation****34.201 Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

1983: Shorter Fiction

**34.202 Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

1983: Poetry

**34.205 Medieval Texts****34.210 Professional translation of written texts**

Practical training in professional translation between English and French. Enrolment by permission of the Head of Department (not a corequisite paper).

**34.214 Language Studies for intending teachers of French**

A study of the structure of French with reference to different linguistic models and their relevance for teaching.

**French Stage III****34.300 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**34.310 Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century Literary Texts**

1983: Theatre

**34.302 Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century Texts**

1983: Prose

**34.305 Seventeenth and/or Eighteenth Century Language**

1983: Eighteenth Century

**34.318 Social and Lexical History of French in the Pacific****34.306 Old French Language and Literature****34.308 A Topic in Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literature**

1983: The Novel and Society

**34.309 A Topic in Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literature**

1983: Contemporary Literary Criticism

**34.307 A Literary Topic**

1983: Poésie et chansons à l'époque moderne

**Foreign Language Reading Examination (French)****34.500 FLRE in French (without lectures)****34.501 FLRE in French (with lectures)**

**Note:** Students wishing to gain this qualification are advised as follows:  
(a) if you passed in French at Bursaries or Scholarship levels, you should with some reading in French in your own subject be able to pass in 34.500; if you wish to refresh or improve your knowledge, you should enrol in 34.501 and attend lectures in 34.104 or 34.106 according to your discipline.  
(b) if you passed in French at a lower level than Bursaries, but have done at least two years of Secondary School French, you should enrol for 34.501, 34.102, 34.104 or 34.106;  
(c) if you have done no French at all, you should enrol in a beginner's course at the Centre for Continuing Education.

A pass in 34.500 or 34.501 gives a prerequisite qualification but does not count towards a degree; a pass in 34.100, 34.102, 34.104 or 34.106 also counts towards several undergraduate degrees.

**French for MA and Honours**

Seven papers or four papers and a thesis (34.601)  
The requirements are given in section (9) of the MA Schedule. The thesis must be taken in a second year. For the MA in Languages and Literature, the requirements are in section (17) of the MA schedule, there is no thesis option. Paper 34.400 is compulsory for both subjects, and the marks for it bear a relative weighting of three to two for each other paper in French. Selection of paper 34.421 is subject to the permission of the Head of Department. Prerequisites may be waived by the Head of Department. All intending MA students should consult staff in the year preceding enrolment.

**34.400 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written use of French, tested by: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis. (Prerequisite: 34.300).

**34.401 A Special Topic in Old French Literature**

1983: Les chansons de geste

**34.402 A Special Topic in Renaissance Literature****34.403 A Special Topic in Sixteenth and Seventeenth Century Thought**

1983: Philosophical Thought

**\*34.404 A Special Topic in Seventeenth Century Literature****34.406 A Special Topic in Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literature**

1983: Novels of Social Comment and Human Relations

**34.423 A Special Topic in Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literature**

1983: The Naturalist Novel

**34.407 A Special Topic in Twentieth Century Literature**

1983: Chemins de la pensée

**34.408 A Special Topic in Twentieth Century Literature**

1983: Camus and Beckett

**34.409 A Special Topic in Twentieth Century Literature****34.410 An Approved Literary Topic**

1983: La Femme aux 17e et 19e siècles

**34.411 An Approved Literary Topic**

1983: Modern Canadian Fiction

**34.412 Old Picard Language and Literature**

(Recommended prerequisite: 34.205 or 34.306)

**34.413 Middle French Language and Literature****34.416 Principles of Lexicology and Lexicography and their application to French**

1983: Les Suffixes *ier* et *aie* dans le lexique des plantes

**34.417 Applied Linguistics, as related to French****34.418 Overseas Regional French****34.419 French Creoles****34.420 An Approved Topic in Linguistics****34.421 Research Techniques in Language Literature or Civilisation**

Particular reference will be paid to one aspect in which an original investigation must be undertaken. The prerequisites are determined by the Head of the Department.

**34.422 Linguistic analysis of French****34.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent to 3 papers)

**ITALIAN****Italian I**

A guide to Italian studies at Auckland is available from the Romance Languages Department, 22 Princes Street. Students are warmly invited to visit the Italian lecturers before enrolment to discuss courses. It is best to phone to make an appointment. (Methods of assessment for all Italian papers – coursework, examinations etc – are determined at the beginning of the year in consultation with the students for each course).

**\*35.102 and 35.103 Italian Language and Society 1 and 2**

Open to beginners and more advanced students, these papers must be taken together.

Students learn to speak, read and write Italian using material on issues in contemporary Italian life, society, politics and thought.

**\*35.104 Italian Language in Opera and Song**

Primarily intended for singers. Comprehension and pronunciation. Study of Italian texts of operatic

libretti, madrigals, songs. May be taken by both BA students and students from the Faculty of Music.

### **35.106 and 35.107 Italian Language Acquisition and Introduction to Italian Culture 1 and 2**

Open to beginners and more advanced students, these papers must be taken together. Students learn to speak, read and write Italian. In addition, aspects of the history of Italian culture will be studied. Six hours per week; weekly assignments.

### **35.108 Italy in the Twentieth Century**

(first half of year)

An historical, political, sociological and cultural study of the fascist period and the years since the Second World War. Topics studied range from migration patterns to contemporary Italian film. No knowledge of the Italian language is required. Two lectures and one tutorial per week.

## **Italian II**

### **35.200 Language Acquisition**

Advanced reading, grammar, writing, conversation in Italian. Three hours per week. Weekly assignments. May be combined with any one or more of the following papers for Italian II.

### **35.202 Fourteenth Century Literary Texts: Dante**

### **35.203 Fourteenth Century Literary Texts: Boccaccio and Petrarca**

### **35.204 A Special Topic in Twentieth Century Literature or Culture**

1983: Italian fiction and cinema.

One two-hour discussion per week.

### **\*35.210 Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture**

One lecture and one tutorial per week

### **\*35.211 A Special Topic in Italian Renaissance Literature 1**

### **\*35.212 A Special Topic in Italian Renaissance Literature 2**

### **\*35.221 A Special Topic in Italian Language**

### **35.230 A Special Topic in Italian Literature**

Students wishing to suggest a topic should do so before Christmas 1982.

Papers 35.202, 35.203 are normally available in odd numbered years, 1983 etc; papers 35.210, 35.211 and 35.212 in even numbered years, 1984 etc.

## **Italian III**

### **35.300 Language Acquisition**

Advanced reading, grammar, writing, conversation in Italian using material reflecting current events in Italy. Three hours per week. Weekly assignments. May be combined with any one or more of the following papers for Italian III.

### **35.302 Fourteenth Century Literary Texts: Dante**

### **35.303 Fourteenth Century Literary Texts: Boccaccio and Petrarca**

### **35.305 A Special Topic in Twentieth Century Literature or Culture**

1983: Italian fiction and cinema.

One two-hour discussion per week.

### **\*35.310 Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture**

### **\*35.311 A Special Topic in Italian Renaissance Literature 1**

### **\*35.312 A Special Topic in Italian Renaissance Literature 2**

### **35.321 A Special Topic in Italian Language**

Students wishing to suggest a topic should do so before Christmas 1982.

### **35.330 A Special Topic in Italian Literature**

Students wishing to suggest a topic should do so before Christmas 1982.

Papers 35.302, 35.303 are normally available in odd numbered years, 1983 etc; papers 35.310, 35.311 and 35.312 in even numbered years, 1984 etc.

## **Italian for MA and Honours**

The specific requirements for Italian are given in MA Schedule (15) and Languages and Literature including Italian in MA Schedule (17). In both cases 35.400 is compulsory.

### **35.400 Language Acquisition: Oral and Written Use of Italian**

Tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, conversation, comprehension, reading.

### **35.402 An Approved Topic in Linguistics**

### **35.403 Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Contemporary Italian**

**35.404 A Special Linguistics Topic****35.405 Thirteenth Century Literature****35.406 The Works of Dante****35.407 The Works of Boccaccio and the Genesis of Italian Prose****35.408 The Italian Theatre of the Renaissance; Teatro Erudito and Commedia dell' Arte****35.409 Italian Theatre in the Eighteenth Century: Goldoni, Gozzi and the Development of the Italian Theatre****35.411 Verismo, with Special Reference to the Works of Verga****35.412 Pirandello and 20th Century Drama; Futurism, Pirandello, Dario Fo****35.413 A Special Topic in 20th Century Italian Poetry****35.414 A Special Topic in the 20th Century Italian Novel****35.415 An approved Literary or Cultural Topic****35.418 Italian Novel and Cinema after 1945****35.419 Theories and Examples of the Avant-Garde in Italy****35.420 Methodologies of Literary Criticism from Romanticism to Structuralism****35.421 An Approved Topic in Linguistics****35.422 An Approved Literary or Cultural Topic****35.423 An Approved Literary or Cultural Topic****35.424 An Approved Literary or Cultural Topic**  
Intending MA students should consult with the Italian staff during their final BA year.

---

**SPANISH****Spanish Stage I****45.100 Language Acquisition**

Three lectures; one oral class; one language laboratory session; total five hours per week  
Language acquisition: oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in

some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**45.101 Selected Texts in Twentieth Century Literature**

One lecture a week; tutorials on request; two essays

**45.102 Language: Oral, Aural and Reading Comprehension, Translation from Spanish to English**

One lecture per week; one oral class; one language laboratory session

**45.103 Contemporary Hispanic Civilization**

One lecture a week; tutorials on request; two essays

**Spanish Stage II****45.200 Language Acquisition**

Two lectures; one oral class, one language laboratory session

Language acquisition: oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis

**45.201 Golden Age Literary Texts**

One lecture weekly; tutorials on request; one (or two) essays

**45.202 Nineteenth and Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

One lecture per week, tutorials on request; one (or two) essays

**45.203 Literary Analysis, with Prescribed Texts**

One lecture per week, tutorials on request; one (or two) essays

**45.204 Twentieth Century Latin American Texts**

One lecture per week, tutorials on request, one (or two) essays

**Spanish Stage III****45.300 Language Acquisition**

One lecture; one oral class; one language laboratory session

Language acquisition: oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**45.301 Medieval Literature**

One lecture per week; tutorials on request; one (or two) essays

**45.302 Golden Age Literature**

One lecture per week; tutorials on request; one (or two) essays

**45.303 Nineteenth Century Literary Texts**

One lecture per week; tutorials on request; one (or two) essays

**45.304 Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

One lecture per week; tutorials on request; one (or two) essays

**45.305 Twentieth Century Latin American Literature**

One lecture per week; tutorials on request; one (or two) essays

**Spanish for MA and Honours**

(Seven papers or four papers and a thesis (45.601)  
The specific requirements for Spanish are given in MA Schedule (28); and for Languages and Literature including Spanish in MA Schedule (17). In both cases, paper 45.400 is compulsory and the marks for it bear a relative weighting of three to two for each other paper.

**45.400 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**45.401 A Topic in Medieval Literature****45.402 Golden Age Poetry****45.403 The Picaresque Novel****45.404 Major Dramatists of the 17th Century****45.405 Minor Dramatists of the 17th Century****45.406 Cervantes****45.407 The Nineteenth Century Novel****45.408 The '98 Generation****45.409 The Contemporary Spanish Novel****45.410 Twentieth Century Spanish Poetry****45.411 Twentieth Century Spanish Theatre****45.412 Twentieth Century Latin American Novel****45.413 Twentieth Century Latin American Poetry****45.414 Twentieth Century Latin American Theatre****45.415 Portuguese Language and a Topic in Twentieth Century Portuguese Literature****45.416 A Topic in Twentieth Century Brazilian Literature****45.417 Eighteenth Century Literature****45.418 Applied Linguistics as related to Spanish****45.419 Research Techniques in Language and/or Literature****45.422 The History of Ideas****45.423 Linguistic Analysis of Spanish****45.420 Special Topic in Spanish Literature****45.421 Special Topic in Latin American Literature**

Intending MA students should consult with the senior staff of the Department during their final BA year.

**DEPARTMENT OF RUSSIAN****Russian 1**

Students may enrol for Stage I papers without any prior knowledge of the subject areas. The two Russian language papers, 43.100 and 43.101, are linked corequisites and are also prerequisites for all students advancing to Stage II except, with the approval of the HOD, those with Bursary-level knowledge of the language; 43.111, 43.112 and 43.113 can be taken independently of each other and of any other papers in the Department. Students intending to advance in Russian are strongly advised to take Paper 43.112 during either their first or second year of study. Paper 43.111 is offered in 1983 and again in 1986.

**Note:** The readings for papers 43.112 and 43.113 are entirely in English.

**43.100 and 43.101 Russian Language Acquisition 1 and 2**

Written and oral use of Russian, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation into Russian, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading. Literary and non-literary texts for translation from Russian.

The two papers must be taken together.

Five hours and one language laboratory session per week; regular assignments

**43.111 Language Acquisition: Serbo-Croatian**

Elementary written and oral use of Serbo-Croatian, aural and reading comprehension of texts of Yugoslav culture and civilisation, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

Three hours per week. Optional library use of the Language Laboratory

**43.112 Russian Civilisation**

A survey of the political, social, economic, religious, intellectual and artistic forces which historically have helped to shape modern Russia.

Two consecutive hours per week; two assignments

**43.113 The Classics of Russian Literature**

Studies in major examples of Russian prose fiction. Two consecutive hours per week; two essays

**Russian II**

Papers 43.210, 43.211 and 43.212 are linked corequisites. Paper 43.211 consists of two half-papers. Students who have not already taken paper 43.112 are strongly advised to do so alongside their Russian II papers.

**43.210 Language Acquisition: Russian**

Written and oral use of Russian tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

Three hours and one language laboratory session per week. Optional library use of the Language Laboratory

**43.211 (i) Introduction to Modern Russian**

Linguistic analysis of modern non-literary texts, with special reference to morphology and word-formation.

One class per week in the second and third terms

**(ii) The Russian Lyric in the Nineteenth Century**

Studies in 19th Century lyric poetry. Introduced by a series of lectures on literary theory.

One class per week: one major assignment

**43.212 The Russian Short Story in the Nineteenth Century**

Selected short prose works by major Russian writers from Karamzin to Chekhov.

One class per week; three assignments.

**Russian III**

Papers 43.310 and any two from 43.311, 43.312 and 43.313 are linked corequisites.

**43.310 Language Acquisition: Russian**

Written and oral use of Russian tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

Three hours per week. Optional library use of the Language Laboratory

**†43.311 Introduction to Russian and Slavonic Linguistics**

An introduction to the scientific study of language as related to Russian and the group of Slavonic languages; historical explanation of so-called "anomalies" in Modern Russian.

One class per week; several short assignments

**43.312 The Russian Novel in the Nineteenth Century**

Pushkin's *Evgenii Onegin* and one major novel each by Dostoevskii and L. Tolstoy.

One class per week; three assignments

**43.313 Introduction to Russian Literature of the Twentieth Century**

Representative literary texts by major Russian writers active since 1905.

One class per week; three assignments

With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers from Russian MA and Honours may be offered as additional Stage III level papers.

**Note:** Papers 43.311 is substantially similar to 43.411; students will therefore be admitted either to paper 43.311 or to paper 43.411.

**Russian for MA and Honours**

No student may offer any paper for the MA degree in which he has already been credited with a pass at Stage III.

The specific requirements for Russian are given in MA schedule (26); and for Language and Literature including Russian in MA schedule (17). In both cases, paper 43.410 is compulsory. The prerequisite for each of papers 43.412, 43.413, 43.416 and 43.419 is paper 43.311 or 43.411. The prerequisite for paper 43.417 is 43.111, except in the case of students with sufficient prior knowledge. Paper 43.418 is a requirement for students intending to present a thesis in Russian literature. (Paper 43.411 is not available to those who have taken paper 4

**43.410 Language Acquisition: Russian**

†43.411 Introduction to Russian and Slavonic Linguistics

\*43.412 A Special Topic in Russian Linguistics

\*43.413 The History of the Russian Literary Language

\*43.414 Lexicology and Practical Stylistics of Contemporary Standard Russian

\*43.415 A Special Topic in Russian or Slavonic Linguistics

43.416 Comparative Studies in the Modern Slavonic Languages

43.417 A Special Topic in Serbo-Croatian Linguistics and/or Literature

1983: Ivo Andrić *Na Drini Cuprija*

\*43.418 Introduction to Research in Russian Literature

43.419 Studies in Early Russian Literature

\*43.420 Studies in Eighteenth-Century Russian Literature

\*43.421 A Special Topic in Russian Poetry

\*43.422 A Special Topic in Russian Prose

\*43.423 A Special Study of a Russian Writer

\*43.424 A Topic in Russian Literary Theory and Criticism

\*43.425 A Further Special Topic

Intending MA Students should consult the Head of Department during their final BA year about the availability of MA papers and the possibility of their presenting a thesis (43.601) in lieu of two papers.

43.601 Thesis

---

## DEPARTMENT OF SOCIOLOGY

Note: \* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

† This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

### Sociology I

82.100 Introduction to Sociology

82.101 The Social Structure of New Zealand

82.102 A History of Sociological ideas

Students intending to advance to Sociology are recommended to take 82.102

Students are expected to attend a one hour weekly tutorial in addition to lectures.

### Sociology II

82.200 Sociological Theory

82.201 Sociological Methods

Students are expected to attend a weekly tutorial in addition to lectures in 82.200 and 82.201.

82.202 A Topic in Comparative Sociology  
1983: Community Studies

†82.203 Sociology of a Selected Region

82.204 Contemporary Social Problems

82.205 Social Stratification

\*82.206 Regional and Community Development

†82.207 Sociology of the Family

82.208 Special Topic

1983: Complex Organisations

### Sociology III

82.300 Industrial Sociology

82.301 Political Sociology

\*82.302 Sociology of the Family

82.303 Sociology of Religion

82.304 Minority and Ethnic Relations

82.305 Social Stratification in Australia and New Zealand

\*82.306 Community Studies

82.307 Social Change and Modernization

†82.308 Special topic to be prescribed by the Head of the Department

82.309 Special Topic

1983: Regional Planning and Community Development

**82.310 Special Topic**

1983: Social Policy and Northland

†82.311 Special Topic to be prescribed by the Head of Department

**82.312 Sociological Analysis**

†82.313 Sociology of a selected region

†82.314 Deviance

**82.315 Sociology of the Arts**

Students including three Stage III Sociology papers in their degree must attempt 82.312 as one of them.

**Sociology for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (82.601) which shall count as 3 papers, or 6 papers and a research paper (82.603). The subject of the thesis or research paper must be approved by the department. An outline is to be submitted to the Head of Department by 31 March of the year for which enrolment for the research paper is accepted. The main text of the research paper should not exceed 10,000 words.

Not fewer than seven papers will be offered from the following list. The department strongly recommends that students include 82.400 and 82.401.

**82.400 Advanced Problems in Sociological Theory****82.401 Advanced Problems in Sociological Method****82.402 Sociology of a Selected Region**

1983: South Asia

†82.403 Advanced Topics in Economic Sociology

**82.404 Advanced Topics in Political Sociology**

†82.405 Deviance

**82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology****82.407 Rural Sociology****82.408 Complex Organisations**

†82.409 Industrial Sociology

†82.410 Applied Sociology

1983: Models of Social Development

**\*82.411 Mass Communications****82.412 Special Topic**

1983: Advanced Study in Sociology of the Arts

†82.413 Special Topic To be prescribed by Head of Department

**82.414 Special Topic**

1983: Marxism and Sociology

†82.415 Special Topic to be prescribed by Head of Department

**\*82.416 New Zealand Family**

**Note:** All graduate students are expected to attend and contribute to the Staff Graduate Seminars. A programme will be published.



---

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

---

### DIPLOMA IN BROADCAST COMMUNICATION

#### DipBrC

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Broadcast Communication shall, before enrolment for this Diploma, have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Master of Arts or, (in exceptional circumstances) such other University Degree as the Senate may approve in the particular case.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a one year course of full time study.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of two parts:

#### Part I

Paper 30.403 and 30.408 as prescribed for MA

OR

A candidate who has already been credited with either 30.403 or 30.408 shall for that paper substitute paper 18.420 as prescribed for MA

OR

A candidate who has already been credited with both papers 30.403 and 30.408 shall substitute paper 18.420 as prescribed for MA and a Research Essay (30.613).

#### Part 2

Such written and practical work as may be prescribed in Radio and Television Productions and related fields, the whole counting as three papers (30.700).

4. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and pass Part 2 as a whole.
  5. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
  6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1982.
- 

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipBrC

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide graduate students with a theoretical and practical preparation in broadcasting and communications.

The course is a full-time course extending over one year. Entry to the course will be restricted to six candidates in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol in the course for the Diploma are required to give notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University by letter which shall include a curriculum vitae showing academic results and any other qualifications, by 15 January each year. Candidates may be called for interview.

#### Part 1 (see Regulation 3 of the Diploma)

##### 30.403 The Politics of Information

Global and regional issues in news flows and communications technology.

##### 30.408 Mass Communications and Mass Beliefs

##### 18.420 Film Studies

##### 30.613 Research Essay

The research essay must be on a subject connected with the candidate's previously passed papers, 30.403 and 30.408 or, with the permission of the Head of Department of Political Studies, a topic on the structure and organisation of broadcasting. The research essay shall be between 10,000 and 20,000 words and two copies must be submitted to the Registrar not later than the last day of January in the Calendar year following the examinations.

**Part 2**

The course will include the following:

1. Introduction to the technical principles of radio and television broadcasting.
2. Practical experience in preparing and editing audio programmes, each student to present one such programme as a course submission.
3. Introduction to single-camera production techniques.
4. Introduction to multi-camera studio production.
5. Instruction and studio experience in the techniques of interviewing.
6. Post-production techniques, including scriptwriting, editing, graphics and animation.
7. Experience in preparing and editing video programmes, each student to present one such programme as a course submission.
8. An examination of the role of the producer in programme preparation.
9. An understanding of the principles of broadcast programming.
10. Development of critical awareness, including the preparation of individual diaries and reviews to be included as part of each student's course submission.

**DIPLOMA IN DRAMA****DipDrama**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Drama shall before his enrolment for this Diploma have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts having passed in not fewer than three papers at Stage II in English, or another European language, or such other subject or subjects as the Senate may approve; or provided that, if not qualified, a person may with the leave of the Senate be a candidate for this Diploma if before enrolment he
  - (i) has been admitted or qualified for admission to some other university degree approved for this purpose by the Senate; or
  - (ii) holds or has qualified for an award or qualification in dramatic work approved for this purpose by the Senate; or
  - (iii) has had in the opinion of the Senate extensive experience in the theatre or in teaching drama.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of study for a period of one year, but in exceptional circumstances this period may be extended by the Senate.
3. The Course shall consist of such written and practical work as may be prescribed in theatrical, dramatic, and related fields.
4. A candidate shall throughout his enrolment for this Diploma carry out such practical work and shall participate in such approved theatrical work or plays as the Lecturer in charge of the Course shall require.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipDrama**

The Diploma in drama is directed by Mervyn Thompson, Senior lecturer in Drama aided by other professional tutors and University lecturers.

The purpose of the Diploma in Drama is to offer a basic training in theatre to those wishing to work in schools, or in the community.

Candidates wishing to enrol in 1983 in the Course for the Diploma in Drama (75.100) are required to give notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University not later than 15 January 1983.

The entry to the Course in any year is restricted to 20 students.

Candidates should have a Bachelor of Arts Degree from Auckland or some other University or should hold an award or qualification in dramatic work or have had extensive experience in the theatre or in the teaching of drama. Generally, candidates under 20 years of age are not considered for the course.

Candidates may be called for interviews and required to produce evidence of qualifications and special skills. The Course is a full-time course extending over one year. Permission to take other courses or do other theatre work will be granted only in rare instances.

The Course will include the following:

- (i) Fundamentals of acting including speech, movement and improvisation.
- (ii) Basic techniques of the theatre, eg lighting, design, wardrobe, direction.
- (iii) Television acting and the use of television equipment.
- (iv) Practical study from selected texts.
- (v) Selected aspects from the history of the theatre and drama.
- (vi) Selected aspects from the theory of drama.
- (vii) Theatre criticism.
- (viii) Practical work in production.
- (ix) Brief exercises in the making of theatre for young people.
- (x) Exercises in group theatre and playmaking.

A list of books required for study will be available from the department. All students should obtain this.

## DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION

### DipEd

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Education shall before his enrolment for this Diploma

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree at a university in New Zealand except as provided in Regulation 2 below or have been awarded or qualified for the award of a University diploma approved by the Senate; and

(b) have passed papers 14.100 and 14.101 as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, provided that those papers or either of them may with the permission of the Head of Department be taken concurrently with papers in Part I of the course.

**Note:** Approved diplomas at present are the Diplomas in Fine Arts and Music and Diplomas in Home Science and Physical Education of the University of Otago. In special circumstances the Senate may permit a candidate who is the holder of a diploma other than those listed above to undertake the course.

2. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate may enrol for the Diploma in Education after having completed at least nineteen papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree, or the equivalent in another degree, provided that

(a) The proposed course for this Diploma will extend over not fewer than two academic years.

(b) The remaining papers of the Bachelor's degree are taken in the first year of the Diploma course.

(c) Should the candidate not pass the remaining paper or papers the Diploma course shall be suspended until they have been passed.

3. (a) The course of study for the Diploma in Education shall consist of two parts:

#### Part 1

Four papers in Education at Stage II or III as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts and not having already been credited to a degree or diploma, of which not more than two are at Stage II.

#### Part II

A report of an original investigation (14.500) having the value of two papers, of a topic approved by the Head of the Department of Education.

(b) A candidate shall be required to pass each paper in Part 1 and the original investigation in Part II.

4. As to the investigation and report for Part II –

(a) the topic shall be submitted to the Head of Department in reasonable time before the 31st of March of the year in which the report is to be submitted, so that it may be approved by that date;

(b) the report shall be submitted within three years of the year in which the candidate completes Part I, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstances permit;

(c) the report shall be delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.

**Note:** (1) A research seminar will be held once a week during the first half of the year for those preparing to carry out an original investigation.  
(2) An abstract is to be submitted with the original investigation. (See Examination Regulation 14.)

5. Every candidate shall present to the Head of Department a certificate from an approved authority that he has been engaged for at least two years in full-time work in the practice of teaching, or in education work of a related character, such as vocational guidance, child guidance, child welfare, social work or community education, and has shown efficiency therein.

6. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

## DIPLOMA IN EDUCATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY

### DipEdPsych

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Educational Psychology shall before his enrolment for this Diploma:

(a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree; and

(b) have passed the following four papers in Education as prescribed for the Master of Arts Degree:

14.407 Developmental Psychology

14.410 Principles and Practice of Counselling

14.412 Behaviour Analysis in Education

14.413 Atypical Children

or equivalent papers as approved by the Senate; and (c) have passed 5 papers including at least 3 papers above Stage I as prescribed for the Bachelor of Arts or Science Degree in both Education and Psychology; and (d) satisfy the Senate that he is likely to benefit from the training provided by the course for this Diploma.

**Note:** Normally an interview supported by referees' statements, and evidence of training or experience in relevant work such as teaching, youth work, or counselling will be required under 1(d).

2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of not less than two years' full-time study nor more than four years' study (whether full or part-time); provided that the latter period may with the permission of the Senate be extended in exceptional circumstances.

3. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts:

#### Part I

Satisfactory participation in and completion of a full-time professional training course including passing each stage of the on-course assessment requirements (16.100).

**Note:** The professional training courses are designed to follow on from the theory introduced in each of the four Masters papers listed in 1 (b). Course prescriptions may be obtained from the Department.

#### Part II

(a) Satisfactory supervised participation in the work of approved psychological, special educational, and social work services, and in seminars on case work and professional practice (16.200).

(b) A comprehensive oral examination covering the work of the whole course (16.201).

4. (a) A candidate shall be required to pass each paper or section of each part of the Diploma.

(b) A candidate who has not passed a section of Part I may, with permission of the Head of Department, take that section concurrently with work in Part II, in the second year.

(c) A candidate shall not be permitted to resubmit case work and professional practice material (16.200) nor to resit the oral examination (16.201), more than once.

5. A candidate shall be required to have completed an MA with thesis (14.601 or 14.611) or an equivalent research study before the Diploma may be awarded.

6. (a) The Diploma may be awarded with Honours.

(b) A candidate for Honours shall be required, after completing the requirements of Part I and II, to submit a Dissertation (16.604) reporting an advanced study of one of the following types, as approved by the Head of Department:

(i) a survey of the literature bearing on a topic relevant to clinical or professional practice

or (ii) an original or replication research study

or (iii) an evaluation of a clinical procedure

(c) The Dissertation shall be:

(i) submitted within three years of the year in which the candidate completes Part II; and

(ii) delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.

**Notes:** 1. A research seminar will be held once a week during the first half of the year for those preparing to write a Dissertation.

2. An abstract is to be submitted with the Dissertation: see Examination Regulation 14.

(d) Honours shall be awarded upon the results of the Dissertation but if the Dissertation is not of sufficient standard the Diploma shall be awarded to the candidate without Honours.

7. Under exceptional circumstances the Senate may grant exemption from any of the requirements under Regulations 1, 2, 3 and 4.

## DIPLOMA IN GUIDANCE AND COUNSELLING

### DipGuid

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Guidance and Counselling shall before his enrolment for this Diploma

(a) have been awarded or qualified for the award of a Degree of a University in New Zealand, or in special cases have been awarded or qualified for the award of a University Diploma approved by the Senate and

(b) have passed paper 14.204 The Evaluation of Individual Differences, as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts; except that this may be taken concurrently with papers from Regulation 2 (a) with the permission of the Head of the Department of Education.

2. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts:

#### Part I

(a) Three papers (not already passed for any other degree or diploma) from 14.308, 14.304, 14.309, 14.310, 14.311, 14.312, 14.317, 14.325. Approval may be given for enrolment in Stage III papers from other Departments where training requirements for specialised application warrant this, as in the case of vocational guidance.

(b) Papers 14.405 or 14.418, and 14.410, provided that in exceptional circumstances a candidate may substitute for any or all of these papers a course or courses of study approved by the Head of Department.

#### Part II

Preparation and presentation of a folio of casework, 14.606, counting as three papers; together with satisfactory participation in such seminars and counselling and related activities as the Head of Department may require.

**Note:** Most students will require 1000 hours or more of face to face counselling work and related activities to attain competence in casework.

3. No more than ten students chosen on academic criteria and personal qualities shall in any one year be admitted for Part II.

4. The folio of casework required for Part II shall be

(a) submitted within three years of the year in which the candidate completed Part I, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstances permit; and

(b) delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.

5. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and to pass Part II as a whole.

6. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

# DIPLOMA IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT AND ADMINISTRATION

## DipLGA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Local Government & Administration shall before his enrolment have been awarded or qualified for the award of a Degree or Diploma of this University, provided that, if not so qualified, a person may with the leave of the Senate be a candidate for the Diploma in Local Government & Administration if before enrolment he:

- (i) holds or has qualified for the award of a professional qualification in Accountancy, Management, or other approved discipline; or
- (ii) has had not less than five years responsible practical experience in a responsible position in local government or administration.

2. A candidate for the Diploma shall pursue a course of study for a period of not less than one year, provided that for part-time students the course of study shall extend over a period of not less than two years.

3. Except with the permission of the Senate in exceptional circumstances,

- (i) the course of study must be completed within four years of the date of first enrolment for the Diploma; and
- (ii) the Research Essay, (Paper 30.603) must be submitted with any paper which he has passed for another degree of diploma.

5. No candidate shall take papers for Part 2 unless he has passed or enrolled concurrently in the papers for Part I.

### Subjects

6. The subjects for examination for the Diploma shall be:

#### Part I

\*30.500 The Local Government System in New Zealand

\*30.413 Public Administration

**Note:** A candidate who has already been credited with 30.413 may substitute 72.405. Organisational Development as prescribed for MCom.

30.402 Urban Government and Politics as prescribed for MA

**Note:** A candidate who has already been credited with 30.402 may substitute 20.436 Urban Geography as prescribed for MA and MSC.

#### Part 2

##### Either

Two papers from the following:

25.220 Local Government Law, as prescribed for LLB

01.204 Public Sector Accounting, as prescribed for BCom

36.202 Planning Law and Administration, as prescribed for BTP and DipTP or 25.319 as prescribed for LLB

13.204 Public Economics, as prescribed for BA and BCom

13.201 Macro-economics, as prescribed for BA and BCom

13.200 Micro-economics, as prescribed for BA and BCom

72.203 Organisational Structure as prescribed for BCom

One paper as prescribed for any other Degree or Diploma of this University and specifically approved by the Head of Department.

or

30.603 Research Essay (which counts as two papers).

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with the Research Essay, see Examinations Regulation 14.

### Prerequisite or Corequisite

7. A candidate shall before taking any of papers 13.200, 13.201, 13.204, 01.204 for this Diploma pass or enrol concurrently in paper 13.100 Micro-economics and paper 13.101 Macro-economics, or have obtained a waiver of this requirement from the Head of the Department of Economics or the Head of the Department of Accountancy as necessary.

8. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1980.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipLGA**

The course for the Diploma in Local Government and Administration may be completed in not less than one year of full-time study or two years of part-time study. Students are required to take papers from Part I in their first year of study.

Prescriptions for courses listed in the Regulations for the Diploma (and not prescribed for other degrees) are given below.

**30.500 The New Zealand Local Government System**

The evolution, structure and characteristics of the system. Reorganisation schemes and functional features. Local politics, elections and public participation.

**30.603 Research Essay**

A research essay may be presented in lieu of two papers from Part 2 of the course. It shall consist of 18,000 to 20,000 words on an approved topic in local Government Administration or Politics.

Blank Page



# Faculty of Science

## Contents

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	198 Degree of Bachelor of Science
	200 Schedule for Bachelor of Science
	212 Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours)
	214 Degree of Bachelor of Optometry
	217 Degree of Master of Science
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	220 Department of Anatomy
	220 Department of Biochemistry
	220 Department of Botany
	223 Department of Cell Biology
	223 Department of Chemistry
	227 Department of Computer Science
	228 Department of Geography
	228 Department of Geology
	232 Leigh Laboratory
	233 Department of Mathematics and Statistics
	236 Department of Pathology
	236 Department of Philosophy
	237 Department of Physics
	242 Department of Physiology
	243 Department of Psychology (including Optometry)
	245 Department of Zoology
	247 Course in Environmental Studies
<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	248 Diploma in Clinical Psychology
	249 Diploma in Computational Mathematics
	250 Diploma in Energy Technology (Geothermal)
	251 Diploma in Mathematical Education
	252 Diploma in Statistics
<b>Certificate Regulations</b>	253 Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE BSc

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Science shall follow a Course of study of not less than three years.

2. (a) The subjects prescribed for this Degree are:

Biochemistry	Geology
Botany	Mathematics (Applied)
Cell Biology	Mathematics (Pure)
Chemistry	Philosophy of Science
Computer Science	Physics
Environmental Studies	Physiology
Geography	Psychology
	Zoology

(b) For the purpose of these Regulations: a 'paper' is a separately assessed segment of work in a subject, and papers are classified as follows:

Stage I (xx. 100 to xx. 199)

Stage II (xx. 200 to xx. 299)

Stage III (xx. 300 to xx. 399)

(c) 'credits' are awarded for the successful completion of papers as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations ("the BSc Schedule")

3. A complete Course of Study for this Degree requires the gaining of at least 96 credits, of which:

(a) at least 12 credits must be from Stage III papers in the BSc Schedule;

(b) at least 36 credits must be from papers above Stage I; and

(c) at least 6 credits must be from each of any FOUR subjects as prescribed in Regulation 2(a)

4. For the purpose of Regulation 3(c) credits obtained from one or more papers in Biology shall all count as credits in either Botany or Zoology and may not be apportioned between those two subjects in any way.

5. In relation to the taking of any paper, a candidate shall comply (i) (before enrolment) with all pre-requisite requirements and (ii) with all co-requisite requirements; as set out in the BSc Schedule. But the Head of Department may in exceptional circumstances waive any of those requirements.

6. Except as provided in Regulation 9, a candidate who has not gained at least 24 credits from Stage I papers may not enrol for a Stage II paper.

#### Practical Work Requirements

7. In any paper that includes practical work as well as written work;

(a) a candidate must obtain passes in both in order to pass the paper as a whole;

(b) a candidate who is awarded a pass in the practical work, but who fails the written work may, with the permission of the Head of Department, have the grade for the practical work carried forward to a subsequent year.

**Note:** Candidates requesting this permission should apply before 1 March in the year of re-enrolment for the paper.

#### Course Load Restrictions

8. A candidate may not enrol, in any one year, for papers totalling more than 50 credits.

#### Direct Entry to Stage II papers

9. Notwithstanding anything in Regulations 5 and 6, the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, permit a suitably qualified candidate to enrol for Stage II papers without having passed the pre-requisite Stage I papers. But where such permission is given:—

(a) a successful candidate shall be credited only with passes in the Stage II papers and not in any of the pre-requisite papers;

(b) a candidate who fails any Stage II paper may be granted a pass in the appropriate Stage I paper if the necessary standard has been attained;

(c) a candidate who gains at least 12 credits from Stage II papers under this Regulation may include in the Course of Study 12 further credits as prescribed for a Bachelors Degree in any other Faculty, in addition to any credits that may be obtained under Regulation 10.

### Credit for Papers in Other Faculties

10. (a) A candidate for this Degree may obtain up to 12 credits from papers or subjects, not listed in the BSc Schedule, to which this Regulation applies.

(b) This Regulation applies to any paper or subject which:—

(i) is taught in any of the Faculties of the University other than the Faculty of Science, and is prescribed for a Bachelor's Degree in any of those other Faculties; and

(ii) is not the same as, or does not substantially overlap with, any other paper or papers which the candidate wishes to credit towards the BSc Degree.

(c) The credits allowed for the purpose of this Regulation shall be:—

#### Architecture &

Town Planning per credit ..... 1 credit

Arts per paper ..... 5 credits

Commerce per paper ..... 5 credits

Engineering per half-year subject ..... 4 credits

per full-year subject ..... 6 credits

Fine Arts per paper ..... 5 credits

Law per 23 hours of lectures in any subject ..... 2 credits

#### Medicine &

Human Biology per paper ..... 6 credits

Music per paper ..... 5 credits

### Cross-Credits from other Degree Courses

**Note:** See Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

11. Credits obtained under Regulation 10, from papers which are credited also to the Course of Study for another Degree, shall be counted as cross-credits for the purpose of Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

### Credits for Papers Abandoned from other Degree Courses

**Note:** See Regulation 16 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

12. For the purposes of these Regulations the words 'appropriate papers' in Regulation 16 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall be interpreted as meaning:—

(a) papers listed in the BSc Schedule;

(b) papers equivalent to papers listed in the BSc Schedule as determined by the Senate;

(c) papers that can be credited towards the BSc Degree under Regulation 10.

**Note:** to (b) above: For example, Engineering Mechanics 55.001 is accepted by the Senate as equivalent to Principles of Mechanics 26.170.

### Credit for NZCS

13. A candidate who has gained the New Zealand Certificate of Science, or has gained any other recognised technical qualifications of comparable standard, may be credited with such specified papers and/or given such unspecified credits up to a maximum of 36 credits, as the Senate may determine.

### Credit for Teacher's College Courses

**Note:** A candidate who has successfully completed a course at an Auckland Teacher's College may be granted credits towards this Degree as provided by Regulation 13 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### Transitional Provisions

14. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit, course or paper under any of the former Regulations for this Degree, shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as may be determined by the Senate.

(c) For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1973 the subject prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department concerned.

### Exceptions

15. (a) The Senate may, in such cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of Study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

(b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

### Validity

16 These Regulations shall come into force on January 1, 1983.

### Schedule

1. This schedule sets out paper numbers, credits, prerequisites, corequisites, and restrictions applying to Courses of Study offered for the Degree of Bachelor of Science.

2. The schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the Calendar.

3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that course.

4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.

5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to papers which cannot be credited together with that paper.

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>BIOCHEMISTRY</b>								
Biochem	66.201	Introductory Biochemistry	46	12x6	6	6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry course and 39.101		
Biochem	66.301	Biochemistry of Macromolecules	46	12x6	6	(a) 66.201; (b) 08.230 or 08.210 plus 12 additional Science credits above Stage I	66.302	
	66.302	Metabolic Interrelationships	46	12x6	6		66.301	

### BOTANY

Bio	39.101	Central Concepts of Biology	46	12x3	6			39.111
Bot	06.102	Form & Function in Plants	46	12x3	6			39.112
Bio	39.207	Biometry	23	6x6	3	39.101, 06.102, 38.102		39.307
	39.211	Population & Community Ecology	23	6x6	3		39.207 or 39.307	
	39.212	Coastal Marine Biology	23	6x6	3			
	39.213	New Zealand Vegetation	23	6x6	3		38.102 39.207	
Bot	06.201	Lower Plants (taught in odd numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	06.102, 39.101	38.102	06.301
	*06.202	Higher Plants (taught in even numbered years only)	46	12x6	6			06.302

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Bio	06.203	Crop Physiology and Anatomy	23	6x6	3	06.102, 39.101	38.102, 06.221	06.303
	06.221	Plant Physiology	23	6x6	3	06.102, 39.101 and 6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry paper	38.102	
	39.307	Biometry	23	6x6	3	12 credits at Stage II level in Bio, Bot and/or Zoo		39.207
	39.311	Freshwater Ecology	23	6x6	3	15 credits at Stage II level in Bio, Bot and/or Zoo		
	39.312	Coastal Marine Biology	23	6x6	3			
	39.313	The Ecology and Biogeography of Terrestrial Ecosystems	23	6x6	3	15 credits at Stage II level in Bio, Bot and/or Zoo including 39.207, 211 & 213		
	39.314	Applied Ecology	23	6x6	3	As for 39.311		
	39.316	Biological Oceanography	23	6x6	3	38.201/301 plus 9 credits at Stage II level in bio, Bot and/or Zoo		
	06.301	Lower Plants (taught in odd numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	9 credits at Stage II level in Bio and/or Bot		06.201
	*06.302	Higher Plants (taught in even numbered years only)	46	12x6	6			06.202
Bot	06.303	Crop Physiology and Anatomy	23	6x6	3		06.221	06.203
	06.321	Plant Physiology	23	6x6	3	06.221		
	06.325	Differentiation in Plants	23	6x6	3	06.221	06.302	
	06.331	Plant Pathology 1	23	6x6	3		06.301, 06.302	
	06.332	Plant Pathology 2	23	6x6	3		39.307, 06.331	
	06.341	Genetics	23	6x6	3		06.301	
	06.361	Advanced Plant Taxonomy	23	6x6	3		06.302	

Note: 1. Students may not enrol for more than six credits in Botany III until they have passed in nine credits from 39.213, 06.201, 202, 203 and 221.  
 2. In exceptional circumstances, with the approval of the Head of the Department, one or more pre-requisites may be taken as co-requisites.

## CELL BIOLOGY

Cell Bio	40.303	Molecular and Cellular Biology	46	12x6	6	(1) 08.110 or 113 or 115 & 08.120 or 123 or 125. (2) 12 credits from any papers in Botany, Biology, Zoology or Biochemistry. (3) 18 credits from any Stage II or Stage III Science papers.
----------	--------	--------------------------------	----	------	---	--

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
	40.304	Molecular Genetics	46	12x6	6		40.303	
	40.305	Virology & Immunology	46	12x6	6		40.303	

**CHEMISTRY**

Chem	08.110	Organic, Physical & General Chemistry	46	12x3	6			08.113, 115
	08.113	Organic, Physical & General Chemistry	46	12x3	6			08.110, 115
	08.115	Organic, Physical & General Chemistry	46	12x3	6			08.110, 113
	08.120	Inorganic, Physical & General Chemistry	46	12x3	6			08.123, 125
	08.123	Inorganic, Physical & General Chemistry	46	12x3	6			08.120, 125
	08.125	Inorganic, Physical & General Chemistry	46	12x3	6			08.120, 123
Note: 1. Credit for 08.115 may be given in lieu of 08.110 for an inadequate performance in this paper. Credit for 08.110 may be given for a good performance in 08.115. 2. Credit of 08.125 may be given in lieu of 08.120 for an inadequate performance in this paper. Credit for 08.120 may be given for a good performance in 08.125.								
	08.210	Physical and Analytical Chemistry	46	12x6	6	08.110 or 113 & 120 or 123		08.211
	08.211	Analytical Chemistry	23	6x6	3	08.110 or 113 or 115 & 120 or 123 or 125		08.210
	08.220	Inorganic, Structural & Theoretical Chemistry	46	12x6	6	As for 08.210		
	08.230	Organic Chemistry	46	12x6	6	As for 08.210		
	08.310	General Physical Chemistry	23	36	3	08.210		
	08.311	Molecular Physical Chemistry	23	36	3	08.210		
	08.320	Inorganic Chemistry	23	36	3	08.220		
	08.321	Physical-Inorganic Chemistry	23	36	3	08.220		
	08.331	Advanced Organic Chemistry (a) Physical Organic and Mechanistic	23	36	3	08.230		
	08.330	Advanced Organic Chemistry (b) Reactions & Synthesis	23	36	3	08.230	08.331	
	08.340	Structural Methods in Chemistry	32	20	3	08.210	08.220 and 08.230	
	08.350	Elementary Radiochemistry	10	36	2	08.210		
	08.351	Advanced Radiochemistry	10	36	2	08.350 (may be taken in the same year)		
	08.360	Analytical Chemistry	16	48	3	08.210		
	08.370	Environmental Chemistry	23	12x3	3	08.210		08.270

## Faculty of Science, Degree Regulations, BSc Schedule, Computer Science, Envir. Studies, Geography 203

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Chem	<sup>†</sup> 08.390	Advanced Topics in Chemistry	By Arrangement	3	08.310, 311, 320, 08.321, 330, 331			
	<sup>†</sup> 08.391							
			By Arrangement	3	08.340, 350, 351, 360			

**COMPUTER SCIENCE**

Comp Science	07.100	Introduction to Programming	46	60	6			07.101
	07.101	Elements of Computing	46	60	6			07.100, 72.100
	07.105	Introduction to Computer Science	46	40	6		07.100	
	07.210	Computer Organization	46		4	07.100 or 105		
	07.220	Information Structures & Programming Languages	46		4	07.100, 105		
	07.230	Computing Laboratory	23	80	4	07.100, 105		
	07.235	Computer Applications	23	80	4	07.100, 105	07.230	
	07.290	Numerical Computation	46		4	07.100, 26.120, 121 or 122, 26.140, 141 or 142		26.290
	07.301	Topic in Computer Science (a)	23		2	Permission from Head of Department		
	07.302	Topic in Computer Science (b)	23		2	Permission from Head of Department		
	07.303	Topic in Computer Science (c)	46		4	Permission from Head of Department		
	07.304	Topic in Computer Science (d)	46		4	Permission from Head of Department		
	07.310	Advanced Computer Organization	46		4	07.210, 230		
	07.320	Advanced Information Structures	46		4	07.220, 230		
	07.340	Operating Systems	46		4	07.210, 230		
	07.350	Theory of Computation	46		4	07.100, 26.220		07.250
	07.390	Numerical Analysis	46		4	07.290, 26.220 or 221, 26.240 or 241		

**ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES**

Env Studies	<sup>†</sup> 84.200	Environmental Studies	46		4	24 Stage I credits or equivalent from any Faculty including at least 6 credits in Science papers.		
-------------	---------------------	-----------------------	----	--	---	---	--	--

**GEOGRAPHY**

Geog	20.101	Introductory Physical Geography	35	12x2	6			
	20.102	Introductory Human Geography	35	12x2	6			

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Geog	20.201	Physical Geography	46	23x1	4	20.101 and 20.102		With Special permission of the Head of Department (i) A student may enrol in one Stage II paper without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) Prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as co-requisites
	20.202	Human Geography	46	23x1	4			
	20.203	Remote Sensing Techniques	23	23x2	4			
	20.204	Statistical Techniques in Geography	46	23x1	4			
	20.205	Man's Role in the Environment	46	23x1	4			
	20.301	Geography of New Zealand	46	10x2	4	20.204 (or either 26.180 or 26.181) and two of the following papers: 20.201, 202, 203, 205		With special permission of the Head of Department (i) a student may enrol in one or two Stage III papers without fulfilling the pre-requisites, or (ii) Pre-requisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites
	20.303	Geomorphology	46	23x1	4			
	20.304	Biogeography and/or Climatology	46	23x1	4			
	20.305	Urban & Population Geography	46	10x2	4			
	20.306	Spatial Organisation of Third World Economies	46		4			
	20.310	Area Study	46		4			
	*20.311	Historical-Cultural Geography	46		4			
	*20.312	Special Topic	46		4			
	20.313	Advanced Statistical Techniques in Geography	46		4			
	20.316	Advanced Remote Sensing	23	23x2	4	20.203		
	20.320	Resources and Environmental Management	46	23x1	4	As for 20.301-313		

**GEOLOGY**

Geol	21.100	Fundamentals of General and Environmental Geology	69	23x2	8			21.101 or 102
	21.150	Applications of Geological Concepts and Methods	23	18x3	4		21.100	21.101 and 102
	21.201	Introductory Tectonics and Applied Geology	58	23x2	6	21.100 and 21.150		or 21.101 and 21.102
	21.202	New Zealand Historical Geology	58	23x2	6	21.100 and 21.150 or 21.101 and 21.102		
	21.203	Introduction to Mineralogy and Petrology	46	23x3	6	21.100 and	08.115 or 125 21.150 or 21.101	
	21.301	Advanced Tectonics and Applied Geology	46	23x3	6	21.201; 202		
	21.302	Sedimentology and Marine Geology	46	23x3	6	21.201; 203		
	21.303	Advanced Paleontology	46	23x3	6	21.100 or 21.150 or 39.101 and either 06.102 or 38.102		



Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Geol	21.304	Minerals & Mineral Deposits	69	23x2	6	21.203; 08.120 or 123 or 125	21.302, 305	
	21.305	Igneous & Metamorphic Petrology	46	23x3	6	As for 21.304		
	21.306	Applied Geophysics	36		3	Either 21.201, (26.120 or 121), (26.141 or 142), (31.110 or 113 or 115), (31.120 or 123 or 125) or (21.101 or 100 and 150), 31.210	31.330	Head of Department may waive pre-requisites for students also taking 31.330 and 331 provided they have passed 21.101 or 21.100
	21.307	Experimental Geophysics		12x6	3	As for 21.306	21.306, 31.330	31.393
Geomech	52.231	Geomechanics I	46	11x3	6	24 Stage I credits including 21.100 and 150; permission of HOD Civil Engineering	21.201	

**MATHEMATICS, APPLIED**

Maths	26.170	Principles of Mechanics	46	23x1	6		26.140 or 141 or 142 or 241	55.001
	26.180	Principles of Statistics	46	23x1	6		26.140 or 141 or 142 or 241	26.181
	26.181	Introduction to Probability & Statistics	46	23x1	6			26.180
	26.260	Differential Equations	35	12x1	4		26.240 or 241 or 330 or 331	
	26.280	Statistical Theory	35	12x1	4	26.180	26.240 or 241	
	26.281	Statistical Methods	35	12x1	4	26.181 or 180		
	26.360	Applied Analysis	46	12x1	4	26.220 or 221; 240 or 241 and 260		
	*26.362	Special Topics in Applied Mathematics	46	12x1	4	Enrolment requires permission from the Head of Department		
	26.370	Mechanics	46	12x1	4	26.170; 220 or 221; 240 or 241; 260		
	26.371	Field Theory	46	12x1	4	26.240 or 241; 220 or 221; 260		
	26.380	Probability	46	12x1	4	26.180; 220 or 221; 240 or 241		
	26.381	Statistical Analysis	46	12x1	4	26.280; 220 or 221; 240 or 241		
	26.391	Optimization in Operations Research	46	12x1	4	07.100 or suitable computing experience; 26.220 or 221 The special inter-disciplinary nature of this paper may allow alternative pre-requisites to those listed.		26.361

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Maths	26.395	Mathematic Modelling for Operations Research	46	12x1	4	07.100 or suitable computing experience; 26.180; 240 or 241 The special disciplinary nature of this paper may allow alternative prerequisites to those listed.		26.361

Note: Credit for 26.181 may be given in lieu of 26.180 for inadequate performance in 26.280.

## MATHEMATICS, PURE

Maths	26.120	Principles of Algebra	46	12x1	6			26.121, 122, 221
	26.121	Introductory Algebra	46	12x1	6			26.120, 122, 221
	26.122	Finite Mathematics	46	12x1	6			26.120, 121, 221
	26.140	Principles of Calculus	46	12x1	6			26.141, 142, 241
	26.141	Introductory Calculus	46	12x1	6			26.140, 142, 241
	26.142	Concepts of Calculus	46	12x1	6			26.140, 141, 241
	26.210	Principles of Mathematics	46		6	At least two Stage I level Mathematics papers and permission from Head of Department		
	26.220	Linear Algebra	46	23x1	6	26.120, 121		26.221
	26.221	Algebra (accelerated paper)	58	12x1	8	Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department		26.120, 121, 122, 220

Note: Credit for 26.120 may be given in lieu of 26.221 for inadequate performance in 26.221.

	26.240	Calculus	35	12x1	4	26.120 or 121; 26.140 or 141		26.241
	26.241	Calculus & Analysis (accelerated paper)	69		8	Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department		26.140, 141, 142, 240

Note: Credit for 26.140 may be given in lieu of 26.241 for inadequate performance in 26.241

	*26.310	Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (a)	46	23x1	4	Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department		
	*26.311	Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (b)	23	12x1	2	Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department		
	26.315	Formal Logic	46	12x1	4	26.120 or 121 and at least one Stage II level Mathematics paper		29.305
	26.320	Algebraic Structures	46	23x1	4	26.220 or 221		26.321
	26.321	Introduction to Abstract Algebra	46	23x1	4	26.220 or 221		26.320
	26.330	Introductory Analysis	23	12x1	2	26.240 or 241		26.331
	26.331	Analysis	46	23x1	4	26.240 or 241 and permission from Head of Department	26.220 or 221	26.330, 340
	26.335	Metric & Normed Spaces	23	12x1	2	26.240 or 241	26.220 or 221	
	26.340	Multivariable Calculus	46	23x1	4	26.240 or 241	26.220 or 221	26.331
	26.345	Techniques of Complex Variables		23	12x1	2	26.240 or 241	

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Maths	26.350	Topics in Mathematics	46	23x1	4	240 or 241 and permission from Head of Department	26.220 or 221,	
	*26.355	Geometry	46	23x1	4	26.220		

Note: Any number of 400 level papers may be taken with prior permission of the Head of Department. Each such paper shall have the credit value shown in the MSc Prescriptions.

## PHILOSOPHY

Phil	29.203	Philosophy of Science	46		5	2 Stage I Philosophy papers or 24 BSc credits	any Stage II or III Science papers	
------	--------	-----------------------	----	--	---	---	------------------------------------	--

## PHYSICS

Phys	*31.104	Basic Electronics for Instrumentation (taught in even numbered years only)	12	12x2	2		31.240, 290	
	31.110	Mechanics, heat, wavemotion, sound & light	46	12x3	6		31.113, 115	
	31.113	Mechanics, heat, wavemotion, sound & light	46	12x3	6		31.110, 115	
	31.115	Mechanics, heat, wavemotion, sound & light	46	12x3	6		31.110, 113	
	31.120	Electricity, relativity & modern physics	46	12x3	6		31.123, 125	
	31.123	Electricity, relativity & modern physics	46	12x3	6		31.120, 125	
	31.125	Electricity, relativity modern physics	46	12x3	6		31.120, 123	

Note: (a) Credit for 31.115 may be given for an inadequate performance in 31.110 or 31.113.

(b) Credit for 31.125 may be given for an inadequate performance in 31.120 or 31.123.

(c) For any of the pre-requisites in advanced papers 31.113 is equivalent to 31.110 and 31.123 is equivalent to 31.120.

	31.200	Topics in contemporary & applied physics	46		4	Any one of 31.110, 113, 115, 120, 123, 125		
	31.201	Astrophysics	23		2	31.110 or 113 or 115, and 31.120 or 123 or 125		
	31.210	Oscillations & waves	23		2	31.110 or 113 and 31.120 or 123 26.120 or 121 and 26.140 or 141		
	31.220	Electromagnetism & Optics	23		2			
	31.240	Electronic physics	23		2			
	31.250	Quantum physics			2			
	31.290	Experimental physics		23x6	6		Two of 31.201 to 250	

Note: Not more than two of the papers 31.210-250 may be credited towards the degree unless 31.290 is also credited.

	31.312	Classical mechanics	23		2	31.110 or 113 and 31.120 or 123 26.240, 260		
	31.313	Thermodynamics & statistical mechanics	23		2	31.250, 26.240, 260		

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Phys	31.320	Electromagnetism & electromagnetic waves	23		2	31.220, 26.240, 260		
	31.330	Terrestrial physics	23		2	(a) 31.210 or (b) 31.110 or 113 and 31.120 or 123 and 21.101, and 26.120 or 121, and 26.140 or 141		
	31.331	Marine Physics	23		2	31.210		
	31.332	Atmospheric physics	23		2	31.210		
	31.341	Circuit Electrophysics	23		2	31.240, 26.240, 260		
	31.342	Semiconductor devices	23		2	31.240		
	31.343	Pulse & digital electronics	23		2	31.240, 26.240, 260		
	31.350	Quantum mechanics & atomic physics	23		2	31.250, 26.240, 260		
	31.352	Molecular & solid state physics	23		2	31.250, 26.240, 260		
	31.353	Nuclear & particle physics	23		2	31.250, 26.240, 260		
	31.356	Nuclear Science	23		2	31.250, 31.290, 26.240, 26.260		
	31.380-31.385	Selected topics	23		2	Pre-requisites and/or co-requisites as determined by the Head of Department		
	31.390	Experimental Physics A	A	12x6	3		One of 31.312 to 31.356 for each one of 31.390, 391, 392 enrolled for	
	31.391	Experimental Physics B	B	12x6	3	31.290 plus two papers from 31.201 to 31.250		
	31.392	Experimental Physics C	C	12x6 (or 23x3)				
	31.393	Experimental Geophysics (the same paper as Geology 21.307)		23x3	3	31.210; 290; (21.101 or 100 plus 150)	21.306, 31.330	21.307

Note: Not more than three of the papers 31.312-385 may be credited towards the degree unless at least one of the papers 31.390-392 is also credited

## PHYSIOLOGY

Physiol	67.201	Introductory Physiology	46	23x3	6	08.110 or 115 or 120 or 125 and 6 credits from any paper in Biology or Zoology		
	67.301	Systematic Physiology	46	23x3	6	67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers at Stage II or III level.		

Subjects	Course No	Title of Course	Total Lecture Hours Per Course	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>PSYCHOLOGY</b>								
Psych	32.108	Introduction to General Psychology	46		6			
	32.109	Introduction to Experimental Psychology	23	23x2	6			
	32.206	Theory & Method: Learning & Motivation	23	23x2	4	32.100 & 101; or 102 & 103; or 106 & 107; or 108 & 109		
	32.207	Sensory Processes: Physiological Psychology	23	23x2	4			
	32.208	Developmental Psychology Interpersonal Behaviour	23	23x2	4			
	32.301	Psychology of Individual differences	23	23x2	4			
	32.302	Psychological Theory	46		4	Three of 32.201, 202, 203, 204, 205; or three of 33.201, 202, 203, 204, 205; or 32.206, 207, 208		
	32.303	Cognitive Processes	23	23x2	4			
	32.304	The Theory & Systems of Personality	23	23x2	4			
	32.305	Physiological Psychology	23	23x2	4			
	32.306	The Design of Psychological Experiments	23	23x2	4			
	32.307	The Psychological Analysis of Vision & Hearing	23	23x2	4			
	32.308	Research Topic		23x2	4		Four of 32.301-311	Enrolment requires approval of the Head of Department
	32.309	Learning	23	23x2	4			
	*32.310	Comparative Psychology	23	23x2	4		Three of 32.201, 202, 204, 205 or three of 33.201, 201, 204, 205 or 32.206, 207, 208	
	32.311	Social Behaviour	23	23x2	4		Three of 32.201, 202, 203, 205, or three of 33.201, 202, 203, 205 or 32.206, 207, 208	
	32.312	Organizational Psychology	23	23x2	4	As for 32.301 and permission of Head of Department	72.204	

Subjects	Course No	Title of Course	Total Lecture Hours Per Course	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>ZOOLOGY</b>								
Bio	39.101	Central Concepts of Biology	46	12x3	6			39.111
Zoo	38.102	Animal Evolution & Diversity	46	12x3	6			39.112
	38.201	Non-chordate Zoology (taught in odd numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	38.102, 39.101	06.102 and 12 credits from Maths, Physics and/or Chemistry	38.301
	*38.202	Chordate Zoology (taught in even numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	38.102, 39.101	06.102 and 12 credits from Maths, Physics and/or Chemistry	38.302
	38.203	Animal Orientation	23	6x6	3		38.201 or 202	38.303
Zoo	38.204	Social Behaviour of Animals	23	6x6	3		38.201 or 202	38.304
	38.205	Entomology	23	6x6	3		38.201 or 202	38.305
Bio	39.207	Biometry	23	6x6	3	39.101, 06.102, 38.102		39.307
Zoo	38.209	Comparative Physiology	23	6x6	3		38.201 or 202	38.309
Bio	39.211	Population & Community Ecology	23	6x6	3	39.101, 06.102, 38.102	39.207 or 307	
	39.212	Coastal Marine Biology	23	6x6	3	39.101, 06.102, 38.102		
	39.213	New Zealand Vegetation	23	6x6	3	39.101, 06.102, 38.102		
Zoo	38.301	Non-chordate Zoology (taught in odd numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	38.202		38.201
	*38.302	Chordate Zoology (taught in even numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	38.201		38.202
	38.303	Animal Orientation	23	6x6	3		38.301 or 302	38.203
	38.304	Social Behaviour of Animals	23	6x6	3		38.301 or 302	38.204
	38.305	Entomology	23	6x6	3		38.301 or 302	38.205
Bio	39.307	Biometry	23	6x6	3	12 credits at Stage II level in Bio, Bot and/or Zoo		39.207
Zoo	38.309	Comparative Physiology	23	6x6	3		38.301 or 302	38.209
	*38.310	Animal Morphogenesis	23	6x6	3		38.301 or 302	
Bio	39.311	Freshwater Ecology	23	6x6	3	15 credits at Stage II level in Bio, Bot and/or Zoo		
	39.312	Coastal Marine Biology	23	6x6	3			
	39.313	Ecology & Biogeography of Terrestrial Ecosystems	23	6x6	3	15 credits at Stage II level in Bio, Bot and/or Zoo including 207, 211, 213		

Subjects	Course No	Title of Course	Total Lecture Hours		Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
			Per Course	Lab Hours				
	39.314	Applied Ecology	23	6x6	3	As for 39.311 and 39.312		
Zoo	38.315	Evolutionary Genetics	23	6x6	3			39.315
Bio	39.316	Biological Oceanography	23	6x6	3	38.201/301 and 9 credits at Stage II level in Bio, Bot and/or Zoo (39.211 is desirable)	38.201 38.301	

NOTE: Any candidate majoring in another subject may, with the permission of the Head of Department, take up two papers in Zoology without fulfilling the pre-requisites and co-requisites listed in the Schedule.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE (HONOURS) BSc (Hons)

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. The Degree may be awarded in each of the following Honours Schools:

Geology

Mathematics

2. Admission to the Course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) shall be at the discretion of the Senate and shall be given at either the end of the second year or third year after matriculation provided that where the proviso to Regulation 8 applies, admission may be granted at the end of the third or fourth year after matriculation.

3. No candidate shall be admitted to an Honours School without the approval of the Head of Department of that School and of the Senate. Such approval shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the candidate's performance in the courses of University study already pursued by the candidate and particularly in the papers required as prerequisites to that Honours School.

4. No candidate may be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) if he has previously been awarded the degree of Bachelor of Science of this University.

5. In each Honours School a candidate's Course of study for the Degree shall comprise:

(a) such prerequisites, being papers prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, and

(b) such Honours Parts (being Parts III and IV, or Part IV as the case may be) and

(c) such Foreign Language requirements as the Head of the Department within the Honours School may prescribe, and

(d) such papers in other subjects as may be required and prescribed in that Honours School under Regulation 14;

provided that

(i) except where the Senate in its discretion otherwise permits, the number of prerequisite papers shall be not fewer than 72 credits in a case of entry into an Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation and not fewer than 96 in a case of entry at the end of the third such year;

(ii) in the case of any prerequisite subject and with the approval of the Senate, if the candidate has been permitted to enrol for and has passed at Stage II without having passed at Stage I, Stage II may be substituted for Stage I, and Stage III may then be substituted for Stage II;

(iii) in the case of a candidate whose mother tongue is not English the Foreign Language requirements shall be waived.

6. A candidate for this Degree may, with the permission of the Heads of the Departments concerned and the approval of Senate, substitute one paper in another subject for one paper of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.

7. A candidate in any subject for this Degree where practical work is prescribed, must pass beside the written examination, in such practical work as may be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

### **Withdrawal and Exclusion from Course**

8. A candidate may withdraw from the Honours School and be granted such credits and exemptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science as the Senate shall determine.

9. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Part of the Honours Course of study so that his performance in all papers comprising this Part shall be considered: provided that a candidate who has failed to pass an Honours Part as a whole may in such exceptional circumstances as the Senate approves be credited with a paper or papers of that Part and permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with (if the Senate permits) a paper or papers of the next succeeding Part.

The candidate shall then be required in that year to pass as a whole in all the papers so presented upon the same conditions as those herein prescribed.

10. A candidate shall sit his final examinations for the degree within four years of his matriculation: provided that at the discretion of the Senate the period may be extended to five years

(a) where a candidate first enrolled in the subject of his Honours School in his second year after matriculation, or

(b) in any special circumstances.



11. A candidate who, on the results of his examination, does not reach the standard required in the Honours School in which he is enrolled, shall be excluded by the Senate from the Honours School but he may be granted such credits and exemptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science as the Senate shall determine.

### **Classes of Honours**

12. The Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) may be awarded with First Class or Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division. The class of Honours awarded shall be determined primarily on the performance of the candidate in the examinations in his final year but account may be taken of his work throughout his Course of study.

13. The Senate may determine in respect of any candidate who fails to qualify for the Degree that he be awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Science or be credited with papers towards that Degree or be credited with the Degree of Bachelor of Science together with appropriate credits towards the Degree of Master of Science.

### **Transfer to BSc (Hons)**

14. The Senate may, on written application by a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Science and without payment of a fee, grant him permission to transfer to a Course of study under these Regulations and allow him to be credited with a pass in such papers as the Senate shall determine.

### **Requirements of Honours Schools**

15. Subject to the provisos to Regulation 5, the Honours Courses of study with subject and papers of examination are as follows:

#### **Geology Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his second year after matriculation, Geology, four papers, totalling 24 credits  
Chemistry 115 or 125

and 36 credits from other papers in any of the following subjects:

Botany, Chemistry, Geology, Mathematics, Physics, Zoology, or in any other subject approved by the Head of Department.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his third year after matriculation, structure of Course of study as specified for entry at the end of the second year:  
four papers from 21.301, 21.302, 21.303, 21.304, 21.305, 21.306 plus 21.307.

In special cases, with the approval of the Head of Department of Geology, papers at an advanced level in any other subjects may be substituted for any of the above, provided that the candidate has gained at least 12 credits from Geology Stage III papers.

#### **Geology Honours Part III**

(Geology papers totalling not fewer than 24 credits, together with practical work).

Part III shall contain papers prescribed as Geology second or third year papers, for a total of not fewer than 24 credits. In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, advanced papers of other subjects may be substituted for Geology papers, provided that the Course of study contains Geology papers totalling at least 12 credits.

#### **Geology Honours Part IV**

(Three papers together with practical work and thesis).

The student shall follow one year's Course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Geology and carry out an original investigation on an approved topic.\* The examination shall consist of three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science (21.401 to 21.406 and 21.408 but not 86.100 or 86.102) and a thesis embodying the results of the investigation which shall be equivalent to one paper. The thesis shall be delivered to the Registrar at the beginning of the second half of the second term.

\*Notes: (i) Intending students should consult the Head of Department about the research topic immediately after completing the papers for Part III.

(ii) The language for the Foreign Language Reading Examination shall be any approved by the Head of Department of Geology and this examination should be taken as early as possible.

(iii) An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

#### **Mathematics Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his second year after matriculation, a total of 72 credits from the following subjects:

Mathematics, Chemistry, Physics, or in any other subject approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics provided that prerequisite papers, together with the papers selected for Part III, will enable the candidate to attain a level equivalent to the prerequisites for entry to Part IV.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his third year after matriculation, Mathematics 220, 240, at least one of 260, 280, 281, plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head

of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Of those twenty credits at least 16 shall be from papers in Mathematics; except that in special circumstances the Head of Department may approve a minimum of 12 such mathematics credits.

### **Mathematics Honours Part III**

(24 credits in papers approved by the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics).

Part III shall consist of papers approved by the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics totalling 24 credits and including such Mathematics papers as will enable attainment of a level equivalent to the prerequisites for entry to Part IV.

### **Mathematics Honours Part IV**

(20 credits in papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics).

Part IV shall consist of papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics totalling 20 credits.

**Note:** Normally these will be selected from papers Mathematics 400 to 499 and Computer Science 490 to 499 provided that up to four credits may be replaced by four stage three credits from papers in Mathematics and Computer Science.

## **THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF OPTOMETRY**

### **BOptom**

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Except as provided in the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Optometry shall follow a Course of study of not fewer than four years.

2. In these Regulations

(a) a 'paper' is an independently assessed segment of work in a subject, the successful completion of which results in the award of credits as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations.

(b) Papers are classified as Stage I (papers numbered .100-.199), Stage II (.200-.299), Stage III (.300-399) and Stage IV (.400-499).

3. A complete Course of study requires the gaining of 133 credits.

### **Course Load**

4. A candidate may not enrol in any one year for papers totalling more than 50 credits.

5. A candidate in any paper of the subjects Biochemistry, Biology, Chemistry, Optometry, and Psychology shall be required to pass both the written papers and in such practical work as may be required by the Head of the Department: provided that the candidate's mark in the practical work may, with the leave of the Senate, be carried forward to a subsequent year.

6 (a) Candidates may not enrol for any paper until they have satisfied all the prerequisite and corequisite requirements for that paper, as set out in the BOptom Schedule, or have permission from the Head of Department.

(b) A candidate required to repeat any year III subjects may also be required to undertake such additional practical and clinical work as the Head of the Department of Psychology determines.

### **Exceptions**

7. (a) The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

(b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

### **Optional Transition From DipOpt**

8. Any candidate who in or before 1981 enrolled for the Diploma in Optometry but has not completed the requirements for or been awarded that Diploma before 31 December 1987 may either (i) transfer to the Course of study for this Degree (in which case he shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers for this Degree as the Senate may determine), or (ii) complete the Course of study for the Diploma in Optometry in accordance with the regulations for that Diploma last published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1981.

### **Revocation**

9. The regulations for the Diploma in Optometry are revoked (subject to Regulation 8 of these present Regulations)M

10. These Regulations shall come into force in 1 January 1982.

**Schedule**

- (1) This schedule sets out paper numbers, credits, prerequisites, corequisites, and restrictions applying to papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry.
- (2) The schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.
- (3) The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.
- (4) The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.
- (5) The heading 'restriction' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken together with that paper.
- (6) A candidate may not take a further stage of a paper until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements for that paper.

Subjects	Course No	Title of Course	Total Lecture Hours Per Course	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>YEAR I</b>								
Bio	39.101	Central concepts of biology	46	12x3	6			39.111
Chem	08.110	Organic, physical and general chemistry	46	12x3	6			
Chem	08.120	Inorganic, physical and general chemistry	46	12x3	6			
Maths	26.142	Concepts of calculus	46	23x1	6			26.140 26.141 26.241 31.113
Phys	31.110	Mechanics and heat, wave-motion sound and light	46	12x3	6			
Phys	31.120	Electricity, relativity and modern physics	46	12x3	6			31.123
Psych	32.108	Introduction to general psychology	46		6			
Psych	32.109	Introduction to experimental psychology	23	23x2	6			

Note: (a) For Chem 08.110 a candidate may substitute 08.113 or 08.115;  
 (b) For Chem 08.120 a candidate may substitute 08.123 or 08.125;  
 (c) For Phys 31.110 a candidate may substitute 31.113 or 31.115;  
 (d) For Phys 31.120 a candidate may substitute 31.123 or 31.125.

**YEAR II**

Optom	44.200	Physical optics	12	12x2	3	31.110 or 31.115 31.120 or 31.125 26.142	44.201	
Optom	44.201	Geometrical optics	12	12x2	3	31.110 or 31.115 31.120 or 31.125 26.142	44.200	

Subjects	Course No	Title of Course	Total Lecture Hours Per Course	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Optom	44.203	Ocular anatomy	23	12x2	4	39.101	44.204	
Optom	44.204	Ocular physiology and biochemistry	23	23x2	4	39.101	44.203 66.201 67.201	
Optom	44.210	Physiological optics	46	23x3	8	39.101, 32.108 21.109	44.200, 44.201 44.203, 44.204	
Biochem	66.201	Introductory biochemistry	46	12x6	6	39.101		
Physiol	67.201	Introductory physiology	46	23x3	6	39.101		
Psych	32.207	Sensory processes: physiological psychology	23	23x2	4	32.108 and 32.109		

**YEAR III**

Optom	44.305	Ocular pharmacology	12	6x2	2	44.203, 44.204 44.210, 66.201 67.201		
Optom	44.310	Physiological optics	23	12x3	4	44.203, 44.204 44.210, 66.201 67.201		
Optom	44.306	Applied optics	23	23x2	4	44.200, 44.201		
Optom	44.312	Contact lens practice	23	12x2	3	44.204	44.330	
Optom	44.313	Environmental vision	23	12x2	4	44.200, 44.201 44.210		
Optom	44.315	Ocular pathology	23	23x1	3	44.203, 44.204 44.210	44.330	
Optom	44.316	Ophthalmic optics	23	12x2	3	44.200, 44.201 44.210	44.312	
Optom	44.330	Clinical optometry	46	30x6	6	44.203, 44.204 44.210	44.310, 44.316	
Psych	32.306	The design of psychological experiments	23	23x2	4	32.207		

**YEAR IV**

Optom	44.415	Community health optometry	23		2	33 Year II Credits		
Optom	44.421	Project			2	As for 44.414		
Optom	44.430	Clinical optometry	69	33x18	10	As for 44.414		

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF SCIENCE

### MSc

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Science shall before his enrolment for this Degree

- (a) (i) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Science, except as provided in Regulation 2, below, or
- (ii) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours), or
- (iii) in the subject Psychology in lieu of the requirements of paragraph (i) of this clause have been awarded or qualified for the award of the Diploma in Optometry;
- (b) have passed the following subject prerequisites or have passed the subject he offers in the final year of the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours); provided that in special cases recommended by the Head of the Department the Senate may exempt the candidate from this requirement:

#### Biochemistry Biochemistry 301 and 302

**Botany** 24 Stage III credits including at least 12 Stage III credits from Botany and/or Biology

**Cell Biology** either Cell Biology 301 and 302, or Cell Biology 303 and at least six credits from Cell Biology 304 and 305

**Chemistry** 08.210, 08.220, 08.230 and 18 Stage III credits; including at least 12 Stage III credits from Chemistry

**Computer Science** at least 24 credits in Computer Science above Stage I level; at least 24 credits at Stage III level of which at least 12 shall be from papers in Computer Science; in special circumstances the Head of Department may approve lower minimum requirements.

**Geography** 24 Stage III credits including at least 12 Stage III credits from Geography

**Geology** 24 Stage III credits including at least 12 Stage III credits from Geology

**Mathematics** Mathematics 220 or 221, 240 or 241 at least one of 260 (or 261 if passed before 1978) 280, 281 plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics; of those twenty credits at least 16 shall be from papers in Mathematics and Computer Science; except that in special circumstances the Head of Department may approve a minimum of 12 such credits from Mathematics and Computer Science.

**Physics** Physics 210, 220, 240, 250, 290; and 22 credits from papers approved by the Head of Department, including at least 12 credits from the papers Physics 310–385 and at least 6 credits from the laboratory papers Physics 390–393

#### Physiology

18 Stage III credits including Physiology 301 and at least 6 Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Cell Biology, Psychology or Zoology; or other papers approved by the Head of Department

#### Psychology

- (i) either 24 Stage III credits including at least 12 stage III credits from Psychology; or
- (ii) on the requirements for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry

#### Zoology

24 stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Zoology or Biology

(c) have passed with an average Grade of C+ or better, either in all Stage III papers prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science which are prerequisites for the subject taken for this Master's Degree; or in all subjects in Division IV for the Diploma of Optometry if that Diploma is the prerequisite for the subject Psychology taken for this Degree; provided that the Heads of Department may at their discretion approve a lower grade for the purpose of this clause.

2. With the approval of the Head of Department, a candidate may enrol for this Degree after having gained at least 90 credits, including 36 credits above Stage I level for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, provided that

- (a) his proposed course for this Degree will extend over not fewer than two academic years;
- (b) he has obtained grades averaging B- or above in the advanced papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science of the subject which he proposes to take for this Degree;
- (c) he satisfies the conditions in Regulation 1 (b) and (c) above, or is exempted from them;
- (d) he must have completed the prerequisite papers for this Degree;
- (e) he enrolls for the remaining paper or papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science in the first year of his course for this Degree;
- (f) should he not pass the remaining paper or papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science in the first year of his Master of Science course, his Master's course shall be suspended until he has passed the remaining paper or papers.

3. A candidate may sit the examination papers required for this Degree over two successive years. He may only elect to follow this course of study when he first enrolls for the Degree. Such candidates shall not be eligible to gain Honours.

4. A candidate for this Degree, may with the permission of the Heads of the Departments concerned and with the approval of the Senate take one Master's paper in a subject other than that in which he is taking his degree. Each such paper shall substitute for one paper of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.

5. (a) A candidate who has been admitted or has qualified for admission to

(i) the Degree of Bachelor of Science shall be required in the subject taken to pass the prescribed examinations and to present a thesis where that is prescribed, in accordance with Regulations 12 of these Regulations;

(ii) the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) shall be required to present a thesis only, which shall be as prescribed in Regulation 12 in the subject Geology or Mathematics;

(iii) the Diploma in Energy Technology (Geothermal), having taken papers 86.101 and 86.102, may for the subject Geology, with the approval of the Head of Department of Geology, be permitted to present for this Degree a thesis only.

(b) A candidate who has done work for the Mathematics Degree Bachelor of Science (Honours) but has qualified for admission not to that Degree but to the Degree of Bachelor of Science, may be granted exemption from such part of the Course of study for the Degree of Master of Science as the Senate may approve, subject to his paying the prescribed fee as if that part were an exempted unit for the purpose of Regulation 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

6. Where a thesis is required the following conditions shall apply:

(a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of the Department.

(b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.

(c) In the case of a thesis requiring laboratory work, such work shall be carried out within the University provided that the Senate may permit a candidate to carry out such work in an approved institute outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be necessary.

(d) A candidate (other than one in the Departments of Geography, Mathematics and Statistics and Psychology) shall present his thesis not later than twenty-four months after his first enrolment for this degree, but on a recommendation from the Head of Department, the Dean of the Faculty may permit an extension of not more than one year. For candidates in the Departments of Geography, Mathematics and Statistics and Psychology, regulation 10 (c) and 10 (d) for the degree of Master of Arts applies.

(e) The candidate shall submit his thesis to the Registrar by the prescribed date. The Registrar shall deliver the thesis to the Head of the Department concerned.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

7. A candidate shall not take a subject which he has already passed for the Degree of Master of Arts.

### **Honours**

8. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division, and Second Division.

The degree may be awarded with distinction to a candidate who (i) has already qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) and has achieved a standard equivalent to first class honours or (ii) has been admitted to this degree under Regulation 5 (a) (iii) and has achieved a standard equivalent to first class honours.

(b) Honours shall not be awarded in a particular subject to any candidate who enrolled for and failed to qualify for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) in that Subject.

(c) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond

his control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination, so that he shall still be eligible for the award of Honours subject to the provisions of sub-clause (d) of this Regulation.

(d) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he completes the requirements for Honours within twenty-four months of his first enrolment for this Degree provided that this period may be extended, in exceptional cases, by the Senate.

9. (a) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the foregoing Regulations a candidate may upon the recommendation of the Heads of the Departments concerned and with the approval of the Senate:

- (i) substitute an Engineering paper for any papers, paper, or part of a paper prescribed in Regulation 12, and
- (ii) substitute a thesis (to carry such weight as may be determined) in an Engineering subject for a thesis in any subject prescribed in Regulation 12;

so that part but not the whole of the candidate's course for this Degree may be taken in Engineering.

(b) The Senate may require the candidate to take any appropriate prerequisite papers before granting any such approval.

(c) In this Regulation 'an Engineering paper' and 'an Engineering subject' mean respectively any paper and any subject prescribed in or for the purposes of Regulation 3 of the Regulations for the Degree of Master of Engineering.

### **Savings and Transitional Provisions**

10. (a) All candidates enrolled for this Degree

(i) who completed a Bachelor of Science Degree in, or before, 1972 shall pass the subject prerequisites listed in the 1972 *Calendar*;

(ii) shall have their course governed by these Regulations, except those referred to in sub-clause (i).

(b) The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1973.

### **List of Subjects**

12. The subjects of examination and relative requirements as to theses for this Degree, together with the prescription numbers relative to each examination paper, are as follows:

**Anatomy** (Two papers and a thesis 65.621 which shall count as four papers): papers 65.401, 65.402

**Biochemistry** (Three papers and a thesis 66.601 which shall count as three papers): papers 66.401 to 66.403

**Botany** (Three papers and a thesis 06.601 which shall count as three papers): paper 06.401 plus two papers from 06.410 to 06.460

**Cell Biology** (Three papers and a thesis 40.601 which shall count as three papers): papers 40.401, 40.402, 40.403

**Chemistry** Five papers and a thesis which shall count as four papers): five papers from 08.410–08.450 which together shall count one-half towards the assessment for the final grade, and paper 08.450 which shall count one-sixth towards the assessment for the final grade.

**Computer Science** (Papers totalling 16 credits and a thesis which will count as 16 credits or papers totalling 16 credits and an advanced course of study which will count as 16 credits): a selection approved by the Head of the Department of Computer Science of papers from Computer Science 400 to 499 with total credit value as shown in the prescriptions of 16 credits together with a thesis or an advanced course of study

**Geography** (Four papers and a thesis 0.601 which shall count as three papers): four papers from 20.400 to 20.442

**Geology** (Three papers and a thesis 21.601 which shall count as two papers; Foreign Language Reading Examination): three papers from 21.401 to 21.406, 21.408 and 86.100 or 86.102: the chosen foreign language must be approved by the Head of the Department of Geology; the Foreign Language Reading requirement shall be waived in the case of a candidate whose mother tongue is not English

**Mathematics** (Papers totalling 20 credits and a thesis which will count as 16 credits or papers totalling 20 credits and an advanced course of study which will count as 16 credits): a selection approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics of papers from Mathematics 400 to 499 and Computer Science 490 to 499, with total value as shown in the *Prescriptions* of 20 credits together with a thesis or an advanced course of study, provided that up to four of these credits may be replaced by four stage three credits from papers in Mathematics and Computer Science not already taken for any other Degree or Diploma

**Pathology** (Two papers and a thesis 68.621 which shall count as four papers): papers 68.401, 68.402.

**Physics** (Four papers and a thesis 31.601 which shall count as four papers): four papers from 31.410–31.485.

**Physiology** (Three papers and a thesis 67.621 which shall count as three papers): three papers from 67.401–67.406.

**Psychology** (Four papers and a thesis 32.601 which shall count as three papers): four papers from 32.401 to 2.453.

*Note:* From 1984 students who have not passed 32.306 will be required to take paper 32.419.

**Zoology** (Three papers and a thesis 38.601 which shall count as three papers): three papers from 38.401 to 38.410.

---

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

---

### DEPARTMENT OF ANATOMY

#### Anatomy for MSc and Honours

Two papers and a thesis (65.621)

**65.401, 65.402** The study of selected fields of Anatomy at an Advanced Level with Detailed Study of One Particular Field.

The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the major feature of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

Students from other Universities must have completed Anatomy III or the equivalent.

---

### DEPARTMENT OF BIOCHEMISTRY

#### Stage II

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule. Entry to Biochemistry II is limited.

**Biochemistry 201** (One paper and practical work). An introductory course based on the unifying theme of energy in biochemical systems. Topics are the role of energy in living systems; photosynthesis as a process of solar energy capture for biosynthesis; metabolism as a process for rearrangement of molecular fragments; respiration as the controlled release of energy from molecular fragments; enzymes as regulatory molecules; nucleic acids as stores of biochemical information.

The course is a prerequisite for those proceeding to papers 66.301, 66.302 and the MSc degree in Biochemistry. Passes are required in both the written paper and in practical work (BSc Regulation 7).

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. Two tests will be held during the year.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes totalling 72 hours, at times to be arranged during the second half of the year. Performance in practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course. Students should wear a laboratory coat and covered footwear in the laboratory.

*Prerequisites:* Chemistry 08.110 or 8.120. Biology 39.101 is recommended.

Entry to Biochemistry II is limited to 100.

#### Stage III

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule.

**Biochemistry 301** (One paper and practical work). Topics introduced in paper 66.201 are expanded and examined in greater depth. The emphasis is placed upon the biochemistry of macromolecules. Practical work is concerned with the theory and practice of analytical procedures commonly used by biochemists.

**Biochemistry 302** (One paper and practical work). This course examines metabolic interrelationships and regulation. Practical work is project-oriented using techniques encountered in Biochemistry 66.301.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than six hours a week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course. Students should wear a laboratory coat and covered footwear during practical classes.

Entry to Biochemistry III may have to be restricted if the number of applicants exceeds the number of laboratory places. Candidates who lack one or more of the prerequisites listed in the BSc Schedule are also permitted to make preliminary application. Competence in mathematics up to University Entrance level is assumed.

#### Biochemistry for MSc

Three papers and a thesis (66.601)

**66.401, 66.402, 66.403.** The general study of Biochemistry at an advanced level, with more detailed study in fields of enzymology, metabolic pathways, microbial metabolism, biochemical control mechanisms and biochemical endocrinology.

Candidates for the Master's Degree should consult the Head of the Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, in order to select a thesis topic and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

The course will be of a minimum duration of one year; the student should normally expect to complete his thesis during the following year.

Students from other Universities must have taken Biochemistry to an advanced undergraduate level (eg Biochemistry III as offered at Otago University).

#### Research in Biochemistry

Research facilities are available for PhD students and Post-doctoral workers in several fields of animal, microbial and plant biochemistry.

Intending applicants should make application to the Head of Department in the first instance.

---

### DEPARTMENT OF BOTANY

#### Stage I

The first year course for students in Botany, Zoology or Biology consists of three 6-credit papers, Biology 101 (Paper 39.101), Botany 102 (Paper 06.102) and Zoology 102 (Paper 38.102).

#### Biology 101 Central Concepts in Biology

Biochemical concepts common to animals, microorganisms and plants; the biochemistry of macro-



molecules, especially nucleic acids and proteins; enzyme action and catalysis; cellular energetics; genetic principles and mechanisms; fundamental processes of ecosystems; population and community dynamics; organic evolution. This course may be taken as part of the Stage I requirement in either Botany or Zoology, but may not receive credit in both.

### **Botany 102 Form and Function in Plants**

An introductory course including the study of major plant groups. Topics covered include major features of NZ flora and vegetation; cytological and anatomical architecture and their relation to photosynthesis, respiration, translocation and transpiration; the regulation of growth and reproduction. The course will include a number of small group discussions and one or two field trips which students will be expected to attend.

## **Stage II**

The course consists of Botany 201 or 202 together with Botany 221 and Botany 203 or Biology 213 and practical work including field trips.

### **Botany 201 Lower Plants**

The biology of fungi, algae, bryophytes and pteridophytes.

### **\*Botany 202 Higher Plants**

The anatomy, morphology and systematics of gymnosperms and angiosperms together with an introduction to cytology and ultrastructure. This course will next be offered in 1984.

### **Botany 203/303 Crop Physiology and Anatomy**

A study of crop diversity; applied physiology, especially of flowering, reproduction and senescence; anatomy and development of harvestable portions of crops; principles of crop protection and crop improvement.

### **Biology 207/307 Biometry**

Elementary statistical methods and concepts with particular emphasis on their application in biological research.

### **Biology 211 Population and Community**

#### **Ecology**

Elementary demography and models of population growth; population genetics with emphasis on the concepts of selection and fitness; two-species interactions, competition and predation; multispecies associations. The emphasis will be on experimental ecology of both plants and animals from a wide range of habitats. There will be a field course of one week, the first week of the May vacation from 8–13 May inclusive. This field course is run in conjunction with 39.213 and attendance is compulsory for students doing both subjects. Students not doing 39.213 in conjunction may apply for admission to the field course at enrolment.

### **Biology 212 Coastal Marine Biology**

The shore and shallow sea as a habitat life, and a workshop for ecologists. Habitat structure and intertidal zonation, exemplified chiefly by New Zealand shores. Descriptive schemes of community space, with underlying physical and biotic parameters. The adaptation of the various groups of plants and animals to life between tides. Coastal biogeography. The conservation and utilisation of the coastline. Practical work includes obligatory seven day field course available at Whangarei Heads during the third week of May vacation (21–30 May). Alternative field courses may be available at Leigh Laboratory in Mid-term and first week of August vacation (13–20 August).

### **Biology 213 New Zealand Vegetation Ecology**

New Zealand vegetation since the break-up of Gondwanaland. Palynological studies. Alpine environments. Major forest types. Lowland swamp and coastal communities. Emphasis will be placed on autecological studies and the dynamics of the ecosystems described, including the role of native and introduced fauna. Practical work will include an experimental project and day field trips. A field course will be held from 8–13 May in conjunction with 39.211, and attendance is compulsory for students doing both subjects. Students not doing 39.211 in conjunction may apply for admission to the field course at enrolment.

### **Botany 221 Plant Physiology**

An introduction to plant physiology and biochemistry with particular emphasis on plant response to environment. **Water:** water potentials and water movement in the soil-plant-atmosphere continuum; water stress; plant adaptation. **Oxygen:** principles of gas exchange; structural adaptation to oxygen deficit; biochemical adaptations to oxygen deficit. **Temperature:** enzyme reactions, membrane effects, thermal adaptation. Mineral nutrition: criteria of essentiality; uptake mechanisms; role of nutrients. Laboratories will cover basic techniques used to study plant responses to these factors.

## **Stage III**

The course consists of a selection from papers from Biology 311, 313, 314, 316 and Botany 301 to 361 together with practical work, including field trips.

### **Botany 301 Lower Plants**

See Botany 201.

### **\*Botany 302 Higher Plants**

See Botany 202.

### **Biology 311 Freshwater Ecology**

Animal and plant freshwater communities, particularly of lakes and rivers, the physical and chemical environment; physiography of rivers and lakes; hydrology; pollution. Part of the course will consist of a field trip during May vacation (9–12) and a weekend field course (30 April–1 May).

**Biology 312 Coastal Marine Biology**

See Biology 212.

**Biology 313 The Ecology and Biogeography of Terrestrial Ecosystems**

Current controversies on community stability and diversity. Ordination and classification techniques. Sampling, with special reference to forests. Ecosystem integration, through animal-plant-pathogen interactions. Nutrient cycling. Forest dynamics with reference to different types of forest ecosystems. The tropical rain forest. A compulsory residential field class will be held from 21–26 February, departing late afternoon on the 21st. Interpretation and analysis of the field data will take place during the Wednesday laboratory times.

**Biology 314 Applied Ecology**

The application of ecological principles to resource management, including natural recreational resources, forests and fisheries; aspects of the conservation of natural ecosystems — the planning process.

**Biology 316 Biological Oceanography**

Characteristics of marine communities: the physical and chemical environment and primary production; marine algology; zooplankton and secondary production; characteristics of plankton, nekton, benthos and meiofaunas in shallow and deep seas. Practical work includes day or weekend field trips and several days of laboratory investigation.

**Botany 321 Plant Physiology**

Photosynthetic metabolism, with particular reference to productivity: light reactions, carbon pathways, chloroplast control mechanisms, photorespiration, limiting factors and diffusion resistances.

**Botany 325 Differentiation in Plants**

An integrated study of physiological, structural and ultrastructural aspects of differentiation processes in plants. Emphasis is placed on hormonal interactions and the associated ultrastructural changes involved in a range of processes such as: cell division, dormancy and germination, tropisms, correlative growth processes, flowering.

**Botany 331 Plant Pathology 1**

History; principles of plant pathology; introduction to host-parasite relations; etiology and control of specific soil-borne diseases.

**Botany 332 Plant Pathology 2**

Mycological review; abiotic disease; environmental effects on fungal disease; aerobiology; fungicides and disease control; diseases of significance in N.Z. economy.

**Botany 341 Plant Genetics**

Plant cytogenetics including the study of the nucleus in division, changes in chromosome structure and number and the meiotic behaviour of chromosome

anomalies in hybrids and polyploids. Genetics of recombination with emphasis on the mapping of gene loci: theories of crossing-over; tetrad analysis.

**Botany 361 Advanced Plant Taxonomy**

Classical and experimental approaches to the study of taxonomic relationships in metaphytes including cytological, chemical and numerical techniques as well as field and herbarium methods and a knowledge of plant nomenclature rules. Phylogenetic and phenetic systems of classification; analysis of variation; speciation processes. Students should expect to attend a field course at Tongariro National Park from May 16 to May 20th incl.

**Laboratory Work**

The practical work will be assessed separately and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass both in the written examination and in the practical work is necessary for credit to be awarded for a paper (B.Sc. Regulation 6).

**Field Courses in Botany/Biology, 1983**

06.361: 16-20 May	39.213: 8-13 May
39.211: 8-13 May	39.311: 9-12 May
39-212: 21-30 May	39.313: 21-26 February

**Botany for MSc**

This course takes from fifteen months to two years and requires full time attendance. It comprises Botany 401 and two other papers from those listed below, together with a thesis (06.601) which is equivalent to three papers.

**06.401 Advanced Topics in Botany****06.410 Plant Ecology**

Selected topics in plant demography. Forest community concepts. Field techniques and computer analysis. Historical plant ecology.

**06.420 Plant Physiology and Biochemistry**

In depth consideration of selected topics

**06.450 Developmental Botany, pure and applied**

A study of contemporary research into aspects of the anatomy, ultrastructure and physiology of plant development.

**06.460 Plant Systematics and Genetics**

Modern approaches to plant classification (phyletic, phenetic, cladistic) and theories and techniques which form its basis. Cytogenetics; cytotaxonomy; quantitative genetic variation; recombinational and hybrid analysis.

(See also M.Sc. Regulation 4)

**Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD**

Facilities are available for MSc and PhD research in a wide range of topics in Botany and Biology.

## DEPARTMENT OF CELL BIOLOGY

### Stage III

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule.

#### 40.303 Cellular and Molecular Biology

*Lectures:* Optical and electron microscopical methods used in the study of cell structure. The fine structure of cellular organelles and components in relation to their function. The structure, biosynthesis and function of nucleic acids and proteins. The Genetic Code. Genetic regulatory mechanisms in bacteria and eukaryotes. The mammalian cell cycle and control of growth of mammalian cells by hormones and other agents.

*Laboratories:* The laboratory course will cover basic methods used to fix and examine biological material by light and electron microscopy. Experiments will also be performed with proteins and nucleic acids to illustrate their properties and the techniques used to investigate the structure and function of these materials.

#### 40.304 Molecular Genetics

*Lectures:* The units of mutation, function and recombination in bacteria and bacterial viruses. The transmission and recombination of genetic material in bacterial viruses, bacteria and diploid microorganisms. Eukaryotic somatic cell genetics.

*Laboratories:* The laboratory course will cover basic methods used in bacteriology and microbiology as an introduction to experiments in microbial genetics. Experiments will be performed to illustrate methods of transmission of genetic information in microorganisms and the experimental application of such techniques to the resolution of problems of gene order and organisation of chromosomes.

#### 40.305 Virology and Immunology

*Lectures:* The structure and replication of bacterial, plant and animal viruses. Immunity, the structure and synthesis of antibodies and the cellular basis of the immune response.

*Laboratories:* The laboratory course will cover basic methods used in virology to purify and characterise viruses and techniques used for studying antibodies and the cells that synthesise such molecules. An introduction to techniques used in the culture of animal cells forms part of this course.

### Cell Biology for MSc and Honours

Three papers and a Thesis (40.601)

#### 40.401 Cellular and Molecular Biology

#### 40.402 Molecular Genetics

#### 40.403 Virology and Immunology

The material for Cell Biology 303, 304 and 305 considered in greater depth, with knowledge of some of the current original literature. The course will be based on selected topics in Membrane Biology, Molecular Biology Virology, Immunology and, Microbial and Molecular Genetics.

*Prerequisites:* For Auckland students, at least 12 credits from Cell Biology 303, 304 or 305 (or Cell Biology 301 and 302 prior to 1979). Students from other universities or colleges must have taken some suitable subject to an advanced undergraduate level (e.g. Biochemistry Advanced II or Microbiology Advanced II as offered at Otago University). For students from other universities the MSc degree will normally involve a two-year course, in which the candidates may be required to take all or part of the course work for Cell Biology Stage III.

Students are reminded of the requirement of a grade of at least C+ in prerequisite Stage II and Stage III Subjects for BSc (see MSc Regulation 1 (c)).

*Thesis:* The preparation of a thesis (40.601) is a most important feature of the work and a large part of the student's time should be devoted to this aspect of the course. The topic of research for the thesis can be in virology, electron microscopy, molecular genetics or molecular biology.

### Research in Cell Biology

Facilities are available for research by PhD and post-doctoral students in fields of virology, molecular genetics, electron microscopy, and molecular biology. An outline of courses appropriate to students intending to advance to research in Cell Biology may be found in the Science Faculty Handbook and other departmental publications.

Intending students should consult the Head of the Department as early as possible.

**Note:** An MSc in Cell Biology is not a prerequisite for PhD registration.

## DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY

The courses in Chemistry for the BSc Degree under these regulations are progressive; although prerequisites have not been prescribed more restrictively than necessary, students should bear in mind that familiarity with relevant material from earlier courses is assumed in the later ones.

### First Year Courses

The following points apply to all First Year courses.

- (i) Each course involves one paper and practical work. A pass in both the written paper and the practical course is necessary.
- (ii) Each course involves four hours of lectures and one three-hour laboratory course per week, for one half year.
- (iii) Tests will be held for each course, outside lecture hours. Performance in these tests may contribute to the final grade for the written paper.
- (iv) Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

**Chemistry 08.110 (6 credits) Organic, Physical and General Chemistry**

**Chemistry 08.120 (6 credits) Inorganic, Physical and General Chemistry**

These courses are given in the first and second half years respectively and are intended for students who wish to take at least one Stage II paper in Chemistry. Students who do not attain the standard required for a pass in Chemistry 110 or 120 may be credited with a pass in Chemistry 115 or 125.

**Chemistry 08.113 (6 credits) Organic, Physical and General Chemistry****Chemistry 08.123 (6 credits) Inorganic, Physical and General Chemistry**

These courses are given in the first and second half years respectively as part of the requirements for Engineering Intermediate. They are similar in standard to the courses Chemistry 110 and 120 and may be credited in lieu of those courses towards the BSc degree for students who do not continue in Engineering. Students who do not attain the standard required for a pass in Chemistry 113 or 123 may be credited with a pass in Chemistry 115 or 125 for the purposes of the BSc degree.

**Chemistry 08.115 (6 credits) Organic, Physical and General Chemistry****Chemistry 08.125 (6 credits) Inorganic, Physical and General Chemistry**

These courses are given in the first and second half years respectively and are intended primarily for students (other than BE Int.) who do not intend to proceed in Chemistry. Students who are credited with a pass in Chemistry 115 or 125 may enrol for any Stage II chemistry course (other than Chemistry 211) only with permission of the Head of Department. Students who gain a sufficiently high standard of pass in Chemistry 115 or 125, normally B- or higher, may be credited with a pass in Chemistry 110 or 120 respectively.

**Supplementary Chemistry**

A short course in chemistry will be offered to supplement the normal first year courses for students who have been away from school for some years or who have a weak background in chemistry e.g. fifth form general science only.

The course will begin in the week before enrolment (10 a.m. Wednesday 16th February) and run for 2 days, and will continue with one lecture/tutorial per week during the first term.

No enrolment is required. Any interested student should consult the chemistry department for further details.

**Advanced Courses**

Familiarity with the relevant material in the first-year courses will be assumed.

**08.210 (6 credits) Physical and Analytical Chemistry**

(one three-hour paper and practical work)

This course includes analytical chemistry, structural and quantitative aspects of spectroscopy, chemical thermodynamics and kinetics.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* The practical course covers both analytical and physical chemistry. Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing six hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

*Prerequisite:* 08.110 or 08.113 and 08.120 or 08.123

*Restriction:* 08.211

**08.211 (3 credits) Analytical Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course is designed as a service course for those advancing in subjects other than Chemistry. Its content is similar to that of the Analytical Section of 08.210, and the teaching program will coincide with that of 08.210 for the major part of the course.

A pass in both the written paper and the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.110 or 08.113 or 08.115 or 08.120 or 08.123 or 08.125

*Restriction:* 08.210

**08.220 (6 credits) Inorganic, Structural and Theoretical Chemistry**

(One three-hour paper and practical work)

The course provides an introduction to chemical bonding, and to the chemistry of the solid state. Aspects of the chemistry of transition metal and main group elements are treated at greater depth. An introduction to kinetic studies of inorganic systems is also included.

*Lectures:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing 6 hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye-protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary

*Prerequisite:* 08.110 or 08.113 and 08.120 or 08.123

**08.230 (6 credits) Organic Chemistry**

(One three-hour paper and practical work)

The course is based on the prescribed text and covers the structure and reactions of carbon compounds, classified by functional groups. An introduction to the chemistry of molecules of biological importance is included.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing six hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye

protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the twritten paper and in the practical course is necessary

*Prerequisite:* 08.110 or 08.113 and 08.120 or 08.123

### **08.310 (3 credits) General Physical Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course will include chemical thermodynamics, electrochemistry and surface chemistry.

*Lectures:* One lecture per week throughout the year. One test (20%) and assignments (10%) will comprise the course work requirement of 30%.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 6 hours per week in any one quarter of the teaching year. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210

### **08.311 (3 credits) Molecular Physical Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course will include spectroscopy, rotational, vibrational and electronic spectra of molecules, statistical symmetry and thermodynamics, electric and magnetic properties of molecules.

*Lectures:* One lecture per week throughout the year. One test (20%) and assignments (10%) will comprise the coursework requirement of 30%.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 6 hours per week in any one quarter of the teaching year. No student will enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210

### **08.320 (3 credits) Inorganic Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course will cover aspects of organo-metallic chemistry, bio-inorganic chemistry and inorganic kinetics.

*Lectures:* Students will attend a total of 23 lectures during the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary

*Prerequisite:* 08.220

### **08.321 (3 credits) Physical-Inorganic Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course includes aspects of Inorganic kinetics, quantum chemistry, and co-ordination chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend a total of 23 lectures during the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.220

### **08.331 (3 credits) Advanced Organic Chemistry**

#### **(a) Physical Organic and Mechanistic**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

This course will cover aspects of the investigation of organic reactions including physical-organic chemistry and a more detailed examination of organic reaction classes.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures per week during the first half of the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. This will normally be done over a six-week period during the first half of the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.230

### **08.330 (3 credits) Advanced Organic Chemistry**

#### **(b) Reactions and Synthesis**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

This is a course in which the principles of organic chemistry are applied to organic synthesis. Bond forming reactions and functional group modification are covered, together with illustrations of specific syntheses of the laboratory and industrial type.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures per week during the second half of the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. This will normally be done over a six-week period during the second half of the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary

*Prerequisite:* 08.230

*Corequisite:* 08.331

**08.340 (3 credits) Structural Methods in Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

This course deals with physical methods of determining chemical structures. Background theory is described for mass spectrometry, nuclear magnetic resonance, infrared and Raman spectroscopy, and X-ray structural analysis. Practical applications in inorganic, organic and organometallic chemistry are included. The course will consist of 32 lectures and 20 hours to be devoted to practical work and laboratory assignments. One test will be held outside lecture hours. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary

*Prerequisite:* 08.210

*Corequisites:* 08.220 and 08.230

**08.350 (2 credits) Elementary Radiochemistry**

**08.351 (2 credits) Advanced Radiochemistry**

For detailed prescriptions for 08.350 and 08.351, see Regulations for Certificates in Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry.

**08.360 (3 credits) Analytical Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course will cover instrumental methods of analysis. It will consist of 16 lectures and 48 hours laboratory work on a project in analysis. One test will be held outside lecture hours. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary

*Prerequisite:* 08.210

Entry to Chemistry 08.360 is limited to 24 students.

**08.370 (3 credits) Environmental Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course covers aspects of the chemistry of the atmosphere, natural waters, and the land surface. A section on hazards associated with chemicals and their handling is also included.

*Lectures:* Students will attend one lecture a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes, totalling 36 hours at times to be arranged. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary

*Prerequisite:* 08.210

*Restriction:* 08.270

Entry to Chemistry 08.370 is limited to 30 students

**†08.390 (3 credits) Advanced Topics in Chemistry**

**†08.391 (3 credits) Advanced Topics in Chemistry**

**Chemistry for MSc and Honours**

Candidates must select five papers from those numbered 08.410–08.450 inclusive. The assessment of a student's overall attainment in the degree will be made on the basis that each of the five papers has a weight of one, and the thesis 08.601 has a weight of four.

Students intending to read for MSc and Honours should consult the Head of the Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, regarding allocation of a thesis topic and to ensure availability of laboratory facilities. The course is normally of one year's duration, but the thesis may, with the approval of the Head of the Department, be completed during the second year. [See clause 2(d) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)]. An overall prerequisite for the course is that students have completed 08.210, 08.220 and 08.230 and 18 Stage III credits including at least 12 Stage III credits from Chemistry.

**08.410 Interfacial Chemistry and Kinetics**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will include surface chemistry, electrochemistry, kinetics and catalysis.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

**08.411 Molecular Spectroscopy and Bonding**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will cover aspects of molecular spectroscopy, resonance spectroscopy, chemical structure and bonding, including applications of symmetry and group theory to these topics.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

**08.420 Inorganic Chemistry**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will cover topics in organic-transition metal chemistry, co-ordination chemistry, and structural chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

**08.421 Physical Inorganic Chemistry**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will cover aspects of bonding, kinetics, and mechanism in inorganic chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

**08.430 General Topics in Organic Chemistry**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will cover general topics such as heterocyclic, organoelemental, and applied organic chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

**08.431 Advanced Topics in Organic Chemistry**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will cover topics such as intermediates, rearrangements, and stereochemistry at an advanced level.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

**08.450 Special Topics in Chemistry**

(One 3-hour paper)

Students must choose three topics in specialised areas of chemistry from a selection to be offered.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 10 lectures in each topic selected.

In addition to attending prescribed lectures, students will be required to prepare and discuss a number of selected topics of special interest.

---

**DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE**
**Stage I Courses****Computer Science 100 (6 credits) Introduction to Programming**

An introduction to algorithm and program design. Programming in a structured language (Pascal). This course is intended for students who may wish to advance in Computer Science.

**Computer Science 101 (6 credits) Elements of Computing**

Computer systems. Elementary programming. Applications of computers. Use of software packages. This course is intended for students who have no wish to advance in Computer Science.

**Computer Science 105 (6 credits) Introduction to Computer Science**

Stacks, lists, queues, trees, strings and other elementary data structures. Computer architecture and machine level programming. Algorithms for scientific applications.

**Stage II Courses****Computer Science 210 (4 credits) Computer Organization**

This course deals with the logical structure of digital computers and systems. Topics include: number representation and binary arithmetic; digital logic; implementation of a simplified processor; architectural aspects of conventional machines; assembly languages; hardware requirements for high-level language support; computer peripherals.

**Computer Science 220 (4 credits) Information Structures and Programming Languages**

Advanced data structures. File processing. Analysis and correctness of algorithms: searching and sorting. Language definition: interpretation and compilation.

**Computer Science 230 (4 credits) Computing Laboratory**

This course introduces techniques for developing and maintaining large programs. Extensive practical programming experience is provided.

**Computer Science 235 (4 credits) Computer Applications**

This course studies the applications of Computer Science, particularly to commercial areas. Topics will include: Commercial file processing, programming in Cobol. Office applications packages such as for word processing. Introduction to simulation.

**Computer Science 290 (4 credits) Numerical Computation**

Introduction to the numerical algorithms fundamental to scientific computer work. Interpolation and approximation, numerical differentiation and integration, solution of nonlinear equations, linear systems of equations.

**Stage III Courses****Computer Science 301 (2 credits) Topic in Computer Science (a)****Computer Science 302 (2 credits) Topic in Computer Science (b)****Computer Science 303 (4 credits) Topic in Computer Science (c)****Computer Science 304 (4 credits) Topic in Computer Science (d)**

One or more of these topics papers may be taught in any particular year. The actual contents of such courses and the requirements that must be met before departmental approval to enrol in them is given, will be announced prior to enrolment. Enrolment is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

**Computer Science 310 (4 credits) Advanced Computer Organization**

This paper continues on from Computer Science 210 in describing the organisation of modern computer systems. Topics include microprogramming, virtual storage, high-level language support, advanced machine structures, and several case studies.

**Computer Science 320 (4 credits) Advanced Information Structures**

This course deals with the storage and manipulation of data. Material includes: development of database management systems; hierarchic, network and relational data models; languages for data description, manipulation and querying; performance, reliability and security; design considerations; existing systems; advanced topics.

**Computer Science 340 (4 credits) Operating Systems**

Principles of operating systems, including handling of concurrent processes, memory management, processor management, task scheduling, file systems and protection. Comparison and evaluation of several current systems.

**Computer Science 350 (4 credits) The Theory of Computation**

Mathematical preliminaries: graphs, trees, semi-groups. Grammars. Finite state automata and regular languages. Push-down automata and context-free languages. Turing machines and computability. Complexity and correctness.

**Computer Science 390 (4 credits) Numerical Analysis**

Analysis of methods of numerical interpolation, differentiation and quadrature. Numerical methods for differential equations.

**Courses for MSc and Honours**

To satisfy the prerequisites for the MSc degree two separate requirements must be satisfied. The first of these is that the course work in Computer Science above Stage I level amounts to at least 24 credits, and the second is that the total number of credits at Stage III level be at least 24 with at least 12 in Computer Science. In special circumstances the department would consider a relaxation of either of these requirements. Students accepted as candidates for this degree select papers approved by the Head of the Computer Science Department from 07.400 to 07.499, with a total value of 16 credits.

In addition they write a thesis (07.601) or take an advanced course of study (07.605), either of which counts as 16 credits. Not all 400 level papers will be offered each year but those that are, together with their prescriptions, will be announced prior to enrolment.

A candidate must normally complete his thesis or advanced course of study not later than twenty-four months after his first enrolment for this degree.

**Computer Science 401 (2 credits) Advanced Topic in Computer Science (a)****Computer Science 402 (2 credits) Advanced Topic in Computer Science (b)****Computer Science 403 (2 credits) Advanced Topic in Computer Science (c)****Computer Science 404 (2 credits) Advanced Topic in Computer Science (d)****Computer Science 405 (2 credits) Project in Computer Science****Computer Science 406 (2 credits) Seminar in Computer Science****Computer Science 410 (2 credits) Computer Architecture****Computer Science 411 (2 credits) Topic in Computer Architecture****Computer Science 416 (2 credits) Computer Graphics****Computer Science 420 (2 credits) Database Management Systems****Computer Science 430 (2 credits) Theory of Compilers****Computer Science 431 (2 credits) Compiler Construction****Computer Science 440 (2 credits) Advanced Operating Systems****Computer Science 441 (2 credits) Topic in Operating Systems****Computer Science 450 (2 credits) Theoretical Computer Science****Computer Science 451 (2 credits) Computational Complexity****Computer Science 460 (2 credits) Artificial Intelligence****Computer Science 461 (2 credits) Computational Logic****Computer Science 490 (2 credits) Numerical Linear Algebra****Computer Science 491 (2 credits) Numerical Quadrature****Computer Science 492 (2 credits) Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations****Computer Science 493 (2 credits) Numerical Solution of Partial Differential Equations****Computer Science 494 (2 credits) Mathematical Software****Diploma in Computational Mathematics**

See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions

**DEPARTMENT OF GEOGRAPHY****Geography for BSc**

The prescriptions for Geography courses are as prescribed for Geography papers for BA.

**Geography for MSc and Honours**

[Four papers and a thesis (20.601)]

A candidate is expected to enrol for and sit the four papers in the first year, present the thesis in the year next following and submit it for examination by 1 November of that year. Papers shall be selected from 20.400 to 20.442. The prescriptions for Geography courses are as prescribed for Geography papers for MA.

**DEPARTMENT OF GEOLOGY****Stage I**

Two courses are offered.

**21.100 Fundamentals of General and Environmental Geology**

Sixty-nine hours lectures, 46 hours laboratories, 8 credits. The earth as a planet; materials and basic structure of the lithosphere, igneous activity,



metamorphism, tectonism and structural geology; general geomorphology, weathering, erosion and principles of sedimentation; introductory paleontology and stratigraphy; the geological history of New Zealand and the South-west Pacific; mineral deposits; environmental and engineering geology. The practical course will include identification of elementary rocks and minerals, examination of fossils, preparation and interpretation of simple geologic maps.

*Field Classes:* Each student will be required to attend at least two field excursions, arranged usually on weekends during term time.

*Practical Work:* One two-hour practical class must be attended each week. The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **21.150 Applications of Geological Concepts and Methods**

(corequisite; 21.100)

Twenty-three hours lectures, 54 hours laboratories, 4 credits. The history of, and scientific method in, geology, stratigraphic correlation, paleontology and paleoecology; the planetary system and elementary geophysics; igneous, metamorphic and sedimentary petrography, applied aspects of structure and tectonics. *Field Classes:* Each student will be required to attend at least two field excursions, arranged usually on weekends during term time.

*Practical Work:* One three-hour practical class must be attended each week. The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**Note:** Students terminating at Stage I Geology need only take 21.100 to acquire a sound background to all aspects of the discipline. A pass in both 21.100 and 21.150 is necessary before a student can advance to Stage II courses in Geology. Any student taking both 21.100 and 21.150 and failing in the former whilst passing the latter will receive 4 credits and will not be permitted to advance in Geology until 21.100 has been passed. Students in 1983 who have only one of 21.101, 21.102 will not be permitted to enrol in 21.100, but with the permission of the Head of Department may enrol in 21.150.

### **Stage II**

Three courses are offered. Entry to each course is limited to 36. Students who intend to enrol should make pre-enrolment application to the Registrar no later than 15 January 1983.

Attention is drawn to the inclusion in the Schedule of Science Faculty courses of Geomechanics 1, 52.231, as a Stage II course relevant to those with an interest in Engineering Geology.

#### **21.201 Introductory Tectonics**

(Prerequisites: 21.100 plus 21.150)

Fifty-eight hours lectures, 46 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Elements and mechanical principles of

structural geology. Structures and metamorphic rocks. Geological maps and their construction, regional geology, and hypotheses of global tectonics in the light of geophysics. Aspects of engineering geology.

*Field Classes:* A field camp lasting about a week will be held probably during the first vacation and other one-day excursions may be arranged throughout the year. Attendance at the field classes is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these classes which may be held anywhere in New Zealand.

*Practical Work:* The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.202 New Zealand Historical Geology**

(Prerequisites: 21.100 plus 21.150)

Fifty-eight hours lectures, 46 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Advanced treatment of the full New Zealand stratigraphic sequence, biostratigraphy, paleogeography, and geological history, with the regional geology of some smaller areas and the comparative paleontology necessary as a background to biostratigraphy.

*Field Classes:* In conjunction with course 21.201 a field camp lasting about a week will be held probably during the first vacation; other one day excursions may be arranged throughout the year. Attendance at the field classes is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these classes, which may be held anywhere in New Zealand.

*Practical Work:* The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.203 Introduction to Mineralogy and Petrology**

(Prerequisites: 21.100 plus 21.150; Corequisite: Chemistry 08.115 or 08.125)

Forty-six hours lectures, 69 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Crystal morphology. Principles of optics. Systematic and determinative mineralogy. Descriptive petrography of common rock types. Principles of phase equilibria in mineral systems.

*Field Classes:* One-day excursions may be arranged throughout the year. Attendance at these classes is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the costs involved.

*Practical Work:* The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the practical courses and the written paper is necessary. Students will be required to attend one two-

hour laboratory per week in the first and fourth quarter and two two-hour laboratories per week in the second and third quarter.

### Stage III

Entry to each course is limited to 25. Students who intend to enrol should make pre-enrolment application to the Registrar no later than 15 January, 1983; students are advised to consult members of the Geology staff about their intended course before pre-enrolment.

#### *Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping*

All students enrolling in a Stage III course in Geology (except 21.306 or 21.307) are required to attend a Field Class in Geological Mapping, and to submit a satisfactory finished map and report. The field Class required will normally be the Stage III one usually held during the May vacation; except that the Head of the Department may permit a student to attend instead the Stage II Field Class which is usually held in the May vacation. This Field Class is part of the field classes which are specified for individual Stage III courses. It may be held anywhere in New Zealand and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost.

The following seven courses are offered:

#### **21.301 Advanced Tectonics and Applied Geology**

(Prerequisites: 21.201 and 21.202)

Forty-six hours lectures, 69 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Regional Geology of selected areas with special emphasis on orogenic belts. Introduction to applied geophysics; geology and geophysics of the southwest Pacific. Advanced methods in structural geology. Elements of surveying; photogrammetry and photogeology; principles and practice in engineering geology. Slide-rule and pocket calculation techniques are used throughout this course.

*Field Classes:* Attendance at the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping is required.

*Practical Work:* The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the practical work and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.302 Sedimentology and Marine Geology**

(Prerequisites: 21.201, 21.203) for exemptions see schedule

Forty-six hours lectures, 69 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Physical, chemical and biological processes in the major environments of sedimentation; geomorphology, origin and structure of submarine physiographic provinces. Petrography of sedimentary rocks; process of modern marine sedimentation and erosion.

*Field Classes:* In addition to the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping, a total of about five days of field work will be held throughout

the year; attendance is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of trips which may be made anywhere in New Zealand.

*Practical Work:* The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the practical work and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.303 Advanced Paleontology**

(Prerequisites: 21.102, or (21.100 plus 21.150) or 39.101 plus either 06.102 or 38.102)

Forty-six hours lectures, 69 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Advanced treatment of major invertebrate groups (Foraminifera, Brachiopoda, Mollusca, Coelenterata, Echinodermata, Arthropoda) covering their morphology, origin, evolution, paleoecology and geological history. Paleocologic principles and practice, paleoecology of other groups of organisms (ichnofossils, Bryozoa, etc.)

*Field Classes:* In addition to the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping, a total of about five days of field work will be arranged throughout the year anywhere in New Zealand, attendance is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these excursions.

*Practical Work:* The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**Note:** Since the prerequisites for this course are first-year courses it is possible to take 21.303 as a second year course; students who intend to major in Geology must obtain the permission of the Head of Department to take 21.303 in their second year.

#### **21.304 Minerals and Mineral Deposits**

(Prerequisites: 21.203, Chemistry 08.123 or 08.125;

Corequisites: 21.302 and 21.305)

Sixty-nine hours lectures, 46 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Systematic mineralogy and crystal chemistry; advanced determinative mineralogy using a variety of analytical and instrumental techniques; mineral deposits in sedimentary, igneous and metamorphic environments and their genesis; elementary aspects of geochemistry.

*Field Classes:* In addition to the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping, a total of about five days will be spent in the field throughout the year. Attendance at these classes is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these excursions which may be held anywhere in New Zealand.

*Practical Work:* The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.305 Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology**

(Prerequisites: 21.203, Chemistry 08.120 or 08.123 or 08.125)

Forty-six hours lectures, 69 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Petrography, chemistry, petrogenesis and regional settings of igneous and metamorphic rocks.

*Field Classes:* In addition to the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping, a total of about five days will be spent in the field throughout the year. Attendance is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these trips which may be held anywhere in New Zealand.

*Practical Work:* The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.306 Applied Geophysics**

(Prerequisites: either 21.201, (26.120 or 26.121), (06.141 or 06.142), (31.110 or 31.113 or 31.115) and (31.120 or 31.123 or 31.125) or (21.101 or 21.100), 21.150, 31.210. *Corequisite:* 31.330)

Thirty-six hours lectures, 3 credits. A lecture course covering physical principles, equipment and techniques used in investigating the physical composition of the earth's crust and in mineral exploration. Standard numerical and graphical interpretation methods are discussed, and are used to interpret gravity, magnetic, seismic and DC-resistivity measurements to derive realistic geological gross structures and structures of mineral deposits.

**21.307 Experimental Geophysics (joint laboratory course with Physics Department).**

(Prerequisites: as for 21.306. *Corequisites:* 21.306, 31.330)

Seventy-two hours laboratories, 3 credits. This is a laboratory course associated with 21.306. Use and calibration of geophysical instrumentation, experiments to illustrate basic principles, analysis and interpretation of field data involving both Geology and Geophysics. This course is identical with course Physics 31.393 and those students who satisfy the prerequisites 31.210 and 31.290 should enrol in 31.393.

*Field Classes:* In addition to the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping, about five days of field work will be held throughout the year anywhere in New Zealand. Students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these excursions which are compulsory.

*Practical Work:* The year's practical work will be assessed for each candidate and the marks included in the marks Schedule of the University. Part of the practical work is designed to prepare the students for the interpretation of the fieldwork in the 21.307 (31.393) course.

**BSc (Hons) Part IV in Geology**

(Three papers and a research report 21.603)

The regulations which cover the BSc (Hons) course are listed elsewhere. This course in Geology is designed to enable students of high ability to complete an Honours degree in four years and thus be eligible to proceed direct to a PhD degree, and for the award of post-graduate scholarships. Students enrolled for BSc (Hons) Part IV in Geology undertake course work as for first-year MSc students and will select three of the following papers prescribed for the MSc degree (21.401-21.406 and 21.408 but not 86.100 or 86.102). In addition, they must complete a research project by the beginning of the second half of the academic year, and the marks allotted for the project report count as equivalent to one paper. Admission to the Honours School may be granted at the end of either the second or third year after first enrolment in the Geology Department. Students who wish to be considered for enrolment should consult the Head of Department prior to enrolment or at any time during the preceding year. Students who have been admitted to Part IV should consult the Geology staff about textbooks and particularly about fourth-year research projects at the end of their Stage III year.

Students are reminded of the Foreign Language Reading requirement for admission to the degree of BSc (Hons). Candidates must show proficiency in a language approved by the Head of Department.

**MSc and Honours in Geology**

[Three papers and a Thesis (21.601)]

The MSc is normally a full-time two-year degree, following the completion of a BSc, and consists of three written papers to be selected from 21.401-21.406 and 21.408 and either 86.100 or 86.102 together with a thesis which, for examination assessment, counts as two written papers. Students are reminded of the Foreign Language Reading requirement for admission to the degree of MSc or MSc (Hons); proficiency must be shown in a language approved by the Head of Department.

**Note:** Interested students should also refer to School of Engineering courses in Geomechanics.

**21.401 Tectonics and Structural Geology**

Analysis of complex structural sequences in metamorphic and non-metamorphic rocks. Principles of strain analysis and rock mechanics. Selected topics in regional geology as related to tectonic theory.

**21.402 Sediments and Sedimentary Processes**

Sedimentary processes and products in both ancient and modern settings. Identification and interpretation of sedimentary environments; the provenance and subsequent diagenetic history of terrigenous and carbonate sediments.

**21.403 Stratigraphy and Paleontology**

Principles and practice in stratigraphy and correlation, the fossil record and its interpretation, the historical geology of New Zealand.

**21.404 Mineralogy and Geochemistry**

The crystal chemistry of mineral systems, the abundance and distribution of the elements in specific geological environments, and selected mineral groups and their paragenesis.

**21.405 Genesis of Igneous and Metamorphic rocks**

Studies in the petrology of igneous and metamorphic rocks covering geological settings, PT environments, petrochemistry and mineral assemblages with emphasis on recent developments in the theoretical, experimental and observational fields.

**21.406 Advanced Applied Geophysics**

The theory and practice of the interpretation of geophysical measurements. The topics covered are presented in two groups in alternate years: (i) (odd years) potential field theory, quantitative interpretation of gravitational and magnetic anomalies (two- and three-dimensional bodies); (ii) (even years) DC and AC resistivity measurements, seismic wave transmission, refraction and reflection studies. Practical work: The year's practical work will be assessed by means of exercises to be completed during the lecture course which will be held during the first half of the year, and two essays and discussion of a seminar topic in the second half.

**Note:** This course is the same as Physics 433 and is given jointly by the Geology and Physics Department. Previous enrolment in Physics 330, Geology 306 and Geology 307 is desirable.

**21.408 Advanced Engineering Geology**

Application of geology to engineering practice with emphasis on the geological, physical and structural variants in rockmasses and soilmasses. Aspects of ground investigation methods, aggregates, relevant clay mineralogy, groundwater, sediments and soils, excavation methods, stability of slopes, foundation requirements and relationship to soil mechanics and rock mechanics.

**86.100 Geothermal Systems and Technology**

Scope of geothermal projects. Geothermal systems. Introduction to geothermal exploration and technology. Reservoir engineering. Chemistry of thermal fluids: Economics, environmental and legal aspects. Case studies.

**Note:** This course includes two compulsory field trips, normally held in late February to Wairakei and in May to Ngawha, each of about five days duration, but timing, location and duration may be altered from year to year.

**86.102 Geothermal Exploration Technology**

Geology of thermal areas. Hydrothermal alteration of reservoir rocks. Mapping and analyses of geothermal discharges. Geochemistry of thermal fluids. Geophysical exploration of prospects. Drillhole logging. Instrumentation.

**Note:** (a) Students seeking enrolment in this course must have passed 21.304 or 21.305 or 21.306; in addition, a pass in either 08.210 or 08.220 is desirable.

(b) This course includes a compulsory field trip, normally held in Mid-Term Break to Wairakei and Wellington and of five days duration, but timing, location and duration may be altered from year to year.

**PhD in Geology**

(Thesis (21.602) and an oral examination)

Facilities are available for research by PhD candidates in many branches of Geology: geochemistry, petrology, mineralogy, structural geology, paleontology and stratigraphy, sedimentology, marine geology, geophysics and engineering geology. Students intending to work for this degree should have reached a satisfactory level of attainment in BSc (Hons) or MSc. Students working for this degree who have not already shown proficiency in a foreign language will be required to pass the Foreign Language Reading Examination in a language approved by the Head of Department.

**LEIGH LABORATORY**

The Leigh Laboratory is situated on the east coast, some seventy kilometres north of Auckland, at Goat Island Bay, Leigh. It provides research and some advanced course space, facilities such as running seawater, and living accommodation for twenty workers. Present work is centred on the ecology, physiology and systematics of shore and shallow water organisms, and geology and marine geophysics, but the laboratory is open to workers in any branch of marine research.

Excellent collecting grounds are available in the district, although the area in the immediate vicinity of the laboratory is designated a marine reserve, in which certain limitations are imposed. Within ten kilometres of the laboratory there are examples of almost every kind of shore from mangrove swamps and quiet harbours to exposed rocky shores and surf beaches. A full climate station is maintained and climatic variables in the intertidal region are regularly monitored. The laboratory owns various small boats which are available for nearshore collecting, scuba work and for plankton sampling. A 10m work boat with winch and accommodation for 6 is available for offshore work. Certain scuba equipment and divers' air compressor are available and there are full facilities for quantitative phytoplankton work, seawater chemistry, and respiratory and photosynthetic measurements using electrodes or manometry. Tank rooms with constantly running seawater can be used for the maintenance of animals and seaweeds.

The Laboratory is managed by a committee composed of the Heads of such Departments as Zoology, Botany and Physics. Students who wish to work at the Laboratory must make arrangements with the Director through their supervisors and any other

Director through their supervisors and any other bookings can be made in advance by contacting the Director, Dr W. J. Ballantine, R.D., Leigh (Telephone, Warkworth 26-111). Facilities and accommodation are available to students proceeding to the BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc, or PhD degrees as well as staff and visiting scientists.

## DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

### Stage I Courses

**Maths 120 (6 credits) 26.120 Principles of Algebra**

**Maths 121 (6 credits) 26.121 Introductory Algebra**

**Maths 122 (6 credits) 26.122 Finite Mathematics**

These are alternative courses and only one of them may be selected by any student. Students intending to advance in Mathematics or Engineering will take Maths 120 or 121 which are to be considered as equivalent for prerequisite purposes. Students with a strong entrance background should enrol in Maths 120 and students with a weak background in Maths 121. However, well prepared students are encouraged to enrol in Maths 221. Maths 122 is appropriate for commerce and law students and for arts and social science students not intending to major in Mathematics. However, as this is a first course in Mathematics, better prepared students are encouraged to take Maths 120 or 121 instead.

Syllabus for Maths 120 and 121: integers and induction; complex numbers; linear equations and matrices; vectors and geometry of 2 and 3 dimensions; polynomials; brief introduction to abstract algebra. Syllabus for Maths 122: a selection of topics from logic, sets, principles of counting, vectors and matrices, linear equations, probability and Markov chains, linear programming, the theory of games, number systems.

**Maths 140 (6 credits) 26.140 Principles of Calculus**

**Maths 141 (6 credits) 26.141 Introductory Calculus**

**Maths 142 (6 credits) 26.142 Concepts of Calculus**

These are alternative courses and only one of them may be selected by any student. Students intending to advance in Mathematics or Engineering will take Maths 140 or 141 which are to be considered as equivalent for prerequisite purposes. Students with a strong entrance background should enrol in Maths 140 and students with a weak background in Maths 141. However, well prepared students are encouraged to enrol in Maths 241. Maths 142 is appropriate for commerce and law students and for arts and social

science students not intending to major in Mathematics.

Limits, continuity; derivatives and integrals; differential calculus of polynomials and rational functions; antiderivatives and integrals of polynomials; logarithmic, exponential and circular functions; calculus in Euclidean geometry; applications.

**Maths 170 (6 credits) 26.170 Principles of Mechanics**

Elementary vector algebra; statics of a particle and rigid body; centres of mass and moments of inertia; dynamics of a single particle including work, energy, momentum, simple harmonic motion, motion in a circle and projectiles; introduction to dynamics of a system of particles and of a rigid body.

**Maths 180 (6 credits) 26.180 Principles of Statistics**

Axioms of probability, random variables, probability distributions, expected values, discrete bivariate distributions, sampling distributions, small and large sample inference, regression.

**Maths 181 (6 credits) 26.181 Introduction to Probability and Statistics**

The syllabus is similar to that of 26.180 but with less emphasis on mathematical proofs and more emphasis on statistical techniques and their applications. Further topics such as contingency tables, goodness of fit tests will be included. Students intending to advance in statistics to Stage III will normally take 26.180. Other students who do not have a good background of pure mathematics and statistics at the sixth or seventh form level are advised to take 26.181. If in doubt, please consult the lecturer in charge of the course. A special version of 26.181 called 26.181C (for departmental purposes only), is available for commerce students. Students who pass 26.181 will require permission from the Head of the Department before they may enrol in 26.280.

### Stage II Courses

In accordance with regulation 14 of the BSc regulations and regulation 15 of the BA regulations, the Head of Department may waive the prerequisites listed in the schedule in particular cases. This applies particularly to students who, instead of having passed the formal prerequisite, have passed a related paper with a good grade. The papers to which this applies are 122 instead of 120 or 121, 142 instead of 140 or 141 and 181 instead of 180.

**Maths 210 (6 credits) 26.210 Principles of Mathematics**

The course consists of a wide selection of topics from various branches of Mathematics. Further information about the course may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**Maths 220 (6 credits) 26.220 Linear Algebra**

Matrices, vector spaces, linear mappings, determinants, eigenvalues and eigenvectors, non-singular reduction of quadratic forms, Sylvester's law of inertia, inner products, orthogonal reduction of real quadratic forms.

**Maths 221 (8 credits) 26.221 Algebra (accelerated course)**

A selection of topics from Maths 120 and Maths 220 taught as a unified course. Well prepared students are encouraged to seek permission to enrol in this course rather than in Maths 120.

**Maths 240 (4 credits) 26.240 Calculus**

Algebra and geometry of vectors in three dimensional space; calculus of vector valued functions, curves, functions of several variables, partial derivatives, chain rule, maxima and minima, div, grad and curl; multiple integrals; least upper bounds; sequences and series, introduction to power series.

**Maths 241 (8 credits) 26.241 Calculus and Analysis (accelerated course)**

A selection of topics from Maths 140 and Maths 240 taught as a unified course. Well prepared students are encouraged to seek permission to enrol in this course rather than in Maths 140.

**Maths 260 (4 credits) 26.260 Differential Equations**

Methods for the solution of ordinary differential equations, including variation of parameters, Laplace transform methods, and power series solutions; elementary Fourier series and boundary value problems.

**Maths 280 (4 credits) 26.280 Statistical Theory**

Probability spaces, distribution theory of one or more variables, probability and moment generating functions, sampling theory for the normal distribution, estimation, hypothesis testing, linear models.

**Maths 281 (4 credits) 26.281 Statistical Methods**

Basic statistical methods, introduction to analysis of variance and experimental design, goodness of fit, contingency tables, non-parametric methods, regression, sample survey methods.

**Stage III Courses**

In accordance with regulation 14 of the BSc regulations and regulation 15 of the BA regulations, the Head of Department may waive the prerequisites listed in the schedule in particular cases.

**\*Maths 310 (4 credits) 26.310 Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (a)**

Enrolment in this paper requires permission from the Head of the Department. If this paper is offered, further information may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**†Maths 311 (2 credits) 26.311 Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (b)**

Enrolment in this paper requires permission from the Head of the Department. If this paper is offered, further information may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**Maths 315 (4 credits) 26.315 Formal Logic**

Formal systems, proof-theoretic and model-theoretic approaches to classical and model sentential logic, introduction to first-order logic.

**Maths 320 (4 credits) 26.320 Algebraic Structures****Maths 321 (4 credits) 26.321 Introduction to Abstract Algebra**

Groups, rings, unique factorisation domains, fields. The object of these courses is to give a basic introduction to modern algebra, exclusive of linear algebra. They are alternative courses, and only one of them may be selected by any student. Both courses are acceptable and suitable as a prerequisite for Maths 420, and the Mathematics and Statistics Department reserves the right to direct which of these courses a particular student shall take.

**Maths 330 (2 credits) 26.330 Introductory Analysis**

Elements of set theory, the real number system, sequences and series of functions, uniform convergence, Riemann integration.

**Maths 331 (4 credits) 26.331 Principles of Analysis (accelerated course)**

A selection of topics from 26.330 and 26.340 taught as a unified course. This course follows on from 26.241 and enrolment requires permission from the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**Maths 335 (2 credits) 26.335 Metric and Normed Spaces**

Metric and normed linear spaces with particular reference to  $n$ -dimensional Euclidean space and  $C(a,b)$ , compactness, connectedness, completeness and their applications.

**Maths 340 (4 credits) 26.340 Multivariable Calculus**

Differential and integral calculus of vector-valued functions of several variables and applications.

**Maths 345 (2 credits) 26.345 Techniques of Complex Variables**

Analytic functions, power series, calculation of integrals by residues.

**Maths 350 (4 credits) 26.350 Topics in Mathematics**

A selection of topics chosen from topology or differential geometry. Enrolment in this paper requires permission from the Head of Department.

**\*Maths 355 (4 credits) 26.355 Geometry**

A selection of topics chosen from axiom systems, affine geometry, Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, projective geometry, inversive geometry, convexity.

**Maths 360 (4 credits) 26.360 Applied Analysis**

Differential equations, the special functions of applied mathematics, orthogonal polynomials, Fourier series, Boundary value problems.

**\*Maths 362 (4 credits) 26.362 Special topics in applied mathematics**

Enrolment in this course requires permission from the Head of the Department. If this paper is offered, further information may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**Maths 370 (4 credits) 26.370 Mechanics**

General dynamical principles, theory of rotating axes, motion under central forces, motion of a rigid body, Lagrange's equations of motion, Hamiltonian theory, special theory of relativity.

**Maths 371 (4 credits) 26.371 Field Theory**

An introduction to electromagnetism and fluid dynamics.

**Maths 380 (4 credits) 26.380 Probability**

Introduction to stochastic processes, generating functions, recurrent event theory. Markov chains including applications to random walks and discrete branching processes. Poisson processes, birth and death processes including applications to queueing processes, miscellaneous topics.

**Maths 381 (4 credit.) 26.381 Statistical Analysis**

Expectation and covariance operators for random vectors, quadratic forms, multivariate normal distribution, detailed study of multiple linear regression, analysis of variance and covariance.

**Maths 391 (4 credits) 26.391 Optimisation in Operations Research**

Linear programming; Simplex and revised Simplex methods; duality, and the dual Simplex method; post optimal analysis; decomposition and column generation; integer programming; cutting planes and branch and bound; dynamic programming; network analysis, transportation and flow problems.

**Maths 395 (4 credits) 26.395 Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research**

Digital simulation techniques and applications. Monte-Carlo methods and related statistical analysis; introduction to deterministic and stochastic models in such areas as queueing theory, inventory control, reliability, Markov decision processes, risk analysis.

**Courses for MA, MSc and Honours**

The Prerequisites for the MA and MSc degrees are: Mathematics 220 or 221, 240 or 241, at least one of 260, 280, 281, plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Mathematics and Statistics Department. Normally at least 16 of these

credits shall be from courses in Mathematics and Computer Science, but 12 credits in Mathematics and Computer Science may be approved in special cases.

The student shall select papers, approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics Department, from 26.400 to 26.499 and 07.490 to 07.499 with a total credit value of 20 credits, together with a thesis (26.601) or an advanced course of study (26.605), which will count as 16 credits. Up to four of the 20 credits may be replaced by four stage three credits from Mathematics and Computer Science papers not already taken for any other Degree or Diploma.

A candidate who has not passed Mathematics 320 or 321, 330 or 331 and 340 will normally be required to pass these papers or their equivalents during their first Masters year. Prospective Masters students should consult the Administrative Secretary of the Mathematics and Statistics Department for further details, preferably when they enrol for their 300 level papers.

Not all 400 level papers listed will be offered each year. The list of papers to be offered and their prescriptions will be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. The number of credits for each paper is given after the title.

A candidate must normally complete his thesis or advanced course of study not later than twenty four months after his first enrolment for this degree.

**26.401 Topic in Pure Mathematics A (2)**

**26.402 Topic in Pure Mathematics B (2)**

**26.403 Special Topic in Pure Mathematics (4)**

**26.404 Advanced Topic in Pure Mathematics (4)**

**26.410 Introduction to Mathematical Logic (2)**

**26.411 Topic in Mathematical Logic (2)**

**26.412 Recursive Functions (2)**

**26.413 Set Theory (2)**

**26.414 Mechanical Theorem Proving (2)**

**26.415 Automata Theory (2)**

**26.416 Combinatorics (2)**

**26.417 Graph Theory (2)**

**26.418 Lattice Theory (2)**

**26.419 Universal Algebra (2)**

**26.420 Field Theory and Galois Theory (2)**

**26.421 Rings, Modules and Categories (2)**

**26.422 Number Theory (2)**

**26.423 Commutative Algebra (2)**

**26.424 Algebraic Geometry (2)**

**26.425 Group Theory (2)**

**26.426 Applied Linear Algebra (2)**

**26.427 Topic in Algebra (2)**

**26.428 Special Topic in Algebra (4)**

**26.429 Advanced Topic in Algebra (4)**

**26.430 Measure and Integration A (2)**

**26.431 Measure and Integration B (2)**

- 26.432 Functional Analysis (2)
- 26.433 Banach Algebras (2)
- 26.434 Applied Functional Analysis (2)
- 26.435 Lie Groups and Lie Algebras (2)
- 26.436 Analysis on Manifolds (2)
- 26.437 Operator Theory (2)
- 26.438 Approximation Theory (2)
- 26.439 Topological Vector Spaces (2)
- 26.440 Complex Analysis A (2)
- 26.441 Complex Analysis B (2)
- 26.442 Applied Complex Analysis (2)
- 26.443 Riemann surfaces (2)
- 26.444 Summability Methods (2)
- 26.445 Quasiconformal Analysis (2)
- 26.446 Topics in Analysis A (2)
- 26.447 Topics in Analysis B (2)
- 26.448 Special Topics in Analysis (4)
- 26.449 Advanced Topics in Analysis (4)
- 26.450 Topology (2)
- 26.451 Algebraic Topology (2)
- 26.452 Differential Topology (2)
- 26.453 Uniform Spaces (2)
- 26.454 Differential Geometry (2)
- 26.455 Linear Geometry (2)
- 26.456 Topics in Geometry (2)
- 26.457 Topics in Topology (2)
- 26.458 Special Topics in Geometry or Topology (4)
- 26.459 Advanced Topics in Geometry or Topology (4)
- 26.460 Ordinary Differential Equations A (2)
- 26.461 Ordinary Differential Equations B (2)
- 26.462 Partial Differential Equations A (2)
- 26.463 Partial Differential Equations B (2)
- 26.464 Calculus of Variations (2)
- 26.465 Fourier Analysis (2)
- 26.466 Global Analysis (2)
- 26.467 Asymptotic methods (2)
- 26.468 Topics in Applied Mathematics (2)
- 26.469 Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (4)
- 26.470 Topics in Mechanics A (2)
- 26.471 Topics in Mechanics B (2)
- 26.472 Fluid Mechanics (4)
- 26.473 Quantum mechanics (4)
- 26.474 Special Topic in Mechanics (4)
- 26.475 Advanced Topic in Mechanics (4)
- 26.480 Probability Theory A (2)
- 26.481 Probability Theory B (2)
- 26.482 Experimental Design (2)
- 26.483 Multivariate Analysis (2)
- 26.484 Stochastic Processes A (2)
- 26.485 Stochastic Processes B (2)
- 26.486 Topic in Probability and Statistics A (2)
- 26.487 Topic in Probability and Statistics B (2)
- 26.488 Statistical Methods (4)
- 26.489 Data Analysis (4)
- 26.490 Statistical Consulting (2)

The number of credits for each paper is given in brackets.

### **BSc (Honours) in Mathematics**

Prerequisites for Part IV of the BSc(Hons) degree are the same as for an MA or MSc degree in Mathematics. Normally only students of proven ability (B+ or above) may be considered for entry at either Part III or Part IV level.

The courses available at Part III level are such as will allow a candidate to satisfy the prerequisites for Part IV. The requirements for Part IV are: a selection of papers, approved by the Head of the Mathematics and Statistics Department, from 26.400 to 26.499 and Computer Science 07.490 to 07.499 with a total credit value of 20 credits. The comments above concerning 320 or 321 etc with regard to the first year of the Masters degree also apply to Part IV of the BSc(Hons).

Students who obtain the BSc(Hons) will be permitted to complete the MSc by presenting a thesis or completing an advanced course of study as approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

### **Diploma in Mathematical Education**

See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions

### **Diploma in Statistics**

See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions

---

## **DEPARTMENT OF PATHOLOGY**

### **Pathology for MSc and Honours**

(Two papers and a Thesis (68.621)

**68.401, 68.402**

The study of selected fields of Pathology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the major feature of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

---

## **DEPARTMENT OF PHILOSOPHY**

### **Stage II Course**

**Philosophy 29.203 (5 credits) Philosophy of Science**

This course is available for second and third year BSc students. It provides an introduction to the logic, methodology, ontology and epistemology of science, and other problem areas where philosophy intersects with foundational issues in special sciences. No prior acquaintance with philosophy will be presupposed. However, students will be required to master some elementary logic. Full details of the course, including texts, can be found in the brochure *Department of Philosophy: Course Outlines* available from the Departmental Secretary.



## DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS

### Stage I courses

#### Physics 104 (2 credits) Basic Electronics for Instrumentation

This course is given in even numbered years. It is intended for nonphysicists who need to use and understand electronic instrumentation. It aims to provide a basic understanding of electronic circuits and electronic instruments commonly used for scientific purposes.

The topics covered include:

- (1) the calculation, measurement and observation of direct, alternating and transient electrical signals;
- (2) a discussion of the factors which cause measurement and observational errors;
- (3) the characteristics of some active circuit devices, including transducers;
- (4) the operating principles and uses of power supplies, amplifiers and oscilloscopes;
- (5) simple logic circuits and their use in the control of experimental parameters.

The course will consist of 12 1-hour lectures and 12 2-hour laboratory periods. The laboratory work is an integral part of the course in which a substantial part of the instruction will take place.

#### Physics 105 Acoustics (Paper 28.113 for BMus)

This course is provided as an option for the degree of Bachelor of Music only and is examined as paper 28.113. Topics covered include the fundamental principles of oscillations and wave propagation; stationary waves; resonance; loudness; pitch; tone quality; intervals and scales; the principles of operation of stringed, woodwind, brass and other instruments; the electronic production and reproduction of sound; and the acoustics of rooms.

#### Physics 110, 113, 120, 123

The course combinations (110, 120) or (113, 123) are intended for students who wish to advance in the physical sciences, engineering or mathematics. These two combinations have the majority of the syllabus and the majority of the final examination in common and are equivalent as prerequisites for advancing Physics or Engineering.

Students will be streamed so that those with a strong entrance background (normally A Bursary or better) will take Physics 110 and 120. These courses omit those topics which are adequately covered in Bursary Physics and replaces them with alternative topics to give a broader coverage at the Stage I level.

Students with B Bursary or less background will be streamed to take Physics 113 and 123 as the regular Stage I Physics course.

Students who do not attain the standard required for a pass in Physics 110/113 or 120/123 may be credited with a pass in Physics 115 or 125 respectively.

#### Physics 110 (6 credits)

Lectures for four hours per week and one three hour

laboratory session per week in the first half year. The course is based on the topics mechanics, heat, wave-motion, sound and light. Tutorial assistance is available.

#### Physics 113 (6 credits)

Lectures for four hours per week and one three hour laboratory session per week in the first half year. The course is based on the topics mechanics, heat, wave-motion, sound and light. Tutorial assistance is available.

#### Physics 120 (6 credits)

Lectures for four hours per week and one three hour laboratory session per week in the second half year. The course is based on the topics electricity, relativity and modern physics. Tutorial assistance is available.

#### Physics 123 (6 credits)

Lectures for four hours per week and one three hour laboratory session per week in the second half year. The course is based on the topics electricity, relativity and modern physics. Tutorial assistance is available.

#### Physics 115 and 125

These courses are given in the first and second half-years respectively and are intended primarily for students who intend to proceed to courses in medicine (Otago), dentistry, agriculture, architecture, home science, surveying, pharmacy and optometry. They are also recommended for students taking a BA degree or a BSc degree in natural science subjects. Mathematics and physics up to University Entrance standard will be assumed.

Students who are credited with a pass in Physics 115 or 125 may enrol for Physics 200 but are not eligible to enrol for any other advanced courses in Physics. Students with good results in Physics 115 and 125 and the Mathematics prerequisites may apply to the Head of the Department for permission to advance to Physics 210-290.

#### Physics 115 (6 credits)

Lectures for four hours per week selected from the following topics: mechanics, heat, wave-motion, sound and light. Tutorial assistance is available.

*Laboratory Course:* Three hours of practical work each week in conjunction with lecture material.

#### Physics 125 (6 credits)

Lectures for four hours per week selected from the following topics: electricity, relativity, and modern physics. Tutorial assistance is available.

*Laboratory Course:* Three hours of practical work each week in conjunction with the lecture material.

## Stage II Lecture Courses

**Note:** There is no laboratory requirement for any of the advanced lecture courses in Physics, but not more than TWO of the courses Physics 210-250 may be credited unless the laboratory course Physics 290 is also credited.

**Direct Entry**

Students who have gained an Entrance Scholarship with outstanding marks in both Physics and Mathematics may be granted direct entry to Stage II courses in Physics. Enquiries should be first made to the Head of Department.

**Physics 200 (4 credits) Topics in Contemporary and Applied Physics**

This course provides an introduction to a variety of topics in physics of contemporary interest, such as space physics, astrophysics, geophysics and biophysics. It also discusses the basic physics involved in a variety of general topics such as music, photography and microscopy. The course is descriptive in nature and makes extensive use of demonstrations, slides, films and closed circuit TV. One two-hour lecture per week is devoted to each topic, with a different lecturer each week. The prerequisite for Physics 200 is one of the courses Physics 110–125 or Physico-chemistry for Human Biology. This course is examined by continuous assessment.

*Lectures:* Two hours per week throughout the year.

**Physics 201 (2 credits) Astrophysics**

This is an introductory course covering such topics as stellar structure and evolution, galaxies and cosmological theories.

The prerequisites for Physics 201 are any one of Physics 110, 113 or 115, together with any one of Physics 120, 123 or 125.

**Physics 210–250**

The prerequisites for each of these courses are Physics 110 and 120, and Mathematics 120 and 140. Students are recommended to enrol concurrently in Mathematics 240 and 260. Each course comprises two hours of lectures each week during one half-year. Tutorial assistance may be provided by arrangement with the lecturer.

Lists of text books or books for recommended reading are available from the Departmental Office by 1 December of the year prior to enrolment.

**Physics 210 (2 credits) Oscillations and Waves**

The aim of this course is to examine the general properties of waves and to consider the usefulness of wave equations by means of specific examples. Undamped, damped and forced vibrations are treated for electrical and mechanical systems. The course emphasises the usefulness of Fourier transforms in wave analysis, and gives close attention to their application in a qualitative understanding of Fraunhofer diffraction.

**Physics 220 (2 credits) Electromagnetism and Optics**

The electromagnetism part of this course covers the basic theory of the commonly observed electromagnetic phenomena and shows that they lead to Maxwell's equations (integral form). The optics part

deals with optical sources, coherence, diffraction, holography, interferometers and polarisation.

**Physics 240 (2 credits) Electronic Physics**

The aim of this course is to provide students with a fundamental understanding of the basic electronic circuits which are useful in physics instrumentation. The lectures will cover (i) d-c, a-c and transient circuit theory, (ii) semiconductor device physics, (iii) circuit applications of semiconductor devices, and (iv) principles of electronic design and instrumentation.

**Note:** Students are recommended to enrol concurrently in the laboratory course Physics 290; however, those students specialising in Computer Studies who are taking Physics 240 solely as a prerequisite to Physics 343 are recommended to enrol for Physics 290 concurrently with Physics 343, unless they intend to enrol for Physics 390, 391 and 392.

**Physics 250 (2 credits) Quantum Physics**

The aim of this course is to introduce students to the concepts and methods of quantum theory. The formal structure of the theory will not be stressed. The course will cover the Schrodinger equation, and its application to simple quantum systems.

**Stage II Laboratory Course****Physics 290 (6 credits) Experimental Physics**

This is a laboratory course which supplements the lectures at Stage II level. It occupies two three-hour periods each week throughout the year, and is examined on the basis of continuous assessment. The course is preceded by an introductory lecture and concludes with a short examination (oral or written) to determine minor adjustments to student grades. Physics 290 is prerequisite to the laboratory course at Stage III level, and must be passed before more than two of the courses Physics 210–250 may be credited. The prerequisites for Physics 290 are Physics 110 and 120, Mathematics 120 and 140. The corequisites are TWO of the courses Physics 201–250.

**Note:** Students specialising in Computer Studies should refer to the note under Physics 240.

**Stage III Lecture Courses**

**Note:** There is no laboratory requirement for any of the advanced lecture courses in Physics, but not more than THREE of the courses Physics 312–385 may be credited unless at least ONE of the laboratory courses Physics 390–392 is also credited.

**Physics 312–385**

The prerequisites for these papers are listed in the BSc Schedule. Students are recommended to enrol concurrently in Mathematics at Stage III level, the papers 26.340, 26.345 and 26.360 being the most relevant. Some papers in Computer Science such as 07.100, 07.105, 07.210 and 07.340 are also likely to be of benefit to Physics students.

Students should note the prerequisite requirement for MSc in physics and the arrangements concerning MSc theses.

Each course comprises two hours of lectures for one half-year. Tutorial assistance may be provided by arrangement.

List of text books or books for recommended reading are available from the Departmental Office by 1 December of year prior to enrolment.

### **Physics 312 (2 credits) Classical Mechanics**

This course aims to give a brief review of the non-relativistic mechanics of systems of particles, and to develop the principles of generalised classical mechanics as they are used in physics. It will deal with the following topics: momentum, energy, angular momentum of single particles, and particle systems, generalised co-ordinates, constraints, Lagrange's equations, two-body problem, central forces and orbits, rigid body motion, Hamilton's principle, conservation theorems and symmetries, Hamilton's equations, canonical transformations, Poisson brackets. Emphasis is also laid on the parallels between the classical and quantum theories of mechanics.

### **Physics 313 (2 credits) Thermodynamics and Statistical Mechanics**

Equilibrium statistical mechanics of physical systems as the basis for thermodynamics. Entropy, temperature, Boltzmann distribution and partition function. Application to the ideal gas in quantum and classical regimes. Radiation. Fluctuations. Refrigerators and heat engines. Low temperatures.

### **Physics 320 (2 credits) Electromagnetism and Electromagnetic Waves**

The course extends the electromagnetism of Physics 220 to the general situation, carrying on through Maxwell's equations to the propagation and properties of EM waves. The lectures are based on the following topics: electrostatics in terms of Laplace's equation, including its solution in terms of Legendre polynomials and cylindrical harmonics; dielectrics; magnetic fields and currents; Maxwell's equations; Liénard Wiechert potentials. Electromagnetic wave propagation, wave guides; radiation from antennas, reflection, refraction and scattering of electromagnetic waves. Introduction of physics of plasmas as relating to electromagnetic waves.

### **Physics 330 (2 credits) Terrestrial Physics**

A general introduction to the physics of the solid Earth, including aspects of the gravitational field, the rotation and figure of the Earth, seismology and the internal structure of the Earth, the Earth's internal heat, the geomagnetic field, paleomagnetism and geodynamics.

**Note:** Physics 330 is a corequisite to Geology 306 (Applied Geophysics) and Geology 307/Physics 393 (Experimental Geophysics). It has associated with it some particular experiments in applied geophysics which are also available to any student enrolled for the laboratory courses Physics 391 or 392.

### **†Physics 331 (2 credits) Marine Physics**

A general introduction to ocean physics including a review of the physical properties of ocean water, the

application of fluid mechanics to dynamic phenomena in the ocean and atmosphere, such as geostrophic, gradient, inertial flow, wind driven circulation, gravity waves, the tides and underwater acoustics.

### **Physics 332 (2 credits) Atmospheric Physics**

A general introduction to physical processes involved in the lower atmosphere, including the origin, composition and structure of the atmosphere; the radiation balance; optical phenomena; atmospheric electricity; cloud physics; the thermodynamics and circulation of the atmosphere.

**Note:** Courses Physics 330, 331, 332, may be taken independently but the three taken together are designed to provide an overall view of the physics of the Earth.

### **Physics 341 (2 credits) Circuit Electrophysics**

This course is concerned with steady-state a-c circuit theory applied to both passive and active circuit analysis. Topics discussed include complex vector loci, Nyquist and Bode diagrams, matrix representation, s-plane concepts and operational amplifiers. Emphasis is placed on circuits suitable for instrumentation and data acquisition wherever possible. In common with Physics 343 this course is of interest to students intending to undertake experimental work although it is rather more theoretically biased.

**Note:** Students in this course will benefit substantially by also enrolling in Physics 390, 391 or 392.

### **Physics 342 (2 credits) Semiconductor Devices**

This course is concerned with understanding the electrical behaviour of semiconductor devices. It contains material relating to the physics of semiconductor junctions, device fabrication and integration, electrical characteristics of discrete and integrated devices, circuit models and device applications.

Although the course is general in nature, and is designed to follow Physics 240, students will benefit from concurrent enrolment in Physics 341.

**Note:** Students in this course are encouraged to enrol concurrently in Physics 390, 391 or 392.

### **Physics 343 (2 credits) Pulse and Digital Electronics**

This course provides a systematic introduction to digital circuits and concepts that are basic to contemporary instrumentation and computation. The aim is to lead students from simple switching concepts in linear passive circuits via non-linear discrete semiconductor devices to integrated circuits and basic instrumentation systems. The course is of interest to all students intending to undertake experimental work.

**Note:** Students in this course will benefit substantially by also enrolling in Physics 290, 390, 391 or 392.

### **Physics 350 (2 credits) Quantum Mechanics and Atomic Physics**

The course is designed to give an understanding of the observed behaviour of atomic systems in terms of

the quantum theory. The following topics are discussed: (a) the one-dimensional Schrodinger equation and its application to linear molecules; (b) the quantisation of orbital angular momentum and the extension of Schrodinger's equation to three dimensions; (c) perturbation theory and an introduction to matrix mechanics; (d) the spectra of hydrogen, hydrogen-like ions, alkali-like spectra and exotic atoms and their interpretation; (e) the spectra of helium, helium-like ions and the alkaline earth elements and their interpretation.

### **Physics 352 (2 credits) Molecular and Solid-State Physics**

The molecular physics section of the course covers the following topics: the hydrogen molecular ion, the hydrogen molecule, covalent and ionic bonds, molecular rotational and vibrational spectra and their interpretation using the Schrodinger theory. The solid state section of the course deals with the structure of crystals and crystal lattices, lattice vibrations and the thermal properties of solids. The band theory of solids in terms of the quantum theory is also covered, as well as other selected topics. Concurrent or prior enrolment in Physics 350 is considered very desirable.

### **Physics 353 (2 credits) Nuclear and Particle Physics**

The aim of this course is to discuss the basic properties of atomic nuclei and elementary particles, and to give an introduction to recent developments in these fields. The course is divided into two sections: Nuclear physics: basic properties of nuclei, radioactive decay, nuclear reaction mechanisms, introduction to nuclear models. Particle physics: discovery of mesons, resonances and strange particles, basic properties of elementary particles and their interactions, introduction to quark models. Concurrent or prior enrolment in Physics 350 is considered very desirable.

### **Physics 356 (2 credits) Nuclear Science**

This course covers many topics of practical interest to experimental nuclear physicists and the theoretical backgrounds of several of the experiments in Physics 390–392 are discussed.

This course will include the interaction of charged particles, gamma rays and neutrons with matter and a selection of topics from: fission, fusion, radioactive decay, detectors, nuclear analytical techniques, beam optics, machine physics.

### **Physics 380–385 (each 2 credits) Selected Topics**

Subject to the approval of the Head of Department students may select not more than two topics from those offered at MSc level in Physics. Any necessary prerequisites or corequisites will be as determined by the Head of Department.

## **Stage III Laboratory Courses**

### **Physics 390, 391, 392 (each 3 credits) Experimental Physics A, B, C**

Three general laboratory courses are available at Stage III level in Physics, and students may enrol for one or more of these in the same or subsequent years. Each course normally occupies two three-hour laboratory periods for half the year, but laboratory times are flexible depending on the allocation of experiments in the Advanced Laboratory, and Physics 392 may be spread over the whole year, at the discretion of the course organiser. Each course will contain a representative selection of experiments from different branches of physics, but will in addition contain experiments selected as far as is practicable to suit the particular interests of students. Experiments are available in general physics, atomic and nuclear physics, electronic physics and pure and applied geophysics.

In view of the value to be derived towards an understanding of experimental physics, it is expected that all students taking any of the 390-series laboratory courses will offer themselves for a period of Stage I laboratory demonstrating.

Prerequisites for enrolment in Physics 390, 391 or 392 are passes in TWO of the courses 31.201 to 31.250. Corequisites are concurrent enrolment (or passes) in ONE of the courses 31.312 to 31.353 for each Physics 390/1/2 course enrolment. At least ONE of the courses 390, 391 and 392 must be credited before more than three of the courses Physics 312–385 may be credited. At least TWO of the courses 390, 391, 392 or 393 are required as a prerequisite to Masters in Physics. The Stage II laboratory course Physics 290 is prerequisite to each of 390, 391 and 392.

### **Physics 393 (3 credits) Experimental Geophysics**

This is a joint course offered by the Geology and Physics Department and is the same as Geology 307. Students holding the Physics prerequisites 31.210 and 31.290 should enrol in Physics 393. For further information on this course students should consult the entry under 21.307 Experimental Geophysics.

## **Physics for MSc and Honours**

Students are required to enrol and be examined in four papers from those listed below and a thesis (Physics 601) which counts as four papers. In addition they will be invited to attend one further course without formal enrolment. All Masters papers will be examined at the end of the year.

### **Lecture Courses Physics 410–485**

A number of lecture courses are available for the MSc degree in Physics covering a wide range of topics. Not all the papers listed may be offered each year and a sufficient number of enrolments will be

required in each case. With the approval of Senate a Masters paper in another subject may be substituted for one of the papers in Physics. Further, with the approval of the Head of Department it is possible to select one Stage III course in Physics not previously taken, or with the approval of both Heads of Departments concerned, one Stage III course in another subject as one of the four courses required for the MSc degree in Physics. In these cases additional course work may be required and a special examination will be sat as one of the "selected topics" 31.480-485.

Students will be advised in their selection of courses at enrolment but should discuss their proposed course of study and possible thesis topic with lecturing staff before the end of the Stage III year.

There are no specific prerequisites for the individual lecture courses, but it is desirable that students should have taken the corresponding Stage III course where this is indicated. Concurrent enrolment in suitable courses may be advised.

Lists of textbooks or books for recommended reading are available from the Departmental Office by 1 December of the year prior to enrolment, but the advice of the lecturing staff should be sought before purchases are made.

#### **Physics 410 Transform methods**

This course deals with the theory and application of transform methods to linear physical systems. Topics presented will include: convolution, continuous and discrete Fourier transforms, Laplace transforms,  $z$  transforms and Hilbert transforms; with applications selected from: electric circuits, signal processing, optics, wave theory, spectroscopy and statistics.

#### **Physics 414 Relativity and Cosmology**

Aspects of the special and general theories of relativity. The necessary tensor calculus is developed in the course which is designed to give an introduction to gravitation and cosmology.

#### **Physics 420 Laboratory and Space Plasma**

The treatment of plasma physics is restricted to the fully ionized state. The subject is introduced by considering the motion of charged particles under the "guiding centre" approximation. Fluid type equations are developed to describe the properties of plasma. Solutions with application to astrophysics and fusion machines are considered. Propagation of electrostatic and electromagnetic waves in homogeneous magnetised plasma is given some emphasis. About eight lectures on space physics are devoted to the solar wind and the earth's magnetosphere and ionosphere.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in Physics 320 is desirable.

#### **Physics 431 Wave Propagation**

A general treatment of propagation of acoustic, electromagnetic, seismic and surface waves with selected

applications in underwater acoustics, oceanography, radio waves in the ionosphere, geophysical exploration and earthquake analysis. Topics include rays and normal modes in inhomogeneous layered media, reflection coefficients, attenuation, WKB approximations, stress-strain tensors, Rayleigh, Love and head waves and whole Earth models.

#### **Physics 432 Cloud Physics**

The aim of the course is to provide a detailed understanding of the condition of the atmosphere and the various physical processes which lead to the formation of clouds, the onset of precipitation and the occurrence of lightning discharges. The contents of the course includes the theory of nucleation of condensation, freezing and sublimation. The measurement of nucleating agents in the atmosphere. Observations of cloud microstructure and its relation to rainfall probability. The theory of droplet growth and the development of droplet populations. The formation of rain and its characteristics. The growth of ice in the atmosphere, leading to precipitation. The electrical properties of clouds and studies of the lightning flash. Thunderstorm theories. Current research in cloud physics.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in Physics 332 is desirable.

#### **Physics 433 Advanced Applied Geophysics**

The theory and practice of the interpretation of geophysical measurements. The topics covered are presented in two groups in alternate years: (i) (odd numbered years) potential field theory, quantitative interpretation of gravitational and magnetic anomalies (two and three-dimensional bodies); (ii) (even numbered years) DC and AC resistivity measurements, seismic wave transmission refraction and reflection studies.

**Practical Work:** The year's practical work will be assessed by means of exercises to be completed during the lecture course which will be held during the first half of the year and two essays and a discussion of a seminar topic in the second half.

**Note:** This course is the same as Geology 406 and is given jointly by the Geology and Physics Departments. Previous enrolment in Physics 330, Geology 306 and Physics 393 is desirable.

#### **Physics 441 Signal Processing**

This course is concerned with the theory and application of modern techniques used in the transmission, reception and interpretation of signals. Topics presented include: operational amplifiers and active filters, modulation and detection of signals in the presence of noise, signal analysis by analogue and digital processes, digital filtering, phased detectors and optical signal processing methods.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in Physics 341 is desirable and concurrent enrolment in Physics 410 is recommended.

**Physics 443 Integrated Electronics**

A course in digital and high speed pulse electronics with application in instrumentation and digital systems. Topics discussed include: number systems and codes, combinational logic, sequential digital systems (synchronous and asynchronous), digital system components and high speed switching devices.

The course is of interest to students intending to undertake experimental work in any field of study and particularly to those with an interest in Computer Science.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in Physics 343 is desirable.

**Physics 450 Quantum Theory**

A review is given of the general formalism of quantum theory, making use of Dirac notation throughout. Particular topics covered may include scattering theory, time-dependent perturbation theory, relativistic quantum mechanics and spin, quantum theory of radiation and introductory quantum field theory, rotations and other symmetry operations. Applications are taken from atomic, nuclear and particle physics.

**Physics 453 Nuclear Physics**

The aim of this course is to present a unified picture of nuclear structure and interactions. The main topics discussed are the nucleon-nucleon interaction, nuclear matter and nuclear models, and nuclear reactions.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in third year nuclear physics courses and in Physics 350 is desirable, and concurrent enrolment in Physics 450 is strongly recommended.

**†Physics 454 Elementary Particle Physics**

Properties of the elementary particles as experimentally found and introduction to the theory of their strong electromagnetic and weak interactions; quantum field theory; cosmic rays; survey of current experimental and theoretical research approaches.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in Physics 350 and 353 is desirable, and students are recommended to enrol concurrently in Physics 450.

**†Physics 455 Laser Physics and Quantum Optics**

Semi-classical theory of simple optical processes, light amplification and absorption. Modern developments in the basic theoretical description of light fields and of optical phenomena. Statistical properties of light fields, coherence, photon detection, photoelectron counting and correlation with applications to very high resolution spectroscopy in light-scattering processes. The laser and non-linear optical phenomena.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in Physics 350 is desirable.

**Physics 480–485 Selected Topics  
Special Lectures**

Short courses of lectures on special techniques and instrumentation relevant to research activities of interest to the Department will be given from time to

time. These lectures are available to staff and students and do not form part of the MSc examination.

**Physics 601 Thesis**

An experimental or theoretical thesis is required, and will count as four papers. A list of thesis topics available is produced prior to enrolment. Students with special research interests may include other suggestions for consideration. A suitable thesis programme will then be allocated by the Head of Department after discussion with students and with the teaching staff concerned. Thesis topics will be allocated as early as is practicable in the first year of enrolment.

With the approval of the Head of Department the thesis may be submitted by February 1st of the year following first enrolment for the Master of Science degree provided that students have commenced work on the thesis in December of their Stage III year.

Theses will otherwise be expected to be completed by November 1st of the second year of enrolment. Extensions of time for a third year may be granted in special circumstances.

The Department is prepared to meet the cost of an additional copy of the thesis for the Departmental thesis library and students are asked to provide such a copy.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

**Research in Physics**

Facilities are available for postgraduate and post-doctoral research in Physics in a wide variety of fields. Further information is available from the Departmental Office.

The PhD degree in Physics normally requires about two and a half to three years full-time work. Part-time study is possible after the initial two years.

**DEPARTMENT OF PHYSIOLOGY  
Stage II****67.201 Introductory Physiology**  
(one paper and practical work)

An introductory course on cellular and organ physiology and relevant processes, particularly in mammalian systems. Topics are muscle, nervous system, motor control and sensory function; cardiovascular and respiratory systems and blood, with their exchange and transport functions; endocrine and reproductive systems, with humoral control of cell metabolism; alimentary system, digestion and absorption; kidney function; body fluids. There is little overlap with course 38.209/309 offered by the Zoology Department.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week.

**Laboratories:** Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours per week.

Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

*Prerequisites:* Chemistry 08.100 or 08.115, or 08.120 or 18.125. 6 credits from any course in Biology or Zoology.

A maximum number will be determined by the available accommodation.

### Stage III

#### 67.301 Systematic Physiology

(one paper and practical work)

This course examines specific aspects of physiology which demonstrate the integration of function from the level of the cell to that of the whole organism. Oxygen supply and demand, regulation of body fluids, cardiovascular control, body temperature regulation and determinants of function in the central nervous system are considered in depth. Special emphasis is placed on mammalian systems. Practical work complements the lecture course and provides training in a wide range of the techniques used in physiology.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

*Prerequisites:* Physiology 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any science course at the Stage II or III level. A maximum number will be determined by the available accommodation.

### Physiology for MSc and Honours

(Three papers and a Thesis (67.621) which shall count as three papers). Students who propose to undertake the MSc degree should consult the Head of Department as early as possible. Candidates must select three courses from those listed below.

#### 67.401 Mechanisms of Physiological Control

Studies of physiological regulatory mechanisms.

#### 67.402 Applications of Systems Analysis in Physiology

An introduction to systems analysis and control theory, and their application to physiological systems. Taught jointly with Department of Zoology.

#### 67.403 Neurophysiology

Central processing of sensory information, such as pain, temperature or vision. Embryonic, environmental and developmental influences on the pattern and stability of neural connections.

#### 67.406 Perinatal Physiology

A study of the physiology of the foetus and newborn, with an introduction to the methodology in this field. This paper will be taught in the Department of Paediatrics.

#### †67.405 Methods in Physiology

An outline of the theory and practice of data

acquisition and analysis in physiology. Principles of experimental design, instrumentation, statistics and computation are considered with respect to specific experiments.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY

### Optometry

#### Year 1

#### Chemistry

**08.110 Organic, Physical and General Chemistry**

**08.120 Inorganic, Physical and General Chemistry**

#### Mathematics

**26.142 Concepts of Calculus**

#### Physics

**31.110 Mechanics and Heat, Wave-Motion, Sound and Light**

**31.120 Electricity, Relativity and Modern Physics**

#### Psychology

**32.108 Introduction to General Psychology**

**32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

#### Biology

**39.101 Central Concepts of Biology**

All papers as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science.

*Note:* For 08.110 a candidate may substitute 08.113 or 08.115

For 08.120 a candidate may substitute 08.123 or 08.125.

For 31.110 a candidate may substitute 31.113 or 31.115.

For 31.120 a candidate may substitute 31.123 or 31.125.

#### Year II

#### 44.200 Physical Optics

Image quality assessment, resolution of optical instruments, the optical transfer function. Interference and interferometers. Diffraction. Thin film optics. Polarization. Sources and detectors. Coherent optical processes, holography. Fibre optics.

#### 44.201 Geometrical Optics

Refraction at plane and spherical surfaces, limitations of Gaussian optics, thick lenses, cardinal points, equivalent and vertex powers, paraxial theory of optical instruments, stops. Magnification. Optical materials.

#### 44.203 Ocular Anatomy

Anatomy of the eye and orbit and adjacent structures, cranial nerves, blood supply to the eye, embryology of the eye, comparative anatomy of the eye.

#### 44.204 Ocular Physiology and Biochemistry

The vascular supply to the eye. Formation and circulation of aqueous humour, intraocular pressure. Chemistry and metabolism of the cornea, corneal permeability, turbulence and the maintenance of transparency. Structure of the crystalline lens.

**44.210 Physiological Optics**

Optics of the eye, schematic eyes, accommodation, spectacle and relative spectacle magnification. Luminous efficiency, light and dark adaptation, increment thresholds. Stiles Crawford effect, temporal and spatial induction, critical fusion frequency, entoptic phenomena, visual acuity, trivariance of vision, chromaticity, theories of colour vision and colour discrimination. Classification of eye movements, local signs, corresponding points, diplopia, afferent and efferent control mechanisms, rotary movements, nystagmus, conjugate movements, vergence and stereopsis, Panum's areas, fixation disparity.

**Psychology****32.207 Sensory Processes: Physiological Psychology****Biochemistry****66.201 Introductory Biochemistry****Physiology****67.201 Introductory Physiology**

All papers as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science

**Year III****44.305 Ocular Pharmacology**

General principles of drug actions on organ systems and the central and peripheral nervous systems. Characteristics of drugs producing miosis, mydriasis, cycloplegia, accommodative spasm and anaesthesia of ocular surfaces.

**44.310 Physiological Optics**

Electrophysiology of vision, electroretinography, electro-oculography, the visual evoked potential. Visual information processing. Fusion and stereopsis in the human visual system. Recent advances in visual physiology. Instrumentation for vision research, detectors, power supplies, analog and digital recorders, signal generators.

**44.306 Applied Optics**

Optical design, meridional and paraxial ray tracing, aberrations of single surfaces, lens systems. The design of optical instruments, optical tolerances, and the assessment of optical performance. Luminous transmittance. Colorimetry, the CIE colorimetric systems.

**44.312 Contact Lens Practice**

Contact lens designs and principles of fitting. Disinfection procedures, patient instruction. Signs and symptoms of ill-fitting contact lenses and lens modification procedures.

**44.313 Environmental Vision**

Visual ergonomics in land transport, aviation and industry. The elements of illuminating engineering, photometric concepts and computational methods. Lamp types, principles and applications, atmospheric optics.

**44.315 Ocular Pathology**

A study of the pathology and clinical manifestations of diseases of the eye, orbit, lacrimal apparatus and visual pathways. Symptomatic disturbances of vision, headache. Eye signs of general disease.

**44.316 Ophthalmic Optics**

Cylindrical and spherocylindrical lenses, toric lenses, simple and accurate transposition. Ophthalmic prisms. Multi-focal lens design. Ophthalmic materials, absorptive lenses. Aspheric lenses. Design of low vision aids. Optical dispensing, frame description and measurement, lens marking, cutting and edging, grooving and drilling. Prescription verification, lens manufacture, surfacing, facial measurement, frame selection and adjustment.

**44.330 Clinical Optometry**

Refractive anomalies of the eye, changes in refraction with age, aetiology of refractive errors, presbyopia. Binocular vision anomalies, heterophoria, fusion, heterotropia. The optometric examination, objective and subjective refractive techniques. Assessment of ocular health, oculomotor balance, visual fields and colour vision. Clinical problem solving and patient management.

**32.306 The Design of Psychological Experiments**

As prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science

**Year IV****44.414 Community Health Optometry**

Organisation of health services in New Zealand, health planning and administration. Health manpower requirements. The delivery of health care, role of government statutory and voluntary agencies. Role of optometry in the team approach to health care. Optometric needs of particular groups. Principles of industrial safety, incidence of eye injuries, eye protection programmes, visual screening.

**44.421 Project**

An investigation into some aspect of optometry or visual science.

**44.430 Clinical Optometry**

A course of training in clinical optometry including contact lens practice, aniseikonia and subnormal vision. Practice management, ethics, professional conduct.

**Psychology for BSc**

The prescriptions for Psychology courses are as prescribed for BA.

**Note:** Zoology and Mathematics are useful subjects for students advancing in Psychology for degrees in Science. The Schedule attached to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BSc should be consulted for prerequisites and corequisites. The Science Faculty handbook contains further useful advice.

**Psychology for MSc and Honours**

Four papers and a Thesis (32.601) which is equivalent to three papers.



Students in consultation with the Head of Department will select four papers from among the following: 32.401-32.421. For prescriptions for papers 32.401-32.413 and 32.415-32.421 see Psychology for MA and Honours.

#### **32.451 Physiological Optics**

A review of selected areas of visual physiology.

#### **32.452 Special topic in Optometry**

1983: The application of physiological optics to advanced techniques for determination of the refractive status of the eye.

#### **32.453 Research Topic in Optometry**

1983: Cornea and contact lens research techniques.

### **DEPARTMENT OF ZOOLOGY**

#### **Stage I**

The first year course for students in Botany, Zoology or Biology comprises three 6-credit papers, Biology 101 (paper 39.101), Botany 102 (paper 06.102) and Zoology 102 (paper 38.102).

#### **Biology 101 Central Concepts of Biology**

Biochemical concepts common to animals, micro-organisms and plants; the biochemistry of macromolecules, especially nucleic acids and proteins; enzyme action and catalysis; cellular energetics; genetic principles and mechanisms; fundamental processes of ecosystems; population and community dynamics; organic evolution. This course may be taken as part of the Stage I requirement in either Botany or Zoology, but may not receive credit in both.

#### **Zoology 102 Animal Evolution and Diversity**

A survey of the evolution of animals, considering both the broad aspects of the evolutionary progression and detailed adaptations in physiology and anatomy to specific habitat and life history situations. Developmental biology.

#### **Biology for BA**

This is a Stage I course for students who do not plan to take a science degree. The course is intended as a general survey of the biological sciences, with elementary chemistry, physics and mathematics being introduced as necessary. The course cannot be used as a prerequisite for advanced Botany or Zoology. The two courses in the Biology for Arts series are taught in alternate years.

#### **39.111 Unifying concepts in Biology**

Taught in odd numbered years only. Cell Structure; Energy relationships; photosynthesis and respiration; Molecular Biology; control of synthesis of nucleic acids, proteins and macromolecules; Genetics; mechanisms in inheritance; Physiology.

#### **\*39.112 Biological Diversity and Function**

Taught in even numbered years only. Resume of the Plant and Animal Kingdoms, with emphasis on human importance. Principles of Ecology and Organic Evolution.

### **Advanced Courses**

#### **Zoology 201, 301 Non-chordate Zoology**

Taught in odd numbered years only. The classification, structure and functioning of the invertebrates. A wide range of phyla will be considered; less emphasis will be given to land arthropods. (Detailed treatment of these is given in 38.205-305).

#### **\*Zoology 202, 302 Chordate Zoology**

Taught in even numbered years only. The evolution and biology of the hemichordates and protochordates and vertebrates from fish through to mammals. Particular emphasis is placed on the functional design of vertebrate animals and their adaptations to special environments.

The practical course includes the study of vertebrate animals in the laboratory.

#### **Zoology 203, 303 Animal Orientation and Timing**

Orientation mechanisms and biological timing. A study of the orientation behaviour involved in habitat selection, migration, homing and predation in animals, with emphasis on the investigation of the mechanisms of these reactions using control systems analysis and sense organ physiology. The adaptive significance, nature and control mechanisms of biological clocks will also be studied in detail.

#### **Zoology 204, 304 Social Behaviour of Animals**

An evolutionary study of the behavioural ecology of social animals. Communication: evolution and ontogeny of signals, channels of communication, individual recognition, aggressive and courtship signalling; cultural transmission and dialect formation. Social structures: use of space, territories, hierarchies; mating systems, strategies of the sexes, monogamy, polygamy, cooperative breeding; kin groupings.

#### **Zoology 205, 305 Entomology**

The structure, evolution and systematics of the insects. An introduction to those terrestrial groups related to insects i.e. Onychopora, Myriapoda, and Arachnida, the basic structure and morphology of insects, and a systematic coverage of the insect orders. Applied Entomology.

#### **Biology 207, 307 Biometry**

Elementary statistical methods and concepts with particular emphasis on their application in biological research.

#### **Zoology 209, 309 Comparative Physiology**

Elementary concepts in zoophysiology with emphasis on adaptation to environment. Respiration, neurophysiology, and water balance receive special attention from a comparative viewpoint. The practical course provides an introduction to methods and instrumentation of importance in biological experimentation. There is no vertebrate vivisection in the practical course.

**Biology 211 Population and Community Ecology**

Elementary demography and models of population growth; population genetics with emphasis on the concepts of selection and fitness; two-species interactions, competition and predation; multispecies associations. The emphasis will be on experimental ecology of both plants and animals from a wide range of habitats. There will be a compulsory field course of one week to the Coromandel with Biology 213 during the first week of May vacation (8-14 May).

**Biology 212, 312 Coastal Marine Biology**

The shore and shallow sea as a habitat, life, and a workshop for ecologists. Habitat structure and intertidal zonation, exemplified chiefly by New Zealand shores. Descriptive schemes of community space, with underlying physical and biotic parameters. The adaptation of the various groups of plants and animals to life between tides. Coastal biogeography. The conservation and utilisation of the coastline. Practical work includes obligatory seven day field course available at Whangarei Heads during the third week of May vacation (21-30 May). Alternative field courses may be available at Leigh Laboratory in Mid-term and first week of August vacation (14-20 August).

**Biology 213 New Zealand Vegetation**

New Zealand vegetation since the break-up of Gondwanaland. Palynological studies. Alpine environments. Major forest types. Lowland swamp and coastal communities. Emphasis will be placed in autecological studies and the dynamics of the ecosystems described, including the role of native and introduced fauna. Practical work will include an experimental project and day field-trips. A field course will be held from 8-13 May in conjunction with 39.211, and attendance is compulsory for students doing both subjects. Students not doing 39.211 in conjunction may apply for admission to the field course at enrolment.

**\*Zoology 310 Animal Morphogenesis**

Aspects of the cellular structure, behaviour and biochemistry as these relate to developmental processes. Practical work involves the use of both scanning and transmission electron microscopes, acquaintance with electrophoretic and cell culture techniques as well as grafting experiments designed to illustrate general aspects of animal morphogenesis.

**Biology 311 Freshwater Ecology**

Animal and plant freshwater communities, particularly of lakes and rivers; the physical and chemical environment; physiography of rivers and lakes; hydrology; pollution. Part of the course will consist of a field trip and a weekend field course during May vacation.

**Biology 313 The Ecology and Biogeography of Terrestrial Ecosystems**

Current controversies on community stability and

diversity. Ordination and classification techniques. Sampling, with special reference to forests. Ecosystem integration through animal-plant-pathogen interactions. Nutrient cycling. Forest dynamics with reference to different types of forest ecosystems. The tropical rain forest. A compulsory residential field class will be held from 22-26 February, departing late afternoon on the 22nd. Interpretation and analysis of the field data will take place during the Wednesday laboratory times.

**Biology 314 Applied Ecology**

The application of ecological principles to resource management, including natural recreational resources, forests and fisheries; aspects of the conservation of natural ecosystems; the planning process; wildlife management.

**Zoology 315 Evolutionary Genetics**

An analysis of intraspecific variability, the genetic differences between closely related species and the evolutionary relationships among species as estimated by techniques such as chromosome analysis and electrophoresis. The genetics of a number of speciation models are considered and recent genetical advances and challenges to modern evolutionary theory are critically examined.

**Biology 316 Biological Oceanography**

Characteristics of marine communities; the physical and chemical environment and primary production; marine algology; zooplankton and secondary production; characteristics of plankton, nekton, benthos and meiofaunas in shallow and deep seas. Practical work includes day or weekend field trips and several days of laboratory investigation.

**Laboratory Work**

One practical class each week for first year courses and two classes each week for advanced courses is the minimum requirement. The practical work will be assessed separately and the marks will be included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass both in the written examination and in the practical work is necessary. (BSc Regulation 7).

All research students are required to lodge a deposit of \$10 with the Department of Zoology before being granted access to keys in the Department.

**Field Courses in Botany/Biology, 1983**

**06.361:** 16-20 May    **39.213:** 8-14 May  
**39.211:** 8-14 May    **39.311:** 9-12 May  
**39.212:** 21-30 May    **39.313:** 21-25 February

**ZOOLOGY FOR MSc**

(Three papers selected from 38.401-38.410 and a Thesis (38.601)).

This course normally requires from fifteen months to two years and necessitates full-time attendance. Students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head of the Department towards the end of the previous year.

**38.401 Evolution and Natural Selection**

The Neo-Darwinian theory is appraised, wider and more deeply than at the undergraduate level. This study comprises two equal parts: considered in the first is the theory and, especially, the weaknesses in it, and in the second actual evolutionary changes within populations and species. Much of this study will be done through independent reading.

**38.402 Application of Systems Analysis in Physiology**

A critical treatment of theory and techniques of systems analysis and control theory and their applications in physiology.

**38.403 Chronobiology**

The study of biological clocks: their adaptive significance, location, chemical nature and mathematical models.

**38.404 Behavioural Ecology and Sociobiology**

Selected topics on the evolution of sociality in animals, including man.

**38.405 Entomology and Pest Management**

(a) The functional anatomy and reproductive and life history strategies that make insects so varied and abundant, and

(b) Modern views of pest management leading up to a review of integrated strategies.

**38.406 Southern Oceans' Biogeography**

The geology and tectonics of the southern continents, the evolution of the circulation of the southern oceans, palaeoclimatology. Understanding of these phenomena is used to interpret the biogeography of the southern hemisphere lands with emphasis on the N.Z. region. Taught jointly with Botany and Geology.

**38.407 Community Ecology**

A series of seminars leading to an understanding of community dynamics as exemplified by succession and island biogeography.

**38.408 Marine Biology**

Selected topics such as the distribution patterns of plankton, reproductive and larval strategies of marine animals, and the population dynamics of fish and benthic animals.

**38.409 Zoophysiology**

Selected topics in respiration, neurobiology and physiological control systems.

**\*38.410 Morphogenesis**

Recent work on membrane structure, cellular adhesion, segregation and recognition is considered and

related to the overall biochemical and genetical control of morphogenetic systems, particularly to cell positioning and the formation of pattern during development.

**Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD**

Staff and facilities are available for Masters and PhD research in many areas of zoology, environmental biology and the interaction of plants and animals. Although much research is field oriented, of animals in natural and experimental situations, excellent facilities are also available for physiological and ultrastructural studies.

Research by staff covers such diverse interests as marine ecology, especially of the inshore communities; the behavioural ecology of both terrestrial and aquatic animals, with emphasis on sociality and communication; entomology and pest management; the physiology of nervous and respiratory systems; chronobiology, morphogenesis, ultrastructure and cellular and organ functions.

There runs through all studies the related themes of evolutionary change and adaptation, and of systematics and population dynamics. Encouragement is given to an experimental approach based soundly on statistical techniques.

Much of the marine research is done at the Leigh Marine Laboratory; studies of native birds and lizards occur throughout the Hauraki Gulf Islands.

**The McGregor Museum**

The museum is open daily from 10 am until 5 pm.

---

**ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES****Environmental Studies**

An inter-disciplinary undergraduate paper in Environmental Studies is offered at Stage II level. Responsibility for the administration of this paper has been assigned to the Department of Town Planning.

**84.200 Environmental Studies (4 credits)**

*Prerequisites:* 24 Stage I credits or the equivalent from any Faculty, including six credits from the Science Faculty.

Introduction to global environmental problems of population, resources and pollution, with local illustrations through tutorials and field trips.

---

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

---

### DIPLOMA IN CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY

#### DipClinPsych

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Clinical Psychology shall
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree of the University of Auckland and
  - (b) have satisfied the prerequisites for admission to a Master's degree in Psychology of this University.
2. Admission to the Course of study for the Diploma shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Head of the Department of Psychology.
3. A candidate for the Diploma shall
  - (a) follow a Course of study of not less than three years
  - (b) concurrently follow a Course of study for a Master's degree in Psychology which shall include papers 32.403 and 32.409 and a thesis in the field of clinical psychology.

#### Course Content

4. The Course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts

##### Part 1 32.500 (two years)

Lectures, laboratory work, and clinical instruction in the practice of psychology. Each candidate will be required to undertake a minimum of 12 hours per week during the first academic year and 15 hours per week during the second academic year of supervised clinical work with patients at the Department of Psychology or at any approved mental health institution (as may be required).

##### Part 2 32.501 (one year)

Practical work of not less than 38 hours per week within the psychology section of the Department of Justice, within the Department of Health, or within the Department of Psychology of the University.

5. No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part 2 until he has completed to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Psychology the work required for Part 1 of the course and has completed the requirements for a Master's degree in Psychology.
  6. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Psychology such class, laboratory, clinical and practical work as may be required.
  7. A candidate shall be deemed to have completed the requirements for the Diploma when he is awarded a pass on a final examination which shall include examination of a patient, the candidate's written report on the patient, and an oral examination.
  8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1974.
- 

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipClinPsych

#### DIPLOMA IN CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY

The Course of study for this Diploma is designed to prepare the candidate for professional competence as a clinical psychologist.

The duration of the course is three years. Not more than five candidates may be admitted to the course for the first time in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol should consult the Head of Department before 31 October preceding their first enrolment for the course.

##### Part 1 32.500 (first and second years)

In the first year candidates are required to complete papers 32.403 and 32.409 plus at least two other graduate papers; perform work supervised at the Department of Psychology; and visit as instructed.

In the second year candidates are required to complete the writing of their master's thesis to be submitted by the end of this year; and attend classes as required; and perform clinical work of no less than 15 hours per week at the Department of Psychology or another approved mental health institution.

Candidates wishing to take Part 2 in the following year should consult the Head of Department at the end of their second year in Part 1 of the course.

**Part 2 32.501** (third year)

Practical work of not less than 38 hours per week in an approved mental health institution is required.

The final examination in the third year of the course will normally take place over two days towards the end of November.

---

## DIPLOMA IN COMPUTATIONAL MATHEMATICS

### DipCompMaths

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Computational Mathematics shall before enrolment for this Diploma

(a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree, and

(b) except where the Senate otherwise permits, have passed in the following courses as prescribed for the degree of BSc:

(i) Mathematics 220 or 221, 240 or 241

(ii) at least one of Mathematics 170, 180

(iii) Computer Science 230, 290, 390

(iv) one further paper in Computer Science or Applied Mathematics carrying at least four credits above Stage I.

2. A candidate permitted by the Senate to enrol for the Diploma without having fulfilled all the prerequisite requirements, may be required by the Senate to include all or any of the unfulfilled prerequisite as additional papers.

3. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a Course of study of one year.

4. (a) The Course of study for the Diploma shall consist of the following papers:

07.590 Studies in Computational Mathematics (weighting 6)

07.591 Exercises in Computational Mathematics (weighting 2)

07.592 Seminar in Computational Mathematics (weighting 1)

07.593 Project in Computational Mathematics (weighting 3)

(b) A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the papers weighted respectively as shown in paragraph (a) of this Regulation.

5. (a) The project (07.593) shall be delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department of Computer Science, of the year of the candidate's enrolment for the Diploma.

(b) Save where the Senate extends the time, the requirements for the Diploma shall be completed within that year.

6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1980.

---

### PREScriptions FOR DipComp Maths

#### DIPLOMA IN COMPUTATIONAL MATHEMATICS

Candidates for this Diploma must have completed a Bachelor's degree and will normally have obtained passes in Computer Science 07.290 and Mathematics papers 26.220 or 26.221, 26.240 or 26.241 and at least one of 26.170 and 26.180. They will also normally have obtained passes in Computer Science papers 07.230, 07.390 and a further advanced paper in Computer Science or Applied Mathematics, although they may be permitted to complete some of the requirements while enrolled for the diploma. The course of study consists of a lecture course (07.590) together with a practical work (07.591), participation in a Seminar series (07.592) and the completion of a project (07.593).

##### 07.590 Studies in Computational Mathematics

Numerical methods in linear algebra, differential equations, optimisation, and related fields. The construction of algorithms for the efficient solution of computational problems.

##### 07.591 Exercises in Computational Mathematics

Practical work in computer programming and the construction of Mathematical software.

250 Faculty of Science, Diploma Regulations & Prescriptions, DipCompMaths, DipEnTech (Geotherm.)

### 07.592 Seminar in Computational Mathematics

To satisfy the requirements of this course, each candidate participates in the seminar series arranged by the Department of Computer Science and presents at least one seminar to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Computer Science.

### 07.593 Project in Computational Mathematics

An investigation, supported by computer work, of some approved topic in Computational Mathematics for of an application to some other subject.

## DIPLOMA IN ENERGY TECHNOLOGY (GEOTHERMAL)

### DipEnTech (Geotherm)

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Energy Technology (Geothermal) shall before his enrolment for this Diploma
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree in science or engineering or
  - (b) have reached an equivalent level of attainment in science or engineering to the approval of the Senate.
2. Admission to the Course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Board of Studies, Geothermal Institute.
3. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a Course of study of one year.
4. The Course of study for the Diploma shall consist of three parts. The Diploma shall be granted by examination.

#### Part I

A core paper in Geothermal Systems and Technology (86.100)

#### Part II

- EITHER (a) Geothermal Exploration for Earth Scientists (86.101) and  
 (b) Geothermal Exploration Technology (86.102) OR  
 (c) Geothermal Production Technology (86.103) and  
 (d) Geothermal Energy Utilisation (86.104)

#### Part III

A project (86.606) on some aspect of Geothermal Energy

5. The project (86.606) shall be delivered to the Registrar by November 1 of the year of the candidates enrolment for the Diploma, or such later date as may be approved by Senate.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on January 1, 1979.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipEnTech (Geotherm)

### DIPLOMA IN ENERGY TECHNOLOGY (GEOTHERMAL)

The Course of study for this Diploma is taught under the auspices of the Geothermal Institute which has been set up within the University of Auckland by special funding from the United Nations Development Programme and the New Zealand Government. Teaching will be carried out within the Faculty of Science and the School of Engineering by the academic staff, and by visiting lecturers from Government agencies and private organisations engaged in geothermal exploration and development.

Applications for admission to this Diploma course must be made to the Board of Studies, Geothermal Institute by 1 August for entry to the course in the following year. The number of students accepted for the course will be restricted each year.

**Note:** Any prospective student who has not passed the University Entrance Examination, who has been previously enrolled at a New Zealand University other than the University of Auckland, or who last attended an overseas university must apply for admission under the Provisional Admission, and Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations as defined elsewhere in the *Calendar*.  
 Part I will be the equivalent of two papers. The examination for the Diploma shall be in three parts and must be passed as a whole.

#### Part I

Geothermal Systems and Technology (86.100)

Scope of geothermal projects. Basic facts of geothermal systems. Introduction to geothermal exploration and technology. Reservoir engineering. Chemistry of thermal fluids. Economic, environmental and legal aspects. Case Studies.

#### Part II

EITHER (a) Geothermal Exploration for Earth Scientists (86.101)

Petrology, secondary mineralisation and alteration. Drillhole logging. Geochemistry of geothermal fluids. Geophysical investigation of geothermal fields. Estimation and assessment of thermal field potential, and

- (b) Geothermal Exploration Technology (86.102)  
Planimetric and geological mapping techniques. Mapping and sampling of geothermal discharge. Geophysical prospecting techniques. Geochemical analysis. Drillhole logging techniques and instrumentation, OR  
(c) Geothermal Production Technology (86.103)  
Drilling techniques and completion tests, fluid transmission, thermodynamics and fluid mechanics of geothermal fluids, well operation and analysis, reservoir modelling and assessment, corrosion and deposition, materials for geothermal plant, and  
(d) Geothermal Energy Utilisation (86.104)  
Applied thermodynamics. Industrial, agricultural and domestic use of heat. Process heat. Power cycles and electricity generation. Waste disposal, land erosion, subsidence. Environmental effects of geothermal wastes. Environmental Impact Report preparation. Assessment of geothermal fields as undeveloped natural resources, tourist development, wilderness protection. Development planning and costing.

**Part 3**

A written project on some aspect of geothermal energy including some degree of original research by the candidate (86.606).

## DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICAL EDUCATION

### DipMathEd

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Mathematical Education shall before enrolment for this Diploma:

(1) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree, or have satisfied Regulation 2 of the regulations for the Degree of Master of Arts or Regulation 2 of the Regulations for the Degree of Master of Science and

(2) (a) have passed in the following Mathematics courses (as prescribed for the Degree of BSc):

(i) papers 220 or 221 and 240 or 241 and (ii) one other 200 level course in mathematics; or (b) have to the satisfaction of the Senate reached an equivalent level of attainment and

(3) be required to have had teaching experience to the satisfaction of the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics except where the Head of that Department permits otherwise.

2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a Course of study for one year full-time or two years part-time or for such longer periods (either full or part-time) as the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics may require or permit.

3. (a) A candidate shall complete a Course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics consisting of papers having a total credit value of 24 credits selected from 300, 400 or 500 level Mathematics papers. The selection must include a project, 26.500 which counts as four credits. At least 16 credits must be selected from papers 26.500-26.569.

(b) A candidate who does not have an adequate knowledge of the major areas of secondary school mathematics will be required to make up the deficiency by attending an appropriate course or courses as directed by the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

4. A candidate shall deliver the project required in Regulation 3 (a) to the Registrar by not later than 1 November in the year following the year of first enrolment, or by such later date as the Senate may in exceptional circumstances permit.

5. No candidates may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper he has already passed for any other Degree or Diploma.

6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1980.

### PRESRIPTIONS FOR DipMathEd

#### DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICAL EDUCATION

Candidates for this Diploma must have completed or almost completed a Bachelor's degree and will normally have obtained passes in papers 26.220 or 26.221, 26.240 or 26.241 and one other 200 level paper in Mathematics. Although the regulations also require that a candidate should normally have had some teaching experience, this requirement can be waived on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics: intending candidates without such experience are invited to consult with the Head of the Department prior to enrolment. The course of study consists of papers having a total credit value of 24 credits selected from 300, 400 or 500 level Mathematics papers. The selection must include a project, 26.500 which counts as four credits. At least 16 credits must be selected from papers 26.500-26.569. The 500 level papers are listed below together with their credit values:

- 26.500 Project in Mathematical Education (4)
- 26.505 Topics in the History of Mathematics (4)
- 26.515 Mathematical Logic and the Philosophy of Mathematics (6)
- 26.520 Elementary Algebra from an Advanced Standpoint (6)
- 26.530 Elementary Calculus from an Advanced Standpoint (4)
- 26.550 Elementary Geometry from an Advanced Standpoint (4)
- 26.560 Advanced Studies of Topics in Elementary Mathematics (4)
- 26.561 Studies in Applied Mathematics Education (4)
- 26.562 Topics in Mathematical Education A (4)
- 26.563 Topics in Mathematical Education B (4)
- 26.564 Special topics in Mathematical Education (6)
- 26.565 Advanced topics in Mathematical Education (6)

## DIPLOMA IN STATISTICS

### DipStats

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Statistics shall before enrolment for this Diploma have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree or have satisfied Regulation 2 for the Degree of Master of Arts or Regulation 2 of the Regulations for the Degree of Master of Science, and shall
  - (a) have passed in the following Mathematics courses (as prescribed for the Degree of BSc):
    - (i) papers 220 or 221 and 240 or 241 and (ii) paper 280 or (before 1974) paper 381; or
    - (b) have reached an equivalent level of attainment to the approval of the Senate.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a Course of study for one year full-time or two years part-time or for such longer periods (either full or part-time) as the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics may require or permit.
3. (a) A candidate shall complete a Course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics on the recommendation of the Head of the Statistics Unit, consisting of papers having a total credit value of 20 credits selected from 300, 400 or 500 level papers in Mathematics and Computer Science and 300 or 400 level statistics papers in other subjects; together with a project, 26.580, which counts as four credits. At least 12 credits must be selected from papers 26.380, 26.381, 26.391 or 26.395, 26.480 to 26.490 and 26.581 to 26.589.
  - (b) A candidate who has no knowledge of computing shall be required to attend an appropriate course in computer programming.
4. A candidate shall deliver the project required in Regulation 3 (a) to the Registrar by not later than 1 November in the year following the year of first enrolment, or by such later date as the Senate may in exceptional circumstances permit.
5. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper he has already passed for any other degree or diploma.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1974.

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipStats DIPLOMA IN STATISTICS

This diploma is available to students who have completed or almost completed a Bachelor's degree, and have obtained passes in Mathematics papers 220, 240 or 280, or their equivalents. The course of study is tailored to fit individual student needs and is made up of papers having a total credit value of 20 credits selected from 300, 400 or 500 level papers in statistics, operations research, computer science and mathematics, and relevant papers offered by other departments, together with a project, 26.580. Candidates may complete the course of one year's full-time study or else spend two or more years on a part-time basis. Details are available from the Mathematics and Statistics Department and the Diploma Course Regulations in this calendar should be consulted. The 500 level papers are listed below together with their credit values:



- 26.580 Project in Statistics (4)
- 26.581 Topics in Statistics (4)
- 26.582 Special Topics in Statistics (4)
- 26.583 Further Topics in Statistics (4)

---

## CERTIFICATE REGULATIONS

---

### CERTIFICATES IN THE PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF RADIO-CHEMISTRY

#### 08.350 Elementary Certificate

The course for this Certificate involves ten lectures and eleven laboratory classes each of three hours' duration. Candidates may attend laboratory classes once a week in the first half year, or by arrangement. No student may enter the laboratory unless he is wearing an approved form of eye protection.

The course is designed to suit the needs of chemists and biologists who anticipate working with tracer quantities of radio-isotopes. Topics covered include:

Counting methods

Counting statistics

Handling radioactive substances

Source preparation

Radiological safety

Three channel beta scintillation spectrometer

Gas-liquid chromatography of volatile beta-emitting substances

*Examinations:* Candidates will be assessed on their practical work together with a written test.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210, but students having need of radiochemical techniques may be admitted to 08.350 without having passed 08.210 upon obtaining the approval of the Head of the Chemistry Department.

A knowledge of Physics to about first year standard will be assumed.

#### 08.351 Advanced Certificate

The course for the Advanced Certificate is intended to be taken in the same year as, or in a subsequent year, to the Elementary Certificate. The course involves ten lectures given in the second half year, together with eleven laboratory classes each of three hours' duration. Candidates offering both Elementary and Advanced Certificates in the same year must attend the laboratory once each week throughout the session. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

Candidates offering the Advanced Certificate only may attend the laboratory by arrangement. The course is designed to give a more detailed knowledge of radiochemical procedure. Topics covered include:

Gamma spectroscopy

Neutron activation

Radio-isotope generators

Radiochemical analytical procedures

Radiochemical synthesis

Applications

*Examinations:* Candidates will be assessed on their practical work together with a written test.

*Prerequisite:* 08.350 (**Note:** 08.350 may be taken in the same year).

A knowledge of Physics to about first year standard will be assumed.

Blank Page

---

# Faculty of Commerce

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	256 Degree of Bachelor of Commerce
	265 Degree of Master of Commerce
	267 Degree of Master of Business Administration

---

<b>Degree Course Prescription</b>	268 Department of Accountancy
	269 Department of Computer Science
	269 Department of Economics
	270 Department of Management Studies
	272 Department of Mathematics
	272 NZ Society of Accountants Professional Examinations
	272 UK Institute of Cost and Management Accountants Examinations

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	273 Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration
---	---

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF COMMERCE

#### BCom

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### Admission

1. (a) Admission to any paper in Part I of the Course of Study in Commerce shall be at the discretion of the Senate. Application for admission shall be made to the Registrar in writing before 10 January, or such other date as the Senate may determine, of the year in which the applicant proposes to enrol.
- (b) Admission to any paper in Part I shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the past performance of the applicant at school and in university and public examinations, and upon an interview where this is required.

#### Minimum Time for Degree

2. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.

#### Definition of a Paper

3. In these Regulations a paper means an examinable part of one year's work in a subject. Papers are classified in three Stages, I, II, III, prescribed for this Degree in the Schedule to these Regulations.

#### Course Content

4. Every candidate in his Course of Study for this degree
  - (a) shall comply with the requirements specified below for Part I and Part II;
  - (b) shall comply with the requirements specified in the Schedule to these Regulations.

#### Part I

5. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations, for Part I a candidate shall be required
  - (a) to pass in two papers selected from  
 Mathematics, Applied 26.180, 26.181  
 Mathematics, Pure 26.120, 26.121, 26.122, 26.140, 26.141, 26.142  
 Computer Science 07.100, 07.105  
 Economics 13.102  
 Management Studies 72.100;
  - (b) to pass the following Stage I papers  
 Accounting 01.100, 01.101; or 01.102, 01.103;  
 Commercial Law 02.100;  
 Economics 13.100, 13.101; or 13.103, 13.104;

#### Order of Presenting Course

- (c) before taking any other paper for Part I of this degree, to pass or enrol concurrently in the papers in paragraph (a) of this Regulation;
- (d) before taking any paper for Part II of this degree, to pass or enrol concurrently in the papers in paragraph (b) of this Regulation: provided that the Senate may waive the requirements of paragraph (c) or paragraph (d) of this Regulation for a candidate
  - (i) who has been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree of this University; or
  - (ii) enrolled, under Regulation 13 (1) of these Regulations, conjointly for this degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Degree of Bachelor of Science; or
  - (iii) enrolled conjointly for this degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Laws.

#### Part II

6. (a) Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations, for Part II a candidate shall be required to pass no fewer than thirteen papers at any stage, including no fewer than three Stage III papers selected from the subjects Accounting, Economics, and Management Studies;

(b) A candidate may include as one, two, or three papers for this Degree one, two, or three papers not already passed for this degree from any subject prescribed for any other degree of this University; provided that (i) for Science papers to be available for credit under this clause each such Science paper must carry a minimum of four credits in the Schedule to the Regulations for the Degree of BSc, and (ii) for the purpose of this Regulation, Science papers carrying lesser credit may be aggregated with other Science papers from the same stage of the same subject.

### Maximum Course Load

7. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Degree.

### Direct Entry

8. (a) Notwithstanding anything in Regulations 4, 5 and 6 of these Regulations a candidate may with the leave of the Senate take Stage II papers of any subject to which this Regulation applies without having passed Stage I. If a candidate passes a Stage II paper in a subject he shall not be credited with any prerequisite Stage I paper of that subject. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper attained the standard of a pass in a Stage I paper the candidate shall be credited with a pass in a Stage I paper of that subject. (b) This Regulation applies to the following subjects

Accounting  
Economics  
Mathematics

### Credits

9. (1) (a) A candidate who has passed for another Degree of this University two Stage II level papers in Pure Mathematics or equivalent and has passed papers 13.200 and 13.201 of Economics shall be credited with papers 13.100 and 13.101 of Economics, on payment of the fees required by Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

(b) A candidate who, for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, has passed Engineering Mathematics I and Engineering Mathematics II shall be credited with Mathematics 26.240 and 26.360 on payment of the fees required by Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

Provided that the total credits granted to a candidate under paragraphs (a) and (b) of this clause of this Regulation and Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall not exceed eight.

(2) A candidate who, for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, has been exempted from the Intermediate Examination shall be exempted without credit from Mathematics 26.122 and 26.142.

10. A candidate for this degree who abandoned another course of study and passed in a paper listed in the Schedule to these Regulations without receiving credit for that paper for any degree or diploma, may be credited with that paper for this degree.

11. (1) Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has qualified with merit for the New Zealand Certificate of Commerce in Accountancy, or who has completed the Professional Examination in Accountancy, or who has passed with merit in at least six subjects of the Professional Examination in Accountancy, may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this degree with credit for Accounting 01.100, 01.101, Commercial Law 02.100 and 02.203 and two other unspecified papers provided he pays the fees required by Regulation 12 of Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

(2) A candidate who has completed the Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration shall be credited with Management Studies 72.203, Economics 13.103 and two unspecified papers on payment of the fees required by Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### BCom/LLB, BCom/LLB (Hons)

12. (1) A candidate who

(a) for this degree or for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours), has passed the following papers

(i) two papers selected from  
Mathematics, Applied 26.180, 26.181  
Mathematics, Pure 26.120, 26.122, 26.140, 16.142  
Computer Science 07.100, 07.105  
Economics 13.102  
Management Studies 72.100;

(ii) Accounting 01.100, 01.101; or 01.102, 01.103;

(iii) Economics 13.100, 13.101; or 13.103, 13.104; and

(b) for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) has passed

(iv) Legal System 25.103;

(v) Law of Contract 25.105;

(vi) Commercial Law 25.204 or Advanced Commercial Law 25.302;

(vii) Company Law and Partnership 25.208 or Company Finance 25.309;

(viii) Industrial Law 25.212;

(ix) Income Tax 25.221; and

(c) for this degree has in addition passed no fewer than eight Stage II or Stage III papers (including no fewer than three Stage III papers from the subjects Accounting, Economics and Management Studies) selected from those specifically listed in the Schedule, in the subjects Accounting, Economics, Management Studies, Mathematics and Computer Science, shall be deemed to have satisfied the requirements for this degree.

(2) The papers so credited to this degree under this Regulation shall be admitted as cross-credits, exemptions, or additional cross-credits as the case may be for the purpose of Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### **BCom/BA, BCom/BSc**

13. (1) A candidate whose academic record is, in the opinion of the Dean of the Faculty of Commerce, of sufficiently high standard, may, with the permission of the Senate, be admitted to a conjoint course of study for this Degree and the Degree either of BA or of BSc (in this Regulation called "a conjoint course").

(2) Admission to a conjoint course of study shall be either at the beginning of that course or immediately after the first year of academic study either for this Degree or the Degree of BA or of BSc.

(3) A candidate taking a conjoint course shall be required to re-enrol for it, with the permission of the Dean of the Faculty of Commerce and of the Dean of the other Faculty concerned, in each year after the year of first enrolment (so that a continuous enrolment is maintained).

(4) A candidate who has taken a conjoint course and who

(a) has passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Degree of Bachelor of Science the following papers:

(i) two papers selected from

Mathematics, Applied 26.180, 26.181

Mathematics, Pure 26.120, 26.121, 26.122, 26.140, 26.141, 26.142

Computer Science 07.100, 07.105

Economics 13.102

Management Studies 72.100;

(ii) Economics 13.100, 13.101; or 13.103, 13.104; and

(b) for Part I of this degree has passed

(i) Accounting 01.100, 01.101; or 01.102, 01.103;

(ii) Commercial Law 02.100; and

(c) for Part II of this degree has passed no fewer than seven Stage II or Stage III papers selected from those specifically listed in the Schedule, in the subjects Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Studies, Mathematics and Computer Science, including no fewer than three Stage III papers selected from the subjects Accounting, Economics, and Management Studies; and

(d) has completed the requirements for either the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Degree of Bachelor of Science,

shall be deemed to have satisfied the requirements for this degree.

(5) The papers so credited to this degree under this Regulation shall be admitted as cross-credits, exemptions, or additional cross-credits as the case may be for the purpose of Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### **Elective Papers**

14. Except as provided in Regulation 6 (b), a candidate wishing to take for this Degree any unit, course or paper which is also prescribed for any other degree, shall comply with such of the Regulations for each of those Degrees as apply to that unit, course, or paper.

15. No candidate shall take a subject, unit or paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other subject, unit or paper, and obtain credit for both for this degree.

### **Savings and Transitional Provisions**

16. (1) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(2) A candidate who passed under any of the former Regulations for this degree in any unit of which the papers are also papers under these Regulations shall be credited with passes in those papers under these

Regulations provided that the Senate is satisfied that the prescription in any such paper is at least the equivalent of that prescribed under these Regulations.

(3) A candidate who enrolled for the degree before 1971 may be permitted by the Senate to complete the requirements for the degree by following a prescribed Course of Study.

(4) The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

17. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1977.

### Schedule

1. This schedule sets out paper numbers, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions and other conditions applying to papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce.

2. The schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.

4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.

5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.

6. A candidate may not take a further stage of a subject until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements for that stage of the subject.

### SCHEDULE

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>ACCOUNTING</b>				
Accounting – Stage I				
01.100 Accounting (a)				
01.101 Accounting (b)		01.100		
01.102 Financial Accounting		01.103		
01.103 Management Accounting		01.102		
Accounting – Stage II				
01.200 Financial Accounting	01.100			
01.201 Accounting for Special Entities	01.100			
01.202 Cost & Management Accounting	01.101 or (01.102 and 01.103)			
01.203 Accounting Systems & Data Processing	01.101; 72.100			
01.204 Public Sector Accounting	01.100			
01.205 Financial Management	01.100 and 01.101 or 01.102 and 01.103			
Accounting – Stage III				
01.300 Financial Accounting	01.200			
01.301 Auditing	01.200	01.203		
01.302 Cost & Management Accounting	01.202			
01.303 Investment Analysis & Planning	01.205			

### COMMERCIAL LAW

Commercial Law – Stage I

02.100 Introduction to Law

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
Commercial Law – Stage II				
02.200 Contract Law	02.100			
02.201 Finance Law	02.100	02.200		
Commercial Law – Stage III				
02.300 Company Law and Partnership	02.200			02.300 is not available to a candidate who has passed Commercial Law prior to 1969.
02.301 Taxation and Estate Planning	02.200			
†02.302 Industrial Law	02.200			
†02.304 Law of Marketing and Overseas Trade	02.201			

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

Computer Science – Stage I				
07.100 Introduction to Programming			07.100,	
07.101 Elements of Computing			72.100	
07.105 Introduction to Computer Science		07.100	07.100	
Computer Science – Stage II				
07.210 Computer Organization	07.100; 07.105			
07.220 Information Structures and Programming Languages	07.100; 07.105			
07.230 Computing Laboratory	07.100; 07.105			
07.235 Computer Applications	07.100; 07.105	07.230	72.221	
07.290 Numerical Computation	07.100; 26.120, 26.121 or 26.122; 26.140, 26.141 or 26.142			
Computer Science – Stage III				
07.301 Topic in Computer Science (a)	Permission from Head of Department			
07.302 Topic in Computer Science (b)	Permission from Head of Department			
07.303 Topic in Computer Science (c)	Permission from Head of Department			
07.304 Topic in Computer Science (d)	Permission from Head of Department			
07.310 Advanced Computer Organization	07.210; 07.230			
07.320 Advanced Information Structures	07.220; 07.230			
07.340 Operating Systems	07.210; 07.230			
07.350 Theory of Computation	07.100; 26.220		07.250	
07.390 Numerical Analysis	07.290; 26.220 or 26.221 26.240 or 26.241			



Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
----------------	---------------	--------------	-------------	----------------

**ECONOMICS****Economics — Stage I**

**Note:** Students planning to take Stage II papers should offer 13.100 and 13.101. Some Economics III papers require mathematics and statistics prerequisites. Students planning to take Stage III papers should consult the Head of the Department for advice.

13.100	Microeconomics		13.103; 15.147 15.116; 15.136	
13.101	Macroeconomics	13.100	13.103; 15.147; 15.116; 15.136	
13.102	Statistical Methods		26.180; 26.181	13.102 is not available to a candidate who passed 13.202 before 1977.
13.103	Principles of Economics		13.100; 13.101; 15.147; 15.116; 15.136	
13.104	Applied Economics	13.103 or 13.100 and 13.101		

**Economics — Stage II**

13.200	Microeconomics	13.100; 13.101		The Head of Department may waive corequisites for candidates with sufficient previous knowledge (including candidates with a good pass in 13.103 and 13.104)
13.201	Macroeconomics	13.100; 13.101		
13.203	Managerial Economics	13.100 or 13.103		
13.204	Public Economics	13.100; 13.101		
13.205	Introduction to Econometrics	13.100; 13.101; 13.102 or 13.202; or 26.180 or 26.181		
13.210	The Industrialisation of Britain to 1870	13.100; 13.101	17.200	
13.211	The International Economy since 1870	13.100; 13.101	17.201	For papers 13.210, 13.211, 13.213 and 13.214 the Head of Department will waive the prerequisites for candidates with a B- or better pass in 13.103.
13.212	Economics of Socialism	13.100; 13.101 or 13.103		
13.213	Economic History of USA 1776-1940	13.100; 13.101		
13.214	The New Zealand Economy	13.101		13.104 and 13.214 may not be taken concurrently.

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>Economics – Stage III</b>				
<b>Note:</b> Students taking papers 13.300, 13.301, 13.302, 13.303 and 13.305 must have previously passed 26.122, 26.142, 13.102 or 13.202, or alternatives approved by the Head of the Department. Students are strongly recommended to have taken 13.205.				
13.300 Theory of Value	13.200			
13.301 Macroeconomic Theory and Policy	13.200; 13.201			
13.302 Econometrics	13.200 or 13.201		26.381	
*13.303 Operations Research	13.203		72.308	
13.304 International Trade	13.200	13.201		
13.305 Financial Economics	13.200			
13.306 Classical, Marxist and Modern Economic Ideas	13.200 or 13.201			
13.307 Public Expenditure	13.200 or 13.204			
13.308 Economics of Labour	13.200 and 13.201			
*13.309 Special Topic				
13.310 Economic History of Australia and NZ	Any two Stage II Economics papers		17.300	
*13.312 Special Topic				
13.313 Management and Enterprise in the British Economy (1750-1939)	Any two Stage II Economics papers			

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES

Management Studies – Stage I				
72.100	Business Computing		07.101	
Management Studies – Stage II				
*72.200	Organisational Studies	Any four Part I papers	72.203	
72.201	Marketing Management	Any four Part I papers		
72.202	Management Science	72.100; 13.102 or 26.181		Recommended pre-requisite paper 26.122
72.203	Organisational Structures	Any four Part I papers	72.200	
72.204	Organisational Behaviour	Any four Part I papers	32.210	
72.220	Transaction Processing	4 Part I papers including 72.100 and either 01.101, or (01.102 and 01.103)	72.221	With the permission of the Head of Department, 07.100 and 07.105 may serve as a substitute for 72.100 in pre-requisites.
72.221	Programming Laboratory		72.220	
Management Studies – Stage III				
72.300	Policy Studies	72.201, 72.203, 72.204		
72.301	Consumer Behaviour	72.201, 72.204		

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
†72.302 Operations Management	72.202, 72.203			Recommended re- lated paper 02.302.
72.303 Industrial Relations	72.203, 72.204			
*72.304 Management Information Systems	72.100, 72.203, 72.204			
72.306 Marketing Research	72.201; 13.102 or 26.180 or 26.181			
72.307 Personnel Administration	72.203, 72.204			Enrolment in Special Topic papers is sub- ject to the approval of the Head of Depart- ment.
†72.308 Operations Research	72.202, 72.203			
72.309 International Business	72.201, 72.203			
*72.310 Organisational Research Methods	72.203, 72.204, 13.102 or 26.180 or 26.181			
*72.311 Entrepreneurial Behaviour and New Venture Management	72.203, 72.204			
72.312 Special Topic				
72.313 Special Topic				
72.320 Systems Design	72.203, 72.204, 72.220, 72.221	72.321, 72.322		
72.321 Systems Project		72.320, 72.322		
72.322 Information Analysis	72.203, 72.204, 72.220, 72.221	72.320, 72.321		
†72.323 Systems Economics	72.203, 72.204, 72.220, 72.221		72.304	
72.324 Data Communications	72.220 or 07.210 or 07.220			

## MATHEMATICS

### Mathematics, Applied — Stage I

26.180 Principles of Statistics	26.140 or	26.181	No candidate may be credited with more than one of 26.180, 26.181 and 13.102
Note: Credit for 26.181 may be given in lieu of 26.180 for inadequate performance in 26.180	26.141 or 26.142 or 26.241		
26.181 Introduction to Probability and Statistics		26.180	

### Mathematics, Applied — Stage II

26.280 Statistical Theory	26.180, or approval of Head of Department	26.240 or 26.241	
26.281 Statistical Methods	26.181 or 26.180 or approval of Head of Department		

### Mathematics, Applied — Stage III

26.380 Probability	26.180; 26.220 or 26.221; 26.240 or 26.241		
--------------------	--	--	--

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
26.381	Statistical Analysis	26.280; 26.220 or 26.221 or 26.240 or 26.241			
26.391	Optimization in Operations Research	07.100 or equivalent 26.220 or 26.221		26.361	
26.395	Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research	26.180; 07.100; 26.240 or 26.241; or permission of Head of Department		26.361	

## Mathematics, Pure – Stage I

**Note:** Streaming for papers: 26.120, 26.121, 26.140, 26.141 will be based on student's preparation. Students with an A Bursary should enrol in papers: 26.120, 26.140 and students with a qualification of B Bursary or less, 26.121, 26.141 or 26.122, 26.142.

26.120	Principles of Algebra			26.121, 26.122, 26.221	
26.121	Introductory Algebra			26.120, 26.122, 26.221	
26.122	Finite Mathematics			26.120, 26.121, 26.221	
26.140	Principles of Calculus			26.141, 26.142 26.241	
26.141	Introductory Calculus			26.140, 26.142, 26.241	
26.142	Concepts of Calculus			26.140, 26.141, 26.241	

## Mathematics, Pure – Stage II

One or two papers from courses as prescribed for BSc

At the discretion of  
the Head of De-  
partment of Mathe-  
matics and Statistics

## Mathematics, Pure – Stage III

One, two or three papers from courses as prescribed for BSc

At the discretion of  
Head of Department  
of Mathematics and  
Statistics.

**ELECTIVE PAPERS – any Stage**

One, two or three papers as prescribed for any other Degree not already taken for this Degree.

The Head of  
Department of the  
subject concerned  
may require the  
candidate to pass in  
a paper or course as  
prescribed for any  
other Degree.

\*This paper will not be taught in the current Calendar year.

†This paper may not be taught during current Calendar year unless sufficient staff is available.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCE

### MCom

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Students not qualified to enrol for MCom by reason of Clause 1 (a) of these Regulations may be permitted to enrol for MPhil.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Commerce shall before his enrolment for this Degree
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce, and
  - (b) (i) have fulfilled the prerequisites for his subject as shown in the Schedule to these Regulations, and (ii) have obtained a grade higher than C- in each Stage III paper in the subject which he proposes to take for this Degree,
 provided that, in special circumstances where the Head of Department so recommends, the Senate may for the respective purposes of this Subclause (b) of this Regulation, waive such preconditions as it thinks fit.
2. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements of and pass the examination in one of the subjects prescribed in the Schedule.
3. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 2, a candidate for this Degree may with the permission of the Senate take
  - (i) one Stage III or one Master's paper or (ii) one Stage III and one Master's paper, or (iii) two Master's papers, in a subject other than the one in which he is taking his Degree, if each such paper is related to the candidate's research interests. Each such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the Master's course of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.
4. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other paper he has passed or is taking and obtain credit for both for this Degree.
5. A candidate shall not take for this Degree a subject in which he has already passed for the Degree of Master of Arts or the Degree of Master of Philosophy.
6. Except as provided in the Schedule a candidate shall take all papers required for this Degree in the same year.
7. Subject to Regulation 9 (d), a candidate shall complete the requirements for this Degree within twenty-four months of his first enrolment for the Degree.

#### Honours

- 8 (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) To be eligible for the award of Honours a candidate shall pass no fewer than four papers in the first year of enrolment for this Degree.
- (c) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate sits an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory, provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or exceptional circumstances beyond his control (certified as under the Aegrotat Pass or Compassionate Pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to present himself at a subsequent written examination and still be eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provisions of Regulation 7 above, and to Regulation 8 and 9 of the Examination Regulations.

#### Thesis

- 9 (a) A thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
- (b) A thesis may be presented in the first year of enrolment for this Degree only with the approval of the Head of Department concerned.
- (c) A candidate may enrol for a thesis in any year subsequent to the first year of enrolment for this Degree only if he obtains an average grade of at least B - in the papers sat in the first year.

(d) A candidate shall present his thesis not later than twenty-four months after his first enrolment for this Degree, provided that this period may be extended by the Head of Department concerned for not more than one year and in exceptional circumstances for longer by the Senate.

(e) If the examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to represent it subject to Regulation 9 (d) above by a later date specified by the Head of Department.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

### **Personal Course of Study**

10. The personal Course of study of a candidate shall require the approval of the appropriate Head of Department.

11. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

### **Savings and Transitional Provisions**

12 (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation the course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(b) A candidate enrolled for this Degree under the Regulations published in the 1974 *Calendar* may complete the Degree under those Regulations or he may elect to transfer to the present Regulations. A candidate electing to transfer to these Regulations shall not be permitted to present papers which in the opinion of the Head of Department concerned contain a substantial portion of work included in papers for which the candidate has received credits.

13. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1975.

## **SCHEDULE**

### **(1) Accounting**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Accounting including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Six papers; or four papers and a thesis (01.601) which shall count as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (01.603) which shall count as one paper.

To be eligible for honours a candidate shall pass no fewer than four papers in the first year of enrolment for this degree. A candidate not seeking honours may enrol for a minimum of three papers in the first year. The papers shall be selected from 01.400 to 01.414 and 02.400 to 02.406.

Provided that a candidate may, with the approval of the Head of the Department, substitute for one or two Accounting papers for this Degree advanced papers not already taken by him from those prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce in either Accounting or Commercial Law or both as follows:

Two advanced BCom papers for one paper for this Degree; three advanced BCom papers for two papers for this Degree; and further provided that a candidate substituting in terms of this clause is not eligible for the award of Honours.

### **(2) Economics**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Economics including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Six papers; or four papers and a thesis (13.601) which shall count as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (13.603) which shall count as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 13.400 to 13.413.

Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 6, a candidate presenting five papers and a research essay or six papers shall either present all papers or all papers and the research essay in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present the remaining two papers or the one paper and research essay in the year next following.

### **(3) Management Studies**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subjects Management Studies, Accounting or Economics including any two Stage III Management Studies papers.

*Requirements:* Five papers and a research essay (72.603) which counts as one paper, or four papers and a thesis (72.601) which counts as two papers. The papers shall be selected from 72.400 to 72.415.

In special circumstances and with the permission of the Head of the Department, a candidate may present five papers and a research essay or four papers and a thesis in the first year of enrolment for this degree. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 6, a candidate presenting five papers and a research essay shall either present all papers in the first year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present the remaining one paper and research essay in the year next following.

# THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION

## MBA

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the Course not later than 15 January or such other date as the Senate may determine, of the year in which the candidate proposes to enrol. An intending candidate who seeks admission on the basis of a professional qualification must apply for admission in accordance with the requirements of the Admission Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall before enrolment for this Degree

- (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree and have had not less than two years of relevant employment experience, or
- (b) hold an approved professional qualification in Accountancy, Engineering or other approved discipline, and have had not less than two years of relevant employment experience, or
- (c) have completed with outstanding merit the requirements for the award of the Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration.

2. Admission to the Course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Head of the Department of Management Studies.

3. A candidate for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall follow a course of study of not fewer than two years.

### Course Content

4. The Course of study for the Degree shall consist of two parts, each of which shall be passed as a whole.  
Part 1

70.400, 70.401 Fundamental Concepts for Business and Industrial Administration

70.410, 70.411 Business and Industrial Administration Functions

70.420, 70.421 Management Skills and Policy

Part 2

70.500 Organisation, Strategy, Information and Control

70.510 Business, Government, Society and the Environment

70.520 Management Project (value 2 papers)

### Credits

5. A candidate admitted to the course of study under Regulation 1 (c) shall be granted credit for Part 1.

### Transitional Provision

6 (a) Subject to Regulations 1 and 2, the holder of a Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration awarded under the Regulations in force prior to 1 January, 1983 may be admitted to the Course of study for the Degree of Master of Business Administration.

(b) A candidate admitted under Regulation 6 (a) shall complete the requirements for the degree by following a Course of study prescribed by Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Management Studies

7. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1983.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF ACCOUNTANCY

#### Accounting 1

##### 01.100 Accounting (a)

Basic financial accounting method including an introduction to external reporting.

##### 01.101 Accounting (b)

Introduction to accounting theory, management accounting and the design and operation of business information systems.

##### 01.102 Financial Accounting

Basic concepts and techniques in business accounting and financial management.

##### 01.103 Management Accounting

Budgeting and cost accounting for business planning, control and capital expansion.

#### Accounting II

##### 01.200 Financial Accounting

Company accounting and finance.

##### 01.201 Accounting for Special Entities

Trust accounting; farm accounting and other selected topics.

##### 01.202 Cost and Management Accounting

Budgetary and standard cost control systems, internal control and divisional performance appraisal.

##### 01.203 Accounting Systems and Data Processing

Accounting systems for information and control, commercial data processing and computer programming.

##### 01.204 Public Sector Accounting

Central, regional and local government accounting and finance including the accounts of government trading corporations and other statutory bodies.

##### 01.205 Financial Management

Fundamental aspects, concepts of value and risk, theory of capital structure, sources of finance and basics of capital budgeting.

#### Accounting III

##### 01.300 Financial Accounting

Contemporary issues in financial accounting theory and practice.

##### 01.301 Auditing

##### 01.302 Cost and Management Accounting

Accounting for planning, decision-making and control.

##### 01.303 Investment Analysis and Planning

Security analysis, and portfolio formation and evaluation. Information and the behaviour of capital markets. The regulations of capital markets.

#### Accounting for MCom and Honours

The requirements for the MCom degree are six papers, or five papers and a research essay, or four

papers and a thesis. To be eligible for Honours a candidate must take at least four papers in the first year and satisfy the remaining requirements during the following year. A candidate not seeking Honours may enrol for a minimum of three papers in the first year and three papers in the following year. (Refer course regulations).

##### 01.400 Accounting Theory

##### 01.401 Contemporary Financial Accounting Issues

##### 01.402 Management Accounting

##### 01.403 Contemporary Price Level Accounting Issues

##### 01.404 History of Accounting Thought

##### 01.405 Accounting Information Systems

##### 01.406 Behavioural Aspects of Accounting

##### 01.407 Budgetary Control

##### 01.408 Auditing

##### 01.409 Special Topic

##### 01.410 Evaluation of Accounting Information

##### 01.411 Contemporary Issues in Accounting for the Primary Industry

##### 01.412 Theoretical and Empirical Research in Accounting

##### 01.413 Management Decision Making and Control in the Government Sector

##### 01.414 International Accounting

##### 01.601 Thesis

##### 01.603 Research Essay

##### 02.400 Special Topic

##### 02.401 Taxation

##### 02.402 Forensic Accounting

##### 02.403 Law of Marketing

##### 02.404 Computer Law

##### 02.405 Special Topic

##### 02.406 Export Law

##### 02.407 Advanced Finance Law

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current Calendar year. Students intending to read for MCom should consult the staff toward the end of the previous year about preliminary vocational reading.

#### Commercial Law I

##### 02.100 Introduction to Law

An introduction to the New Zealand legal system.

#### Commercial Law II

##### 02.200 Contract Law

The principles of the law of contract and of agency.

##### 02.201 Finance Law

Legal methods of raising and securing finance, including chattel mortgages, agreements for hire purchase and sale of goods, suretyship, insurance, and negotiable instruments.



**Commercial Law III****02.300 Company Law and Partnership**

The general principles of company law and partnership in New Zealand.

**02.301 Taxation and Estate Planning**

The general principles of the law and practice of land and income tax, property speculation tax, estate and gift duties and estate planning.

**†02.302 Industrial Law**

Legal problems in industry, business and professional practice.

**†02.304 Law of Marketing and Overseas Trade**

The law relating to the marketing of goods inside New Zealand and for the export market.

**DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE**

For Prescriptions see under BSc.

**DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS****Economics I**

**Note:** Papers 13.100 and 13.101 are for students who wish to advance beyond Stage I in Economics. Mathematics up to University Entrance level will be assumed. All other students are advised to take Papers 13.103 and 13.104.

**13.100 Microeconomics**

The economic activity of individuals, households and business firms, covering markets and prices, demand, supply and distribution.

**13.101 Macroeconomics**

The economic activity of the complete national economy and its interrelationship with the rest of the world, covering the measurement and level of economic activity, money, banking and prices, government economic policy and international trade.

**13.102 Statistical Methods**

An introduction to statistical reasoning and its applications in business and economics. Probability distributions, statistical estimation and decision-making.

**13.103 Principles of Economics**

Basic principles of the economic behaviour of individuals, households and business firms and of the complete national economy and its interrelationships with the rest of the world.

**13.104 Applied Economics**

The application of basic principles of economics to selected New Zealand policy issues including trade, unemployment, inflation, regional development, local authority reorganisation and finance, population and the environment.

**Economics II****13.200 Microeconomics**

The economic behaviour of individuals, firms and industries. The course consists of theory and of selected applications in about equal proportions.

**13.201 Macroeconomics**

A study of the determination and interaction of basic macroeconomic variables like output, employment, the money supply, and the price level.

**13.203 Managerial Economics**

A survey of the use of applied micro-economic techniques for solving resource management problems.

**13.204 Public Economics**

The study of the public sector's expenditures and revenues and their impact on income distribution. Particular policy issues in New Zealand such as education, poverty and pollution will be studied.

**13.205 Econometrics**

An introduction to model building and research methodology in economics. Selected empirical topics in both micro- and macroeconomics will be studied.

**13.210 The Industrialisation of Britain to 1870**

An introductory economic history of the first country to undergo industrialisation.

**13.211 The International Economy since 1870**

The development of the institutional framework of trade, international monetary arrangements and the principal trading nations.

**13.212 Economics of Socialism**

An introduction to the economic theory of socialism, together with case studies of planned socialist states in Europe and Asia.

**13.213 Economic History of USA 1776-1940****13.214 The New Zealand Economy**

A survey of problems and issues relating to the New Zealand economy.

**Economics III**

Students intending to take any Economics III papers should see the Head of the Department before the end of the previous year for advice on combinations of papers and reading lists.

**13.300 Theory of Value**

The theory of value and distribution from both neo-classical and Marxist perspectives. Topics include sectoral models, factor markets and NZ case studies.

**13.301 Macroeconomic Theory and Policy**

Employment and output theory; money; models of growth and fluctuations.

**13.302 Econometrics****\*13.303 Operations Research****13.304 International Trade****13.305 Financial Economics**

Microeconomic theory extended to cover time, uncertainty, taxation, transaction costs, and such legal entities as companies.

**13.306 Classical, Marxist & Modern Economic Ideas**

An introduction to the history of economic ideas and to comparative economics.

**13.307 Public Expenditure**

Welfare economics, social policy and public sector pricing and investment decisions.

**13.308 Economics of Labour****\*13.309 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**13.310 Economic History of Australia and New Zealand****\*13.312 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**13.313 Management and Enterprise in the British Economy 1750-1939****Economics for MA, MCom and Honours**

**Note:** Except by permission of the Head of the Department no candidate shall take the subject Economics unless he has passed either 13.300 or 13.301 for Economics III.

Candidates who propose to take paper 13.402 must consult the lecturer in charge regarding Mathematics papers to be taken in the Bachelor's degree course. Students intending to take any of the Honours papers should see the Head of the Department before the end of the previous year for advice on combinations of papers and reading lists.

**13.400 Growth and Fluctuations****13.401 Monetary Theory****13.402 Econometrics****13.403 Operations Research****13.404 Development and Planning****13.405 Public Economics****13.406 The History of Economic Thought****13.407 Comparative Economics: Primitive, Peasant, Industrial and Socialist Economies****13.408 Urban Economics****13.409 Mathematical Programming****13.410 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

**13.411 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

**13.412 Economic Forecasting****13.413 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

**13.601 Thesis****13.603 Research Essay**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current Calendar year.

**DEPARTMENT OF MANAGEMENT STUDIES**

Management Studies emphasises the integration of the specialised functional disciplines which are common to both public and private enterprises. The systematic processes of management are policy-making, planning, organising, executing and controlling the overall activities so that performance meets or exceeds pre-set objectives.

**Management Studies I****72.100 Business Computing**

Introduction to computer hardware and software systems specific to business operations.

**Management Studies II****\*72.200 Organisational Studies**

A behavioural and structural analysis of organisations, and the management of human resources in support of organisational aims.

**72.201 Marketing Management**

Factors affecting demand in various types of markets and methods of satisfying it through product planning, pricing, promotion, distribution and general organisation and strategy.

**72.202 Management Science**

An introduction to mathematical, statistical and computer techniques to assist decision-making, planning and policy formation in the public and private sectors, including applications to financial, marketing and operations management.

**72.203 Organisational Structures**

The study of organisational structures for differing tasks and environments. Flows of work, material, information and decisions. Formal and informal communications. Organisational design.

**72.204 Organisational Behaviour**

Individual and group behaviour in organisations.

**72.220 Transaction Processing**

Methods of document processing, record-keeping, and control for computer and supporting clerical systems.

**72.221 Programming Laboratory**

Practice and experimentation in the use of a major business programming language.

**Management Studies III****72.300 Policy Studies**

Formation of strategy and policies to reconcile external demands and opportunities with internal capabilities of an enterprise.

**72.301 Consumer Behaviour**

A review of behavioural science concepts applicable to complex consumer behaviour. Application of these concepts in case material.

**†72.302 Operations Management**

Planning, organisation and control of manufacturing and other processes for the production of goods and services.

**72.303 Industrial Relations**

Development of industrial relations theory and of theories of collective bargaining. Managerial ideologies and their impact on industrial relations behaviour. Trade unionism and ideologies of the labour movement. The political activities of trade unions and employer organisations. Union democracy and oligarchy and the internal government of trade unions. The role of government in industrial relations and in wage and salary determination. Strikes and disputes. Industrial democracy and issues and experiments in employee participation and control. Multinational companies and industrial relations.

**\*72.304 Management Information Systems**

The management information system applied to the decision-making processes of planning, organising and controlling.

**72.306 Marketing Research**

Identification of information needs for marketing decisions, and development of appropriate data collection and reporting techniques.

**72.307 Personnel Administration**

Policies and procedures of personnel management. The role of the personnel manager. The recruitment, selection and allocation of labour. Job and organisational design and the personnel function. Manpower forecasting and manpower planning. Training, development and performance appraisal of staff. Incentive payment systems and the design and administration of wage and salary policies at the level of the firm.

**†72.308 Operation Research****72.309 International Business**

International trade forces. Investigation of the international business environment and formulation of appropriate multi-national business and marketing strategies.

**\*72.310 Organisational Research Methods**

Methods for scientific research concerning organisations, including the design of field experiments and evaluation methods.

**\*72.311 Entrepreneurial Behaviour and New Venture Management****72.312 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**72.313 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**72.320 Systems Design**

Concepts and practices of computer software architectures are introduced and applied to the design of business systems.

**72.321 Systems Project**

Systems analysis, design, and development techniques combined to solve a specific problem.

**72.322 Information Analysis**

Determination of information needs and patterns of data flow within a data base environment.

**†72.323 Systems Economics**

Determination of technical, operational and economic feasibility of computer proposals.

**72.324 Data Communications**

Data communications technology, facilities and planning are introduced in context of distributed computer systems.

**Management Studies for MCom and Honours****72.400 Case Studies in General Management**

Practice in making balanced operational decisions affecting finance, marketing, R & D, production, and personnel, at the level in the organisation where these specialist activities come together under the authority of a general manager.

**72.401 Advanced Marketing Problems**

Identification of current trends in various markets

and development of strategic marketing decisions affecting these markets.

**72.402 Management of Change (in the Post-Industrial Society)**

Innovation and development of new products and services, using forecasting and long range planning techniques, together with aspects of behavioural analysis and organisational development.

**72.403 Industrial Relations: Theory and Practice**

Examination of industrial relations practice in New Zealand in the context of theories of industrial relations behaviour.

**72.404 Real Time Management Information Systems**

Application of real time technology to managerial systems of planning, organising, and controlling.

**72.405 Organisational Development**

Study of the ways in which organisations can best adapt to the challenges of modern society, advances in technology, and continuing changes in their environment.

**72.406 Entrepreneurial Behaviour and Small Business Management**

Theories of entrepreneurial behaviour and their application to small business. The managerial process in the small firm.

**72.407 Empirical Study in New Zealand Management**

Investigation into a current problem facing the management of a local enterprise.

**72.408 Operations Research****72.409 Mathematical Programming****72.410 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**72.411 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**72.412 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**72.413 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**72.414 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**72.415 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**72.601 Thesis****72.603 Research Essay**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current calendar year.

**Business Administration for MBA****70.400, 70.401 Fundamental Concepts for Business and Industrial Administration**

The course will be modular encompassing the following fields of study:

Accounting: financial reporting and analysis; accounting methods; valuation of assets and liabilities;

accounting standards and auditing; taxation; cost accounting; management accounting and control. Computing: transaction processing; systems and information analysis; computer software and hardware.

Decision analysis: analysis and interpretation of numerical information; quantitative decision-making techniques.

Economics: resource allocation; industry and market structures; public sector economics; economic regulations; national production and income; inflation, growth, employment, the balance of payments and the monetary system; international economics.

Law: legal system; contract and company law.

Organisational behaviour: human needs; personal and career development; individual and group behaviour; leadership; organisation structures.

#### **70.410, 70.411 Business and Industrial Administration Functions**

The course will be modular encompassing the following fields of study:

Finance: financial planning and budgeting; working capital management; investment decisions; cost of capital and sources of funds; financial structure; dividend policy.

Marketing: consumer behaviour; market research; product and service selection; pricing; promotion; distribution of goods and services; international marketing.

Operations and Production: product and service design; engineering economy; facilities location and layout; work methods, measurement and standards; man-machine systems, automation and job design; capacity management; operations scheduling; inventory and resource management; operations control; quality control; reliability and maintenance.

Personnel: job-design; personnel selection; training, development and performance appraisal; remuneration policies.

#### **70.420, 70.421 Management Skills and Policy**

Skills: Individual and group training in the skills for information-processing, peer relationships, leadership, conflict-resolution, resource allocation, decision-making and entrepreneurship necessary in general management.

Policy: Case studies and readings focussing on management policy for operating and administrative decisions.

#### **70.500 Organisation, Strategy, Information and Control**

Strategic management; organisation design and development; management information and decision support systems; research and development; technology and innovation; industrial relations; new enterprise and small business management; project management.

#### **70.510 Business, Government, Society and the Environment**

Business and the legal system; political analysis; social and community issues; world resources and the environment; international business.

#### **70.520 Management Project**

Value 1 paper. A project embodying detailed field investigation of a management problem and preparation of a report on the design, analysis, results and conclusions of the study.

### **DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS**

For Prescriptions see Index.

### **THE PROFESSIONAL EXAMINATIONS FOR MEMBERSHIP OF THE NEW ZEALAND SOCIETY OF ACCOUNTANTS**

#### **Exemptions**

Exemptions are granted by the New Zealand Society of Accountants to students who have passed degree subjects as follows:

(a) Students who passed in the unit Accounting II prior to 1971 should consult the 1974 Calendar page 345. Other students who enrolled for the first time prior to 1975 should consult the 1976 Calendar page 297.

(b) Other students will be required to complete the BCom degree passing in the Accounting papers: 01.100, 01.101, 01.200, 01.201, or 01.204 or 01.205, 01.202, 01.203, 01.300, 01.301, 01.302 or 01.303 and the Commercial Law papers numbered: 02.100, 02.200 or 02.303, 02.201, 02.300 and 02.301.

Any of the above papers not passed for credit to the BCom must be passed for COP.

Students should note that exemptions from the New Zealand Society of Accountants' Professional Examinations can be authorised by the Society only; so those with any queries regarding the Society's requirements should write directly to the Education Officer, New Zealand Society of Accountants, PO Box 11-342 Wellington.

### **THE EXAMINATIONS FOR MEMBERSHIP OF THE INSTITUTE OF COST AND MANAGEMENT ACCOUNTANTS (UNITED KINGDOM)**

BCom graduates who have followed a course covering the papers required by the New Zealand Society of Accountants and the Cost and Management Accounting Division for exemption from their examinations are exempt from foundation stage, sections A and B and professional stage, Part I of the ICMA examinations (10 out of 18 papers).

All other BCom graduates are exempt from foundation stage, sections A and B of the ICMA examinations (6 out of 18 papers).

Candidates who consider that they may be eligible for exemption under the relevant regulations should write to the Institute of Cost and Management Accountants, 63 Portland Place, London WIN 4AB, United Kingdom, specifying the exemption claimed and enclosing relevant certificates.

---

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

---

### DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS AND INDUSTRIAL ADMINISTRATION

#### DipBIA

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the Course not later than 15 January of the year in which he wishes to enrol.*

*An intending candidate who seeks admission on the basis of a professional qualification, the New Zealand Certificate of Engineering, or practical experience must apply for admission in accordance with the requirements of the Admission Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. (i) Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration shall before his enrolment for this Diploma
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree of the University of Auckland, and have had not less than two years of practical experience, or
  - (b) (i) hold or have qualified for the award of either a professional qualification in Accountancy, Engineering, Science or other approved discipline or a New Zealand Certificate in Engineering or in Science with outstanding merit and
  - (ii) have had not less than two years of practical experience; or
  - (c) have had not less than five years of practical experience.
  - (ii) In this regulation 'practical experience' means responsible managerial experience in business or industry.
2. A candidate shall be required to satisfy the Senate that his knowledge of Mathematics is adequate for the course.
3. A candidate for the Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration shall follow a course of study of not less than one year.

#### Course Content

4. The course of study for the Diploma shall be passed as a whole and shall consist of the following subjects
  - Fundamental Concepts for Business and Industrial Administration 70.400 and 70.401.
  - Business and Industrial Administration Functions 70.410, 70.411.
  - Management Skills and Policy 70.420, 70.421.

#### Savings and Transitional Provisions

5. A candidate who enrolled for the diploma before 1983 may be permitted to complete the requirements for the diploma by following a course of study prescribed by the Senate.

---

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR Dip BIA

There is during the current Calendar year a limitation on the number of candidates that may be enrolled in the courses for MBA and Dip BIA. The maximum number which may be enrolled for the first time is 30. The Dip BIA is designed as a two-year part-time course, or for a limited number of candidates, as a one-year full-time course. Classes are held during the mornings from 8.00 a.m. to 12.30 p.m., and there is also a total of six weeks full-time study. Part-time candidates normally attend morning classes twice weekly and for three full-time weeks in each year of study.

In general, for part-time candidates the examination requirements for 70.400, 70.401 and 70.420 will be met by the end of the first year and for 70.410, 70.411 and 70.421 by the end of the second year of study.

Further details are contained in a handbook available free from the Enquiry counter, Registry, 24 Princess St, Auckland. Enquiries may be made to the Director of the Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration course.

For the prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations refer to the Prescriptions for the Degree of Master of Business Administration.

Blank Page

---

# Faculty of Law

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	276 Degree of Bachelor of Laws
	280 Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)
	282 Law Professional Examinations
	283 Degree of Master of Laws
	285 Degree of Master of Jurisprudence

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	287 Degree of Bachelor of Laws
	289 Law and Practice in N.Z. Examinations
	290 Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)
	292 Law Professional Examinations
	292 Degree of Master of Laws and Master of Jurisprudence

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	295 Diploma in Criminology
---	----------------------------

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS

#### LLB

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws shall be required to
  - (a) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years;
  - (b) pass an Intermediate Examination and three Law Examinations;
  - (c) carry out work in the detailed application of law to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law ("the Faculty").

#### Examinations

2. (1) A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Law Examination, so that the candidate's performance in all subjects of the examination shall be taken into consideration: provided that
  - (a) A candidate who has failed to pass any Law Examination as a whole may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a subject or subjects of that examination and permitted in a subsequent year to present the subject or subjects not so credited together with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding Law Examination.
  - (b) A candidate who has passed the Intermediate Examination may at the discretion of the Senate be permitted to present either Part A only or Part B only of the First Law Examination, presenting the remaining part in a subsequent year together (if the candidate so wishes) with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding examination.
  - (c) A candidate who is undertaking the Degree or any part of the Degree part-time or in conjunction with any other degree shall be required to pass an examination consisting of such work, less than the full examination, as the Senate may in its discretion determine, and present the remaining part of the examination in a subsequent year, together (if the candidate so wishes) with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding examination.
- (2) A candidate to whom any of the foregoing provisos apply shall be required to pass as a whole an examination consisting of the subjects taken in any year, so that performance in all subjects taken in that year shall be considered.
- (3) A candidate who has failed only one subject of a Law Examination may be required by the Senate to pass in the following February a special examination in that subject to be credited with a pass in the examination as a whole.

#### Subjects

3. The examinations and subjects for this Degree are:

#### Intermediate Examination

in subjects prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts ("the BA Degree") or Bachelor of Science ("the BSc Degree"), as follows—

- (a) Two arts papers, being any two papers at any stage or stages in
  - (i) English; or
  - (ii) Any other Language subject listed in the Schedule to the Regulations for the BA Degree; or
  - (iii) Philosophy
 and
- (b) not less than
  - (i) Four arts papers (at any stage or stages), or
  - (ii) Twenty-four science credits, or
  - (iii) An equivalent combination of two or three arts papers (at any stage or stages) with 18, 12 or 6 science credits respectively.

**Note:** The Language subjects listed in the Schedule to the Regulations for the BA Degree are: Chinese, Indonesian, Russian, French, Italian, Scandinavian Studies, German, Japanese, Spanish, Greek, Latin, Hebrew, Maori.



## First Law Examination

### Part A

- 25.103 Legal System
- 25.102 Constitutional Law

### Part B

- 25.101 Criminal Law
- 25.104 The Law of Torts
- 25.105 The Law of Contract

## Second Law Examination

- 25.201 Land Law
  - 25.202 Equity and the Law of Succession
  - 25.203 Introduction to Commercial Law
  - or
  - 25.204 Commercial Law
  - Together with selected subjects from
  - 25.205 Administrative Law
  - 25.206 Advanced Contract and Tort
  - 25.207 Advanced Criminal Law
  - 25.208 Company Law and Partnership
  - 25.209 Copyright, Patents, Trademarks and Unfair Competition
  - 25.210 Criminology
  - 25.211 Family Law
  - 25.212 Industrial Law
  - 25.213 International Institutions
  - 25.214 International Law
  - 25.215 Introduction to Company Law and Partnership
  - 25.216 Introduction to Family Law
  - 25.218 Legal History
  - 25.220 Local Government Law
  - 25.221 Income Tax
  - 25.222 Roman Law
  - 25.223 Women and the Law
  - 25.224 Pacific Legal Studies
  - 25.225 Law and Society
  - 25.226 Legal Analysis
  - 25.227 Legal Theory
  - 25.228, 25.229, 25.230, 25.231, 25.232, 25.233, 25.234, 25.235, 25.236 Special Topics approved by the Dean of the Faculty ("the Dean").
- Candidate may not include both Introduction to Commercial Law 25.203 and Commercial Law 25.204 or Company Law and Partnership 25.208 and Introduction to Company Law and Partnership 25.215 or Family Law 25.211 and Introduction to Family Law 25.216 as part of the degree.

## Third Law Examination

- Selected subjects from
- 25.301 Advanced Administrative Law
  - 25.302 Advanced Commercial Law
  - 25.303 Advanced Constitutional Law
  - 25.304 Advanced Criminology
  - 25.305 Advanced Family Law
  - 25.306 Advanced Industrial Law
  - 25.307 Advanced International Law
  - 25.308 Civil Procedure
  - 25.309 Company Finance
  - 25.310 Comparative Law
  - 25.311 Conflict of Laws

25.312 Creditors Remedies  
 25.313 Environmental Law  
 25.314 Evidence  
 25.315 International Trade  
 25.316 Law Reform  
 25.317 Legal Philosophy  
 25.319 Planning Law  
 25.320 Restitution  
 25.321 Supervised Research  
 25.322 Vendor and Purchaser  
 25.323 Estate and Tax Planning  
 25.324 Air and Space Law  
 25.325 Maori Land Law  
 25.326, 25.327, 25.328, 25.329, 25.330, 25.331, 25.332, 25.333, 25.334. Special Topics approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

And

any one or more optional subjects prescribed for the Second Law Examination.

**Note:** In any academic year, any optional subject for the Second or Third Law Examinations may be withdrawn if there are insufficient staff to teach it or too few enrolments to warrant its being taught.

4. In respect of the arts papers and science credits for the Intermediate Examination a candidate shall be required to comply with all relevant regulations for the BA Degree or the BSc Degree as the case may be (including regulations and requirements relating to corequisites, prerequisites, restrictions, combinations of subjects and practical work).

### **Exemptions**

5. (1) A candidate who has been credited for the BA Degree or the BSc Degree with any papers or credits required for the Intermediate Examination shall be credited with them for the purposes of this Degree also.  
 (2) A candidate who is a graduate of any University in New Zealand shall be exempted from passing the Intermediate Examination and shall pursue a course of study for this Degree for a period of not less than three years.  
 (3) In granting admission ad eundem statum to a candidate from an overseas University in one or more subjects of the Degree the Senate may require that the candidate shall pass an examination in the law and practice in New Zealand, covering such matters as may from time to time be prescribed by the Senate. The examination shall be at a time and place fixed by the Vice-Chancellor and the fee for it shall be \$20.

### **Practical Courses**

6. No candidate shall be admitted to this Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of Regulation 1(c).

### **Approval of Courses**

7. (1) The personal course of study of every candidate shall require the approval of the Senate.  
 (2) The Senate may delegate to the Faculty the power to approve personal courses of study and also the discretionary powers conferred in Regulations 2 and 5 of these Regulations.  
 (3) The candidate may appeal to the Senate where approval of a personal course of study has been withheld by a decision of the Faculty acting under the delegation of any of the powers referred to in the last preceding paragraph.

### **Course Requirements**

8. Every candidate shall be required  
 (a) To undertake as part of his Third Law Examination a course of study comprising a sufficient number of advanced law courses. The Faculty shall determine from time to time which subjects shall be advanced courses for the purpose of this requirement and how many of such courses (not exceeding two-fifths of the Third Law Examination) shall be the minimum requirement.  
 (b) To undertake in both his Second and Third Law Examinations a course of study comprising sufficient law subjects to amount to a full-time course of about 14 hours of instruction per week. The Faculty of Law shall from time to time determine the composition of a full-time course for these purposes.

(c) To undertake and satisfy in any subject any tutorial practical writing or test requirements as the Faculty determines from time to time. A candidate who fails to comply with these requirements may not be permitted to sit the final examination.

**Note:** The Handbook of the Faculty of Law will state the advanced subjects, the prerequisites if any, and the weight of each subject within a full-time course of study and the writing and other requirements of the Faculty of Law.

### Courses in Other Faculties

9 (1) In lieu of optional law subjects (totalling not more than one-fifth of the content of the Second and Third Law Examination combined) a candidate may take such papers offered by other Faculties and related to his law studies as are approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law. Before enrolling in the papers the candidate shall obtain the permission of the Head of the Department in which they are being taken and of the Dean of the Faculty of Law; but the Faculty of Law may in special cases apply this provision to a candidate who has previously taken papers in another Faculty which would have qualified under this Regulation if prior approval had been obtained.

(2) Any paper taken by a candidate under this Regulation may be credited only to this Degree.

### Research Paper

10. A candidate for this Degree may with the prior approval of the Dean elect to submit a research paper in lieu of examination in a subject of the Third Law Examination, if the teacher in the subject has certified that the research paper is related to that subject.

### BCom/LLB

11 (1) A candidate shall be credited with any subject named in the left hand column of the schedule to this paragraph of this Regulation if he or she has passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce the paper or papers named opposite that subject in the right hand column of the schedule.

### Schedule

Introduction to Commercial Law 25.203

Company Law and Partnership 25.208

Industrial Law 25.212

Revenue Law 25.221 or Income Tax 25.221

Finance Law 02.201

Company Law and Partnership 02.300

Industrial Law 02.302

Taxation and Estate Planning 02.301

(2) A candidate who has passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce one or more of the papers named in the schedule to this paragraph of this Regulation (called 'approved commerce papers'), and who includes in the course of study for this Degree at least two advanced law courses under Regulation 7, shall be credited

(i) with one optional subject in the Second or Third Law Examination if the candidate has passed one approved commerce paper;

(ii) with two optional subjects in those Examinations if the candidate has passed two or more approved commerce papers;

Any approved commerce paper for which credit is so given shall be counted as an approved paper taken in another Faculty for the purpose of Regulation 8 (but so that paragraph (b) of that Regulation shall not apply to it).

Financial Accounting 01.300

Auditing 01.301

Investment Analysis and Planning 01.303

Law of Marketing and Overseas Trade 02.304

Financial Economics 13.305

Industrial Relations 72.303

(c) Credits under this Regulations shall be additional to any permitted to a candidate under the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

(d) No candidate shall be entitled under this Regulation to credits for more than five law subjects.

### Commencement

12 (1) These regulations shall apply to all students taking the Degree of Bachelor of Laws from 1 January 1973.

(2) Any candidate who began his or her law course before that date shall be entitled to the following credits:

(a) A pass in Legal System before 1973 shall be credited as both pass in Legal System and a pass in Legal History.

(b) A pass in any of the subjects in subclause (ii) of Division III of the 1966 Degree Regulations (1972 Calendar, p.441) shall be credited as a pass in Constitutional Law.

- (c) Subject to the foregoing provisions passes in any of the subjects mentioned in Division I and II of the 1966 Degree Regulations shall be credited as passes in the corresponding subjects in the Regulations for this Degree.
  - (d) Passes in any of the subjects in Division III of the 1966 Degree Regulations shall (unless already credited under subclause (ii) above) be credited as equivalent to one-fifth of either the Second Law or Third Law Examination.
  - (e) A pass in Introduction to Commercial Law shall not be required where the candidate has before 1973 either passed Commercial Law and the Law of Personal Property under the 1966 Degree Regulations or passed or been credited with or exempted from not less than twelve subjects towards his LLB degree.
  - (3) Where the course of any candidate is not specifically covered by the above provisions and in other cases where there is doubt concerning the course of any candidate such course shall be settled by the Dean.
  - (4) Any candidate who began his or her law course before 1967 shall be entitled to the benefit of any transitional provisions then applicable.
- 

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS (HONOURS)

### LLB (Hons)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) shall be required to
  - (a) (i) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years and as prescribed in Regulation 2;
  - (ii) pass an Intermediate Examination and three Law Examinations;
  - (iii) carry out work in the detailed application of law to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law (the "Faculty"), as prescribed in the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws ("the LLB Degree"), excepting Regulation 10 as to the substitution of a research paper in lieu of an examination in Third Law Examination; and
  - (b) present the additional work specified in Regulation 3
 and
- (c) maintain a superior standard of work throughout the course as prescribed in Regulation 6.

#### Course Requirements

2. Every candidate shall be required
  - (a) To take at least one of the following subjects:  
 25.310 Comparative Law  
 25.316 Law Reform  
 25.218 Legal History  
 25.317 Legal Philosophy or any two of  
 25.225 Law and Society, 25.226 Legal Analysis and 25.227 Legal Theory.
  - (b) To undertake as part of his Third Law Examination a course of study comprising a sufficient number of advanced law courses. The Faculty shall determine from time to time which subjects shall be advanced courses for the purposes of this requirement, and how many of such courses (not exceeding two-fifths of the Third Law Examinations) shall be the minimum requirement.
  - (c) To undertake in both his Second and Third Law Examinations, a course of study comprising sufficient law subjects to amount to a full-time course of about 14 hours of instruction per week. The Faculty of Law shall from time to time determine the composition of a full-time course for these purposes.
  - (d) To undertake and satisfy in any subject any tutorial practical writing or test requirements as the Faculty determines from time to time. A candidate who fails to comply with these requirements may not be permitted to sit the final examination.

**Note:** The Handbook of the Faculty of Law will state the advanced subjects, the prerequisites if any, and the weight of each subject within a full-time course of study, and the writing and other requirements of the Faculty of Law.

**Additional Work**

3. In addition to the foregoing requirements, every candidate shall during his or her course undertake the following work:

- (a) Two additional subjects from those listed in Regulation 4, carrying out to the satisfaction of the Faculty such written or other work as may be prescribed by the Dean in connection with those subjects.
- (b) The submission, not later than twelve months after completing the Third Law Examination, of a dissertation (25.604) embodying the results of research undertaken under the direct supervision of a University teacher in the Faculty. The Senate may in its discretion extend the time for the submission of the dissertation.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with the dissertation. See Examination Regulation 14.

**Subjects**

4. The additional subjects provided for in Regulation 3 shall be:

- 25.341 Admiralty Law
- 25.342 Air and Space Law
- 25.343 Aspects of Industrial Law
- 25.344 Business Regulation
- 25.345 Causes of Crime
- 25.346 Civil Rights
- 25.347 Commercial Letters of Credit
- 25.348 Consumer Law
- 25.349 Copyright and Patent Law
- 25.350 Corporation Finance
- 25.351 Economic Regulation
- 25.352 Environmental Law
- 25.353 Estate Planning
- 25.354 Insurance (other than Marine Insurance) Law
- 25.355 International Business and Finance, Law of
- 25.356 Law and Social Problems
- 25.357 Law of Banking
- 25.358 Law of Landlord and Tenant
- 25.359 Law Reform
- 25.360 Law Relating to Computers
- 25.361 Legal Accounting
- 25.362 Legal Aspects of Race Relations
- 25.363 Legal Education
- 25.364 Legal History
- 25.365 Legal Problems of the European Common Market
- 25.366 Local Government Law
- 25.367 Maori Land Law
- 25.368 Marine Insurance Law
- 25.369 Medico-Legal Problems
- 25.370 Military Law
- 25.371 Penology
- 25.372 Problems in Choice of Law
- 25.373 Problems in Contract and Tort
- 25.374 Problems in Criminal Law
- 25.375 Problems in Equity
- 25.376 Problems in Legal Philosophy
- 25.377 Professional Responsibility
- 25.378 Registration of Title to Land
- 25.379 Remedies against the Government
- 25.380 Securities Law
- 25.381 Selected topics in Comparative Law
- 25.382 Shipping Law
- 25.383 Social Control of Land
- 25.384 State and Local Taxation
- 25.385 The Law Relating to Damages

- 25.386 The Legal Process
- 25.387 Trial Practice
- 25.388 United Nations Law and Problems of World Order
- 25.389 Pacific Legal Studies
- 25.390 Women and the Law
- 25.391 Restitution
- 25.392 Advanced studies in a selected topic as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
- 25.393 Advanced studies in a selected topic as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
- 25.394 Advanced studies in a selected topic as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
- 25.395 Advanced studies in a selected topic as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
- 25.396 Advanced studies in a selected topic as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
- 25.397 Advanced studies in a selected topic as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
- 25.398 Advanced studies in a selected topic as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
- 25.604 Dissertation

**Note:** In any academic year, any additional subject may be withdrawn if there are insufficient staff to teach it or too few enrolments to warrant its being taught.

5. Any candidate may with the approval of the Dean elect to present a research paper in lieu of an examination in a subject of the Third Law Examination or a subject listed in Regulation 4. In cases approved by the Dean, notwithstanding anything in Regulation 3, a candidate may present a dissertation in lieu of an examination in a subject of the Third Law Examination

On condition that in either case the teacher in the subject certifies that the research paper or dissertation is related to that subject.

### **Standards**

6. This Degree shall be awarded to candidates who have fulfilled the requirements of these Regulations and whose work throughout the course has been in the opinion of the Faculty of a sufficiently high standard.

### **Transfer to LLB (Hons)**

7. The Senate may, on written application by a candidate who has completed only the First Law Examination and, in special circumstances any other candidate, and without payment of a fee, permit the candidate to transfer to a course under these Regulations; for which the candidate may then be credited with the subjects already passed for the LLB.

### **Transfer to LLB**

8. A candidate whose work does not in the opinion of the Faculty satisfy the standard prescribed in Regulation 6, or who at any stage elects to withdraw from this Degree, shall be entitled to have credited to the LLB Degree without payment of a fee those subjects (being subjects for the LLB Degree) in which the candidate has passed or been credited with a pass.

### **Commencement**

9. These Regulations shall apply to all candidates taking the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) from January 1973, but any candidate who began his or her law course before that date or before 1967 shall be entitled to the credits prescribed in Regulation 12 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws.

**Note:** Legal Practice: A student completing his First Law Examination is required to enrol for 25.406 Legal Practice I, his Second Law Examination 25.407 Legal Practice II and his Third Law Examination 25.408 Legal Practice III.

## **LAW PROFESSIONAL EXAMINATIONS**

A candidate seeking admission as a barrister and solicitor of the High Court of New Zealand must, in accordance with the Professional Examinations in Law Regulations 1966:

- (a) qualify for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours); and
- (b) pass, or be credited with a pass in the following additional subjects:

- 25.314 Evidence
- 25.401 Court Papers and Practice
- 25.402 Office and Court Room Practice
- 25.403 Commercial Papers and Practice
- 25.404 Land Conveyancing Papers and Practice
- 25.405 Wills and Trust Practice.

Each of the subjects will be taught in the Faculty of Law.

In all of these subjects, other than Evidence, a candidate is credited with a pass if the Registrar receives a certificate from a teacher in the Faculty of Law that the candidate, having taken the course of study in the subject and done the work of the course to the satisfaction of the teacher, should be credited with a pass in the subject.

Alternatively the candidate must pass the examination in the subject.

A candidate who has been credited with the subject the Law of Evidence in his or her course for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws shall substitute for the paper in Evidence a paper in a law subject approved for the purpose by the Dean of the Faculty of Law at the University at which the candidate is enrolled. (Professional Examination in Law Regulations 1966, Regulation 1 (d).)

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF LAWS

### LLM

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Laws shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws and also

- (i) have attained an average grade of B- or higher in the candidate's course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, or
- (ii) have had at least three years' experience in legal practice after admission as a barrister or solicitor, or
- (iii) have otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the subjects proposed to be taken for this Degree.

2. No person shall be admitted to this Degree who has been admitted to the Degree of Master of Jurisprudence.

3. (1) every candidate for this Degree shall—

**EITHER** (a) Pass the examination in six of the papers prescribed in Regulation 4 of these Regulations—

- (i) in one year in the case of a full-time student, or
- (ii) in not more than two successive years in the case of a student who is not full-time.

**OR** (b) (i) in one year pass the examinations in three of the papers so prescribed, and

- (ii) present a thesis (25.601) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 5.

(2) For the purpose of this Regulation a candidate is not a full-time student if he or she —

- (a) is in employment (including self-employment) for more than 20 hours in each week of the academic year throughout the two years of the work for this Degree, and
- (b) furnishes such evidence, of being and of intending to continue so employed, as the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean") may from time to time reasonably require.

4. The subjects of examination for the Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

- 25.501, 25.502 Administrative Law
- 25.561, 25.562 Air and Space Law
- 25.503, 25.504 Commercial Law
- 25.505, 25.506 Comparative Law
- 25.507, 25.508 Constitutional Law
- 25.509, 25.510 Conflict of Laws
- 25.511, 25.512 Creditors Remedies
- 25.513, 25.514 Criminal Law
- 25.515, 25.516 Criminology
- 25.517, 25.518 Environmental Law
- 25.519, 25.520 Equity
- 25.521, 25.522 Family Law
- 25.523, 25.524 Industrial Law
- 25.525, 25.526 International Law

25.527, 25.528 Jurisprudence  
 25.529, 25.530 Land Law  
 25.531, 25.532 Law and Society  
 25.533, 25.534 Law of Banking and Exchange Control  
 25.535, 25.536 Law of Bodies Corporate and Unincorporate  
 25.537, 25.538 Law of Contract  
 25.539, 25.540 Law of Evidence  
 25.541, 25.542 Law of Taxation and Estate Planning  
 25.543, 25.544 Law of Torts  
 25.545, 25.546 Law Reform  
 25.547, 25.548 Local Government Law  
 25.549, 25.550 Pacific Legal Studies  
 25.551, 25.552 Planning Law  
 25.553, 25.554 Restitution  
 25.555, 25.556 Sales and Sales Financing  
 25.557, 25.558 Shipping Law  
 25.559, 25.560 Transport Law  
 25.563, 25.564 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.565, 25.566 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.567, 25.568 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.569, 25.570 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.571, 25.572 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.573, 25.574 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law

**Note:** Subjects that are offered in the current *Calendar* year will be by arrangement with the Dean.

### Thesis

5. When a candidate elects to present a thesis (25.601) the following conditions shall apply:

- (a) The thesis shall be of the value of four papers, and shall consist of an original contribution to the history, philosophy, exposition, or criticism of the law, prepared under the supervision of a University teacher, upon a subject approved by the Dean.
- (b) A candidate may submit the thesis in the year in which the examination is taken or in a subsequent year.
- (c) The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented or at a subsequent date arranged with the supervising teacher.
- (d) At the discretion of the Dean the candidate may be required to attend, within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, an oral examination on the subject of the thesis. For this purpose either two or three examiners shall be appointed by the Dean.
- (e) Where a candidate submits a thesis which is of insufficient standard on first submission, the Senate may in exceptional circumstances, when recommended by the examiners, permit the candidate to rewrite the thesis and submit it again by a specified date.
- (f) The thesis shall be presented within three years of the year in which the examination is first taken but this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

### Honours

6. (1) This Degree may be awarded with or without Honours.
- (2) A candidate who is required to re-sit a written examination or to re-submit the thesis shall not be eligible for an award with Honours.

### Transitional

7. These Regulations shall apply to all candidates for the Degree of Master of Laws; except that any candidate for the Degree who first enrolled for it before 1982 shall complete the course under the Regulations last published in the 1981 *Calendar*.

**Note:** Students proposing to enrol for a Masters degree are expected to discuss their enrolment with the Dean not later than the December preceding their enrolment.



# THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF JURISPRUDENCE

## MJur

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Master of Jurisprudence shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours).
2. No person shall be admitted to this Degree who has been admitted to the Degree of Master of Laws.

### Course Content

3. (a) Every candidate for this degree shall either
  - (i) in one year pass the examinations in four papers in the subjects prescribed in Regulation 4 of these Regulations, or
  - (ii) submit a thesis (25.611) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 5.
- (b) The choice of subjects to be taken by each candidate proceeding under Regulation 3 (a) (i)
  - (i) shall be subject to the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean"), and
  - (ii) shall not include any subject with which the candidate has been credited for the Degree of Master of Commerce.
4. The subjects of examination for the Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered.
  - 25.501, 25.502 Administrative Law
  - 25.561, 25.562 Air and Space Law
  - 25.503, 25.504 Commercial Law
  - 25.505, 25.506 Comparative Law
  - 25.507, 25.508 Constitutional Law
  - 25.509, 25.510 Conflict of Laws
  - 25.511, 25.512 Creditors Remedies
  - 25.513, 25.514 Criminal Law
  - 25.515, 25.516 Criminology
  - 25.517, 25.518 Environmental Law
  - 25.519, 25.520 Equity
  - 25.521, 25.522 Family Law
  - 25.523, 25.524 Industrial Law
  - 25.525, 25.526 International Law
  - 25.527, 25.528 Jurisprudence
  - 25.529, 25.530 Land Law
  - 25.531, 25.532 Law and Society
  - 25.533, 25.534 Law of Banking and Exchange Control
  - 25.535, 25.536 Law of Bodies Corporate and Unincorporate
  - 25.537, 25.538 Law of Contract
  - 25.539, 25.540 Law of Evidence
  - 25.541, 25.542 Law of Taxation and Estate Planning
  - 25.543, 25.544 Law of Torts
  - 25.545, 25.546 Law Reform
  - 25.547, 25.548 Local Government Law
  - 25.549, 25.550 Pacific Legal Studies
  - 25.551, 25.552 Planning Law
  - 25.553, 25.554 Restitution
  - 25.555, 25.556 Sales and Sales Financing
  - 25.557, 25.558 Shipping Law
  - 25.559, 25.560 Transport Law

25.563, 25.564 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.565, 25.566 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.567, 25.568 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.569, 25.570 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.571, 25.572 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.573, 25.574 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.575, 25.576 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law  
 25.577, 25.578 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law

**Note:** Subjects that are offered in the current *Calendar* year will be by arrangement with the Dean.

### **Thesis**

5. When a candidate elects to present a thesis (25.611) the following conditions shall apply:

- (a) The thesis shall consist of an original contribution to the history, philosophy, exposition or criticism of the law, prepared under the supervision of a University teacher; upon a subject approved by the Dean.
- (b) The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented, or at a subsequent date arranged with his supervising teacher.
- (c) At the discretion of the Dean the candidate may be required, within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, to attend an oral examination on the subject of the thesis. For this purpose either two or three examiners shall be appointed by the Dean.
- (d) Where a candidate submits a thesis which is of insufficient standard on first submission, the Senate may in exceptional circumstances when recommended by the examiners, permit the candidate to rewrite the thesis and submit it again by a specified date.
- (e) The thesis shall be submitted not later than three years after the candidate's enrolment for the Degree, but this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

### **Distinction**

6 (1) This degree may be awarded with or without Distinction.

(2) A candidate who is required to re-sit a written examination or to re-submit the thesis shall not be eligible for an award with Distinction.

**Note:** Students proposing to enrol for a Masters degree are expected to discuss their enrolment with the Dean not later than the December preceding their enrolment.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LLB AND FOR LLB(Hons)

#### First Law Examination

##### Part A

#### 25.103 The Legal System

An introduction to the New Zealand legal system. Legal reasoning and the judicial process, including selected problems in statutory interpretation. Selected legal institutions in New Zealand and in England. The sources of law. Selected legal concepts.

#### 25.102 Constitutional Law

An introduction to New Zealand Constitutional Law. Relations between state and subject, and civil liberties. British nationality and New Zealand citizenship. Law relating to the structure of Government Functions of Government. Constitutional relations of New Zealand with the United Kingdom and other Commonwealth nations.

##### Part B

#### 25.101 Criminal Law

The general principles of criminal liability. Selected indictable and summary offences chargeable under New Zealand Law. An introduction to the procedure upon indictment and to summary procedure (excluding the law of evidence).

#### 25.104 The Law of Torts

General principles of civil liability. The law as to the various kinds of torts. The law relating to compensation for personal injury by accident in New Zealand.

#### 25.105 The Law of Contract

The general principles of the law relating to agreements. Selected topics in the law of contract. An introduction to the law of agency.

#### 25.406 Legal Practice 1

#### Second Law Examination

##### *Compulsory*

#### 25.201 Land Law

The principles of land law including the doctrines of tenures and estates, registration of title to land, the elements of law of landlord and tenant, the law relating to incorporeal hereditaments and security interests in land.

#### 25.202 Equity and the Law of Succession

The general principles of equity and the law of trusts. An introduction to the laws of wills and succession and the administration of estates.

#### 25.203 Introduction to Commercial Law

Elements of the law governing sale and transfer of goods, hire purchase and chattels securities.

#### 25.204 Commercial Law

The principles of the law relating to the sale and transfer of goods including bailment and hire purchase, negotiable instruments, and securities over and charges upon personal property including relevant aspects of bankruptcy, suretyship and arbitration.

##### *Optional*

#### 25.205 Administrative Law

The general principles of administrative law. Subordinate legislation. Discretionary powers of Ministers, officials and local bodies. Administrative tribunals and their functions. Controls over the exercise of legislative, judicial and other powers.

#### 25.206 Advanced Contract and Tort

Selected advanced problems in the law of contract and tort. Actions which may be brought either in contract or tort. Quasi-contractual remedies.

#### 25.207 Advanced Criminal Law

Selected advanced problems in criminal law and criminal procedure.

#### 25.208 Company Law and Partnership

An introduction to the principles of company law and the law of partnership. Rights and liabilities of those who form, operate and deal with companies, and partnerships.

#### 25.209 Copyright Patents Trademarks and Unfair Competition

Studies in the content and impact of copyright, patents, trademarks, and unfair competition in New Zealand and elsewhere.

#### 25.210 Criminology

An introduction to the theory of criminology. Selected studies in crime and its causes, law enforcement, the administration of criminal justice, and the nature and purpose of the penal system.

#### 25.211 Family Law

The law and procedure relating to marriage, dissolution and other matrimonial causes. The legal relationship of husband and wife and of parent and child. Matrimonial property. Maintenance and other domestic proceedings. Adoption, guardianship, and paternity proceedings.

#### 25.212 Industrial Law

Selected studies in the relationship of employer and employee; the rights, responsibilities and organisation of trade unions; the determination of industrial disputes relating to wages, conditions and rights; and the legality of industrial action.

**25.213 International Institutions**

The principles of international law as they relate to the structure and functioning of international institutions. The role of international institutions in the settlement of international disputes particularly the role of the international court of justice. Selected projects relating to specific international institutions.

**25.214 International Law**

An introduction to the law of nations. Selected topics in the adjudication and settlement of international disputes, the law of war, peace and neutrality, and the law of international institutions.

**25.215 Introduction to Company Law and Partnership**

An introduction to the basic concepts and principles of company law and the law of partnership.

**25.216 Introduction to Family Law**

Elements of family law.

**25.218 Legal History**

An introduction to the history of present-day legal rules and institutions. Selected topics in English and New Zealand legal history.

**25.220 Local Government Law**

An introduction to the law governing the structure, powers and territorial definition of local government units. Selected studies in the legal problems of local government and its relationship with central government.

**25.221 Income Tax**

The principles of the law relating to income tax.

**25.222 Roman Law**

Outline of Roman private law according to Justinian and Gaius. Sources and historical development of Roman Law. The law of actions; the law of property; obligations; family and succession. Translation of substantial portions of the Latin text shall not be required.

**25.223 Women and the Law**

A study of the law as it defines women's role in society with particular emphasis on the use of the law to eliminate discrimination.

**25.224 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific States and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, and Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

**25.225 Law and Society**

What is the impact of social forces on the legal system? How do the rules and orders of the legal system affect social behaviour? This course attempts to answer these questions by examining the legal system through the eyes of social science research. Particular reference will be made to the New Zealand legal

system and to avenues towards an improved legal culture.

**Note:** No prior training in the social sciences is prerequisite.

**25.226 Legal Analysis**

Analysis of the logical structure of legal rules and of the nature of fundamental logical concepts of the law such as duty, right, liberty and power; analysis of a selection of important substantive concepts of the law such as status, office, contract, trust, punishment, ownership, corporation; some discussion of the place of rules, principles and values in legal reasoning.

**25.227 Legal Theory**

Theories about the nature of law and the nature of legal reasoning; theories about the relationship of law to social attitudes and behaviour; the interaction of law and values.

**Note:** The courses 25.225 Law and Society, 25.226 Legal Analysis and 25.227 Legal Theory comprise aspects of what was formerly taught as a single course under the title Jurisprudence.

**25.228, 25.229, 25.230, 25.231, 25.232, 25.233, 25.234, 25.235, 25.236 Special Topics****25.407 Legal Practice II**

**Note:** Some of these courses will be taught for the full year and others will not. Students should refer to the current Law School Handbook to find out the size of courses they propose to take in any particular year, since this may vary from time to time.

**Third Law Examination**

Optional

**25.301 Advanced Administrative Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Administrative Law.

**25.302 Advanced Commercial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Commercial law.

**25.303 Advanced Constitutional Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Constitutional Law.

**25.304 Advanced Criminology**

Advanced problems in the causes of crime, the administration of criminal justice, and the punishment and treatment of the offender. Selected studies in criminological methods and research.

**25.305 Advanced Family Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Family Law.

**25.306 Advanced Industrial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Industrial Law.

**25.307 Advanced International Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of the law of nations.

**25.324 Air and Space Law**

The principles of international and municipal law regulating airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

**25.308 Civil Procedure**

Advanced studies in procedure in civil actions and other proceedings, with reference to the evolution of the present form of civil action, pleadings, discovery and other pre-trial devices; joinder of parties; jurisdiction (including equitable jurisdiction), appellate procedure.

**25.309 Company Finance**

Problems of company finance, including the raising of capital and loans, rights to dividend and distribution of assets, amendment of corporate instruments, re-organisation, holding and subsidiary companies.

**25.310 Comparative Law**

A study of selected systems of law with particular reference to the development of civil law on the Continent of Europe.

**25.311 Conflict of Laws**

Selected studies in the law governing transactions with elements outside New Zealand courts, fundamental concepts of conflict of laws, and the validity and enforcement of foreign judgments.

**25.312 Creditors Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Selected studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgments.

**25.313 Environmental Law**

An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment (Courts, agencies and Parliament as institutions for dealing with environmental problems. A study of specific environmental problems such as air and water pollution, agricultural chemicals, marine pollution). International aspects of environmental problems.

**25.314 Evidence**

The general principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases. A critical evaluation of forensic law in New Zealand, including a comparison with systems of trial in other countries.

**25.315 International Trade**

Advanced problems in international commercial law. Selected studies in commercial law, administrative law and international law problems arising from the transfer of goods from one country to another, with consideration of public controls such as tariffs and import licensing.

**25.316 Law Reform**

A study of the institutions responsible for law reform and the methods by which reform is achieved. A selection of legal rules and institutions which have been, or may be, the subject of reform.

**25.317 Legal Philosophy**

Advanced studies in the philosophy of law and legal sociology.

**25.319 Planning Law**

An introduction to the law relating to town and country planning. Selected studies in urban and rural planning problems, and processes and decisions of planning authorities, and the function of courts in planning matters.

**25.320 Restitution**

Selected problems focusing on situations and available remedies where benefits have been wrongfully or unfairly acquired. Particular consideration will be given to the contract-breaking plaintiff who has rendered services, contracts procured by duress, the murdering beneficiary, benefits acquired from illegal transactions, profits made from improperly acquired information, and good faith acquisition and dealing with property to which defendant is not entitled and with trust property.

**25.321 Supervised Research****25.322 Vendor and Purchaser**

Advanced problems in the sale of land. Selected case studies examining the legal and taxation consequences of the agreement for sale and purchase and the conveyance of land, and the function and responsibility of the lawyer acting in such transactions.

**25.323 Estate and Tax Planning**

The principles of the law relating to estate and gift duties, estate planning and tax planning.

**25.325 Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

**25.326, 25.327, 25.328, 25.329, 25.330, 25.331, 25.332, 25.333, 25.334**

**Special Topics** to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

Any one or more optional courses prescribed for the Second Law Examination.

**25.408 Legal Practice III**

**Note:** Students should consult the current Law School Handbook to find out the size of these courses, and any prerequisites for taking them, since these may vary from time to time.

## **FRESCRIPTIONS FOR LAW AND PRACTICE IN NEW ZEALAND**

The prescriptions for the Examination in the law and practice in New Zealand may be obtained from the Dean of the Faculty. Written notice of a candidate's wish to take the examination should be given to the Registrar with payment of the prescribed fee.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LLB (Hons)****For the Subjects Listed in Regulation 4****25.341 Admiralty Law**

Admiralty jurisdiction, extent of territorial waters, sources of maritime law, nature of maritime liens, bills of lading and charter parties, aspects of conflicts of laws in admiralty, rules established by international law in admiralty cases.

**25.342 Air and Space Law**

Same prescription as for 25.324 (LLB).

**25.343 Aspects of Industrial Law**

Analysis of selected problems in industrial law and industrial relations.

**25.344 Business Regulation**

Government regulation of business, analysis of scope of control, its purposes and dangers, the common law and statutory regulations of trade and industry, restraint of trade and monopoly restrictive trade practices.

**25.345 Causes of Crime**

The significance of primary and secondary criminogenic factors.

**25.346 Civil Rights**

A comparative study of recognised human rights and existing legal safeguards. Aspects include protection of minority rights, speech and assembly, police practices, race relations.

**25.347 Commercial Letters of Credit**

The law and practice relating to commercial letters of credit.

**25.348 Consumer Law**

A study of legislative and judicial attempts to protect the consumer.

**25.349 Copyright and Patent Law**

Common law, statutory and international rules governing copyright and patents.

**25.350 Corporation Finance**

Problems of corporate finance, including the rules governing raising capital and loans, rights to dividend and distribution of assets, amendment of corporate instruments, re-organisation, holding and subsidiary companies.

**25.351 Economic Regulation**

Legal problems encountered in regulating economic behaviour and alternative techniques for resolving them; anti trust and labour problems.

**25.352 Environmental Law**

An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment. Courts, agencies and parliament as institutions for dealing with environmental problems. A study of specific environmental problems such as air and water pollution, chemicals, marine pollution.

International aspects of environmental problems.

**25.353 Estate Planning**

An analysis of the factors which deserve consideration in planning for the future management and disposition of income and capital.

**25.354 Insurance (other than Marine Insurance) Law**

The law governing insurance other than marine insurance.

**25.355 Law of International Business and Finance**

A study of problems of commercial law, administrative law and international law arising from international trade, business and finance, including New Zealand's relationship with the European Economic Community.

**25.356 Law and Social Problems**

Selected aspects of the interrelation between legal evolution and social change, interaction of legislation and social change, the role of law in the modern state.

**25.357 Law of Banking**

The law relating to banking, with particular reference to the relationship of banker and customer and the banker's duty to third parties.

**25.358 Law of Landlord and Tenant**

The law of landlord and tenant, including statutory tenancies and fair rents legislation.

**25.359 Law Reform**

Methods of Law Reform with particular reference to New Zealand.

**Note:** Students may be required to prepare research papers for Law Reform Committees.

**25.360 Law Relating to Computers**

An introduction to selected topics related to computers, including a brief introduction to elementary programme preparation, computerisation of statute and case law, protection of software, labour relations affected by computers and databank privacy.

**25.361 Legal Accounting**

A critical examination of generally accepted accounting principles, an introduction to corporate financial problems, accounting problems of a law office.

**25.362 Legal Aspects of Race Relations**

Investigation of legal efforts to combat discrimination, and an inquiry into the validity of law in this field.

**25.363 Legal Education**

The objectives, methods and development of legal education and the functions and obligations of the law teacher.

**25.364 Legal History**

The effect on law of social, economic and constitutional change, with particular reference to England and New Zealand.

**25.365 Legal Problems of the European Common Market**

The objectives, structures and functions and relationships of the European Economic Community and other European regional arrangements.

**25.366 Local Government Law**

The law developed and applied in local government, construction and operation of statutory powers of local and public authorities, bylaws, financing, contractual and tortious liability.

**25.367 Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

**25.368 Marine Insurance Law**

The law governing marine insurance.

**25.369 Medico-Legal Problems**

A study of the relationship between law and medicine, preparation and presentation of medical proof in litigation, expert medical testimony.

**25.370 Military Law**

Aspects of military law, the relation of civil to military jurisdiction, court martial procedure.

**25.371 Penology**

An analysis of theory and practice in regard to the punishment and treatment of the offender.

**25.372 Problems in Choice of Law**

The application of choice of law methods to specific situations, the feasibility of developing choice of law rules and principles consistent with predictability and uniformity.

**25.373 Problems in Contract and Tort**

Analysis of selected problems arising in the law of contract and the law of tort.

**25.374 Problems in Criminal Law**

Analysis of selected problems in criminal law.

**25.375 Problems in Equity**

Problems relating to the equitable jurisdiction of the courts, with particular reference to the law of trusts.

**25.376 Problems in Legal Philosophy**

Selected jurisprudential problems of definition of law; the concept of justice, relation of law and morality, the function of legal analysis.

**25.377 Professional Responsibility**

The role of the legal profession in modern society, the obligations of a barrister and solicitor, conflict of interest, defending the unpopular client or cause.

**25.378 Registration of Title to Land**

Legal problems of the Torrens system of title registration.

**25.379 Remedies Against the Government**

Liability of the Crown in tort and contract, procedure for enforcing rights against the Crown.

**25.380 Securities Law**

The law governing securities over personal and industrial property.

**25.381 Selected Topics in Comparative Law**

Analysis of selected topics from foreign law systems, including civil and Soviet law.

**25.382 Shipping Law**

Legal principles governing ownership of ships, limitation of liability of shippers, charter-parties and freightage, collision, salvage, towage, carriage of goods by sea.

**25.383 Social Control of Land**

The purposes and effect of legislation controlling the use of land, housing improvement schemes, town and country planning, government and local body powers.

**25.384 State and Local Taxation**

Analysis of property, sales, personal and corporate income taxes, tax policy and administration, local body taxation.

**25.385 The Law Relating to Damages**

The principles governing damages in contract and in tort.

**25.386 The Legal Process**

The function of the courts, counsel, legislature, administrative agencies and officials in decision making.

**25.387 Trial Practice**

Advocacy, procedural and substantive law in trial proceedings, pre-trial preparation, proof.

**25.388 United Nations Law and Problems of World Order**

The basic constitutional problems of the United Nations, regulation of the use of force, definition of aggression, punishment of crimes against the peace, disarmament, control of atomic energy, regulation of the use of outer space, an international police force.

**25.389 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific states and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

**25.390 Women and the Law**

A study of the law as it defines women's role in society with particular emphasis on the use of the law to eliminate discrimination.

**25.391 Restitution**

Same prescription as for 25.320 (LLB).

**25.392-25.398 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

**25.604 Dissertation**

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR ADDITIONAL SUBJECTS FOR CANDIDATES SEEKING ADMISSION AS BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS OF THE HIGH COURT OF NEW ZEALAND**

### **25.314 Evidence**

(One paper)

The principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases.

### **25.401 Court Papers and Practice**

(One paper).

Selected exercises in the preparation of court pleadings, interlocutory and originating motions papers relating to discovery, interrogatories and other proceedings in civil cases. Papers required for District Courts' proceedings. Appellate court procedure. An introduction to the law and practice of civil procedure.

### **25.402 Office and Courtroom Practice**

(One paper)

Elementary bookkeeping and trust account procedures. The Solicitors Audit Regulations. Office Systems. Office Management. Preparation and presentation of cases before tribunals; the basic techniques of counsel when appearing in Court. A practitioner's ethical duties towards the Court, other practitioners and his clients and other members of the public.

### **25.403 Commercial Papers and Practice**

(One paper)

Selected exercises in commercial legal practice, including the formation of companies and partnerships, the preparation of securities over chattels, floating charges and legal documents connected with the distribution of goods. An introduction to the law of chattels securities. Tax implications. Submissions to arbitration.

### **25.404 Land Conveyancing Papers and Practice**

(One paper)

Selected exercises in the preparation of contracts and conveyances for the sale, mortgage and leasing of land, and the creation of other interests in land. Tax implications.

### **25.405 Wills and Trusts Practice**

(One paper)

Selected exercises in the drawing of wills and family trusts. An introduction to estate planning, and to the law of death duties and income tax as it bears on estate planning problems.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LLM AND MJur**

### **25.501, 25.502 Administrative Law**

The general principles of administrative law with special reference to New Zealand.

### **25.561, 25.562 Air and Space Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of international and municipal law regulating airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

### **25.503, 25.504 Commercial Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to the distribution and financing of goods and services, including security devices and the rights of creditors and third persons.

### **25.505, 25.506 Comparative Law**

Advanced studies in selected systems of law.

### **25.507, 25.508 Constitutional Law**

Advanced studies in constitutional and local body law.

### **25.509, 25.510 Conflict of Laws**

The nature of private international law. Fundamental conceptions; classification; renvoi; domicile; public policy. The principles of private international law relating to: (a) persons; (b) contracts; (c) torts; (d) property; (e) procedure and evidence.

### **25.511, 25.512 Creditors Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Advanced studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgements.

### **25.513, 25.514 Criminal Law**

The history and principles of criminal law, comprising selected topics on substantive and adjective criminal law, evidence in criminal cases, the aetiology of crime and the purposes and methods of punishment.

### **25.515, 25.516 Criminology**

The nature and extent of crime in our society. Selected studies of the causes of crime: results, underlying assumptions and limitations. Political aspects of the criminal law. The interactionist approach. Selected criminological problems.

The criminal justice system. Objectives of the system. The role of the police. A critical analysis of penal measures. Sentencing. Evaluating the effectiveness of penal sanctions. Selected penological problems.

### **25.517, 25.518 Environmental Law**

An examination of the law relating to pollution and other environmental problems with an emphasis on comparative studies. An exploration of various institutional arrangements for managing the environment. The concept of environmental impact reporting.

### **25.519, 25.520 Equity**

The history and principles of equity.



**25.521, 25.522 Family Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to husband and wife, parent and child and family relationships generally.

**25.523, 25.524 Industrial Law**

Selected and comparative studies in Industrial Law.

**25.525, 25.526 International Law**

The principles of the law of nations in peace and war including the status and relations *inter se* of the members of the Commonwealth of Nations and the Republic of Ireland and questions of nationality.

**25.527, 25.528 Jurisprudence**

Theories concerning the origin and development of law. The history of legal theory. Modern schools of thought concerning the nature and purpose of law. Sources of law. Analysis of legal conceptions.

**25.529, 25.530 Land Law**

The history and principles of land law.

**25.531, 25.532 Law and Society**

Advanced studies in the interrelation between legal evolution and social change, interaction of legislation and social change, and the role of law in the modern state.

**25.533, 25.534 Law of Banking and Exchange Control**

The law and practice relating to banking and exchange control regulations, with special reference to New Zealand.

**25.535, 25.536 The Law of Bodies Corporate and Unincorporate**

The principles of the law as to corporations and unincorporated bodies with special reference to registered companies.

**25.537, 25.538 The Law of Contract**

The history and principles of the law of contract, including the law as to the sale of goods, negotiable instruments, and all other special classes of contracts.

**25.539, 25.540 The Law of Evidence**

The principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases.

**25.541, 25.542 Law of Taxation and Estate Planning**

Advanced studies in the law relating to taxation and gift, death and conveyance duties. Advanced studies in the principles and practice of estate planning.

**25.543, 25.544 The Law of Torts**

The history and principles of civil liability with special reference to the law of torts.

**25.545, 25.546 Law Reform**

A study of the institutions responsible for law reform and the methods by which reform is achieved. A selection of legal rules and institutions which have

been, or may be, the subject of reform.

**25.547, 25.548 Local Government Law**

Selected studies of the history, structure, powers and practice of local government units and related aspects.

**25.549, 25.550 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific states and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

**25.551, 25.552, Planning Law**

Selected studies of land use regulation law, planning structure, practice, and theory.

**25.553, 25.554 Restitution**

Advanced problems focusing on situations and available remedies where benefits have been wrongfully or unfairly acquired.

**25.555, 25.556 Sales and Sales Financing**

Advanced studies in the law of sales and the financing of domestic sales in New Zealand.

**25.557, 25.558 Shipping Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of carriage of goods by sea, including containerisation.

**25.559, 25.560 Transport Law**

Advanced studies in the history, exposition and comparison of selected topics of the law of transport, including land, sea and air transport, including rules of international law and of municipal law.

**25.563, 25.564 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.565, 25.566 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.567, 25.568 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.569, 25.570 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.571, 25.572 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.573, 25.574 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.575, 25.576 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.577, 25.578 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN CRIMINOLOGY

#### DipCrim

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Criminology shall:
  - (a) Before enrolment satisfy the Senate that he or she is likely to benefit from the training provided by the course for this Diploma and will be capable of satisfactorily completing the research requirements of papers 25.245 and 25.246; and
  - (b) follow a course of study of not fewer than two years.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall pursue the course of study full-time except where the Senate, in exceptional circumstances or to enable the candidate to complete a Division of the Diploma, at its discretion permits otherwise.

#### List of Subjects

3. The subjects of examination for the Diploma in Criminology shall be:

##### Division 1

- (1) 25.101 Criminal Law
- (2) 25.241 Deviance Theory
- (3) 25.242 Criminal Justice and Penal Policy
- (4) 25.243 Comparative Perspectives and Research Methods

##### Division 2

- (5) 25.244 Crime in New Zealand
- (6) 25.395 Welfare Law
- (7) 25.245 Practical Research Design
- (8) 25.246 Field Work and Written Report.

#### Assessment

4. Candidates for each of the subjects 25.241, 25.242, 25.243, 25.244 shall be required to write a research paper (to be submitted no later than the first day of the third term) on an approved topic relevant to that subject. The research paper shall not exceed 8000 words and shall account for 50% of the candidate's final mark in that subject.
5. Candidates for Division 2 subjects 25.245 and 25.246 shall be required to undertake a practical research project on a topic approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean").

**Note:** The report (which is expected to be submitted no later than the end of the third term) should not exceed 25,000 words.

6. Assessment of a candidate's performance in subjects 25.245 and 25.246 shall be based upon the design and report submitted, in lieu of an examination.

#### Cross-credits, Credits and Exemptions

7. The provision for granting cross-credits, credits and exemptions to a candidate under Regulations 12, 13 and 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall apply only to the subject 25.101 Criminal Law; and then upon condition that the candidate substitutes for it such other subject prescribed in Regulation 3 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws as the Dean approves in the particular case.

#### Course Sequence

8. A candidate shall not be enrolled for any subject in Division 2 until that candidate has passed all subjects in Division 1; provided that the Dean may, in exceptional circumstances, allow a candidate who has failed to pass the subject 25.101 Criminal Law to proceed to Division 2.
9. A candidate who has failed only one subject in Division 1 may be required by the Senate to pass in the following February a special examination in that subject to be credited with a pass in the Division as a whole.

**Distinction**

10. The Diploma may be awarded with or without distinction.

**Transition**

11. (1) The course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(2) The Regulations governing the Diploma in Criminology which were first included in the University Calendar for 1973 (in this Regulation called "the 1973 Regulations") are revoked: provided that a candidate for Honours who enrolled under the 1973 Regulations or under any previous Regulations for the Diploma in Criminology and who except for submitting a satisfactory Dissertation has completed the course there prescribed may:

(a) apply to submit a Dissertation and to take Honours in accordance with Regulation 6 of the 1973 Regulations, or

(b) apply to be awarded the Diploma without Honours.

(3) The course of every candidate who enrolled under the 1973 Regulations or under any previous Regulations for the Diploma in Criminology shall, except where paragraph (2) of this Regulation applies, be settled by the Dean.

12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipCrim**

Normally an interview supported by evidence of the candidate's suitability for the course will be required for the purpose of Regulation 1 (a).

For the subjects listed in Regulation 3 Division 1:

**25.241 Deviance Theory**

A study of traditional and contemporary theories of Deviance within the contexts of sociology, psychology, political theory, anthropology, history and legal theory.

**25.242 Criminal Justice and Penal Policy**

An examination of the aims, functions and practices of the criminal justice system as a whole, in theory and in practice, including law-making, policing, the courts and the sentencing process. A study of penal theory and penal policy. An evaluation of these issues within their broader social context.

**25.243 Comparative Perspectives and Research Methods**

A comparative study of various forms of research methodology. A critical study of the role played by

perspectives, value orientations and epistemology in criminological work. The development of an understanding of the use and defects of various forms of research design, and the use of statistics. The ethics of research.

For the subjects listed in Regulation 3 Division 2:

**25.244 Crime in New Zealand**

A study of pertinent or topical aspects of crime in New Zealand. Special attention directed to issues which arise out of the unique nature of New Zealand's population, cultures and location.

**25.245 Practical Research Design**

The designing of a practical research project based on involvement in an area of community conflict specifically connected with an aspect of crime or deviance, to reach an understanding of the causes and dynamics of the problems involved and possible means of resolving conflict.

**25.246 Field Work and Written Report**

Application of the practical research design through field work and submission of a written report and evaluation of that work.

Blank Page

---

# Faculty of Music

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	298	Degree of Bachelor of Music
	302	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)
	306	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours
	308	Degree of Master of Music

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	311	Degree of Bachelor of Music
	313	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)
	314	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours
	314	Degree of Master of Music

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	316	Diploma in Music
	319	Diploma in Music with Honours

---

<b>Course of Instruction in a Single Instrument Regulations</b>	320	Course of Instruction in a Single Instrument
---	-----	--

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC

#### BMus

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music shall
  - (a) before his enrolment for this Degree satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he has attained a suitable standard in music, and
  - (b) follow a Course of study of not fewer than three years.

#### Course Entrance

2. A candidate for entrance to the Course of study for the Degree shall give notice in writing on the prescribed form to the Registrar not later than 15 November immediately preceding the year in which the candidate wishes to enrol.

#### Course Requirements

3. The Course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-two papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are classified in three stages, I, II and III.
4. Every course of study shall include
  - (a) at least four papers in Music as Stage I level
  - (b) no more than eleven papers in Music at Stage II level
  - (c) at least three papers in Music at Stage III level
  - (d) at least two papers (not being papers in Music) from those prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts (whether Group A or Group B of the Schedule to the Regulations for that Degree).
5. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than nine papers for this Degree.
6. A candidate shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout his enrolment for this Degree, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music.
7. A student must satisfy the Head of the Department that the necessary tests in Aural training have been undertaken and passed.

**Note:** The training consists of listening to a course of tests on tapes and working at exercises coupled with these tests. Students will be periodically examined. Good students will be able to complete the prescribed course in a year; others may take longer.

8. The Senate may on the recommendation of the Head of the Department grant a credit of two unspecified Music papers at Stage I level towards this Degree to any student who has passed the examination in Performance 28.120 for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) or Diploma in Music with a grade of C—, or a credit of two unspecified Music papers at Stage II level towards this Degree to any student who has passed the examination in Performance 28.220 for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) or Diploma in Music with a grade of C—.

**Note:** See Regulations 4 and 6 of the regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) and Regulations 6 and 7 of the regulations for the Diploma in Music.

9. A candidate wishing to be enrolled in any subject which is also a subject of examination for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall comply with such of the course regulations for that Degree relating to prerequisites, combinations of subjects, and practical work, as are applicable to that subject, save where the Senate in individual cases allows otherwise.
10. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

**Application of Regulations and Transitional Provisions**

11. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
 (b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units or was entitled to exemptions under any of the former Regulations for this Degree shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.  
 (c) For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1976 the subject prerequisites, corequisites, and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department of Music.
12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1976.

**Schedule**

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, subjects, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions, and other conditions applying to Courses of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music.  
 2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.  
 3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.  
 4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.  
 5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.  
 6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule.

The papers prescribed for this Degree are:

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>MUSIC</b>					
<b>Music I</b>	28.101 Musicianship	As prescribed under Reg 1(a). BMus Regulations	28.102, 28.103 28.122		A candidate must pass papers 28.101, 28.102, 28.103 and 28.122 with an overall grade of at least C+ before proceeding to Music II.
	28.102 Materials of Music		28.101, 28.103 28.122		
	28.103 History of Musical Style		28.101, 28.102 28.122		
	28.110 Composition		28.101, 28.102 28.103, 28.122	31.105	A candidate must take at least four papers in Music at Stage I level.
	28.112 Keyboard Harmony and Score Playing		28.101, 28.102 28.103, 28.122		
	28.113 Acoustics		28.101, 28.102 28.103, 28.122		
	28.122 Introduction to Harmony and Counterpoint		28.101, 28.102 28.103		

Note: The number enrolling in certain papers is restricted. Candidates should consult Calendar Prescriptions for BMus, paragraph 2.

## Faculty of Music, Degree Regulations, BMus, Schedule

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>Music II</b>	28.202 Harmony and Counterpoint	28.101, 28.102, 28.103, 28.122 with an overall grade of at least C+	28.209		A candidate may not take more than eleven papers in Music at Stage II level. A candidate must take 28.209, at least one from 28.203-28.208, and one from 28.202, 28.110 and 28.211.
	History of Musical Style				
	28.203 The Middle Ages**				
	*28.204 The Renaissance††				
	28.205 The Baroque Era**				
	*28.206 The Classical Era††				
	28.207 The Romantic Era**				
	28.208 The Twentieth Century				
	28.209 Materials and Analysis		One of 28.110, 28.202, 28.111 and one of 28.203-28.208		A candidate may take, with the permission of the Head of the Department, up to three papers in a language (including Maori Studies) or in anthropology, or both as prescribed for BA, in lieu of up to three of the eleven Stage II Music papers which may be taken.
	28.210 Composition (Counts as two papers)	As for 28.202; 28.110	28.209		
	28.211 Renaissance Polyphony	As for 28.202	28.209		
	28.212 Keyboard Harmony and Score-Playing	As for 28.202; 28.112			
	28.214 Ethnomusicology	As for 28.202	28.209	03.209	
	28.215 Orchestration	As for 28.202	28.209		
	28.216 Studies in Electronic Music	As for 28.202	28.209		
	*28.217 Music Education	As for 28.202	28.209		
	28.218 Choral Conducting	As for 28.202	28.209		28.209
	†28.221 Technique and Repertoire	As for 28.202			
	28.222 History of Church Music	As for 28.202	28.209		
<b>Music III</b>	28.302 Advanced Harmony and Counterpoint	28.202, 28.210 or 28.211	28.309		A candidate must take at least three papers in Music at Stage III level including 28.309 and one of 28.303 to 28.308.
	History of Musical Style				
	28.303 The Middle Ages**	One of 28.203-28.208	28.309	28.203	
	*28.304 The Renaissance††			28.204	
	28.305 The Baroque**			28.205	
	*28.306 The Classical Era††			28.206	
	28.307 The Romantic Era**			28.207	
	*28.308 The Twentieth Century††			28.208	



	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications
28.309	Analysis	28.209	One of 28.303 to 28.308		A candidate planning to enrol for MMus is reminded that prerequisites for MMus will depend on the area of his specialisation and his choice of papers.
28.310	Composition (Counts as 3 papers)	28.210, 28.215	28.309		
28.314	Ethnomusicology	28.214	28.309	03.318	
†28.316	Studies in Contemporary Music		28.309		
†28.318	Conducting	28.215	28.309		
†28.323	Special Topic		28.309		
*28.324	Special Topic		28.309		

\* This paper will not be taught during the current Calendar year

† This paper may not be taught during the current Calendar year

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years

†† Taught in even-numbered years

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC (PERFORMANCE)

### BMus (Performance)

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) shall
  - (a) before his enrolment for this Degree satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he has attained a suitable standard in music, including performance and
  - (b) follow a Course of full-time study of not fewer than four years, and
  - (c) follow his Course of study continuously except where and in so far as the Head of the Department permits otherwise.

#### Course Entrance

2. A candidate for entrance to the Course of study for this Degree shall give notice in writing on the prescribed form to the Registrar not later than 30 June immediately preceding the year in which the candidate wishes to enrol.

#### Course Requirements

3. The Course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-eight papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are classified in four groups — I, II, III and IV.
4. For performance 28.120, 28.220, 28.320 and 28.420, a candidate shall
  - (a) carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations), and
  - (b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and
  - (c) pass a Performance examination, with a grade of C or better in the case of 28.120 and 28.220, in any one of the following subjects.

†Flute	†French Horn	Violin	Piano	†Percussion
†Oboe	†Trumpet	Viola	Harpsichord	
†Clarinet	†Trombone	Cello	Organ	
†Bassoon	†Tuba	†Double Bass	Singing	

**Note:** (i) † This instrument may not be taught during the current Calendar year.

(ii) A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.120 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the Course of study for BMus (Performance) may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage I Music papers towards the Course of study for the Degree of BMus. A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.220 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the Course of study for BMus (Performance) may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage II Music papers towards the Course of study for the Degree of BMus. See Regulation 8 of the Regulations for that Degree.

- (d) A candidate presenting Singing shall attend such language Courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department may require.
- (e) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying the harpsichord may elect to include studies in the classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the Course.
5. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year one more than nine papers for this Degree.

6. A candidate who (having been a candidate for this Degree) has been granted credit towards the Degree of Bachelor of Music under Regulation 8 of the regulations for that Degree shall not at a later re-enrol for this Degree.

**Note:** See note to Regulation 4 of these Regulations.

7. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this Course of study that he (a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the Course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music, and

(b) shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout his enrolment for this Degree, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music.

(c) shall not enrol for any other Course of study without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.

8. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(b) The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it think fit approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

(c) A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units of a Professional Examination under any of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Executant) shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1976.

### Schedule

1. This Schedule sets out groups, paper numbers, subjects, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions, and other conditions applying to the Courses of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance).

2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.

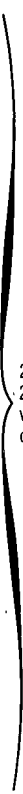
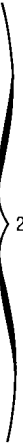
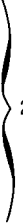
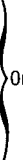
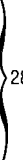
4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.

5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.

6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule.

The papers prescribed for this Degree are:

Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>MUSIC</b>					
<b>Note:</b> The number enrolling in certain papers is restricted. Candidates should consult <i>Calendar Prescriptions</i> for BMus, paragraph 2.					
<b>Stage 1</b>					
28.101	Musicianship	Regulations BMus (Performance)  1(a)	28.102, 28.103, 28.122, 28.120		A pass of at least C in paper 28.120 and an overall pass of at least C+ in papers 28.101, 28.102, 28.103 and 28.122 must be obtained before advancing to Stage II.
28.102	Materials of Music		28.101, 28.103, 28.122, 28.120		
28.103	History of Musical Style		28.101, 28.102, 28.122, 28.120		
28.122	Introduction to Harmony and Counterpoint		28.101, 28.102, 28.103, 28.120		
28.120	Performance (counts as 3 papers)		28.101, 28.102, 28.103, 28.122		

Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications	
Stage II						
28.110	Composition				A minimum of seven papers to be taken at Stage II.	
28.112	Keyboard Harmony and Score-playing (1).					
28.113	Acoustics			31.105	With approval of Head of the Department a candidate may take one or two papers as prescribed for BA in lieu of one or two of the Music papers. Approval will not be granted in the first year of a candidate's course of study for this degree.	
28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint			28.209, 28.220		
28.203	History of Musical Style The Middle Ages**					
*28.204	The Renaissance††			28.101, 28.102, 28.103, 28.122 with an overall pass of at least C+		
28.205	The Baroque Era**					
*28.206	The Classical Era††					
28.207	The Romantic Era**					
*28.208	The Twentieth Century††					
28.209	Materials and Analysis			28.202 or 28.110 or 28.211 one of 28.203-28.208, 28.220		
28.211	Renaissance Polyphony					
28.215	Orchestration					
28.216	Studies in Electronic Music					
28.218	Choral Conducting					
†28.221	Technique and Repertoire (2)					
28.222	History of Church Music (3)					
28.220	Performance (counts as 3 papers)	A pass of a least C in 28.120; As for 28.209	28.209			
Stage III						
28.113	Acoustics	28.209, 28.220	28.309, 28.320	31.105	Papers 28.309 and 28.320 must be taken at Stage III.	
28.303	History of Musical Style The Middle Ages**			28.203	One of 28.203 to 28.308 must be taken at either Stage III or Stage IV.	
*28.304	The Renaissance††			28.204		
28.305	The Baroque Era**			28.205		
*28.306	The Classical Era††			28.206		
28.307	The Romantic Era**			28.207		
*28.308	The Twentieth Century††			28.208		
28.210	Composition (counts as 2 papers)	28.110, 28.209 28.220	28.309, 28.320		A minimum of seven papers to be taken at Stage III.	
28.211	Renaissance Polyphony	28.209, 28.220	28.309, 28.320			

*Faculty of Music, Degree Regulations, BMus (Performance) Schedule*

305

Title of Paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
28.212	Keyboard Harmony and Score-playing (1)	28.112, 28.209 28.220	28.309, 28.320		
28.214	Ethnomusicology	28.209, 28.220 28.101, 28.102, 28.103, 28.122	28.309, 28.320		
28.215	Orchestration	28.209, 28.220	28.309, 28.320		
28.216	Studies in Electronic Music	28.209, 28.220	28.309, 28.320		
*28.217	Music Education	28.209, 28.220	28.309, 28.320		
†28.221	Technique and Repertoire (2)	28.209, 28.220	28.309, 28.320		
28.222	History of Church Music (3)	28.209, 28.220	28.309, 28.320		
28.302	Advanced Harmony and Counterpoint	28.202, 28.209, 28.220	28.309, 28.320		
28.309	Analysis	28.209, 28.220	28.320		
28.320	Performance (counts as 4 papers)	A pass of at least C or better in 28.220; 28.209	28.309		
<b>Stage IV</b>					
One of:	History of Musical Style		28.420		A minimum of 7 papers must be taken at Stage IV.
28.303	The Middle Ages**	} 28.309, 28.320		28.203	
*28.304	The Renaissance††			28.204	
28.305	The Baroque Era**			28.205	
*28.306	The Classic Era††			28.206	
28.307	The Romantic Era**			28.207	
*28.308	The Twentieth Century††			28.208	
28.310	Composition (counts as 3 papers)	28.210, 28.309, 28.320			
28.314	Ethnomusicology	28.214, 28.309, 28.320			
28.316	Studies in Contemporary Music	28.309, 28.320			
†28.318	Conducting	28.215, 28.309 28.320			
†28.323	Special Topic		28.309		
28.324	Special Topic		28.309		
or	two more (other than History of Musical Style) selected from Stage III list	28.309, 28.320			

306 *Faculty of Music, Degree Regulations, BMus (Performance) Schedule, BMus (Performance) (Hons).*

Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites
28.420 Performance (counts as 4 papers)	28.320, 28.309	Three papers selected from 28.303-28.308, 28.310, 28.314, 28.316, 28.318, or two more (other than History of Musical Style) selected from Stage III list.

**Notes:**

(1) Required for Organ, Piano and Harpsichord candidates. For Piano candidates it is desirable that these papers be taken in first and second years of the degree course.

(2) Available for certain Performance subjects only. Must be taken if Head of the Department so requires.

(3) Required for Organ candidates.

\*\*Taught in odd-numbered years

††Taught in even-numbered years

\*Will not be taught during the current Calendar year

†May not be taught during the current Calendar year

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC (PERFORMANCE) WITH HONOURS

### BMus (Performance) (Hons)

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours shall before his enrolment for this Degree

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)

(b)(i) have obtained a grade higher than C – in each compulsory paper in Music at Stage II and Stage III levels provided that in special circumstances where the Head of the Department so recommends the Senate may accept a C – pass in any paper or papers, and

(ii) satisfy the Head of the Department of his proficiency as a performer

(c) have been accepted by a Music Department Selection Committee for study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours, at an interview held in the December prior to first enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours.

2. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate may enrol for this degree having completed at least 24 papers including at least three at advanced level for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) degree, provided that

(a) his proposed course for the degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours is a full-time course and will extend over not fewer than two academic years

(b) he has obtained grades averaging B – or above in the Stage III level papers for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) degree

(c) he enrolls in not more than one paper in the first year of his course for the degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours

(d) he satisfies the requirements of Regulations 1(b) and (c) above

(e) should he not pass the remaining paper or papers in the first year of his Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours course, his Honours course shall be suspended until he has passed the remaining paper or papers.

3. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours shall follow a course of full-time study of not less than one year.

#### Course Requirements

4. The Course of study for this Degree shall consist of 28.525 Performance (which shall count as five papers) and any one of the papers 28.400-402, 28.404-407, 28.409-411, 28.414-416, 28.419, 28.421-423, 28.604 as prescribed for the Degree of Master of Music.

5. For Performance 28.525 a candidate shall

- (a) carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations)
- (b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required

(c) pass a performance examination in any one of the following subjects:

†Flute	†French Horn	Violin	Harpsichord	†Percussion
†Oboe	†Trumpet	Viola	Piano	
Organ	†Clarinet	†Trombone	Cello	
Singing	†Bassoon	†Tuba	†Double Bass	

(d) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying the harpsichord may elect to include studies in the classical organ, its technique and repertoire as part of the course.

(e) A candidate presenting singing for this Degree shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require.

6. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this Course of study that he

(a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music.

(b) shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout his enrolment for this Degree, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music, and

(c) shall not enrol for any other Course of study without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.

7. The degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours shall be awarded to candidates who have fulfilled these Regulations and whose work throughout the course has been in the opinion of the Faculty of Music of a sufficiently high standard.

8. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1980.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC

### MMus

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Music shall before his enrolment for this Degree

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission either to the Degree of Bachelor of Music or to the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance), and

(b) (i) have obtained a grade higher than C— in each compulsory paper in Music at Stage II and Stage III levels provided that in special circumstances where the Head of the Department so recommends the Senate may accept a C— pass in any paper or papers, and

(ii) if taking Performance for this Degree, have obtained a grade of B— or better in Performance at Stage IV, 28.420.

(c) have been accepted by a Music Department Selection committee for study for the Degree of Master of Music, at an interview held in the December prior to first enrolment for the Degree of Master of Music.

2. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate may enrol for this degree having completed at least 20 papers including at least three papers at advanced level for the Bachelor of Music Degree or having completed at least 24 papers including at least three papers at advanced level for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) degree, provided that

(a) his proposed Course for the Degree of Master of Music is a full-time Course and will extend over not fewer than two academic years;

- (b) he has obtained grades averaging B— or above in the Stage III level papers for the Bachelor of Music Degree or, in the case of a student taking Performance for a Masters Degree, grades averaging B— or above in the Stage III level papers for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) degree;
  - (c) he enrolls for the paper or papers in the first year of his Course for the Degree of Master of Music;
  - (d) he satisfies the requirements in Regulations 1(b) and (c) above;
  - (e) should he not pass the remaining paper or papers in the first year of his Master of Music Course, his Masters Course shall be suspended until he has passed the remaining paper or papers.
3. No candidate shall be accepted for enrolment for this Degree if he has been previously awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours in this University.
4. A candidate for this Degree shall pursue a course of study of not fewer than two years.
5. A candidate shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout his enrolment for this Degree, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music.

### **Course Content**

6. The Course of study for this Degree shall consist of four papers and a Composition (28.610) which shall count as three papers, or four papers and a Recital (28.620) which shall count as three papers, or four papers and a Thesis (28.601) which shall count as three papers.
7. (a) The papers prescribed for this Degree are:
- 28.400 Special Topic
  - 28.401 Special Topic
  - 28.402 Aesthetics in Music
  - 28.404 Studies in Organology
  - 28.405 History of Music (Special Period)
  - 28.406 Studies in Music Notation
  - 28.407 Studies in Music Theory
  - 28.409 Analysis and Criticism
  - 28.410 Composition
  - 28.411 Fugue
  - 28.414 Ethnomusicology
  - 28.415 Advanced Orchestration
  - 28.416 Electronic Music
  - 28.419 Studies in Performance Practice
  - 28.421 Seminar in Music Literature
  - 28.422 Stylistic Study of a Specific Composer's Work
  - 28.423 Seminar in Musicology
  - 28.520 Performance
- (b) A candidate intending to write a Composition for this Degree must take Composition 28.410 and at least one of the following papers: 28.409, 28.411, 28.415, 28.416.
- (c) A candidate intending to present a Recital must take Performance (28.520) and at least one of the following papers: 28.404, 28.419, 28.421.
- (d) A candidate intending to write a Thesis must take Seminar in Musicology (28.423) and at least one of the following papers: 28.402, 28.406, 28.407, 28.409, 28.414. He must also satisfy the Head of the Department of Music of his proficiency as a performer and his ability to read an approved language other than English.
8. (a) A candidate for this Degree may with the approval of the Head of the Department of Music take one paper not previously taken from those listed under Music III of the Schedule to the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music, with the exception of the following papers: History of Musical Style (28.303-308), Conducting (28.318)
- (b) A candidate for this Degree may with the permission of the Senate take one Stage III or one Masters paper in a subject other than Music, if such paper is related to the candidate's research or professional interests. Such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the degree of Master of Music.

### **Composition**

9. When a candidate elects to write a Composition, the following conditions shall apply.
- (a) The Composition shall be prepared under the supervision of a University teacher.
  - (b) A candidate may present his Composition in the year in which he takes the papers or, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this regulation, in a subsequent year.



- (c) A candidate shall present his Composition within three years of the year in which he takes the papers, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.
- (d) The candidate shall submit his Composition together with a certificate from the supervisor stating that the work was carried out by the candidate under his supervision to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which it is to be presented, or at a subsequent date if so arranged with the Head of the Department.
- (e) If the examiner with the concurrence of the assessor so recommends, a Composition which is not satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date to be specified by the examiner.

### **Performance**

10. When a candidate elects to present a Recital, the following conditions shall apply.

- (a) A candidate shall present a concert Recital of approximately one hour's duration, the programme to be approved by the Head of the Department. the candidate shall submit his proposed programme to the Head of the Department for approval not later than the end of the first term.
- (b) The Recital shall be restricted to ONE of the following:
  - (i) an approved orchestral instrument
  - (ii) the pianoforte
  - (iii) the organ and/or harpsichord
  - (iv) any other instrument approved by the Head of the Department
  - (v) singing.
- (c) A candidate may present his Recital in the year in which he takes the papers or, subject to the provisions of paragraph (d) of this regulation, in a subsequent year.
- (d) A candidate shall present his Recital within three years of the year in which he takes the papers, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.
- (e) The candidate shall present himself for the Recital on a date to be specified by the Head of the Department.
- (f) If the Recital is not satisfactory and if the examiner with the concurrence of the assessor so recommends, the candidate may be permitted to present a further Recital at a later date to be specified by the examiner.

### **Thesis**

11. When a candidate elects to write a Thesis, the following conditions shall apply.

- (a) The Thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of Music.
- (b) A candidate may present his Thesis in the year in which he takes the papers or, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this regulation, in a subsequent year.
- (c) A candidate shall present his Thesis within three years of the year in which he takes the papers, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.
- (d) A candidate shall submit his Thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is to be presented or at a subsequent date if so arranged with the Head of the Department.
- (e) If the examiner with the concurrence of the assessor so recommends, a Thesis which is not satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date to be specified by the examiner.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

### **Honours**

12. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

- (b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate sits an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the Composition or Performance or Thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory; provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so that he shall be eligible for the award of Honours subject to the provisions of sub-clause (c) of this Regulation.
- (c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of honours only if he completes the requirements for Honours within three years of his first enrolment for this Degree, provided that this period may in exceptional cases be extended by the Senate.

**Special Provision**

13. The Senate may in such special circumstances as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing regulations.

\* This paper will not be taught during the current Calendar year

† This paper may not be taught during the current Calendar year

†† This paper is taught in even-numbered years

\*\* This paper is taught in odd-numbered years

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BMus

#### Restrictions on Entry to Courses

1. A candidate before enrolment for this Degree is required to satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he or she has attained a suitable standard in music, at an interview to be held in the first weeks of February before University enrolment week. A candidate who has not taken Music for the University Entrance or University Bursary Examinations will be required during his or her interview to satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he or she has reached an acceptable standard in harmony and aural perception.

Application to the Registrar must be made on the prescribed form and forwarded to the Secretary, Music Department, by 30 November (for entry to a course in the following year).

Composition 28.110. Candidates wishing to take this paper in the *first* year of their course will be asked to state this in their application form. They will be required at interview to satisfy the Head of the Department of Music as to their competence in Composition in order to be admitted to this course in the first year of their studies.

2. Enrolments in the following papers will be restricted as follows:

Number	Title of Paper	Restricted to	Method of Restriction
28.101	Musicianship	40	Interview
28.102	Materials of Music	40	Interview
28.103	History of Musical Style	80	Interview
28.110	Composition	15	Interview. See paragraph 1 above.
28.112	Keyboard Harmony & Score-playing	20	Interview
28.122	Introduction to Harmony and Counterpoint	40	Interview
28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint	20	Results in Stage I papers
28.210	Composition	10	Results in Stage I papers
28.211	Renaissance Polyphony	20	Results in Stage I papers

28.212	Keyboard Harmony & Score-playing	15	Results in Stage I papers
28.215	Orchestration	15	Results in Stage I papers
28.216	Studies in Electronic Music	10	Results in Stage I papers
28.217	Music Education	15	Results in Stage I papers and interview
28.218	Choral Conducting	20	Results in Stage I papers and interview
28.302	Advanced Harmony & Counterpoint	15	Results in Stage II papers and interview
28.310	Composition	5	Results in Stage II papers
28.318	Conducting	5	Results in Stage II papers and interview

#### 28.101 Musicianship

[one paper]

The development of musicianship skills through the art of listening, related aural perception, elementary conducting and vocal techniques including sight singing. Listening skills will concentrate on the development of perception through aural analysis of short works in varying styles using appropriate class and recorded material.

#### 28.102 Materials of Music

[one paper]

The development of musical sensitivity through a creative study of the elements of music: rhythm, melody, harmony, timbre, texture, style and form. Compositions will be set in similar styles to those studied in History of Musical Style (28.103). These will be performed and discussed in small group tutorials.

#### 28.103 History of Musical Style

[one paper]

From the Gregorian age to the present day, with

reference to prescribed scores. In addition to two weekly lectures, a weekly seminar is held, dealing with current musical events, and giving an opportunity for students to discuss musical topics.

### **28.110 Composition**

[one paper]

The composition of new musical material and examination of other sources. At the end of the year students, working under the supervision of their teacher, shall submit completed original compositions, not later than two calendar months from the commencement of the third term.

### **28.112 Keyboard Harmony and Score-Playing**

[one paper]

Playing at sight from vocal and instrumental scores and from figured basses; harmonization of melodies.

### **28.113 Acoustics**

[one paper]

The fundamental principles of oscillations and wave propagation; stationary waves; resonance; loudness; pitch; tone quality; intervals and scales; the principles of operation of stringed, woodwind, brass and other instruments; the electronic production and reproduction of sound; and the acoustics of rooms. This is the same paper as Physics 31.105.

### **28.122 Introduction to Harmony and Counterpoint**

[one paper]

Diatonic Harmony. Practical exercises and analyses of examples from Seventeenth to Nineteenth Century Music.

### **28.202 Harmony and Counterpoint**

[one paper]

Tonal harmony and counterpoint, diatonic and chromatic, vocal and instrumental.

### **History of Musical Style**

#### **28.203 The Middle Ages\*\***

[one paper]

A survey of music in the Middle Ages with regard to notation, forms, instruments, theory and the socio-historical-cultural background.

#### **\*28.204 The Renaissance††**

[one paper]

A survey of music in the Renaissance period, with regard to notations, forms, instruments, theory and the socio-historical-cultural background.

#### **28.205 The Baroque Era\*\***

[one paper]

A survey of music in the Baroque Era, including examination of forms, instruments, notations, theory and the general background.

#### **\*28.206 The Classical Era††**

[one paper]

A survey of music in the Classical period, including examination of forms, instruments, notation, theory and the general background.

#### **28.207 The Romantic Era\*\***

[one paper]

A survey of music in the Romantic Era, with special attention to forms, the development of concert life, opera, musicology, and the general cultural-historical background.

#### **\*28.208 The Twentieth Century††**

[one paper]

A survey of music in the Twentieth Century, embracing nationalism, serialism, electronic music, jazz and pop, with attention to the historical, cultural and sociological background, and including films and other visual material.

#### **28.209 Materials and Analysis**

The study and analysis of melodic, harmonic, rhythmic, structural and other compositional elements, through the examination of a wide range of music from plainsong and early polyphony to the present.

#### **28.210 Composition**

[Counts as two papers]

The composition of works for a wide variety of media in conjunction with analysis of short pieces. Expansion of technique and realisation of performances.

#### **28.211 Renaissance Polyphony**

[one paper]

Style, technique and procedure in the vocal polyphony of the Fifteenth and Sixteenth Centuries.

#### **28.212 Keyboard Harmony and Score-Playing**

[one paper]

The development of these studies will be directed towards the particular keyboard instrument – piano, organ, or harpsichord – of each student. For pianists this will include playing at sight from vocal scores, including the C Clef, and orchestral scores; the realisation of figured basses; the harmonisation of melodies; transposition; improvisation. For organists and harpsichordists these studies centre on the realisation of all aspects of basso continuo.

#### **28.214 Ethnomusicology**

##### **Music of the World's Peoples**

[one paper]

Historical development of ethnomusicology; the culture concept; music as human behaviour; elementary structural analysis; folk music; introduction to music styles from Asia, the Americas and Africa.

#### **28.215 Orchestration**

[one paper]

An arrangement from short score for an orchestra not exceeding the following: 2 flutes, 2 oboes, 2 clarinets, 2 bassoons, 4 horns, 2 trumpets, 3 trombones, tuba, harp, percussion, strings.

**28.216 Studies in Electronic Music**

[one paper]

A study of the major works in this medium composed during the last thirty years. Introduction to studio techniques; tape music and different methods of sound synthesis. Applications to personal creative work.

**\*28.217 Music Education**

[one paper]

A variety of experiences in Music Education, including a micro-teaching project, child development in relation to learning music and music in aesthetic education.

**28.218 Choral Conducting**

[one paper]

Instruction in beating time and choral direction. How to organise a choir. The class works as a choir under the direction of students.

**†28.221 Technique and Repertoire**

[one paper]

This course is designed to cover subjects of importance to students of the various instruments, or to students of singing.

(a) For instrumentalists the course will cover:

(i) The evolution of instruments and their use. Present day interpretation in the light of historical knowledge.

(ii) Great performers and schools of playing. Style in performance.

(iii) Repertoire.

(iv) The construction and planning of the instruments, where relevant.

(b) For singers the course will cover:

(i) The evolution of opera, oratorio, lieder and art song.

(ii) Great performers and styles in performance.

(iii) Singers' repertoire.

(iv) Basic stagecraft.

**28.222 History of Church Music**

[one paper]

The examination of Christian Church Music.

**28.302 Advanced Harmony and Counterpoint**

[one paper]

Advanced Harmony and Counterpoint, and Analysis of large-scale forms from the Sixteenth to Twentieth Centuries.

**28.303-308 History of Musical Style**

As for papers 28.203-208 respectively, but taken and examined at Stage III level.

**28.309 Analysis**

[one paper]

The study and analysis at advanced level of melodic, harmonic, rhythmic, structural and other compositional elements through the examination of a

wide range of music from plainsong and early polyphony to the present.

**28.310 Composition**

[counts as three papers]

Composing for a wide variety of media, voices, instruments, tape. Special assignments and observation of Twentieth Century Music will be included.

**28.314 Ethnomusicology**

[one paper]

Music of Oceania

Maori music and music styles of Polynesia, Melanesia and Micronesia.

**28.316 Studies in Contemporary Music**

[one paper]

New Zealand Music since 1940

A study in conjunction with prescribed works. (See Prescribed Texts).

**†28.318 Conducting**

[one paper]

The basic elements of baton technique; rehearsal planning and management, practical work with recordings and with class students leading to practical work with choral and instrumental groups.

**†28.323 Special Topic**

[one paper]

For 1983 Stravinsky: Man and Music

A critical examination of Stravinsky, his music and his place in the music of the Twentieth Century. The course will include detailed examination of certain works which will be performed in the course of the year.

**\*28.324 Special Topic**

[one paper]

As prescribed from year to year by Head of the Department.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current Calendar year

† This paper may not be taught during the current Calendar year

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years

†† Taught in even-numbered years

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BMus (Performance)**

**Restrictions on Entry to Courses.**

A candidate before enrolment for this Degree is required to satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he or she has attained a suitable standard in music including performance at an interview to be held during the August/September break preceding the year of enrolment.

Application to the Registrar must be made on the prescribed form and forwarded to the Secretary, Music Department, by 30 June (for entry to the course in the following year).

The prescriptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) shall be the same as those for the corresponding subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Music, and as follows.

### Performance

See section 4(a), (b) and (c) of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)

Performance 28.120 counts as 3 papers

Performance 28.220 counts as 3 papers

Performance 28.320 counts as 4 papers

Performance 28.420 counts as 4 papers

A candidate presenting Singing shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require. The most suitable paper in Italian is Paper 35.104 – Italian Language in Opera and Song. (Study of Italian texts of sung material; operatic libretti, madrigals, motets etc; comprehension and pronunciation).

Similar papers in German and in French will be available as required. The papers should be taken in the first, second and third years, respectively, of a student's Performance course, and enrolment should be for Certificate of Proficiency (COP).

Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying the harpsichord may elect to include studies in the classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.

---

## PREScriptions FOR BMus (Performance)(Hons)

### 28.525 Performance

[five papers]

Preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well-balanced recital programme.

---

## PREScriptions FOR MMus

### Restriction on entry to Courses

1. Interview of Board of teaching members of Music Faculty; and
2. Performance where applicable.

**Note:** The availability of these papers will depend on the number of students and their choice.

### 28.400 Special Topic

Candidates will have opportunity to deal with aspects of music not covered by other papers.

### 28.401 Special Topic

Candidates will have opportunity to deal with aspects of music not covered by other papers.

### 28.402 Aesthetics in Music

The beautiful in music; Music and meaning; Art as an experience; Perception and aesthetic value.

### 28.404 Studies in Organology

Selected topics in the History of Musical Instruments, instrument building, tunings, treatises and other sources.

### 28.405 History of Music (Special Period)

Detailed examination in the History of Music of a special period, not previously studied from 28.203-208 or 28.303-308.

### 28.406 Studies in Music Notation

Detailed study of mensural notation for the Fourteenth to Sixteenth Centuries, lute and keyboard tablatures. Basic problems of notation, transcription and editing, with assignments and a major editing project.

### 28.407 Studies in Music Theory

A study of selected theoretical writings from the Middle Ages to the present day.

### 28.409 Analysis and Criticism

The extension of analytical techniques to more complex works, and the study of analytical theories with particular attention to those of Schenker. The study of critical positions in relation to music, with practical assignments in criticism.

### 28.410 Composition

Composing for a wide variety of media, voices, instruments, tape.

Special assignments and observation of Twentieth Century music will be included. At least one composition should be scored for musical forces available within the Department of Music and directed by the student in a public performance.

### 28.411 Fugue

Fugue in not more than four parts, either vocal or instrumental.

### 28.414 Ethnomusicology

Field method; transcription and analysis; study of selected scholars.

**Note:** 28.314 Ethnomusicology is a prerequisite for this paper.

### 28.415 Advanced Orchestration

Study of contemporary practice in orchestration especially as it relates to new timbral resources; analysis of recent works and recent developments in instrumental technique; scoring for various instrumental forces.

### 28.416 Electronic Music

Personal composition using electro-acoustic resources (musique concrete and synthesizer) with or without conventional instruments and voices. Detailed study of recent developments in electro-acoustic music especially new analogue and computer-generated pieces.

**Note:** 28.216 Studies in Electronic Music, is a prerequisite for this paper.

**28.419 Studies in Performance Practice**

Selected topics for discussion and investigation from the field of Performance Practice. The study of source materials; individual projects for report orally and in writing; performance of music from the area(s) studied.

**28.421 Seminar in Music Literature**

A survey of the music literature in selected fields with specific problems for discussion and investigation, and individual reports both orally and in writing.

**28.422 Stylistic Study of a Specific Composer's work**

Study of the whole, or representative or selected portions of a composer's work in terms of tonality, texture, form and historical significance.

**28.423 Seminar in Musicology**

Musicological method; bibliographical studies; selected problems for discussion and investigation with individual reports orally and in writing.

**28.520 Performance**

Performance work as under the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours.

**28.601 Thesis**

(see also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

[three papers]

An investigation into some branch or area of music, under the guidance of a supervisor and embodying some elements of research.

**28.604 Dissertation**

[one paper]

Investigation of an approved topic.

**28.610 Composition**

(see also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

[three papers]

The preparation and presentation of one or more original compositions, under the guidance of a supervisor.

**28.620 Recital**

(see also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

[three papers]

The preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well balanced recital programme.

\* This paper will not be taught during current Calendar year

† This paper may not be taught during the current Calendar year

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN MUSIC

#### DipMus

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

*An intending candidate who has not been granted the University Entrance qualification by the Universities Entrance Board must apply for admission in accordance with the requirements of the Admission Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Music shall (a) before his enrolment for the Diploma satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he has attained a suitable standard in music, including performance
- (b) follow a course of full-time study of not fewer than three years, and
- (c) follow his course of study continuously, except where and in so far as the Head of the Department permits otherwise.

#### Course Entrance

2. A candidate for entrance to the course of study for this Diploma shall give notice in writing on the prescribed form to the Registrar not later than 30 June immediately preceding the year in which the candidate wishes to enrol.

#### Course Requirements

3. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of not fewer than eighteen papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are listed in three stages – I, II and III.
4. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Diploma.
5. A candidate with previous knowledge in Aural Training or Harmony may be required by the Head of the Department of Music to take in his first year Musicianship (28.101) and Materials of Music (28.102). If the candidate passes he shall be credited with a pass in each paper accordingly, but shall not be credited with a pass in Rudiments and Basic Aural Perception (28.001) and Basic Harmony (28.002). The candidate shall take in the third year of his course for this Diploma two other papers from the selection lists for Stage II and III. Where the candidate fails each or either of the papers 28.101 and 28.102 but is certified by the examiner to have attained the standard of a pass in paper 28.001 or 28.002 or both (as the case may be), the candidate shall have the appropriate paper or papers credited to his course.
6. Once a candidate enrolls for paper 28.101 he shall be required to satisfy the Head of the Department that the necessary tests in Aural training have been undertaken and passed.

**Note:** The training consists of listening to a course of tests on cassettes and working at exercises coupled with these tests. Students will be periodically examined. Good students will be able to complete the prescribed course in a year; others may take longer.

7. For Performance 28.120, 28.220, 28.325 a candidate shall

- (a) carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations), and
- (b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and
- (c) pass a Performance examination, with a grade of C or better in the case of 28.120 and 28.220, in any one of the following subjects:

†Flute	†Trombone	Piano	†Oboe	†Tuba
Harpisichord	†Clarinet	Violin	Organ	†Bassoon
Viola	Singing	†French Horn	Cello	†Percussion
†Trumpet	†Double Bass			

†This instrument may not be taught during the current Calendar year.



**Note:** A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.120 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the Course of study for DipMus may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage I Music papers towards the Course of Study for the Degree of BMus if he is eligible for enrolment for that degree. A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.220 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the course of study for DipMus may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage II Music papers towards the course of study for the Degree of BMus if he is eligible for enrolment for that Degree. See Regulation 8 of the Regulations for that degree.

(d) if presenting Singing for this Diploma attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require

(e) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying the harpsichord may elect to include studies in the classical organ its technique and repertoire as part of the course.

8. The candidate who (having been a candidate for this Diploma) has been granted credit towards the Degree of BMus under Regulation 8 of the Regulations for that degree shall not at later time re-enrol for this Diploma.

9. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this Course of study that he

(a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music,

(b) shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout his enrolment for this Diploma, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music, and

(c) shall not enrol for any other course of study without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.

10. (a) Except as otherwise provided the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(b) A candidate who has gained a credit for any subject under any former Regulations under the Diploma in Music shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.

11. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1976.

### Schedule

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions, and other conditions applying to Courses of study for the Diploma in Music.

2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Diploma and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.

4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.

5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.

6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule.

The papers prescribed for this Diploma are:

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>MUSIC</b>					
<b>Stage I</b>					
28.001	Basic Aural Perception and Rudiments		28.002 28.103 28.120	A candidate who is considered to be of high enough standard may be required by the Head of the Department to enrol for 28.101 and 28.102 in place of these two papers (See Reg (1) of the DipMus Regulations)	A candidate is required to take a minimum of six papers at Stage I
28.002	Basic Harmony		28.001 28.103 28.120		

**Note:** The number enrolling in certain papers is restricted. Candidates should consult *Calendar* Prescriptions for BMus, paragraph 2.

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
28.101	Musicianship		28.102, 28.103, 28.120		
28.102	Materials of Music		28.101, 28.103, 28.120		
28.103	History of Musical Style		28.001 and 28.002 or 28.101 and 28.102, 28.120		
28.120	Performance (counts as 3 papers)		28.001 and 28.002 or 28.101 and 28.102, 28.103		A C pass or better must be obtained before advancing to 28.220.

**Stage II**

28.101	Musicianship	28.001	28.220 and one paper from Selection list.		A candidate is required to take a minimum of six papers at Stage II.
28.102	Materials and Music	28.002	28.220		If a candidate has taken papers 28.101 and 28.102 at Stage I he will be required to take 28.122 and 28.209 at this Stage.
28.122	Introduction to Harmony and Counterpoint	28.101, 28.102	28.209, 28.220 and one other from Selection list		
28.209	Materials and Analysis	28.101, 28.102	28.122, 28.220 and one other		
28.220	Performance (counts as 3 papers)	A pass at C or better in 28.120	28.101 and 28.102 or 28.122 and 28.209, and one other		A C pass or better must be obtained before advancing to 28.325

**Stage III**

A candidate is required to take a minimum of six papers at Stage III

28.122	Introduction to Harmony and Counterpoint	28.101, 28.102 28.220	28.325	If a candidate has taken papers 28.122 and 28.209 at Stage II he must then select at least two papers from the Selection list below.
28.209	Materials and Analysis			
28.325	Performance (count as 4 papers)	A pass at C or better in 28.220	28.122, 28.209 or two papers from Selection list.	

**SELECTION LIST**

28.110	Composition	28.211 Renaissance Polyphony
28.112	Keyboard Harmony and Score-playing (1)	28.212 Keyboard Harmony and Score-playing (1)
28.113	Acoustics	28.214 Ethnomusicology
28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint	28.215 Orchestration
	History of Musical Style	28.216 Studies in Electronic Music
28.203	The Middle Ages**	*28.217 Music Education
*28.204	The Renaissance††	28.218 Choral Conducting
28.205	The Baroque Era**	†28.221 Technique and Repertoire (2)
*28.206	The Classical Era††	28.222 History of Church Music (3)

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
	28.207 The Romantic Era**		28.316 Studies in Contemporary Music		
	*28.208 The Twentieth Century††		†28.323 Special Topic		
			*28.324 Special Topic		

(1) Required for Organ, Piano and Harpsichord candidates. For Piano candidates it is desirable that these papers be taken in the first and second years of the diploma

(2) Available for certain Performance subjects only. Must be taken if Head of the Department so requires

(3) Required for Organ candidates

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years

†† Taught in even-numbered years

\*Will not be taught during the current Calendar year

†May not be taught during the current Calendar year

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipMus

### Restrictions on Entry to Courses

A candidate before enrolment for this Diploma is required to satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he or she has attained a suitable standard in music including performance at an interview to be held during the August/September study break preceding the year of enrolment.

Application to the Registrar must be made on the prescribed form and forwarded to the Secretary, Music Department, by 30 June (for entry to the course in the following year).

The prescriptions for papers for the Diploma in Music shall be the same as those for the corresponding subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance), and as follows:

#### 28.001 Basic Aural Perception and Rudiments

[one paper]

A course integrating Aural Perception and Harmonisation of elementary material. Pitch and Rhythmic notation.

#### 28.002 Basic Harmony

[one paper]

The setting of melodies in 2, 3 and 4 parts. Aural

analysis of various styles.

### Performance

See Regulation 6 of the Regulations for the Diploma in Music.

Performance 28.120 counts as 3 papers

Performance 28.220 counts as 3 papers

Performance 28.325 counts as 4 papers

A candidate presenting Singing shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require. The most suitable paper in Italian is Paper 35.104 – Italian Language in Opera and Song. (Study of Italian texts of sung material; operatic libretti, madrigals, motets, etc; comprehension and pronunciation).

Similar papers in German and French will be available as required. These papers should be taken in the first, second and third years, respectively, of a student's Performance course, and enrolment should be for Certificate of Proficiency (COP).

Organ students will also receive tuition in Harpsichord. A student studying the Harpsichord may elect to include studies in the Classical Organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.

## DIPLOMA IN MUSIC WITH HONOURS

### DipMus(Hons)

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Music with Honours shall

- before his enrolment for this Diploma have qualified for the award of the Diploma in Music, and
- satisfy the Senate that in this work presented for the Diploma in Music he has attained a high standard, and
- follow a Course of full-time study of not less than one year.

#### Course Requirements

2. The Course of study for this Diploma shall consist of:

28.425 Performance (which shall count as four papers)

28.309 Analysis, and

any one of the papers listed in the selection list for the Diploma in Music not previously taken.

3. For Performance 28.425 a candidate shall

(a) carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations), and  
(b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and

(c) pass a performance examination in any one of the following subjects:

†Flute	†French Horn	Violin	†Oboe	†Trumpet
Viola	Organ	†Clarinet	†Trombone	Singing
†Bassoon	†Tuba	Harpsichord	†Percussion	Piano
Cello	†Double Bass			

(d) Organ students will also receive tuition in Harpsichord. A student studying the Harpsichord may elect to include studies in the Classical Organ its technique and repertoire as part of the course.

(e) A candidate presenting Singing for this Diploma shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require.

4. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this Course of study that he

(a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music, and

(b) shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout his enrolment for this Diploma, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music

(c) shall not enrol for any other Course without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.

5. A candidate shall be required to pass the Course of study as a whole so that his performance in both Performance IV and the papers shall be considered.

6. Except as otherwise provided in these Regulations the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

7. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

8. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1976.

**Note:** \*This paper will not be taught during the current Calendar year.

† This paper may not be taught during the current Calendar year.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipMus(Hons)**

### **28.425 Performance**

[four papers]

Preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well-balanced recital programme.

## **REGULATIONS FOR COURSE OF INSTRUCTION IN A SINGLE INSTRUMENT**

*Admission to a Course of Instruction in a single instrument with a full-time member of the staff may be granted subject to the approval of the Head of the Department of Music. Students enrolled for a Course of Instruction in a single subject must comply with the following regulations:*

### **Enrolment**

1. Enrolment shall be for a period of not less than one term and enrolment must be completed during the enrolling period immediately before the commencement of the first term.

### **Payment of Fees**

2. Tuition fees as prescribed under the Fees Regulations must be paid at enrolment:

### **Refund of Fees**

3. Should a student wish to discontinue the Course the following refund may be made where the fee for two or three terms has been paid at enrolment:

(i) One-third refund in the case of the fee for two terms and two-thirds refund in the case of the fee for three terms provided written notice of withdrawal is received by the Registrar before the commencement of the second term;

(ii) One-third refund in the case of the fee for three terms provided written notice of withdrawal is received by the Registrar before the commencement of the third term.

### **Unsatisfactory Work**

4. The notice of all students is drawn to Regulations 8 and 9 (i) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

**Declaration to Obey Statutes and Regulations**

5. The Matriculation Regulations shall not apply to candidates enrolling for these courses but every student enrolling for a course must sign the following declaration:

"I do solemnly promise that I will faithfully obey the Statutes and the Regulations of the University of Auckland so far as they apply to me."

**Prescriptions**

6. Each course shall be under the direction of the Head of the Department of Music and shall consist of the following:

(i) Weekly individual lessons of one half-hour's duration for a term of ten weeks or of one hour's duration fortnightly for five weeks, provided that arrangements may be made for one hour weekly lessons to be taken with a proportionate increase of fees.

(ii) Tests of ability and where appropriate ensemble playing including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required by the Head of the Department of Music.

7. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this course that he shall not undertake any musical work, including music competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music.

8. Instruction is offered in the following subjects: Violin, Cello, Piano, Singing.

Blank Page

---

# Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning

## *Contents*

---

### *School of Architecture*

---

<b>Degree Course</b>	324	Degree of Bachelor of Architecture
<b>Regulations</b>	328	Degree of Master of Architecture
	329	Joint Special Examination of NZIA and AERB

---

<b>Degree Course</b>	331	Degree of Bachelor of Architecture
<b>Prescriptions</b>		

---

<b>Diploma Course</b>	334	Diploma in Valuation
<b>Regulations and</b>		
<b>Prescriptions</b>		

---

### *Department of Town Planning*

---

<b>Degree Course</b>	337	Degree of Bachelor of Town Planning
<b>Regulations</b>	339	Degree of Master of Town Planning

---

<b>Degree Course</b>	341	Degree of Bachelor of Town Planning
<b>Prescriptions</b>	342	Degree of Master of Town Planning
	342	Environmental Studies

---

<b>Diploma Course</b>	343	Diploma in Town Planning
<b>Regulations and</b>		
<b>Prescriptions</b>		

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### SCHOOL OF ARCHITECTURE

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARCHITECTURE

#### BArch

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. An intending candidate who has not been granted the University Entrance Qualification by the Universities Entrance Board and who seeks admission on the basis of the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Architecture), the New Zealand Certificate in Building, the New Zealand Certificate in Engineering (Civil Option), or the New Zealand Certificate in Quantity Surveying must apply for admission in accordance with the requirements of the Admission Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these regulations, a candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Architecture shall be required to
  - (i) pursue a course of study of not less than five years; and
  - (ii) pass the Intermediate Examination and complete to the satisfaction of the Senate the requirements of the four Professional Examinations.
- (b) Except as hereinafter provided a candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and the requirements of each Professional Examination. In recommending him for a pass in any Examination the Senate shall take into consideration his performance in all subjects of that Examination. A candidate who has failed to pass any Examination as a whole may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be credited with a subject or subjects of that Examination. He may in a subsequent year take the remaining subjects of that Examination together with such subjects of the succeeding Professional Examinations, if any, as the Senate may permit. He shall be required to pass such a composite examination under the same conditions as set out above.

#### Honours

2. The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture may be awarded with or without Honours according to the standard of the candidate's work in the Fourth Professional Examination (taking into account also his record in the other Professional Examinations).

#### Concessions

3. The Senate may exempt a candidate from the Intermediate Examination
  - (a) who has reached a standard satisfactory to the Senate in the University Entrance Scholarship Examination, provided that one of the subjects is Mathematics, Additional Mathematics, or Physics; or
  - (b) who has been admitted or has qualified for admission to a Degree or, on the special recommendation of the Head of the School of Architecture, a Diploma, in any Faculty of this University; or
  - (c) who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Building, or the New Zealand Certificate in Engineering (Civil Option), or the New Zealand Certificate in Quantity Surveying, and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of such Certificate.

**Note:** A candidate seeking admission to the First Professional Examination under the provisions of this clause is advised to submit with the required application form, the folder of work in prescribed form in Regulation 5(a).

4. (a) Where a candidate

- (i) has been awarded or has qualified for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering (Civil) and his record in that Degree is of sufficiently high standard in the opinion of the Head of the School of Architecture; or
- (ii) has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Architecture) and has completed the practical requirements for that Certificate

the Senate may exempt that candidate from the Intermediate Examination and up to a total of 36 credits from the First and Second Professional Examinations.

- (b) Where a candidate

- (i) has qualified by examination for the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Architecture) but without



outstanding merit and completed the practical requirements for it; and

(ii) has completed the Intermediate Examination with results sufficient to secure a place in the First Professional Examination

the Senate may exempt that candidate from up to a total of 36 credits from the First and Second Professional Examinations.

**Note:** A candidate granted exemption under Regulations 3 or 4 shall pay the fees required under Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### Intermediate

5. (a) The Intermediate Examination shall comprise:

a folder of work in prescribed form;

and

two papers or 12 credits in a subject (or with the approval of the Head of the School of Architecture, two related subjects) from each of the Groups A, B and C listed in the Schedule to this Regulation, of subjects prescribed for the Degree of BA or BSc as the case may be; provided that

(i) in the case of any or each of the subjects in the Schedule a candidate may substitute for that subject an equivalent subject passed at another New Zealand University;

(ii) a candidate who, in the Universities Bursaries Examination, has obtained a 'B' Grade or better and has gained not less than 50 marks in one of the subjects Pure Mathematics, Applied Mathematics or Physics, may choose instead of a subject from Group A an additional subject from Group B or Group C;

(iii) in exceptional circumstances and on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning, the Senate may permit a candidate to choose the three subjects from those appearing in the Schedule to this Regulation without restriction as to Groups, save that one shall be chosen from Group A unless the foregoing proviso (ii) applies.

(b) In respect of each subject chosen from the schedule to this Regulation, a candidate shall be required to comply with such of the course regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science as are applicable (including all requirements as to practical work and all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).

**Note:** The folder of work and results in the subjects from the schedule shall be taken into account in any selection that may be required because of a restriction in the number of places available.

### Schedule

#### Group A

Mathematics Pure or Applied,  
Computer Science

Physics

#### Group B

Anthropology

Botany, Biology, Zoology

Chemistry

Economics

Geology

Geography

Mathematics Pure or Applied,  
Computer Science

Philosophy

Physics

Psychology

Sociology

#### Group C

Ancient History, Classical Studies,  
Biblical History & Literature

Anthropology, Maori Studies

Art History

Asian Geography, History, Politics

Economics

Education

English

Geography, Asian Geography

History, Asian History

any Language

Music

Philosophy

Political Studies, Asian Politics

Psychology

Sociology

6. (a) For each Professional Examination a candidate shall be required to gain credits from the subjects set out in the Schedule to Regulation 10, including core subjects for that Professional Examination set out in Part A of that schedule and other subjects from Part B of that schedule, in accordance with the following:

### First Professional Examination

Studio I (18 credits) and at least 18 further credits including 18 credits in other core subjects.

### Second Professional Examination

Studio 2 (18 credits) and at least 18 further credits including 18 credits in other core subjects.

### Third Professional Examination

Studio 3 (18 credits) and at least 18 further credits which shall include 8 credits in other core subjects and may include credits in other subjects.

**Fourth Professional Examination**

Studio 4 (18 credits including 9 credits in a thesis) and at least 18 further credits which shall include 4 credits in other core subjects and may include credits in other subjects; *or*

Studio 4 Extended (27 credits including 9 or 18 credits in a thesis) and at least 9 further credits which shall include 4 credits in other core subjects and may include credits in other subjects.

**Note:** (i) A candidate who does not attain the standard required for a pass in Studio 4 Extended (27 credits) may be credited with a pass in Studio 4 (18 credits).

(ii) Students who fail to pass Studio 2 are advised to consult the Dean before seeking to enrol in core subjects for Third and Fourth Professional Examinations and subject electives.

(b) The Senate may permit a candidate to take a subject or subjects as defined in the Regulations for a degree in any Faculty, in lieu of a subject or subjects set out in Part B of the Schedule to Regulation 10, up to an equivalent of 10 credits for this degree, and credits will be awarded for a pass in such subjects in accordance with the following:

<i>Faculty</i>	<i>Segment of Study</i>	<i>Equivalent credits for this degree</i>
Arts & Commerce	Paper	5 credits
Engineering	Subject	3 credits
Law	Instruction hour/week	2 credits
Science	Credit	1 credit

7. A candidate may not gain credits for any Professional Examination in any subject for which he gained credits in a previous Professional Examination; provided that

(a) where a candidate has in 1977 or any later year gained more credits than required to complete the Professional Examination for which he is enrolled, the additional credits to a maximum of six may be credited to the next succeeding Professional Examination.

(b) A candidate who has failed to gain the required number of credits in the subjects of a Professional Examination and enrolls to repeat subjects or take other subjects to make up the required number of credits for that Professional Examination, may at the discretion of the Head of the School of Architecture take additional subjects to provide not more than 6 credits; and such of those credits as the candidate gains in excess of the credits required to complete that Professional Examination may to a maximum of six be credited to the next succeeding Professional Examination.

8. A candidate shall not enrol for more than 42 credits in any Professional Examination; provided that a candidate who has failed to gain 6 or fewer of the required number of credits in a Professional Examination, may, at the discretion of the Head of the School of Architecture, enrol in subjects for the remainder of the required number of credits, together with the subjects of the next succeeding Professional Examination, up to a total of not more than 42 credits.

9. A candidate may not take a subject unless he has passed or been exempted the prerequisite subject for that subject as provided in Regulation 10, and the Schedule to it; provided that

(a) where the prerequisite subject and the advanced subject are taught consecutively in one year, the candidate may enrol for both, but he may not take the advanced subject if he does not pass the prerequisite subject; and

(b) where the candidate has been exempted from one or more of the subjects of the course for this degree under Regulation 4 or the Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, the Senate may at its discretion exempt him from the requirements of this Regulation.

**Note:** A candidate who is ineligible under proviso (a) to take an advanced subject should withdraw from that subject in accordance with Regulation 7 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

10. (a) The subjects of the Professional Examination shall be as listed and numbered under the headings *Title of subject* and *Number of subject* in the Schedule to this Regulation, (the core subjects being in Part A, and the other subjects in Part B). The credits to be awarded and the prerequisite or corequisite for each subject shall be as shown in the appropriate column opposite the name of the subject.

(b) Each subject referred to in the Schedule to this Regulation as 'Special Topic' and the prerequisite or prerequisites for it shall be as determined by the Head of the School of Architecture.

(c) Each subject named or referred to in the Schedule to this Regulation shall be an independently assessed segment of work, the successful completion of which shall result in the award of the number of credits shown.

**Schedule**

Subject Number	Title of Subject	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites
----------------	------------------	---------	---------------	--------------

**Part A (Core Subjects)***First Professional Examination*

15.101	Studio 1	18		
15.111	Architectural Design 1	3		
15.112	Man-Environment Studies 1	1		
15.113	Construction 1	4		
15.114	Environmental Control 1	3		
15.115	Structure 1	2		
15.116	Drawing 1	3		
15.117	20th Century Architecture	2		

*Second Professional Examination*

15.201	Studio 2	18	15.101 Studio 1	
15.211	Architectural Design 2	3	15.111 Arch Des 1	
15.212	Man-Environment Studies 2	2	15.112 Man-Env Studies 1	
15.213	Construction 2	4	15.113 Constr 1	
15.214	Environmental Control 2	3	15.114 Env Control 1	
15.215	Structure 2	2	15.115 Structure 1	
15.218	Professional Practice 1	1	15.113 Constr 1	
15.216	Drawing 2	3	15.116 Drawing 1	

*Third Professional Examination*

15.301	Studio 3	18	15.201 Studio 2	
15.311	Architectural Design 3	3	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.319	Building Economics 1A	3	15.213 Constr 2	
15.320	Contract Documentation	2	15.213 Constr 2	

*Fourth Professional Examination*

15.401	Studio 4 or	18	15.301 Studio 3	
15.402	Studio 4 Extended	27	15.301 Studio 3	
15.418	Professional Practice 2	2	15.218 Prof Prac 1	
15.421	Building Law	2	15.218 Prof Prac 1	

**Part B (Other Subjects)**

15.132	19th Century Architecture	2		
15.134	History of Building	2		
15.135	Polynesian Architecture	1		
15.321	Advanced Design Methods	4	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.426	Design Theory Elective	3	15.321 Adv Des Methods	or 15.321 Adv Des Methods
15.324	Architectural Aesthetics	2	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.325	History of Architectural Theory	1	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.330	Design & Building Evaluation	3	15.212 Man-Env Studies 2	
15.332	Man-Environment Studies 3	4	15.212 Man-Env Studies 2	
15.412	Man-Environment Elective	3	15.330 Des & Bldg Eval	or 15.330 Des & Bldg Eval
			or 15.332 Man-Env Studies 3	or 15.332 Man-Env Studies 3
15.331	Town Planning	2	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.333	NZ Architecture	2	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.337	Building Economics 1B	1		15.319 Bldg Economics 1A
15.420	Building Economics 2	3	15.319 Bldg Economics 1A	
15.519	Building Economics Elective	3		15.420 Bldg Economics 2
15.338	Commercial Practice & Mgt.	2	15.218 Prof Practice 1	
15.339	Cost Control	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.340	Sound	2	15.214 Env Control 2	
15.344	Audio Systems Design	1	15.340 Sound	or 15.340 Sound

Subject Number	Title of Subject	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites
15.439	Acoustics	3	15.340 Sound	or 15.340 Sound
15.540	Acoustics Elective	3	15.439 Acoustics	or 15.439 Acoustics
15.444	Noise Control	3	15.340 Sound	or 15.340 Sound
15.542	Noise Control Elective	3	15.444 Noise Control	or 15.444 Noise Control
15.313	Multi-storey, Construction	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.413	Industrialised Building	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.513	Construction Elective	3	15.313 Multi-storey Construction or 15.413 Industrialised Building	
15.345	Construction Management	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.445	Construction Mgt. Elective	3	15.345 Constr Mgt.	or 15.345 Constr Management
15.315	Structure 3	2	15.215 Structure 2	
15.415	Structure 4	2	15.315 Structure 3	
15.346	Timber Technology	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.341	Building Services	3	15.213 Construction 2	
15.449	Building Services Elective	3	15.341 Building Services	or 15.341 Building Services
15.343	Energy Efficient Design	3	15.214 Env Control 2	
15.447	Thermal Environment Elective	3	15.343 Thermal Environ	or 15.343 Thermal Environ
15.351	Lighting	2	15.214 Env Control 2	
15.352	Materials Science	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.353	Computer Applications	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.354	Computer Programming	2	15.214 Env Control 2	
15.160 – 15.169, 15.260 – 15.269				
15.360 – 15.369	Special Topics, content to be determined	1		
15.170 – 15.189, 15.270 – 15.289,				
15.370 – 15.389	Special Topics, content to be determined	2		
15.390 – 15.399	Special Topics, content to be determined	3		

**Note:** Subjects listed in Part B of the Schedule will be taught only if sufficient staff are available and if enrolments are adequate to warrant teaching the subject.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ARCHITECTURE

### March

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Architecture shall before his enrolment for this Degree

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture, or (b)(i) have been awarded or qualified for the award of the Diploma in Architecture; and

(ii) satisfy the Senate that he is qualified to pursue the course for the degree by reason of his professional work or by reason of his having pursued a further course of study or investigation since he was awarded or qualified for the award of the Diploma provided that the Senate may in addition require a person seeking enrolment under this provision to pass a special examination.

2. A candidate for the Degree of Master of Architecture shall

(a) (i) follow a course of full-time study of not less than one year, or

(ii) follow a course of part-time study of not fewer than two years;

provided that such full-time or part-time study may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such period or periods as may be determined by the Senate from time to time, and

(b) submit a thesis, and

(c) except as provided in Regulation 6, pass a written examination.

3. The following conditions shall apply to the preparation and presentation of the thesis (15.601): (a) the thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate of an original investigation or design or advanced study relative to Architecture. Its title and an outline of the proposed work shall be submitted to the Faculty of Architecture for approval not later than 1 February of the year in which the candidate enrolls provided that approval may be given to a title and outline submitted or resubmitted not later than 31 March of that year. The work shall be carried out by the candidate himself under the supervision of a Supervisor appointed by the Senate from the School of Architecture.

(b) The candidate shall submit the thesis, accompanied by a certificate from the Supervisor stating that the work has been carried out wholly by the candidate under his supervision, to the Registrar not later than 1 November in the year in which it is presented, or at a subsequent date if so arranged with the Dean of the Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning. The Registrar shall hand the thesis to the Dean of the Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning.

(c) If the Examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it at a later date, to be specified by the Examiner. A thesis that has been submitted twice may not be submitted for a third time.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

4. (a) A candidate who has not been exempted from presenting the written examination shall take such examination not later than in the fourth year after enrolling for the degree.

(b) Every candidate shall submit his thesis by 1 November of the fourth year after enrolment for the degree, provided that this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

5. Except as provided in Regulation 6 a candidate shall be required to pass in one of the following subjects:

(1) 15.502 Building Science

(2) 15.503 Design Theory

(3) 15.506 Practice and Law

6. The candidate will be advised on enrolment whether or not he will be required to present himself for examination in the written paper, provided that, if exemption is granted and if the thesis when presented is not considered to be satisfactory, a candidate may be required either to: (a) pass the written examination, or (b) pass the written examination in addition to resubmitting the thesis.

7. Where a candidate has been required to take the written examination the Senate shall take into consideration the combined results of the thesis and the written examination in recommending a candidate for admission to the Degree of Master of Architecture.

## **JOINT SPECIAL EXAMINATION OF NZIA AND AERB**

**Note:** These regulations are prescribed by the Education Committee of the New Zealand Institute of Architects and administered by a Special Examination Committee representing both the NZIA and the Architects Education and Registration Board.

The Joint Special Examination is recognised by the AERB as a qualification for registration (see AERB ordinances).

Persons who complete the Joint Special Examination are required to make separate application for registration to the AERB in accordance with the Board's ordinances, and are required to attend the Board's professional interview.

Registration is a prerequisite to corporate membership of the NZIA.

1. Persons who fulfil the conditions set out in Clause 2 or Clause 3 may apply to the Special Examination Committee for admission to this Examination.

2. The Committee will consider applicants who:

(a) hold an overseas qualification acceptable in the country in which it was obtained as being of professional standard in architecture;

(b) make application on the form provided;

(c) provide documentary evidence of the qualification obtained, including where possible details of the course prescriptions and grades obtained;

(d) provide details of their experience and examples of their work, together with suitable corroborative evidence. The extent of the applicant's personal involvement in the preparation of the material shall be certified by affidavit;

(e) provide a written report, thesis, review or article, the sole work of the applicant, on some architectural or related topic, as an indication of the candidate's ability to study or analyse a topic and write clearly upon it.

3. The committee will consider applicants who:
  - (a) by their work have demonstrated a level of achievement worthy of an architect;
  - (b) are not less than 35 years of age and have not less than 10 years' suitable architectural experience;
  - (c) make application on the form provided;
  - (d) provide details of their experience and examples of their work, together with suitable corroborative evidence. The extent of the applicant's personal involvement in the preparation of the material shall be certified by affidavit;
  - (e) provide a written report, thesis, review or article, the sole work of the applicant, on some architectural or related topic, as an indication of the candidate's ability to study or analyse a topic and write clearly upon it;
  - (f) provide evidence of age;
  - (g) provide statements from at least three registered architects attesting to the applicant's experience, achievements and suitability for the profession;
  - (h) provide any further information that may be requested by the Committee.
4. A fee of \$50 shall be paid by the applicant to the NZIA upon making formal application to the Examination. This fee is not refundable.
5. Each applicant shall be interviewed by the Committee or by a sub-committee comprising at least two members thereof.
6. Following such interview, the Committee shall admit applicants to the Examination or refuse admission at its discretion.
7. On admitting a candidate to the Examination the Committee
  - (i) may at its discretion exempt the candidate from either or both of the subjects of the Examination set out in Clause 8,
  - (ii) may at its discretion require the candidate to pass any other subject or subjects prescribed for a recognised qualification in architecture in New Zealand, and
  - (iii) shall require of the candidate such further period of approved practical experience (up to 140 weeks from the date of application) as it sees fit.
8. Applicants admitted to the Examination shall be required to pass the following subjects:
  - (i) Professional Practice (ii) Building Law
 subject to such exemption as may be allowed in each case by the Committee.
9. A pass in subjects 8(i) and (ii) will be obtained by a candidate who passes the corresponding subjects for the BArch degree of the University of Auckland.
10. On passing the required subjects and satisfying the Committee that any further period of required practical experience has been satisfactorily completed, the candidate shall be entitled to a Certificate stating that he has completed the requirements of the Joint Special Examination.
11. On refusing an applicant admission to the Examination the Committee shall advise him in writing of reasons for its decision. The Committee will consider a further application after not less than three years from the date of the previous application.
12. Application forms for admission to the Examination may be obtained from the Chief Executive, NZIA, PO Box 438, Wellington, or from the Dean of the Faculty of Architecture & Town Planning, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland.
13. These regulations shall come into effect on 1 January 1983.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### **PRESCRIPTION FOR BArch**

The prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for BArch are listed below.

#### **Architecture Intermediate**

##### **Folder of Work**

A paper detailing requirements for the folder of work may be obtained from the Administration Officer at the School of Architecture.

#### **Professional Years**

##### **15.101 Studio I**

A course of study and practice in Architectural Design in the studios and laboratories of the School of Architecture, with related lectures and seminars. Its scope includes the development of architectural skill and understanding and the co-ordination of subject matter of the course.

##### **15.201 Studio 2**

##### **15.301 Studio 3**

##### **15.401 Studio 4**

##### **15.402 Studio 4 Extended**

Advanced  
stages of the  
work in  
Studio 1

##### **15.111 Architectural Design 1**

Introductory consideration of the phenomena architecture perception and design, and of design process and method. Formal aspects of space materials, structure and services. Historical emphases up to the present day.

##### **15.112 Man-Environment Studies 1**

An introduction to physical, social and cultural aspects of man's relation to the natural and built environment.

##### **15.113 Construction 1**

Principles of Building Construction, material studies, building services.

##### **15.114 Environmental Control 1**

Climate, man, and energy considerations in buildings. Introduction to psychophysics, including lighting and vision, hearing and noise control, thermal comfort and ventilation.

##### **15.115 Structure 1**

Forces acting on buildings, study of equilibrium, resistance of elements and simple assemblies. Design and performance features of commonly used materials.

##### **15.116 Drawing 1**

Basic freehand drawing; instrumental drawing; basic descriptive geometry; conventional projections; basic perspective. Other communication techniques.

##### **15.117 20th Century Architecture**

Description of principal architectural movements and personalities of contemporary architecture from c.1900 to c.1970.

##### **15.211 Architectural Design 2**

Design process, form structures, selected historical studies including New Zealand architecture.

##### **15.212 Man-Environment Studies 2**

Human factors in environmental design. Environmental perception, cognition and meaning. Social interaction and the environment. An introduction to current environmental research methods and findings with conclusions for architectural theory.

##### **15.213 Construction 2**

Advanced studies in the subject matter of Construction 1.

##### **15.214 Environmental Control 2**

Advanced studies in the subject matter of Environmental Control 1

##### **15.215 Structure 2**

Deflection characteristics of common elements, force as arrested movements, approximations of complex building frames, instabilities, introduction to efficient but seldom used systems, discussion of techniques used by structural engineers for frame analysis.

##### **15.216 Drawing 2**

Selected freehand techniques; instrumental drawing; advanced descriptive geometry; perspective, scia-graphy. Further communication techniques.

##### **15.218 Professional Practice 1**

The architectural profession in New Zealand. Historical background and controlling legislation. Codes of professional practice.

##### **15.311 Architectural Design 3**

Buildings in the urban context; design and control of development; townscape and landscape.

##### **15.319 Building Economics 1A**

Microeconomics as parameters in building decisions. Urban land economics, density, buildings as investment.

##### **15.320 Contract Documentation**

Preparation of documentation at all stages of architectural service; briefs, feasibility studies, reports, working drawings, certification; developments in this area. Principles and practice involved in the preparation of specifications, interpretation; performance specifications. Computer assistance in documentation.

**15.418 Professional Practice 2**

The architect, his appointment, authority, duties, responsibilities and liabilities. Control administration. Financing of building projects. Relationships with clients and related professions.

**15.421 Building Law**

Aspects of law as they affect the practice of architecture, building, land and related property.

**15.132 19th Century Architecture**

Description of developments of architectural style and building technique during period c.1750–c.1880 showing the foundations upon which the 20th century architecture develops.

**15.134 History of Building**

Studies in the development of built environment in settlements, buildings and technology.

**15.135 Polynesian Architecture**

A chronological study of the architectural efforts of the Maori from the prehistoric period up to the present day.

**15.321 Advanced Design Methods**

A study of techniques for problem stating, survey, analysis, production of alternatives, evaluation and testing, plus critical path analysis techniques and a look at some strategies.

**15.426 Design Theory Elective**

A fourth year Studio project emphasising theory and techniques from Design Theory in its concept, synthesis and evaluation.

**15.324 Architectural Aesthetics**

Discussion of aesthetic principles as they relate to the visual arts, especially to architecture and to individual experience, and to architectural design. Further development of architectural form perception.

**15.325 History of Architectural Theory**

History of western architectural theories from Greek to modern times.

**15.330 Design & Building Evaluation**

Man-environment interactions as a basis for evaluation of the performance of the built environment and a theory of its function. Techniques and applications of performance measurement and appraisal.

**15.332 Man-Environment Studies 3**

Further investigation of the principles from the behavioural sciences related to the use, perception, evaluation, research and design of the built environment. Statistical analysis of findings and theories about human response, preferences and behaviour in environmental settings.

**15.412 Man-Environment Elective**

A fourth year Studio project emphasising theory and techniques from Man-Environment Studies in its concept, synthesis and evaluation.

**15.331 Town Planning**

The evolution of modern town planning theory and practice. The planning process. Contemporary town planning in New Zealand.

**15.333 NZ Architecture**

Studies in Architecture in New Zealand with reference to historical influences and particular developments.

**15.337 Building Economics 1B**

Major assignment relative to Building Economics 1A.

**15.420 Building Economics 2**

Factors governing productivity. Process of substitution in history of building technology. Skill, tools, energy converters, materials and organisations.

**15.519 Building Economics Elective**

Individual project in Building Economics.

**15.338 Commercial Practice & Management**

A general appreciation of the principles and practice of accounting and commercial practice relevant to the practice of architecture. Management theory organisation; administration, production, distribution and control aspects; economic, financial and investment theories and techniques.

**15.339 Cost Control**

Cost planning and control in relation to the design team and design process. Economic feasibility. Cost in use studies. The quantity surveyor. Pricing.

**15.340 Sound**

A consolidation of the material previewed in the Environmental Control subjects on acoustics and noise control, i.e. the origins, behaviour, description and measurement of sound, and the elements of noise control, room acoustics and the hearing process.

**15.344 Audio Systems Design**

An introduction to the design of sound systems for use in auditoria and theatres.

**15.439 Acoustics**

Advanced studies in room acoustics. Control of reverberation, electronic assistance of reverberation, theory and measurements for reflection masking and integration, application in design, acoustical models, mathematical models of rooms.

**15.540 Acoustics Elective**

Individual project in Acoustics.

**15.444 Noise Control**

Advanced studies in noise control. Mathematical treatment of theory.

**15.542 Noise Control Elective**

Individual project in Noise Control.

**15.313 Multi-storey Construction**

Construction of multi-storey buildings, and how construction is affected by architectural design decisions.



**15.413 Industrialised Building**

Methods of building construction, conventional and unconventional. Site organisation, office, labour, plant and materials handling.

**15.513 Construction Elective**

A field survey and report on an agreed topic related to Multi-storey Construction, or Industrialised Building.

**15.345 Construction Management**

Introduction to quantitative techniques in management of construction projects.

**15.445 Construction Management Elective**

Individual project in Construction Management.

**15.315 Structure 3**

Simplified analysis of concrete and steel designs and explanations of code requirements.

**15.415 Structure 4**

Advanced analysis in concrete and steel design and qualitative study of secondary stresses.

**15.346 Timber Technology**

Rationalisation of timber performance in structure, and discussion of engineering use including both current and predicted techniques.

**15.341 Building Services**

Advanced studies in building services, their design performance and co-ordination.

**15.449 Building Services Elective**

Individual project in Building Services.

**15.343 Energy Efficient Design**

Heating, cooling, lighting and ventilation of buildings using natural ambient energy (sun and wind).

**15.447 Thermal Environment Elective**

Individual project in Thermal Environment.

**15.351 Lighting**

Advanced studies in natural and artificial lighting in buildings.

**15.352 Materials Science**

Advanced studies in building materials.

**15.353 Computer Applications**

Applications in documentation and problem solving in building.

**15.354 Computer Programming**

Introduction to programming in FORTRAN and BASIC, together with practical exercises.

**15.160-15.169 Special Topics****15.260-15.269 Special Topics****15.360-15.369 Special Topics****15.170-15.189 Special Topics****15.270-15.289 Special Topics****15.370-15.389 Special Topics****15.390-15.399 Special Topics**

Courses which may be taught in any year, on topics in architecture; the availability, content, prerequisites and corequisites to be determined each year by the Head of the School of Architecture.

Some special topics which are offered regularly are:

**15.170 Medieval Architecture**

Characteristic medieval architectural forms in their setting and context.

**15.171 History of Western Architecture**

A survey of western architecture from its beginnings in the Near East until the early 19th century.

**15.260 Ergonomics**

The limitations and capacities of people as applied to the design of buildings, equipment, and the environment.

**15.261 Presentation Techniques**

Specialised techniques and development of graphic skills related to Studio presentation.

**15.270 Graphic Techniques**

Elementary graphic processes for presentation, finished art and reproduction.

**15.271 Measured Drawings**

Techniques involving measurement, photography, collation, filing/recording, drawing skills, and other related techniques.

**15.363 Settlement Studies**

A brief study of current issues and the effect on settlement patterns — an introduction to ekistics.

**15.370 Land and Building Form Studies**

Interpretation and analysis of the spatial structure of land forms and building forms.

**15.371 Domestic Design**

A study of activity relationships within the house and its location within the natural environment landscape, with emphasis on the quality of life.

**15.373 Introduction to Valuation**

An introduction to the theories and techniques of valuation.

**15.374 Contemporary Architecture**

Critical discussions and lectures on world architecture post-1970 and New Zealand post-war. Study of popular architecture in New Zealand.

**15.377 Urban Design**

Focuses on urban design theory and practice, with particular emphasis on design of space between buildings, and strategies for implementation of design schemes.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### SCHOOL OF ARCHITECTURE

### DIPLOMA IN VALUATION

#### Dip Val

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Valuation shall

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree of the University of Auckland, or  
(b) hold or have qualified for the award of an approved professional or technician qualification in valuation, or

(c) have passed an Intermediate Examination comprising seven papers from the following papers, including Statistical Methods 13.102 (or Maths 26.180 or 26.181) and Economics 13.103 and 13.104 (or, 13.100 and 13.101) and at least one paper from Mathematics 26.120, 26.121, 26.122, 26.140, 26.141, 26.142, Computer Science 07.100, 07.105, and at least three papers from Accounting 01.100, 01.101, Commercial Law 02.100, Geography 20.101, 20.102, Valuation 1 37.101.

2. A candidate for this Diploma (including the Intermediate Examination) shall follow a course of study of not less than three years.

3. The subjects of the examination shall be:

	Credits		Prerequisite	Note
Statistical Methods	5	13.102 (or 26.180 or 26.181)		
Principles of Economics	5	13.103 (or 13.100 or 15.136)		
Construction 1	4	15.113		(1)(2)
Valuation 1	5	37.101		(1)
Valuation Law 1	2	37.102		(1)
Town Planning	2	15.331		(2)
Building Economics 1A	3	15.319	15.113 (or corequisite)	(2)
Valuation Law 2	2	37.302	37.102 (or corequisite)	
Financial Appraisal	4	37.307	37.101 (or corequisite)	
Urban Land Economics	6	37.311	37.101 (or corequisite)	
Valuation 2	5	37.201	37.101	
Building Technology	5	37.115		(1)(2)
Construction 2	4	15.213	15.113	(2)
Property Management 1	2	37.308	37.201 (or corequisite)	
Concrete & Steel	2	37.309	15.113	(2)
Valuation 3	5	37.301	37.101	
Property Management 1A	3	37.313	37.201 (or corequisite)	(3)
Research Project	6	37.312	37.101	
Dissertation (for Honours)	—	37.604		

provided that

- (i) a candidate who is qualified under regulation 1(b) is exempted from the subjects marked (1) above
- (ii) a candidate who has passed equivalent subjects for the degree of Bachelor of Architecture is exempted from subjects marked (2) above
- (iii) a candidate enrolled for this Diploma prior to 1980 and who otherwise completes this Diploma by 1983 is not required to take the subject marked (3) above
- (iv) a candidate who has passed any of the above subjects prior to enrolment for this Diploma shall have those subjects cross-credited

(v) a candidate who in the opinion of the Senate has passed for any other degree or diploma or professional or technician qualification a subject equivalent in content to any of the above subjects may be exempted from that subject.

4. (a) The Diploma in Valuation may be awarded with or without Honours.

(b) A candidate shall be eligible to enrol for Honours only with the leave of the Senate. A high standard is required in the work prescribed in Regulation 3.

(c) The Senate shall inform him as soon as reasonably possible after the completion of that work as to whether he has leave to enrol for Honours.

(d) Not later than 15 January next following, an eligible candidate wishing to enrol for Honours shall notify the Registrar in writing.

(e) A candidate for Honours shall submit a Dissertation to which the following conditions shall apply:

(i) the Dissertation shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation, approved by the Head of the School of Architecture, in some branch of the subject of Valuation;

(ii) a candidate shall in the first, second or third year following the work described in Regulation 3 submit his Dissertation to the Registrar by 1 November or at a subsequent date approved by the Head of the School of Architecture;

(iii) Honours shall be awarded upon the result of the Dissertation but if the Dissertation is not of sufficient standard the Diploma shall be awarded to the candidate without Honours.

*Note:* An abstract is to be submitted with the Dissertation (see Examination Regulation 14).

5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1979.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipVal**

*Note:* A review of entry qualifications will be undertaken in 1983, at which time those then enrolled for the course, eligible for a substantial number of credits, may be required to do some alternative courses.

Prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding regulations are given below:

### **13.102 Statistical Methods**

An introduction to statistical reasoning and its applications in business and economics. Probability, distributions, statistical estimation and decision-making.

### **13.103 Principles of Economics**

Basic principles of the economic behaviour of individuals, households and business firms and of the complete national economy and its inter-relationships with the rest of the world.

### **15.113 Construction 1**

Principles of building construction, material studies, building services.

### **37.101 Valuation 1**

Introduction to the principles and practice of valuations. Candidates will be required to submit written reports for various purposes on results of property inspections and investigations.

### **37.102 Valuation Law 1**

Aspects of law as they affect the practice of valuation, building, land and related property.

### **15.331 Town Planning**

The evolution of modern town planning theory and practice. The planning process. Contemporary town planning in New Zealand.

### **15.319 Building Economics 1A**

Microeconomics as parameters in building decisions. Urban land economics, density, buildings as investment.

### **37.302 Valuation Law 2**

Advanced studies in valuation law.

### **37.307 Financial Appraisal**

The appraisal of financial statements of sole proprietors, partnerships, companies and societies. The principles, limitations, analysis and interpretation of financial statements. The valuation of goodwill and shares in private companies. The principles of taxation as affecting the appraisal of financial statements. Investment analysis by discounted cash flow techniques.

### **37.311 Urban Land Economics**

Studies in urban land economics. Advanced studies in statistical analysis and application.

### **37.201 Valuation 2**

Studies in valuation principles and practice. The candidate will undertake field studies and submit written reports.

### **37.115 Building Technology**

Basic psychology, climate, siting, sun control, heating/cooling insulation, ventilation, acoustics, natural and artificial lighting.

The writing and interpretation of specifications. The methods of measuring and valuing improvements. The preparation of estimates. The general principles of design applied in architecture.

### **15.213 Construction 2**

Advanced studies in the subject matter of Construction 1.

**37.308 Property Management 1**

History of property management, general principles, interrelationships of the land professions, the management office, property records. Decision making, political and social issues of property ownership and occupation; the goals, objectives and policies of property management.

**37.309 Concrete and Steel**

A general study of good and reasonable practices associated with the use of structural steel, reinforced concrete and prestressed concrete buildings.

**37.301 Valuation 3**

Advanced studies in the principles and practice of valuation. The candidate will undertake field studies and submit written reports.

**37.313 Property Management 1A**

Advanced studies in property management.

**37.312 Research Project**

Advanced survey techniques, sampling, multiple regression analysis, sensitivity analysis and applications. A report shall be written on the results of an investigation into an aspect of applied urban valuation or property management, approved by the Head of the School of Architecture.

The report shall not be less than 5000 words.

**37.604 Dissertation (for Honours)**

The dissertation shall be a written discourse, generally not less than 5000 words nor more than 10,000 words in length, on an original aspect of urban valuation, or property management, approved by the Head of the School of Architecture. It must be an original work and presented in the form appropriate to its value as permanent department reference material.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF TOWN PLANNING

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF TOWN PLANNING

#### BTP

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Town Planning shall
  - (i) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years
  - (ii) pass an Intermediate Examination and two Town Planning Examinations
  - (iii) carry out practical work in the application of Town Planning to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department.
- (b) Except with the permission of Senate no candidate for this Degree shall take in any one year more than nine papers.

#### Examinations

2. Except as hereinafter provided a candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and each Town Planning Examination so that his performance in all papers of the Examination shall be considered; provided that
  - (a) where a candidate fails to pass an Examination (whether Intermediate or Town Planning) as a whole he may at the discretion of the Senate be
    - (i) credited with a paper or papers of that Examination, and
    - (ii) permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with a paper or papers of the First or Second Town Planning Examination as the case may be.
  - (b) No candidate may enrol for any papers of the First Town Planning Examination until he has passed at least six papers prescribed at Stage II level for the Intermediate Examination.
  - (c) A candidate who is studying for this degree part-time or in conjunction with any other degree, may be required to pass an examination consisting of such work, less than the full Examination, as the Senate may in its discretion determine and present the remaining papers of the full Examination in a subsequent year, together with a paper or papers of the next succeeding Examination.
  - (d) A candidate to whom either of the foregoing provisos (a) and (c) applies shall be required to pass as a whole an Examination consisting of the papers taken in any year, so that the candidate's performance in all papers taken in that year shall be considered.
3. The Examinations for this Degree shall be:

#### Intermediate Examination

- (a) The Course of study for the Intermediate Examination shall consist of
  - (i) ten Arts papers or equivalent Science credits (or an equivalent combination of papers and credits), of which three-fifths are above Stage I level, from the following subjects as prescribed for the Degree of BA or BSc as the case may be:

Anthropology	English	Philosophy
Art History	Geography	Political Studies
Biology	Geology	Psychology
Botany	History	Sociology
Computer Science	Mathematics	Zoology
Economics		

Any other subject or subjects prescribed for the Degree of BA or BSc may be approved by the Head of Department for the purposes of this paragraph.

- (ii) four other papers or equivalent credits (or an equivalent combination of papers and credits) from any subjects prescribed for the Degree of BA or BSc or for any other degree approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning for the purposes of the candidate's Course of Study.

(b) A candidate who has passed the Second Professional Examination for BArch or BE, or the Second Law Examination for LLB or LLB(Hons), or two professional years for a degree of another New Zealand University may, with the approval of the Senate, be exempted the requirements of the Intermediate Examination.

(c) A candidate who has qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Town and Country Planning) or the New Zealand Certificate in Town Planning may, with the approval of the Senate, be exempted the requirements of the Intermediate Examination.

**Note:** Any such candidate is required to apply for admission under the Admission Regulations.

### **First Town Planning Examination**

#### **Part A**

36.200 Planning Theory

36.201 Planning Techniques

36.202 Planning Law and Administration

**Part B** not fewer than two of the following:

36.203 Urban Settlements

36.204 Society and Settlements

36.205 Communications and Utilities

#### **Part C**

Two Stage III papers from one of the subjects listed for the Intermediate Examination in paragraph (a) (i) of this Regulation.

### **Second Town Planning Examination**

#### **Part A**

36.300 Advanced Planning Theory

36.301 Advanced Planning Techniques

36.302 Advanced Planning Law and Administration; and one of

36.303 Research Essay

36.304 Special Topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

36.305 Special Topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

36.306 Special Topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

36.307 Special Topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

Research Essay. (i) A candidate for the Research Essay (36.303) shall submit the Essay (that is, two copies of it) by the due date but in any case, except with special leave of the Senate, not later than the expiry of two years from his first enrolment for the Essay.

(ii) The due date is 1 October in the first year of enrolment for the Essay or a later date approved by the Head of the Department.

(iii) Where the candidate does not submit the Essay by a due date within his first year of enrolment for it, he shall re-enrol for the Essay in the following year.

**Part B** not fewer than two of the following:

36.203 Urban Settlements

36.204 Society and Settlements

36.205 Communications and Utilities

36.310 Urban Design

36.311 History of Town Planning

†36.312 Resource Management

36.313 Housing

†36.314 Rural Planning

36.315 Landscape Planning

36.316 Special Topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

36.317 Special Topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

#### **Part C**

One Stage III paper from the subjects for the Intermediate Examination as in paragraph (a) (i) of this Regulation and prescribed for the Degree of BA or BSc as approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning.

**Restrictions Prerequisites and Corequisites**

4. (a) As to Part B of the Second Town Planning Examination:

(i) no candidate shall take paper 36.203 or paper 36.204 or paper 36.205 if he has already been credited with that paper for Part B of the First Town Planning Examination.

(ii) No candidate shall take any of the papers 36.311, 36.312, 36.313, 36.314, 36.315, 36.316 or 36.317 unless he has passed in or taken concurrently the papers 36.203, 36.204 and 36.205.

(b) In respect of the papers and equivalent credits taken for this Degree (whether for the Intermediate Examination or for Part C of the First or the Second Town Planning Examination) each candidate shall be required to comply with all Regulations applicable thereto for the Degree of BA or BSc or other Degree (including Regulations and requirements relating to corequisites, prerequisites, restrictions, combinations of subject and practical work).

**Exemptions**

5. (a) A candidate who has been credited for a Degree with any of the papers or equivalent credits specified for the Intermediate Examination may be credited with those papers or credits for the purpose of this Degree.

(b) Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate who is a graduate of any New Zealand University shall be exempted from passing the Intermediate Examination, and his Course of study shall be pursued for a period of not less than two years.

(c) A candidate proceeding under paragraph (b) of this Regulation or Regulation 3 (b) may substitute for any or all of the papers prescribed for Part C of the First and Second Town Planning Examinations not fewer than the same number of papers prescribed for any other Degree or Diploma as approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning.

(d) A candidate may substitute papers from Part B of the Second Town Planning Examination for an equal number of papers from Part C of the First and Second Town Planning Examinations as approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning provided the candidate passes or has passed three papers at Stage III level.

**Practical Course**

6. No candidate shall be admitted to this Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Head of the Department of Town Planning a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of the Department as to practical work.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1975.

**THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF TOWN PLANNING****MTP**

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the degree of Master of Town Planning shall before enrolment:

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Town Planning, and

(b) have obtained, in the opinion of the Head of the Department, a sufficiently high standard in Part A of the Second Town Planning Examination, with no paper graded lower than C.

2. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate shall take all papers required for this Degree in the same year. A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of the Department to present three or four papers in the first year, or in special circumstances two papers in the first year; and shall present all papers within three years of first enrolment for the Degree.

3. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper that is the same or substantially equivalent to any other paper that he has passed or is taking and obtain credit for both for this Degree.

**Course Content**

4. Every candidate for the Degree of Master of Town Planning shall be required to pass in five papers and a research essay (36.603) which shall count as one paper; or four papers and a thesis (36.601) which shall count as two papers. The papers shall be chosen from

36.400 Planning Theory

36.401 Planning Techniques

36.402 Planning Law and Administration

36.403 Special topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

36.404 Special topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

36.405 Special topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

36.406 Special topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

36.407 Special topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

36.408 Special topics approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning

36.603 Research Essay

52.740 Public Health Engineering Seminar (as prescribed for the Degree of ME)

52.780 Transportation Planning (as prescribed for the Degree of ME)

20.436 Urban Geography (as prescribed for the subject Geography for the Degree of MA)

30.402 A topic on Urban Government and Politics (as prescribed for the subject Political Studies for the Degree of MA)

82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology (as prescribed for the subject Sociology for the Degree of MA)

25.383 Social Control of Land (as prescribed for the Degree of LLB (Hons))

15.503 Design Theory (as prescribed for the Degree of MArch) provided that the Head of the Department of Town Planning must approve the relevance of paper 15.503 to the subject of investigation for the thesis before a candidate may enrol in that paper.

**Thesis**

5. Where a thesis (36.601) is required the following conditions shall apply:

(a) the thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of Town Planning.

(b) A candidate shall present his thesis in the final year in which he takes the papers or within the next three years, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.

(c) If the examiner with the concurrence of the assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date to be specified by the examiner.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

**Honours**

6.(a) There shall be two Classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

(b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate takes an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory; provided that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his control (certified as under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so that he is still eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation.

(c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he completes the requirements for Honours within three years of his first enrolment for this Degree.

**Transitional Provision**

7. Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (a) of Regulation 1, a candidate who has been awarded or qualified for the award of the Diploma in Town Planning shall be eligible to enrol for this Degree up to and including the year 1983; but the Degree shall not be awarded with Honours if the candidate has been awarded the Diploma in Town Planning with Honours under former regulations.

8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1975.



## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BTP

#### 36.200 Planning Theory

The main contributors to planning thought, their theories and ideas, together with examples of the application of these. The objectives of present-day regional and town planning. Town planning in the context of social, economic, and physical planning.

#### 36.201 Planning Techniques

Contemporary planning techniques in New Zealand and overseas.

Techniques of survey, organisation of data and prediction.

Land use requirements and development controls.

#### 36.202 Planning Law and Administration

Introduction to planning law, the legal system and public administration.

The Town and Country Planning Act 1977, and the Town and Country Planning Regulations 1978. Sub-divisional legislation.

#### 36.203 Urban Settlements

The functions, structure and physical form of urban settlement.

Spatial theories of the town.

#### 36.204 Society and Settlements

The process of urbanization. Economic, political, and social aspects of urban growth and change.

#### 36.205 Communications and Utilities

The principles governing the provision of public utility services and transport facilities. Public health engineering. Traffic engineering.

The influence upon urban development of communication and utility systems.

#### 36.300 Advanced Planning Theory

Theoretical approaches to the formulation of planning policies.

The purpose of national and regional planning and development.

The responsibilities of national and regional governments.

Metropolitan growth and decentralization.

#### 36.301 Advanced Planning Techniques

Special land use and development controls. Methods of assessing and testing planning proposals. Urban development models and their application.

#### 36.302 Advanced Planning Law and Administration

Selected aspects of New Zealand planning legislation and the legal system. Methods of land use regulations. Development and functions of local government and other planning agencies. Public participation in planning.

#### 36.303 Research Essay

##### 36.304

##### 36.305

##### 36.306

##### 36.307

#### Special Topics

Approved by the

Head of the Department  
of Town Planning

#### 36.310 Urban Design

Introduction to the concepts and techniques of urban design. Appreciation of the physical form of the built environment. The landscape of urban areas. Relationship between the built and natural environments.

#### 36.311 History of Town Planning

The historical development of cities. The evolution of planning theories and methods. The history of city government and administration.

#### †36.312 Resource Management

A description of natural resources. The utilisation and conservation of resources. The maintenance of environmental quality. Methods of environmental management.

#### 36.313 Housing

Influences upon the type, distribution and quality of housing in New Zealand. The evolution of housing policies. Rehabilitation of housing. Financial aspects of housing.

#### †36.314 Rural Planning

Existing rural land use in New Zealand. Competing demands for rural land. Land use capability surveys. Soil and water conservation. Coastal development. Rural smallholdings. Maori land issues. Legislation affecting rural land use.

#### 36.315 Landscape Planning

An introduction to current practices and theory in the development and conservation of urban and rural landscape in New Zealand.

#### 36.316 Special Topic

Approved by the Head of the Department.

#### 36.317 Special Topic

Approved by the Head of the Department.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR MTP**

The prescriptions of the subjects named in the preceding regulations are given below:

### **36.400 Planning Theory**

National, regional and metropolitan planning. National resources and policies for development. Case studies of important projects. The role of forecasting.

### **36.401 Planning Techniques**

Evolution of planning techniques. Special land use and development controls. Methods of assessing and testing planning proposals.

### **36.402 Planning Law and Administration**

Evolution of statutory planning. Methods of land use regulation. Public participation in planning. Development and functions of local government and other planning agencies.

36.403

36.404

36.405

36.406

36.407

36.408

### **Special Topics**

Approved by

the Head of

the Department

of Town

Planning

### **36.603 Research Essay**

### **52.740 Public Health Engineering**

As prescribed for the Degree of ME.

### **52.780 Transportation Planning**

As prescribed for the Degree of ME.

### **20.436 Urban Geography**

As prescribed for the subject Geography for the Degree of MA.

### **30.402 A Topic on Urban Government and Politics**

As prescribed for the subject Political Studies for the Degree of MA.

### **82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology**

As prescribed for the subject Sociology for the Degree of MA.

### **25.383 Social Control of Land**

As prescribed for the Degree of LLB(Hons).

### **15.503 Design Theory**

As prescribed for the Degree of MArch, provided that the Head of the Department of Town Planning

must approve the relevance of paper 15.503 to the subject of investigation for the thesis before a candidate may enrol in that paper.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES**

### **Environmental Studies**

An inter-disciplinary undergraduate paper in Environmental Studies is offered at Stage II level. Responsibility for the administration of this paper has been assigned to the Department of Town Planning.

### **†84.200 Environmental Studies (4 credits)**

*Prerequisites:* 24 Stage I credits or the equivalent from any Faculty, including six credits from the Science Faculty.

Introduction to global environment problems of population, resources and pollution, with local illustrations through tutorials and field trips.

---

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS & PRESCRIPTIONS

---

### DIPLOMA IN TOWN PLANNING

#### Dip TP

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study, students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

*An intending candidate who seeks admission under the proviso of Regulation 1 of these Regulations may need to apply for admission in accordance with the requirements of the Admission Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Town Planning shall before enrolment have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Degree in Architecture, Engineering, Law, or Surveying; or to a Bachelor's Degree for which he has passed at least three Stage III papers in the subjects of Economics, Geography, or Sociology, or any of those subjects; provided that, if not so qualified, a person may, with the leave of the Senate, enrol for the Diploma if he
  - (i) has been admitted or has qualified for admission to any other Degree, or
  - (ii) holds a professional qualification in Architecture, Engineering, Surveying, or Town Planning, or
  - (iii) has been awarded or qualified for the award of a Diploma in Architecture or Surveying or
  - (iv) has been awarded or qualified for the award of a Diploma in Urban Valuation, his first enrolment for which was made before 1975.

#### Course Content

2. Every candidate shall be required to:
    - (i) pass six papers from Parts A and B of the First Town Planning Examination
    - (ii) pass four papers from Part A and two papers from Part B of the Second Town Planning Examination and
    - (iii) complete the practical course prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Town Planning.
  3. No candidate shall take for this Diploma a paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any paper he has passed for another University Diploma or Degree and shall for any such paper substitute another paper approved by the Head of the Department of Town Planning.
  4. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation the course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
  - (b) The Regulations governing the Diploma in Town Planning which were published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1974 (in this Regulation called the 1974 Regulations) are hereby revoked, provided that a candidate who enrolled under the 1974 Regulations shall, with the exception of the dissertation, complete work and requirements equivalent to those prescribed in the 1974 Regulations by 1 November 1975 and may submit up to and including the year 1978 a dissertation (36.399) in accordance with Regulation 2 (c) of those Regulations, in order to qualify for the Diploma.
  5. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1975.
- 

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipTP

The prescriptions of the subjects are as for the Bachelor of Town Planning.

## Blank Page

---

# Faculty of Engineering

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	346	Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
	352	Degree of Master of Engineering
	354	Professional Institution Courses

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	355	Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
	366	Degree of Master of Engineering

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ENGINEERING BE

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### Honours

1. The Degree of Bachelor of Engineering may be awarded with or without Honours according to the standard of the candidate's work. There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

#### General Provisions

2.(a) Except as otherwise provided, a candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Engineering shall be required  
 (i) to pursue a Course of study for a period of not less than four years, and  
 (ii) to pass an Intermediate Examination and the examinations of the three Professional Years, and  
 (iii) to perform Practical Work to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Engineering, and  
 (iv) to perform Laboratory and Field Work to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Engineering.  
 (b) A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and each Professional Examination (including each Examination under Regulation 4), so that his performance in all the subjects of the Examination shall be considered: provided that a candidate who has failed to pass any such Examination as a whole may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a subject or subjects of the Examination and permitted in a subsequent year to present the subjects not so credited, together with (if the Senate permits) a subject or subjects of the next succeeding Examination. The candidate shall then be required to pass a composite Examination in all the subjects so presented upon the same conditions as those prescribed in this sub-clause.

#### Concessions

3.(a) A candidate who has been credited for the Degree of Bachelor of Science with any or all of the papers Chemistry 110 or 120, Mathematics 120 or 121, Mathematics 140 or 141, Physics 110 or 113, and Physics 120 or 123 shall be credited with such paper or papers for this Degree.  
 (b) For the purposes of this Regulation only  
 (i) two of the papers Chemistry 210, 220 and 230 may be substituted for Chemistry 113, 123.  
 (ii) Stage II Physics papers totalling 6 credits may be substituted for each of the papers Physics 110, 113, 120, 123.  
 (iii) Stage II Pure Mathematics papers totalling 6 credits may be substituted for each of the papers Pure Mathematics 120 or 121 and 140 or 141.  
 (c) A candidate who has been credited for the Degree of Bachelor of Science with the paper Mathematics 170 or Stage II or III Applied Mathematics papers totalling 6 credits may be credited with such paper or papers in lieu of Engineering Mechanics I 55.001 for this Degree.  
 4. A candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering who  
 (a)(i) has been awarded or has qualified for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science, or  
 (ii) has completed within two years the examination requirements for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science, or  
 (iii) was permitted to enrol for Stage II or Stage III papers in a subject without first presenting that subject at Stage I and who, if the Stage I papers not taken were included, would have qualified within two years for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science, shall be required to pursue a Course of study for a period of not less than two years in such subjects for the Degree as the Dean of the Faculty may prescribe and to pass Examinations in each year in the subjects so prescribed for that year; provided that  
 (b)(i) the Examination for the first year shall be such that the amount of necessary study shall be substantially the same as for the Second Professional Examination:

(ii) all the subjects and papers of the Third Professional Examination shall be included in the candidate's Course of study but none such in the first year.

(iii) the candidate shall be exempt from the papers and subjects of the Intermediate Examination and from such other subjects of the Degree as are not prescribed for his Course under this Regulation.

5. Any candidate who has passed in one year in Mathematics 120 or 121, Mathematics 140 or 141, Physics 113, Physics 123 and Chemistry 110, 120 or the substitutes permitted under Regulation 3(b), and one other course, may be exempted by the Senate from the subjects of the Intermediate Examination, provided that he has also completed a Course in Elementary Mechanics approved by the Senate.

6.(a) The Senate may exempt a candidate from the Intermediate Examination if it is satisfied that in the Entrance Scholarships Examination he has reached a satisfactory standard and if the subjects the candidate has taken include Chemistry, Physics, Pure Mathematics, and Applied Mathematics. If the candidate has reached an exceptional standard in the Entrance Scholarships Examination, the Senate may grant the exemption if the subjects taken include Chemistry, Physics, and Pure Mathematics either at the Bursary or Scholarship level.

(b) The Senate may permit a candidate who has gained a pass in the Bursary examination, or a Junior Scholarship, to substitute papers, papers or subjects totalling or equivalent to 12 credits, for prescribed papers of Engineering Intermediate related to one subject of the Bursary Examination in which he attained a standard of achievement approved by the Senate.

Substitution for Engineering Mechanics I shall not be permitted.

7.(a) A candidate who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Engineering, and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of that Certificate, may be exempted by the Senate from the Intermediate and First Professional Examinations or from such of those examinations as the Senate thinks fit.

(b) A candidate who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate of Science (Metallurgy) or Chemistry and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of that Certificate may for the Course in Chemical and Materials Engineering be exempted from the Intermediate and First Professional Examinations or from such of those examinations as the Senate thinks fit.

(c) A candidate who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate of Science (Physics) in the sub-division of Applied Electronics and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of that Certificate may for the Course in Electrical and Electronic Engineering be exempted from the Intermediate and First Professional Examinations or from such of those examinations as the Senate thinks fit.

8. Regulations 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 of these Regulations shall be read together with, so far as they are not inconsistent with, the provisions of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) relating to cross-credits and exemptions.

### **Practical Work**

9. A candidate shall not be admitted to the Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of the Faculty as to Practical Work.

### **Laboratory and Field Work**

10. A candidate shall not be admitted to the Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of the Faculty as to Laboratory and Field Work.

### **Prerequisites**

11. No student may enrol (a) for any subject of the First Professional Year without having completed the whole of the Intermediate Examination;

(b) for any subject of the Third Professional Year without having completed the whole of the First Professional Examination.

**Note:** In considering the enrolment of a student whose course is irregular by reason of past omissions or failures, the Dean will recommend for approval only a course for which he finds the student adequately prepared by his previous studies.

### **Form of Course**

12. The candidate shall follow one of the following five papers:

Chemical and Materials Engineering

Civil Engineering

Electrical and Electronic Engineering

Engineering Science

Mechanical Engineering

**List of Subjects**

13. Subjects in the Professional years taught in the first half year only will be examined mid-year. Subjects taught in the second half year only and full year subjects will be examined at the end of the year. Refer to course prescriptions for details. The subjects of the Examinations for the Degree shall be:

*Intermediate Examination*

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Course No.</i>
Chemistry	08.113
Chemistry	08.123
Engineering Mechanics I	55.001
Mathematics	26.120 or 26.121
Mathematics	26.140 or 26.141
Physics	31.110 or 31.113
Physics	31.120 or 31.123

**Professional Courses***Arrangement:*

<i>First half year papers</i>	<i>Full year papers</i>	<i>Second half year papers</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------------

**Chemical and Materials Engineering***First Professional year*

50.111	Engineering Design
54.111	Engineering Mathematics I
50.101	General Studies I
51.112	Chemical Engineering IB
53.111	Electrical Engineering IG

51.111 Chemical Engineering IA

51.121 Materials I

55.101 Engineering Mechanics II

*Second Professional Year*

51.211	Chemical Engineering IIA
51.212	Chemical Engineering IIB
51.221	Materials II
51.231	Chemical Engineering Design I
54.211	Engineering Mathematics II
51.242	Advanced Chemistry B

51.241 Advanced Chemistry A

*Third Professional Year*

51.312	Chemical Engineering IIIB
51.331	Chemical Engineering Design II
51.361**	Project in Chemical and Materials Engineering
51.313	Chemical Engineering IIIC
51.321	Materials III
55.231	Industrial Administration

50.201 General Studies II

51.311 Chemical Engineering IIIA

\*\* A candidate is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff.

**Civil Engineering***First Professional Year*

50.111	Engineering Design
52.141	Structures I
54.111	Engineering Mathematics I
50.101	General Studies I
52.111	Mechanics of Materials
52.151	Surveying

51.121 Materials I

52.121 Fluid Mechanics I

52.131 Introductory Geology for Engineers



*Second Professional Year*

- 52.211 Properties of Materials and Design
- 52.221 Fluid Mechanics II
- 52.231 Geomechanics I
- 52.241 Structures II
- 52.271 Traffic and Highway Engineering
- 54.211 Engineering Mathematics II

*Third Professional Year*

- 50.201 General Studies II
- 52.321 Hydrology
- 52.331 Geotechnical Engineering
- 52.361 Civil Engineering Design I
- 52.391 Public Health Engineering
- 52.381 Civil Engineering Administration
  - †† Three electives from the list below
  - 52.301 Special topic in Civil Engineering
  - 52.311 Mechanics & Properties of Materials
  - 52.322 Fluid Mechanics III
  - 52.323 Water Resources Engineering
  - 52.332 Geomechanics II
  - 52.333 Engineering Geology
  - 52.341 Structures III
  - 52.362 Civil Engineering Design II
  - 52.371 Traffic Systems Design
  - 52.382 Management Techniques
  - 52.392 Water Quality Engineering
  - 53.312 Electrical Engineering for Civil Engineers
  - 54.314 Engineering Analysis B
- ‡ An approved subject from another University course.

‡ The subject must be approved by the appropriate Heads of Departments. There should be no timetable conflict with other subjects taken by the candidate. Approval will depend on the academic level of the subject and its compatibility with the candidate's personal aptitudes and interest and with his other electives.

†† Not all electives will be available in a given half-year.

**Electrical and Electronic Engineering***First Professional Year*

- 50.111 Engineering Design
- 53.121 Networks
- 54.111 Engineering Mathematics I
- 51.121 Materials I
- 52.121 Fluid Mechanics I
- 53.141 Power Apparatus & Systems I
- 50.101 General Studies I
- 53.131 Electronics I
- 55.102 Mechanical Engineering IE

*Second Professional Year*

- 53.204 Electrical Engineering Design
- 53.231 Electronics II
- 54.211 Engineering Mathematics II
- 51.222 Electrical Engineering Materials
- 53.222 Networks and Signals
- 53.271 Control Systems
- 53.241 Power Apparatus & Systems II
- 53.251 Transmission Lines & Fields
- 55.231 Industrial Administration

*Third Professional Year*

- 53.301\*\*Project in Electrical Engineering
  - †† Three electives from the list below
  - 53.304 Special Topic in Electrical Engineering
  - 53.321 Applied Network Synthesis
  - 53.331 Semiconductors
  - 53.341 Advanced Power Systems
- 50.201 General Studies II
- 53.302 Advanced Electrical Engineering A
- 53.303 Advanced Electrical Engineering B

- 53.351 Advanced Communications
- 53.361 Electromagnetic Fields
- 53.371 Advanced Control Engineering
- 53.381 Computer Engineering
- 54.314 Engineering Analysis B
- 55.333 Engineering Economics
- An approved subject from another University course.

†† The choice of elective subjects must be approved by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering. There should be no timetable conflict in the proposed course. Approval will depend on the compatibility of the chosen subjects with the candidate's personal aptitudes and interests, their mutual compatibility and the coherence of the proposed course as a whole. Not all electives will be available in a given year.

\*\*A candidate is required to submit a report on project work, carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff.

### Engineering Science

#### First Professional Year

- |        |        |                            |                                  |
|--------|--------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
|        | 50.111 | Engineering Design         |                                  |
|        | 54.112 | Engineering Mathematics IS |                                  |
| 51.121 |        | Materials I                | 50.101 General Studies I         |
| 52.122 |        | Fluid Mechanics IS         | 51.151 Thermodynamics            |
| 55.101 |        | Engineering Mechanics II   | 53.111 Electrical Engineering IG |

#### Second Professional Year

- |        |        |                             |                                  |
|--------|--------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
|        | 54.212 | Engineering Mathematics IIS |                                  |
|        | 54.241 | Continuum Mechanics I       |                                  |
|        | 54.251 | Operations Research I       |                                  |
|        | 54.291 | Engineering Science Design  |                                  |
|        | 55.241 | Mechanics of Materials I    |                                  |
| 53.211 |        | Electrical Engineering IIS  | 55.231 Industrial Administration |

#### Third Professional Year

- |        |        |  |  |
|--------|--------|--|--|
|        | 54.312 | Engineering Mathematics IIIS                       |  |
|        | 54.341 | Continuum Mechanics II                             |  |
|        | 54.351 | Operations Research II                             |  |
| 50.201 |        | General Studies II                                 | 54.303**Project in Engineering Science             |
| ††     |        | One elective from the list below                   | †† One elective from the list below                |
| 54.301 |        | Special Topic in Engineering Science A             | 54.302 Special Topic in Engineering Science B      |
|        |        | An approved subject from another University course | 54.343 Mechanics of Structures                     |
|        |        |  | 54.352 Stochastic Methods in Operations Research   |
|        |        |  | 54.361 Control Theory                              |
|        |        |  | An approved subject from another University course |

\*\*A candidate is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff. In addition to the subjects listed for Engineering Science Third Professional Year, candidates are required to attend the Engineering Science Laboratory (three hours per week or equivalent), carry out assignments and submit reports, to a required standard.

**Note:** (i) The choice of elective subjects must be approved by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics. There should be no timetable conflict in the proposed course. Approval will depend on the compatibility of the chosen subjects with the candidate's personal aptitudes and interests, and the coherence of the proposed course as a whole.

(ii) A subject chosen from another University course must be of an appropriate weight and academic level. The syllabus may not be the same or substantially overlap that of another subject in the candidate's course. In respect of subjects from other degrees, a subject from the list above will be considered equivalent to one paper for BA or BCom at stage II or stage III or three credits for BSc at stage II or stage III.

- (iii) In normal circumstances one elective subject is to be chosen from those taught in the first half-year and one from those taught in the second half-year.
- (iv) Those students who have previously passed General Studies II for their Second Professional Examination will be required to take an additional elective subject in their Third Professional Year.
- (v) Some electives may not be available in any given year.

## Mechanical Engineering

### First Professional Year

	50.111	Engineering Design	
	54.111	Engineering Mathematics I	
	55.111	Thermodynamics & Fluid Mechanics I	
51.121		Materials I	50.101 General Studies I
55.101		Engineering Mechanics II	53.111 Electrical Engineering IG

### Second Professional Year

	54.211	Engineering Mathematics II	
	55.211	Thermodynamics & Fluid Mechanics II	
	55.221	Theory of Machines	
	55.241	Mechanics of Materials I	
	55.261	Mechanical Engineering Design I	
50.201		General Studies II	55.231 Industrial Administration

### Third Professional Year

55.301	Project in Mechanical Engineering
55.361	Mechanical Engineering Design II

#### Three subjects from the list below

53.311	Applied Fluid Mechanics
54.313	Engineering Analysis A
55.321	Control Engineering A
55.331	Industrial Engineering
55.341	Mechanics of Materials IIA
55.351	Thermal Engineering

\*\*Other

#### Three subjects from the list below

53.311	Applied Electricity
54.314	Engineering Analysis B
55.302	Engineering Case Studies
55.312	Applied Aerodynamics
55.322	Acoustics and Vibrations
55.323	Control engineering B
55.333	Engineering Economics
55.342	Mechanics of Materials IIB
55.352	Applied Thermodynamics
55.371	Production Technology

\*\* Other

\*\* One, or two, approved subjects from another University Course.

**Note:** The choice of elective subjects must be approved by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering. There should be no timetable conflict in the proposed course. Approval will depend on the compatibility of the chosen subjects with the candidate's personal aptitudes and interests, their mutual compatibility and the coherence of the proposed course as a whole.

A subject chosen from another course must be of an appropriate weight and academic level. The syllabus may not be the same or substantially overlap that of another subject in the candidate's course. In respect of subjects from other degrees, a subject from the list above will be considered equivalent to one paper for BA or BCom at stage II or stage III or to three credits for BSc at stage II or stage III or to four credits for BArch at third or fourth professional.

In normal circumstances three subjects are to be chosen from those taught in the second half-year.

## Savings and Transitional Provisions

14. The Regulations governing the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering set forth in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1981 are hereby revoked: provided that every candidate who began his course under the last mentioned Regulations shall be credited for the purpose of these present regulations with such units as the Senate may determine.

15. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1983.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ENGINEERING ME

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Engineering shall
  - (a) before his enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, and
  - (b) follow a Course study of not less than one year.
2. Every candidate for this Degree shall
  - (a) pass in each of eight subjects where those subjects do not include Project D, or
  - (b) pass in Project D and six other subjects, or
  - (c)(i) pass in each of three subjects, and
  - (ii) pass in respect of a thesis (which shall count as equivalent to five subjects).

### Subjects

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of subjects
  - (a) Every candidate shall choose subjects in consultation with the Head of his Department from those listed in clause (b) of this Regulation; provided that no subject that has been credited to another Degree shall be taken for this Degree.
  - (b) The subjects of examination for the Degree are:
    - (i) 50.700 Project A
    - 50.710 Project B
    - 50.720 Project C
    - 50.730 Project D (value 2 papers)
    - ‡ 51.700 Advanced Materials
    - 51.710 Advanced Process Control
    - 51.720 Chemical Engineering Seminar
    - 51.730 Materials Seminar
    - 51.740 Studies in Chemical Engineering
    - 51.750 Studies in Materials Engineering
    - 51.760 Biochemical Engineering Seminar
    - 51.770 Advanced Chemical Engineering
    - 52.700 Earthquake Engineering
    - 52.710 Fluid Mechanics Seminar
    - 52.720 Geomechanics Seminar
    - 52.730 Mechanics and Properties of Materials Seminar
    - 52.740 Public Health Engineering Seminar
    - 52.741 Project Management
    - 52.742 Case Studies in Project Management
    - 52.750 Structural Dynamics
    - 52.760 Structures Seminar
    - 52.770 Transportation Engineering Seminar
    - 52.780 Transportation Planning
    - 52.790 Transportation Systems Analysis
    - 52.800 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering A
    - 52.801 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering B
    - 52.810 Structural Analysis
    - 52.820 Space Structures
    - 52.860 Advanced Fluid Mechanics

52.870 Coastal Engineering  
 52.880 Advanced Water Resources  
 52.890 Applied Geomechanics  
 52.900 Earth Structures  
 52.910 Traffic Engineering  
 52.920 Structural Design  
 25.313 Environmental Law  
 53.700 Advanced Control Systems  
 53.710 Advanced Electrical Engineering  
 53.721 Electromagnetic Theory  
 53.730 Heavy Current Electronics  
 53.740 Microprocessors and Minicomputers  
 53.750 Studies in Electrical Engineering  
 53.760 Electronic Circuits and Systems  
 53.770 Digital Signal Processing  
 53.780 VHF and UHF Radio Communication  
 54.700 Studies in Engineering Mathematics  
 54.710 Studies in Engineering Science  
 54.720 Studies in Control Theory  
 54.730 Studies in Continuum Mechanics A  
 54.740 Studies in Continuum Mechanics B  
 54.750 Finite Element Methods  
 54.760 Studies in Operations Research A  
 54.770 Studies in Operations Research B  
 54.780 Advanced Systems Analysis  
 54.790 Random Processes  
 54.800 Geothermal Modelling  
 54.810 Bio-engineering  
 54.820 Nonlinear Optimisation  
 55.700 Advanced Mechanical Engineering  
 55.710 Advanced Applied Aerodynamics  
 55.720 Advanced Mechanics of Materials  
 55.730 Advanced Production Technology  
 55.740 Productivity Management  
 55.750 Studies in Mechanical Engineering  
 86.100 Geothermal Systems and Technology  
 86.103 Geothermal Production Technology  
 86.104 Geothermal Energy Utilisation  
 86.106 A project on some aspect of Geothermal Energy.

(ii) those subjects approved by the Head of Department from any of those offered at Third Professional level for the BE Degree.

(iii) Subject to the permission of the Heads of Departments concerned, one or two papers chosen from those offered in any other Faculty at the final-year undergraduate level or the master's level provided

(a) that prerequisite and timetabling requirements can be met, and

(b) that the syllabus is not the same as or substantially overlapping with any course prescribed for this Degree, and

(c) that the paper has a weight not less than that of an engineering paper.

### **Project Work**

4. (a) No candidate shall take

(i) Project A, B, C or D if he submits a thesis for this Degree;

(ii) more than one of the Projects A, B or C if he takes Project D.

(b) A candidate who takes Project D must submit his project report not later than twelve months after his enrolment for this project provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.

(c) A candidate who takes Project A, B or C must submit his project report on the last day of the period in which the project is taken provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.

**Thesis**

5. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis (56.601):

- (a) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in a subject approved by the Head of the Department.
- (b) The investigation shall be carried out personally by the candidate at the University under the direct supervision of a member of the academic staff; provided that
  - (i) laboratory work may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;
  - (ii) field work may be carried out at such places and for such periods as the Senate may determine.
- (c)(i) The supervisor shall be the principal examiner.
- (ii) The Senate acting on the advice of the Head of the Department shall appoint either an external assessor or a second internal examiner.
- (d) At the discretion of the Head of the Department the candidate may be required to attend an oral examination on the subject of the thesis, which shall take place within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstances approve.
- (e) If the supervisor with the consent of the assessor or second examiner as the case may be so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to submit it again at a later date to be specified by the supervisor.
- (f) A candidate shall present the thesis not later than 18 months, or if (s)he is a part-time candidate not later than 36 months, after the first enrolment for this Degree, provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

- (g) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5(f) a part-time candidate shall present the thesis not later than 36 months after the first enrolment for this Degree, provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.

**Classes of Pass**

- 6. The Degree of Master of Engineering may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be awarded with distinction.
- 7. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1972.

‡ Not all electives will be available in a given year.

**RESEARCH IN ENGINEERING**

Facilities are available for research by PhD students and postdoctoral fellows in each of the Departments of Engineering in a wide range of topics and also within the Radio Research Centre, which comes under the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, in communications, ionospheric and ground wave radio propagation, antennas and radio direction-finding.

Attention is drawn to the fact that the Honours degree qualifying a PhD student for registration need not necessarily be one in Engineering. Graduates with a good Honours degree in Physics, Chemistry, or Mathematics, for example, could be considered for registration in Engineering.

**PROFESSIONAL INSTITUTION COURSES**

Candidates for the examinations of the Council of Engineering Institutions may take courses selected from the BE syllabus. Prospective candidates should consult the Dean of the Faculty before planning their course.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### ††PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BE

The prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations are listed below.

#### Intermediate Examination

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Course No.</i>
Chemistry	08.113
Chemistry	08.123
Engineering Mechanics I	55.001
Mathematics	26.120 or 26.121
Mathematics	26.140 or 26.141
Physics	31.110 or 31.113
Physics	31.120 or 31.123

#### 55.001 Engineering Mechanics I

(Two lectures per week and problem clinics)

An introductory course dealing with the principles of Newtonian rigid-body mechanics and the analysis of simple mechanical systems. Topics to be treated are (a) statics of particles, rigid bodies, and collections of rigid bodies including the concepts of contact and body forces, moments of forces, couples, free-body diagrams, equivalent force systems, centroids, equilibrium conditions, and Coulomb friction, (b) kinematics of particles and rigid bodies including velocity, acceleration, angular velocity, and angular acceleration, and (c) kinetics including the concepts of moment of inertia, inertia force, and inertia torque and the principles of D'Alembert, impulse-momentum, and work-energy as applied to planar motion of particles and rigid bodies.

#### Professional Examinations

##### 50.101 General Studies I

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

A course that considers aspects of human development; origins, societies, politics, human nature, and creativity.

##### 50.111 Engineering Design

[One lecture and one three-hour drawing office class per week]

The elements of engineering draughting and graphics. Introduction to the application of mechanics to the design of mechanical and structural components.

##### 50.201 General Studies II

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

A survey of some of the problems of contemporary

man, including aspects of politics, sociology, ecology and technology and their interactions.

##### 51.111 Chemical Engineering IA

[Four lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Compressible flow. Force and momentum relationship. Flow measurement. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to Turbomachinery. Mass and energy balances with and without chemical reaction and with recycle. Heat transfer by conduction and radiation.

##### 51.112 Chemical Engineering IB

[Four lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Classical chemical thermodynamics up to and including the concepts of chemical potential, fugacity and activity; applications of these concepts. Thermodynamics of power and refrigeration cycles, and flow processes. Introduction to statistical thermodynamics. Incompressible Newtonian flow; fluid resistance; friction factor; boundary layer concepts; flow in closed channels; losses; flow measurement; turbulent flow; pumping; piping networks.

##### 51.121 Materials I

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Mechanical properties and testing of engineering materials; atomic and structural aspects; deformation and strengthening mechanisms; annealing; working processes; temperature dependent properties of materials; microstructures; solidification and phase equilibria; heat treatment; non-destructive testing; corrosion; non-metallic materials including polymers, wood, ceramics and concrete.

##### 51.151 Thermodynamics

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Classical chemical thermodynamics up to and including the concepts of chemical potential, fugacity and activity; applications of these concepts. Thermodynamics of power and refrigeration cycles and flow processes. Introduction to statistical thermodynamics.

**51.211 Chemical Engineering IIA**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Non-Newtonian fluid flow; flow models and applications; aspects of open-channel flow; compressible flow. Heat transfer by diffusion and convection; convection correlations; boiling and condensation heat transfer; heat exchanger operation and design. Steady-state mass and energy balancing including graphical methods. Evaporator types; sizing performance; multiple effect evaporation; vapour recompression. Drying equipment; drying mechanisms; simultaneous heat and mass transfer; drying curves and applications.

**51.212 Chemical Engineering IIB**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Mass transfer operations; phase equilibria; single and multistage processes; simple and multi-component distillation; liquid-liquid and solid-liquid extraction; differential contact operations; gas absorption; combined heat, mass and momentum transfer; humidification and cooling towers; other transfer operations.

**51.221 Materials II**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week]

Topics in materials engineering including: kinetics of metallurgical reactions, imperfections and plastic flow, mechanical behaviour of materials, x-ray diffraction, deformation processing, solidification and casting, metallurgy and properties of engineering alloys. Corrosion and oxidation.

**51.222 Electrical Engineering Materials**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Free electron theory; zone theory; electron conduction in metals and alloy. Theory of semiconductors. Semiconducting materials. Superconductivity. Electron emission. Dielectric processes. Magnetic processes. Optical processes. Thermo-electricity.

**51.231 Chemical Engineering Design I**

[One lecture and one two-hour drawing office class per week]

Analysis of simple structures; design of steel beams, columns, trusses and reinforced concrete beams and footings; effects of earthquakes. The general specification of a process; alternative processing schemes; the basis for process selection; the development of precise heat and material balances and their subsequent updating as detailed design proceeds; the process flow diagram and description; a process of relevance to New Zealand will be chosen to illuminate this course and Chemical Engineering Design II. Students will be guided in the design of a holdup vessel and a pressure vessel for this process using all relevant standards.

**51.241 Advanced Chemistry A**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Organic chemistry; industrial organic chemistry; analytical chemistry; chemical safety.

**51.242 Advanced Chemistry B**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Chemical kinetics; heterogeneous catalysis; electrochemistry; air pollution; biological chemistry.

**51.311 Chemical Engineering IIIA**

[Five lectures per week. First half-year]

Dynamic modelling of linear open-loop system; transfer functions; linear closed-loop systems; analysis and control; control theory; stability analysis using root-locus and frequency response methods. Controller tuning; industrial application with simple and complex control systems. Introductory principles of biochemistry and microbiology; industrial applications; enzyme reactions; fermentations; membrane processing; chromatography and application to the dairy and meat process industries.

**51.312 Chemical Engineering IIIB**

[Two lectures per week]

A course on particulate technology, including characterisation of particles; fluid dynamics; analysis of separation processes; separation mechanisms; size reduction; particle size measurement; sedimentation; fluidisation; conveying; filtration; packed beds; solid/solid separations; gas cleaning; agglomeration; storage; atomisation; mixing.

**51.313 Chemical Engineering IIIC**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

The restraints of thermodynamics and kinetics; effects of temperature and pressure on process rate; batch and continuous stirred tank models as they apply to homogeneous reactions; limitations of the models and the use of residence time analysis; heterogeneous reactions and an introduction to biochemical reactions and an introduction to biochemical reactor design and combustion.

**51.321 Materials III**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Methods of joining metals. The structure, physical properties and mechanical properties of polymers. Plastics in chemical engineering plant. Properties of ceramic materials. Advanced metallographic techniques. The treatment of metal surfaces, including coatings, electroplating, anodising and hardfacing. Selection and specification of materials.



**51.331 Chemical Engineering Design II**

[One lecture and one three-hour drawing office class per week]

Plant start-up and the need for ancillary process piping. General problems of materials transportation; safe design and hazard analysis; single risk and double jeopardy principles; reliability of components; sequence controllers, venting and fire control; pumps, compressors and ejectors; their specification; structure of the chemical industry; plant commissioning and start-up; legal requirements including obligations to the public; the employer and the profession; basis of contract law, common law and patent law; environment, health, air and water pollution legislation; engineering economics and overall cost estimation. Students will develop the example given in Chemical Engineering Design I to include pipe, valve and instrument schedules, a pipe and instrumentation diagram, a hazard analysis, an environmental impact report outline and a cost estimate of the overall process. In addition they will design or specify individual heat exchangers, towers and chemical reactors.

**51.361 Project in Chemical and Materials Engineering**

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff.

**52.111 Mechanics of Materials**

(Three lectures and one shared tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Stress, strain and stress/strain relationships; application of these concepts to simple structural members. Properties of civil engineering materials.

**52.121 Fluid Mechanics I**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. First half-year]

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Compressible flow. Force and momentum relationship. Flow measurement. Dimensional Analysis and similarity. Introduction to Turbomachinery.

**52.122 Fluid Mechanics IS**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Compressible flow. Force and momentum relationship. Flow measurement. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to Turbomachinery. Mass and energy bal-

ances with and without chemical reaction and with recycle.

**52.131 Introductory Geology for Engineers**

[Three lectures and one shared tutorial per week. First half-year]

Principles of physical and structural geology; seismology and elementary stratigraphy. Petrology and mineralogy of the common rocks, rock groups and rock forming minerals. Geological surveying and mapping. Geology of water supply and the general application of geology to Civil Engineering.

**52.141 Structures I**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week]

Analysis of determinate structures; approximate analysis of indeterminate structures, plastic analysis of framed structures; appreciation of structural systems.

**52.151 Surveying**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to land surveying theory and practice for Civil Engineers. Principles of typical surveying equipment and of its operation and application.

**52.211 Properties of Materials and Design**

[Three lectures and two hours drawing office per week]

The analysis and design of components of civil engineering structures. Further properties of civil engineering materials.

**52.221 Fluid Mechanics II**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week]

Laminar viscous flows and elements of lubrication. Turbulent viscous flows. The nature of turbulent fluid flow.

Fundamentals of external flows, laminar and turbulent boundary layers, separation, lift and drag, velocity distribution and resistance to flows.

Internal flows, velocity distribution and resistance in pipe flow, pipe networks, unsteady flows in pipelines. Compressive flows in pipelines and pipeline conveyance.

Open channel flow. Energy and momentum concepts applied to steady and unsteady open channel flow. Gradually and spatially varied flow. Open channel transitions. Resistance in open channel flows.

Loose Boundary Hydraulics: threshold of motion, movement by wind and water, bed forms, resistance to flow and calculation of rating curves, sediment transport, stable channel design, elements of river control works. Water Waves: simple linear waves, wave celerity, orbital motion, interference, refraction, diffraction, wave energy and wave forces, shoaling waves.

**52.231 Geomechanics I**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week]

Nature and classification of soils. Physical properties of soils and rocks: density, permeability, stress-strain relationships, strength. Fluid flow in soils. Consolidation theory. States of stress in earth masses. Settlement analysis. Stability problems: bearing capacity, slope stability, earth pressures on retaining structures.

**52.241 Structures II**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week]

Analysis of indeterminate structures by force and displacement methods. Moment distribution and moment area methods for framed structures. Analysis of frames subject to dynamic loads.

**52.271 Traffic and Highway Engineering**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week]

Basic elements of intersection and highway capacity, intersection design, signal control design, theoretical analysis of traffic flow. Introduction to traffic and transportation planning. Transport in NZ. Highway location, geometrics and alignment design. Earthwork volumes. Setting out works. Pavement design. Road materials. Construction techniques.

**52.301 Special Topic in Civil Engineering**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

A course on a topic in Civil Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil Engineering.

**52.311 Mechanics and Properties of Materials**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

A selection of topics from the following:

Elasticity and plasticity; experimental methods; beams, plates and shell theory; stability of structural sections, analysis of joints; shear walls and deep beams; civil engineering materials; further material on traditional materials as well as information on modern advances.

**52.321 Hydrology**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Introduction to hydrology, precipitation, interception, evaporation, transpiration, infiltration, groundwater, runoff and hydrographs, storage, flood estimation and flood routing, soil erosion. Elements of river control work. Introduction to concepts of coastal engineering.

**52.322 Fluid Mechanics III**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to the generalised form of equations of motion and to concept of potential flow. Introduction to flow through porous medium and application of potential flow techniques to analysis of flow through porous media, unsteady groundwater flow and leaky aquifers, intrusion of salt water.

Introduction to the theory of water waves, wave forces and coastal processes.

Introduction to the elements of dispersion and diffusion into water and atmosphere.

**52.323 Water Resources Engineering**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to synthetic hydrology, reservoir capacity and yield analysis, design of flood control structures, irrigation and drainage, urban drainage, introduction to coastal engineering, water resources systems engineering, and related topics.

**52.331 Geotechnical Engineering**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Site investigation. Application of engineering geology. Foundation engineering: selection; design; construction. Problems associated with house foundations. Foundation instrumentation and observed performance. Geotechnical processes, compaction. Applications of rock mechanics.

**52.332 Geomechanics II**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

A selection from the following:

Further strength and stress strain properties of soils and rocks. Numerical methods applied to steady and transient fluid flow in soils. Soil dynamics applied to earthquake engineering and foundation vibrations. Earth and rock fill dams: design and construction. Soil structure interaction: beams on elastic foundations, laterally loaded piles, flexible bulkheads, tunnels, culverts, conduits and silos: design loadings. Reinforcement of soil and rock masses. Computer-oriented design methods.

**52.333 Engineering Geology**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Geological principles applied to engineering problems.

**52.341 Structures III**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Direct stiffness method for truss and frame structures; energy theorems; approximate methods for asymmetrical buildings, multibeam bridges, simple cable networks and shell structures.

**52.361 Civil Engineering Design I**

[Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week. First half-year]

Civil Engineering design with emphasis on concrete and steel structures involving continuity.

**52.362 Civil Engineering Design II**

[Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to further design techniques including structures in which seismic considerations are important.

**52.371 Traffic Systems Design**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Signal control design, linking and area control. Traffic management techniques. Driver characteristics and safety. Traffic control devices and design application. Design of parking and street lighting. Introduction to traffic flow and queuing theory, systems simulation and applications.

**52.381 Civil Engineering Administration**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week, first half-year. Three lectures and one tutorial per week, second half-year]

An introduction to financial, legal and managerial principles, and their application to problems in civil engineering management. Systems approach to decision making. Topics related to professional engineering practice.

**52.382 Management Techniques**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to project planning and the making and implementation of decisions.

**52.391 Public Health Engineering**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Water use, supply and treatment. Urban drainage. Waste-water treatment and disposal. Water pollution control. Solid waste management. Air pollution control. Planning and environmental factors relevant to provision of public health engineering works.

**52.392 Water Quality Engineering**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Chemistry and microbiology of water. Unit operations and process design in water and waste-water treatment. Engineering management of natural water quality.

**53.111 Electrical Engineering IG**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

An introductory course, with principal emphasis on electric circuit theory and electronics.

**53.121 Networks**

[Two lectures in the first half-year, one in the second half-year and one tutorial per week]

Basic network theory and network theorems. Signal waveforms. Network response. Introduction to single and three-phase A.C. circuits. A.C. bridges.

**53.131 Electronics I**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Electronics: Basic device principles. Application of junction diodes in power supplies. Theoretical and practical considerations of transistors as amplifiers. Digital Systems: Basic logic elements. Concept of finite states and the general finite state machine. Logic system synthesis.

**53.141 Power Apparatus and Systems I**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Review of electromagnetic theory. Magnetic materials and their properties with D.C. and A.C. excitation. The magnetic circuit. The single phase transformer. Introduction to electrical machines.

**53.204 Electrical Engineering Design**

[Three hours per week]

Electric wiring conventions. Regulations, standard and codes. The protection of circuits and equipment. The properties and selection of materials. Thermal design. Reliability of circuits and systems. Printed circuit techniques. Electromagnetic shielding. Computer-aided circuit analysis.

**53.211 Electrical Engineering IIS**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Electronic devices, small signal amplifier theory. Network analysis, transfer functions. Analogue computing systems, simulation. Electronic logic elements, digital systems. Hybrid computation. Electromagnetic field theory.

**53.222 Networks and Signals**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half year.]

Bridge circuits; resonance, Q, gain bandwidth considerations, tuned coupled circuits; Laplace Transforms; pole-zero diagrams and applications; Two Port coupling networks; filter design using Image Parameters, frequency and impedance transformation; filter design using appropriate methods; active filter design. Signal levels and logarithmic units, signal spectrum and transmission in band limited channels, modulation techniques, electrical noise.

**53.251 Transmission Lines and Fields**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half year.]

Vector analysis revision; static fields; the electric field and materials; fields varying in time; Maxwell's equations; electromagnetic waves; Poynting's theorem; skin effect; exact and approximate solution of field problems. Transmission lines with distributed constants; surges on lines; AC lines; standing waves, resonance and antiresonance; Smith chart; common transmission lines, parameters, higher order modes; high frequency lines, communication lines and high power lines.

**53.231 Electronics II**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Digital: binary codes, code conversion; binary number conventions, 2's complement; binary arithmetic operations, addition, subtraction, multiplication; computer basics, microprocessors, typical structures, memory elements, peripheral devices. Analogue: Y parameters for passive and active circuits; feedback amplifiers, instrumentation amplifiers; sample and hold circuits, A/D and D/A conversion; thyristor-controlled rectifiers and inverters, line commutated converters.

**53.241 Power Apparatus and Systems II**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Multi-circuit and polyphase transformers. Motor starting and speed control. Power electronics. Synchronous machines: infinite busbar operation; load sharing; stability. Elements of power supply systems.

**53.271 Control Systems**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Analysis of linear control systems. Stability criteria. Design methods based on Nyquist, Bode, and Nicols plots. Root locus methods. Analogue computer simulation.

**53.301 Project in Electrical Engineering**

[Six hours per week in the first half year, seven in the second half year]

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff. The report shall carry the weight of three papers.

**53.302 Advanced Electrical Engineering A**

[Three lectures per week. First half year]

Two modules chosen from the following list of four:

**Advanced Electronics A.** High frequency device models; transient and frequency response of basic amplifier configurations; power amplifiers; stability and frequency response of feedback amplifiers; oscillators; mixers; computer-aided active network analysis.

**Power Systems.** Power system components; control of power and frequency; reactive power and voltage control; introduction to load flow and fault analysis; steady state, transient, and dynamic stability; AC and DC power transmission; protection; load forecasting and management; reliability.

**Communication Systems.** Modulation techniques, AM and FM; antennas, gain, beamwidth, aperture, radiation pattern, arrays; propagation, broadcasting, ionospheric, microwave, tropospheric; electrical noise, noise figure, noise in cascaded networks; introduction to digital techniques, sampling theorems, anti-aliasing, linear and log-PCM, quantization-noise; wideband techniques, FDM, TDM, TDM-PDM.

**Mathematics Topic A.** A selection from the following topics: probability theory; stochastic processes; queuing theory and applications; data analysis; forecasting techniques.

**53.303 Advanced Electrical Engineering B**

[Three lectures per week. First half year]

Two modules chosen from the following list of four:

**Advanced Electronics B.** Difference amplifiers; operational amplifiers; phase locked loops; A/D and D/A conversion; sample and hold circuits; charge-coupled devices; opto-electronics; transducers; integrated circuit techniques.

**High Frequency Systems.** VHF/UHF/microwave systems; instrumentation and measurement techniques, transmission lines and distributed circuit elements; devices and components; antennas; propagation; noise and system dynamic range.

**Microprocessors and Control.** Proportional control using a microprocessor; sampling considerations; D/A and A/D conversion; stability considerations; integral control; the digital integrator; proportional and integral control; 3-term digital controller; computer control; z-transforms; discrete data systems; controller design for microprocessor systems.

**Mathematics Topic B.** A selection from the following topics: solution of ordinary differential equations including such standard forms as Bessel, Lagrange; solution of partial differential equations with various boundary conditions; complex variable theory; numerical solution of ordinary and partial differential equations; sparse matrix and applications; optimisation theory.

### 53.304 Special Topic in Electrical Engineering

[Three hours per week. Second half year]

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

### 53.311 Applied Electricity

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

A course on electrical and electronic components and circuits leading to the study of industrial instrumentation, control systems and application of electrical energy.

### 53.312 Electrical Engineering for Civil Engineers

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

A descriptive introduction to electric power, generation, transmission and distribution systems. Three phase theory and practice. Elementary theory of the induction motor, its control, and practical applications in civil engineering systems. Electrical safety and regulations. Concepts of instrumentation in engineering; transducers, digital logic and systems; aspects of solid state devices, analogue computers and applications; microprocessors and microcomputers; control systems; telemetry in instrumentation.

### 53.321 Applied Network Synthesis

[36 lectures]

Passive Network Synthesis: introduction to the concept of positive realness of a network function, test of positive realness; Cauer synthesis, Foster synthesis; R1, LC, RC circuits; Darlington synthesis or RLC circuits; Transformless Darlington synthesis; Elementary introduction to passive multiport synthesis; Test of the positive realness of a multiport network function; Multiport Darlington synthesis via the Kalman-Yakubovich-Anderson lemma.

Active Filter synthesis: Filter concepts and review of approximation techniques including Butterworth, Chebyshev, Elliptic and Bessel approximations. Frequency transformations. Basis of active filter synthesis. Single Amplifier Biquad circuits. The 3 amplifier Biquad. Gytrators and generalised Immittance Convertors. Allpass circuits and delay equalisation. Constant phase difference networks. Operational simulation of LC ladder networks. Switched capacitor filters.

### 53.331 Semiconductors

[36 lectures]

Review of properties and conduction processes in semiconductor materials; the PN junction, diode DC and small – and large – signal models, diode charge control model, diode devices; transistors, principles and modelling of bi-polar and field effect devices for small – and large – signal operation, switching characteristics, switching models, power devices including thermal and second-breakdown characteristics; measurement of model parameters; special devices; noise models.

### 53.341 Advanced Power Systems

[Three hours per week. Second half year]

Advanced three-phase network transformation theory, extended to the modelling of synchronous and induction machines. Computer methods in load flow and fault analyses. Power system management, security and contingency provisions. Optimal system operation and control. Co-ordination of communications and power networks. Harmonics in power systems.

### 53.351 Advanced Communication

[Three hours per week. Second half year]

Random signals. Information and coding theory. Traffic theories. Digital modulation principles. Base-band signalling techniques. Transmission in band-limited channels. Data transmission systems.

### 53.361 Electromagnetic Fields

[Three hours per week. Second half year]

Field theory. Waveguides. Microwave devices. Antennas. Radio communication and radar systems.

### 53.371 Advanced Control Engineering

[Three hours per week. Second half year]

State-space analysis, relationship to transfer function methods and analog computer simulation. Controllability, observability and decomposition of state-space. Eigenvalue assignment using state variable feedback. Observers. Digital control systems, design and realisation of digital controllers and their relationship to digital filters. Nonlinear systems, phase-plane and describing function techniques. Design of controllers for nonlinear systems.

### 53.381 Computer Engineering

[Three hours per week. Second half-year]

Computer design: system configuration, computer instructions, timing and control, execution of instructions, design of registers, control. Micro-programming, control algorithm driven design, engineering considerations. Memory and storage: memory management, memory devices, mass-storage systems. Microcomputer system design: 8 bit, 16 bit devices. Bit slice system realisation: computer design using bit slice.

**54.111 Engineering Mathematics I**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Elementary transcendental functions of a real variable, with a brief introduction to complex arguments, representation in rectangular and polar co-ordinates, curve sketching.

Differential calculus of one variable, Leibniz theorem, mean values, Taylor's theorem, power series, limiting values, partial differentiation. Integral calculus of one variable, improper integrals. Ordinary differential equations, isoclines, first order homogeneous and linear kinds, second order constant coefficient, simultaneous equations. Linear algebra, solvability of sets of equations, matrix notations and operations, homogeneous equations, numerical methods of solution by elimination and iteration.

Statistical and probabilistic methods, sampling theory, estimation and confidence intervals, regression and correlation, experimental data analysis; all with Engineering applications.

Course in computer programming with exercises.

**54.112 Engineering Mathematics IS**

[Two lectures in the first half-year, three in the second half-year and one tutorial per week]

As for 54.111 Engineering Mathematics I, plus:

Introductory Computer modelling.

**54.211 Engineering Mathematics II**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Ordinary Differential Equations: Laplace transforms; linear differential equations; application to vibrations, beams etc; simultaneous differential equations; numerical methods for ordinary differential equations.

Partial differential equations: Fourier series; separation of variables technique for partial differential equation; boundary value problems involving the diffusion, Laplace and wave equations. Linear algebra and optimisation: linear vector spaces, bases; matrices, solution of equations, partitioning; linear programming concepts; simplex methods, tableau solution; duality and post-optimal analysis; applications of L.P. and packages.

Computer methods; introduction to FORTRAN programming; programme structuring for applications; introductory simulation methods.

**54.212 Engineering Mathematics IIS**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week]

Ordinary Differential Equations: Laplace transforms; linear differential equations; application to vibrations, beams, etc; simultaneous differential equations; numerical methods for ordinary differential equations.

Partial differential equations: Fourier series; separation of variables technique for partial differential

equation; boundary value problems involving the diffusion, Laplace and wave equations. Computational Techniques: application of the following techniques to the solution of engineering problems: polynomial approximation; linear algebraic equations; numerical solution of transcendental equations; ordinary differential equations, integral equations.

Engineering Statistics: probability distributions; change of variable; hypothesis testing; parameter estimation; correlation and regression.

**54.241 Continuum Mechanics I**

[Two lectures in the first half-year, three in the second half-year, and one tutorial per week]

Vector and tensor analysis; analysis of stress and strain; constitutive relations and field equations; analytical and numerical solutions of problems in fluid mechanics and linear elasticity; finite difference and finite element methods. Open channel flow.

**54.251 Operations Research I**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Linear programming, simplex and revised simplex methods, duality and dual simplex, sensitivity and post-optimal analysis, modelling and applications. Digital computer simulation, Monte Carlo methods, statistical design and analysis of simulation experiments; introduction to queueing theory; applications of simulation especially to waiting-line problems.

**54.291 Engineering Science Design**

[One lecture and one two-hour drawing office class per week in the first half-year; three contact hours per week in second half-year]

Analysis of simple structures; design of steel beams, columns and trusses and reinforced concrete beams: effects of earthquakes.

Systems analysis and design concepts applied to the computer solution of engineering problems, particularly in continuum mechanics and operations research, including preparation of initial specifications, implementation of algorithms and presentation of results.

**54.301 Special Topic in Engineering Science A**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics.

**54.302 Special Topic in Engineering Science B**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics.

**54.303 Project in Engineering Science**

[Equivalent in weight to one elective subject. Normally done in the second half-year]

An investigation carried out under the supervision of a member of staff on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics. A written report on the work must be submitted. *No final examination. Grade assessed on the work done and the report.*

**54.312 Engineering Mathematics IIIS**

[Three lectures per week]

A course in advanced engineering mathematics including such subjects as complex variable theory, variational calculus, integral transforms, selected topics on differential equations, computational techniques and statistics.

**54.313 Engineering Analysis A**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

An approved choice of three modules from a list prepared each year by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics. The list will include modules from the subject areas of Engineering Mathematics, Computational Techniques, Engineering Statistics, Mechanics and Operations Research.

**54.314 Engineering Analysis B**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

An approved choice of three modules from a list prepared each year by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics. The list will include modules from the subject areas of Engineering Mathematics, Computational Techniques, Engineering Statistics, Mechanics and Operations Research.

**54.341 Continuum Mechanics II**

[Two hours per week]

(a) Mechanics of solids including such topics as elastostatics in two and three dimensions, elastodynamics, thermoelasticity, principles of structural analysis, etc.

(b) Mechanics of fluids including such topics as potential flow, vorticity dynamics, boundary layer analysis and an introduction to compressible flow, turbulence, wave motion, and hydrodynamic stability.

**54.343 Mechanics of Structures**

[Three hours per week. Second half-year]

Such topics as the static, stability and dynamic analysis of framed structures, shells, membrane and cable structures.

Assignments will require a reasonable facility at computer programming.

**54.351 Operations Research II**

(Two lectures per week)

Introduction to deterministic and stochastic models in such areas as inventory control, reliability, decision processes, scheduling; integer programming, including cutting planes and branch and bound techniques; dynamic programming with applications; network analysis, transportation and flow problems. (Professional practice of OR, case studies, and computer packages with applications will be covered in Engineering Science Laboratory)

**54.352 Stochastic Models in Operations Research**

[Three hours per week. Second half-year]

The application of non-deterministic methods in Operations Research, including topics such as Markov processes, stochastic programming, time series analysis, forecasting.

**54.361 Control Theory**

[Three hours per week. Second half-year]

As for 53.371 Advanced Control Engineering.

**55.101 Engineering Mechanics II**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Dynamics; kinematics and kinetics in two and three dimensions. Vibrations. Mechanics of solids and structures; Bending moment and shear-force diagrams of determinate beams and frames, stresses in beams, deflection of beams. Stresses in shafts. Thin-walled pressure vessels. Buckling of columns. Analysis of stress, Mohr's circle diagram.

**55.102 Mechanical Engineering IE**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to the fundamentals of thermodynamics, power cycles and heat transfer. Elementary stress analysis. Miscellaneous topics.

**55.111 Thermodynamics and Fluid Mechanics I**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week]

Thermodynamic variables, thermostatic and hydrostatics. Integral equations of conservation of mass, momentum and energy, equations of state. Applications to turbomachinery, power and refrigeration cycles.

**55.211 Thermodynamics and Fluid Mechanics II**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Thermodynamic relations, dimensional analysis, advanced thermodynamic cycles. Integral equations of conservation of mass, momentum and energy, with application to energy conversion and heat transfer.

Compressible flow in pipes and nozzles. Mixtures and solutions, combustion. Laminar and turbulent flow, elements of external flows.

### 55.221 Theory of Machines

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Machines: belts, clutches and other friction devices, gears and gearboxes, balancing.

Vibrations: undamped and damped single and multiple degree-of-freedom lumped-mass systems, simple distributed mass systems, phase-plane diagrams, viscous and Coulomb damping.

Control: concept of negative feed-back, block diagrams, transfer functions, elementary frequency-response analysis.

### 55.231 Industrial Administration

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

An introductory course for engineering students on the organisational, financial and human relations aspects of management theory and practice.

### 55.241 Mechanics of Materials I

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Bending of beams. Elastic and plastic analysis of simple indeterminate beams and frames. Torsion of shafts, noncircular and thin-walled sections. Analysis of stress and strain. Constitutive relations. Yield and fracture in metals. Stability. Sheet forming, bulk forming and metal-cutting processes. Experimental stress analysis, testing methods; non-destructive testing.

### 55.261 Mechanical Engineering Design I

[Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week]

The concept, design and specification of machines, mechanical plant and structures. Study of production processes such as sheet forming, bulk forming, metal cutting, welding, casting and moulding. Optimisation of production processes. Relationship of production and design.

*No final examination: Grade assessed on course assignments.*

### 55.301 Project in Mechanical Engineering

[About six scheduled hours per week. Equivalent in weight to two elective subjects]

A comprehensive investigation and report on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

*No final examination: Grade assessed on project report and year's work.*

### 55.302 Engineering Case Studies

[Equivalent to one elective subject. Second half-year]

An investigation and report, or detailed design, on a selected topic in mechanical engineering. For example: (i) a design from initial feasibility study to prototype drawings; (ii) a critical appraisal of the performance, or failure, of some industrial plant, equivalent or scheme; (iii) a study of the technical and commercial viability of an engineering enterprise. Each study will be undertaken by a small group of students and will be supervised by a member of staff.  
*No final examination: Grade assessed on group performance and individual final report.*

### 55.303 Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering

[Three lectures per week. Either first or second half-year]

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

### 55.311 Applied Fluid Mechanics

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Differential equations of fluid motion and simple solutions, boundary layers, turbulent flow, heat transfer, lubrication. Turbomachinery. Two-phase flow.

### 55.312 Applied Aerodynamics

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Wing theory, aircraft performance and stability. VTOL and STOL aircraft, ground effect vehicles. Propellers, windmills. Natural winds, the earth's boundary layer. Wind effects on buildings and structures. Aeroelasticity. Compressible flow.

### 55.321 Control Engineering A

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Classical linear control theory as applied to mechanical and other relevant systems: an introduction to state-space methods and to digital control techniques.

### 55.323 Control Engineering B

[Three lectures per week, second half-year]

An introduction to modern control methods as applied to mechanical and other systems. Digital control algorithms and state-space techniques. Incorporation of microprocessors into mechanical systems.

### 55.322 Acoustics and Vibrations

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

The nature and effects of noise and vibrations. Vibrations of continuous systems, including plates and



membranes. Control at the source by design and control of transmission. Techniques and apparatus for measurement. Human factors. Case studies.

### 55.331 Industrial Engineering

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

An introduction to the problems associated with effective industrial management and the techniques used to solve them. The course considers both the human and technological aspects of productivity improvement procedures, applied to NZ Industry.

### 55.332 Manufacturing Systems

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

An introduction to current concepts in the design and operation of modern manufacturing systems. This includes the technological, economic and social aspects surrounding the use of computer integrated manufacturing and robotic systems.

### 55.333 Engineering Economics

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

A course intended to familiarise the student with the financial aspects of engineering management. Emphasis will be placed on topics such as alternative forms of costing, budgeting and profit planning, breakeven analysis, transfer pricing, replacement and maintenance policies, make or buy decisions and project cost estimation.

Techniques of evaluating project and capital equipment expenditure, including consideration of the sociological and environmental factors, will be studied, for both private and public sector investments.

### 55.341 Mechanics of Materials IIA

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

A senior course dealing with the mechanical behaviour and properties of materials, strongly biased towards mechanical engineering practice. Topics such as: strengthening mechanisms, elastic stress analysis, stress concentrations, plasticity, fracture, fracture toughness, residual stresses, creep, limit analysis, selection of engineering materials. Case studies.

### 55.342 Mechanics of Materials IIB

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

A senior course dealing with the mechanical behaviour and stress analysis of machine components and other mechanical engineering configurations. Topics such as: flat plates, pressure vessels, structural frames, thin-walled sections, thermal stresses, stress waves in solids, mechanical testing, failure analysis, case studies.

### 55.351 Thermal Engineering

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Energy resources: their use and consequent environ-

mental impacts. Economics of energy conversion. Engine cycles, emissions. Heat and mass transfer and applications: heat exchanger and drier design.

### 55.352 Applied Thermodynamics

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Combustion processes, equilibrium. Properties of mixtures and solutions; application in cycles. 2-phase flow. Magnetohydrodynamics and other advanced cycles. Heat transfer: radiation.

### 55.361 Mechanical Engineering Design II

[Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week]

*EITHER A. Plant and process design:* Design of mechanical structures. Handling of unit loads and bulk materials. Building services and environmental equipment. Selected plant equipment, e.g. pressure vessels.

*OR B. Machine design:* Manufacturing machinery. Engines, turbo machines, rotating assemblies. Vehicles. Dynamic structures. Jig and tool design. Product design.

*AND Lectures on professional mechanical engineering practice.*

*No final examination: Grade assessed on course assignments.*

### 55.371 Production Technology

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Further studies in metal cutting processes. Metal forming processes: extrusion, drawing, rolling, swaging, stretching and deep drawing. Lubrication and metal working. Vacuum forming, injection moulding and extrusion of plastics. The economics of manufacturing processes. Machine control systems. Case studies.

†† Not all electives will be available in a given year.

### Practical Work

(1) By the end of the First Professional Year all students are required to have completed to the approval of the Faculty a course in Workshop Practice. Students who have attended similar courses elsewhere before enrolling at Auckland may apply to the Faculty for approval of such courses.

(2) Before graduation students shall obtain approved practical experience in workshops or in engineering works for a minimum period of 1200 hours. This is expected to be undertaken during the summer vacation. Overtime up to 10 hours per week on suitable work may be allowed.

At least 320 hours must be spent in general engineering workshops; this should be completed before entering the Second Professional Year.

Mechanical engineering students may put in the whole of their practical time in engineering work-

shops, or may use some of this time in obtaining subprofessional experience, for example, in a drawing office. However, Mechanical students should bear in mind that the Institution of Mechanical Engineers requires a minimum of eighteen months of workshop experience before accepting an application for Corporate Membership.

Students in Chemical and Materials Engineering may put in up to 600 hours in general engineering workshops. They must put in not fewer than 600 hours in approved plants or laboratories operating in the chemical engineering or materials engineering field. The work in such plants or laboratories may be of a subprofessional nature, for example work as a technician in analytical or quality-control laboratories associated with a processing industry. Other students may carry out further work in engineering workshops or may obtain experience appropriate to their specialised fields. Some of the remaining time may be spent in gaining sub-professional experience such as surveying field work in the case of Civil Engineering students. Every student should normally have completed the first two periods of his practical work before completing the academic requirements of the degree.

(3) The approval of the Faculty of any proposed practical work must be obtained before its commencement. Students are advised to obtain as wide experience as possible in practical work and therefore approval will not normally be given for more than one period in a particular workshop or works.

(4) At the conclusion of each period of practical work each student must submit to Faculty: (a) a certificate signed by his employer showing the actual number of hours worked in ordinary time and also of overtime, and the type of work on which he has been engaged; (b) a full report by the student on the work done and the observations made. These reports will be graded and may be taken into account in recommending scholarships and other awards. Official certificates and instructions on the form of the report may be obtained from the School office.

The due date for handing in practical work reports shall be the July 31 immediately following the completion of the particular work period. If a report is not submitted by this date then that work period will not be recognised except under exceptional circumstances. For final reports submitted after March 1, it is unlikely that students will be able to graduate at the graduation ceremony of that year.

(5) A student who by virtue of exempting qualifications is admitted to an engineering course at a stage later than First Professional must fulfil the requirements of these regulations, with the exception that clause (1) relating to a course in Workshop Practice may be waived.

(6) Faculty may, however, approve work of an engineering nature carried out by a student before enrolling for Engineering. Faculty may also approve previous work, not exceeding 250 hours, of a general nature other than engineering. In all cases where approval is sought for work carried out before enrolling for an engineering course, a student must make application to Faculty in writing before 1 April of the year of the first enrolment in that course. Faculty may require certificates and a full report on such work before approval is considered.

### **Laboratory and Field Work**

1. Laboratory work related to subjects of the First and Second Professional Years of the course is undertaken in integrated programmes designated First Professional Laboratories and Second Professional Laboratories.

2. In order to gain the formal recognition of having completed the laboratory work necessary for admission to the degree, a candidate shall attend the First Professional Laboratory and Second Professional Laboratory courses, carry out the experiments and submit reports, to a required standard.

3. Laboratory work related to subjects of the Third Professional year is an integral part of each subject. A candidate's satisfactory attendance and performance, including the submission of reports, forms a part of the requirement for a pass in each subject.

4. Candidates taking the subjects Surveying and Traffic and Highway Engineering shall, to a required standard, undertake Field Work, including the submission of reports.

---

## **††PRESCRIPTIONS FOR ME**

### **51.700 Advanced Materials**

An advanced course on selected topics in materials science or materials engineering.

### **51.710 Advanced Process Control**

Advanced concepts of control, stability and optimization. Analysis of non-linear systems. Computer control.

### **51.720 Chemical Engineering Seminar**

A graduate course on a topic or topics from the advanced fields of fluid mechanics, transport phenomena, heat transfer, particulate technology, chemical reactors and fuel technology.

### **51.730 Materials Seminar**

A graduate course on a topic or topics in the field of materials to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

**51.740 Studies in Chemical Engineering**

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

**51.750 Studies in Materials Engineering**

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

**51.760 Biochemical Engineering Seminar**

A graduate course on selected topics in biochemical engineering; biological reactors, fermentation, protein processing and enzymology.

**51.770 Advanced Chemical Engineering**

An advanced course on selected topics such as fluid flow, rheology, heat transfer, mass transfer, separation processes.

**52.700 Earthquake Engineering**

The fundamentals of seismology including earthquake waves, magnitudes and felt-intensities. The damaging effects of earthquake upon land and the constructions of man. Study of some relevant historical earthquakes. Strong earthquake motions and the vibratory response of land and buildings. Fundamentals of the earthquake-resistant design of engineering structures.

**52.710 Fluid Mechanics Seminar**

Special topics selected from fluid dynamics, water resources engineering, statistics and numerical methods.

**52.720 Geomechanics Seminar**

Advanced studies of recent developments in theoretical soil mechanics.

**52.730 Mechanics and Properties of Materials Seminar**

Special topics selected from recent developments in the mechanics and properties of selected materials used in civil engineering.

**52.740 Public Health Engineering Seminar**

Selected topics from water and wastewater engineering pollution control.

**52.741 Project Management**

Planning, organisation and control of large engineering projects.

**52.742 Case Studies in Project Management**

Analysis of the management of some large engineering projects currently in hand or recently completed.

**52.750 Structural Dynamics**

Vibration Theory. Linear theory of discrete and continuous systems including the shear beam and coupled shear walls. Introduction to the non-linear theory of vibration. Response of structures to earthquake, traffic and wind loading. Response spectra concepts. Normal mode analysis. Numerical integration techniques.

**52.760 Structures Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in structural analysis and design.

**52.770 Transportation Engineering Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in the planning and design of transport facilities and systems.

**52.780 Transportation Planning**

Land use, transport and travel. Spatial interaction models. Data surveys. Forecasting techniques. Analytical models for trip generation/attribution, distribution, assignment and modal split. Urban planning models. Model and network tests. Operational, economic and environmental evaluations. Computer programmes.

**25.313 Environmental Law**

See prescriptions for LL.B.

**52.790 Transportation Systems Analysis**

Selected analytical techniques taken from: probability and statistics, queuing theory, simulation, linear and dynamic programming, network flow and allocation algorithms, as applied to the planning and design of transport facilities. Characteristics of transport systems and urban structure. Economic evaluation of transport projects. Transport systems planning techniques applied to urban planning.

**52.800 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering A**

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Civil Engineering.

**52.801 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering B**

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Civil Engineering.

**52.810 Structural Analysis**

Analytical methods for some or all of the following structures: space frames and grids, shear wall systems, folded plate structures, bridge superstructures. Solution techniques will include approximate methods, matrix and computer methods. Optimisation techniques and computer-aided design may also be included.

**52.820 Space Structures**

Selected topics in the analysis of space structures such as cable structures, plate and shell structures. Special consideration for stability, elasticity and plasticity may also be included.

**52.860 Advanced Fluid Mechanics**

Selected topics from applied fluid mechanics and hydraulics.

**52.870 Coastal Engineering**

Waves, wave theories, wave forces on structures. Breakers, tsunamis, flow induced oscillations, resonance problems, tidal estuaries. Sediment transport by waves. Topics from coastal and harbour engineering.

**52.880 Advanced Water Resources Engineering**

Selected topics from hydrology and water resources engineering.

**52.890 Applied Geomechanics**

Application of the principles of soil mechanics, rock mechanics and engineering geology to practical problems in civil engineering.

**52.900 Earth Structures**

The stability, deformation, design and construction of earth structures.

**52.910 Traffic Engineering**

Design and capacity of highways and intersections, motorways and interchanges, weaving sections and rotaries. Traffic control and safety. Accident studies and analyses. Co-ordination of traffic signals and area traffic control. Travel and delay studies. Planning and design for pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Large-scale parking.

**52.920 Structural Design**

Design philosophies. Special considerations in steel, reinforced concrete, prestressed concrete and masonry structural design. The background to and the use of design codes.

**53.700 Advanced Control Systems**

Theory of modern control systems with emphasis on optimization techniques for both deterministic and stochastic processes. State space modelling of dynamic systems and choice of suitable performance criteria. Examples of applications and discussion of computational problems.

**53.710 Advanced Electrical Engineering**

An advanced course on selected topics in Electrical Engineering.

**53.721 Electromagnetic Theory**

Selected topics in electromagnetic theory. The emphasis is on mathematical analysis.

**53.730 Heavy Current Electronics**

Selected topics in the utilisation of thyristor devices in industrial electrical engineering applications.

**53.740 Microprocessors and Minicomputers**

Review of computer basics including number representation, logical and arithmetic operations, A/D and D/A conversion, computer architecture. Programming systems for small computers, input-output, interrupts instruction sets. Applications in the fields of signal processing, communications, control, data logging.

**53.750 Studies in Electrical Engineering**

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

**53.760 Electronic Circuits and Systems**

A graduate course covering state of the art topics in Advanced Electronics including: computer aided circuit analysis; non-linear circuit concepts; oscillators; mixers; power amplifiers; stability; noise.

**53.770 Digital Signal Processing**

Z-Transform, discrete Fourier Transform, Fast Fourier Transform, hardware implementation and noise analysis. Digital filters; design techniques, hardware implementation and noise analysis. Signal coding techniques, bandwidth compression, and transmission impairments, with emphasis placed on voice and picture transmission.

**53.780 VHF and UHF Radio Communication**

A course concerned with the planning and design of VHF and UHF Radio Communications Systems. Consideration will be given to analogue and digital systems, and both mobile and point-to-point services.

**54.700 Studies in Engineering Mathematics**

A graduate course in Mathematics applied to Engineering problems on such topics as the theory of ordinary differential equations, partial differential equations, perturbation methods, advanced numerical analysis, etc.

**54.710 Studies in Engineering Science**

A graduate course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics.

**54.720 Studies in Control Theory**

A graduate course in modern Control Theory including such topics as optimal control stochastic and nonlinear systems.

**54.730 Studies in Continuum Mechanics A****54.740 Studies in Continuum Mechanics B**

Graduate courses in Continuum Mechanics covering topics in the mechanics of solids and fluids and other continua.

**54.750 Finite Element Methods**

A graduate course on finite element formulations and applications to problems such as stress analysis, seepage, heat transfer and fluid flows.

**54.760 Studies in Operations Research A****54.770 Studies in Operations Research B**

Graduate courses in recent developments in Operations Research and applications.

**54.780 Advanced Systems Analysis**

A graduate course on a selection of topics from systems analysis and operations research. This subject cannot be credited if 54.23 or 54.45 have previously been credited towards a degree.

**54.790 Random Processes**

A graduate course in the theory and application of discrete and continuous random processes including topics such as queuing models, Markov processes, information theory, Monte Carlo simulation, turbulence and random vibration.

**54.800 Geothermal Modelling**

A study of methods currently used for modelling convective flows in geothermal systems.

**554.810 Bio-engineering**

Introduction to the application of engineering principles and methods to biological problems. Mechanical properties of living tissue: constitutive laws, structure/function relationships, myocardial and lung mechanics, haemodynamics. Biological control mechanisms. Electro-physiology. Instrumentation and measurement: principles and applications.

**54.820 Nonlinear Optimisation**

A study of theoretical conditions for optimality in nonlinear optimization and numerical methods for

the solution of systems of nonlinear equations and constrained and unconstrained optimization problems including the nonlinear least squares problem.

**55.700 Advanced Mechanical Engineering**

A course of lectures and directed reading on particular topics in mechanical engineering allied to the thesis subjects of students taking the ME degree.

**55.710 Advanced Applied Aerodynamics**

Selected topics such as aerofoil theory, turbulence, boundary layers; aerodynamic machines, natural aerodynamics, industrial aerodynamics, gas dynamics. Experimental methods.

**55.720 Advanced Mechanics of Materials**

Study of selected topics in the nature, mechanical behaviour and properties of materials, with particular relevance to industrial production processes.

**55.730 Advanced Production Technology**

Selected topics from process metallurgy including casting, welding, metal forming and heat treatment; production specification, inspection and quality control; metal removal processes and optimisation; advanced machine and process control systems.

**55.740 Productivity Management**

The course will consist of two major sections. The first will alert the student to the human-relations requirements for an increase in industrial productivity. The second will be concerned with the techniques and the important peripheral matters necessary for planned productivity improvements.

**55.750 Studies in Mechanical Engineering**

A course of lectures and directed reading in a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.  
1983: To be announced

**86.100 Geothermal Systems and Technology****86.103 Geothermal Production Technology****86.104 Geothermal Energy Utilisation****86.606 A project on some aspects of Geothermal Energy**

**50.700, 50.710, 50.720, 50.730 Project A, B, C, D**  
A candidate may take the equivalent of three single paper projects. For example, the candidate may take Projects A, B and C, or Project D and one of Projects A, B and C. The candidate is required to submit a report on each project carried out. These projects may include design studies, a survey and evaluation

of modern advances in a branch of engineering, a small experimental or theoretical research project, the development of a new design procedure, the development of a computer package.

†† Not all electives will be available in a given year.

---

**Professional Institution Courses**

Candidates for the examinations of the Council of Engineering Institutions may take Courses selected from the BE syllabus. Prospective candidates should consult the Dean of the Faculty before planning their Course.

---

# Faculty of Fine Arts

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course</b>	372	Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts
<b>Regulations</b>	373	Degree of Master of Fine Arts

---

<b>Degree Course</b>	376	Department of Art History
<b>Prescriptions</b>	376	School of Fine Arts
	377	Studio Theory
	377	Studio for BFA
	377	Studio for MFA

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ARTS BFA OPTION I AND OPTION II

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts shall
  - (a) follow a course of study of not fewer than four years, taking either Option I or Option II prescribed in these regulations and
  - (b) pass four Professional Examinations.
2. In these Regulations:
 

'Papers' includes Studio I, Studio II, Studio III and Studio IV.

'Prescribed or approved papers' in relation to any candidate means the following papers:

Studio Theory: 27.201–27.208, 27.211–27.216, 27.301

Art History II: 19.259, 19.260 and 19.261

Art History III: 19.301, 19.302, 19.304, 19.305, 19.306, 19.307, 19.308, 19.309, 19.310

Any other paper (or the equivalent credits) (i) prescribed for the Degree of BA, BSc or any other Degree and (ii) approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts for the course of that candidate for this Degree and by the Head of the Department in which the paper is taken.
3. The subjects of Examination for the Degree shall be:

#### Option I

First Professional Examination 6 papers, consisting of:

- (i) Studio I: 27.150 having the value of 4 papers, and
- (ii) Art History I: 19.151, 19.152.

Second Professional Examination 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio II: 27.250 having the value of 6 papers and
- (ii) three prescribed or approved papers.
- Or (b) (i) Studio II: 27.251 having the value of 7 papers and
- (ii) Two prescribed or approved papers.

Third Professional Examination 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio III: 27.350 having the value of 6 papers and
- (ii) Three prescribed or approved papers.
- Or (b) (i) Studio III: 27.351 having the value of 7 papers and
- (ii) Two prescribed or approved papers.

Fourth Professional Examination 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) Studio IV: 27.450 having the value of 9 papers
- Or (b) (i) Studio IV: 27.451 having the value of 7 papers and
- (ii) Two prescribed or approved papers.

#### Option II

First Professional Examination 6 papers, consisting of:

- (i) Studio I: 27.151 having the value of 4 papers; and
- (ii) Art History I: 19.151, 19.152.

Second Professional Examination 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio II: 27.252 having the value of 3 papers; and
- (ii) Six prescribed or approved papers.
- Or (b) (i) Studio II: 27.253 having the value of 4 papers; and
- (ii) Five prescribed or approved papers.

Third Professional Examination 9 papers, consisting of:



Either (a) (i) Studio III: 27.352 having the value of 3 papers; and

(ii) Six prescribed or approved papers.

Or (b) (i) Studio III: 27.353 having the value of 4 papers; and

(ii) Five prescribed or approved papers.

Fourth Professional Examination 9 papers, consisting of:

(i) Studio IV: 27.452 having the value of 6 papers; and

(ii) Three prescribed or approved papers.

4. All students will be required to make a formal submission of work in Studio, or to fulfill the course work in any subject or tutorial as may be determined by the Faculty from time to time. A student who fails to comply with these requirements may be declined permission to sit the final examination.

#### **Studio**

5. In each Professional year work for Studio shall consist of:

(a) a formal submission of work at the conclusion of each study period;

and

(b) a final formal submission of work; which may include written examination papers, as required by the Dean of the Faculty.

6. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Professional Examination consisting of more than one subject, so that his performance in all the papers of the Examination shall be considered; provided that

(a) a candidate who has failed to pass any such Examination as a whole may, at the discretion of the Senate, be credited with a paper or papers of that Examination, and permitted in a subsequent year to take the papers not so credited; and

(b) a candidate who does not pass the Second Professional Examination as a whole, but is credited with a paper or papers of that Examination may, if the Senate permits, take with the papers being re-presented for that Examination a paper or papers for the Third Professional Examination.

7. In respect of every prescribed or approved paper prescribed for a Degree other than this (that is, every paper taken for this Degree other than Studio I, II, III and IV and the papers in Studio Theory) a candidate shall be required to comply with all regulations applicable thereto for the Degree of BA, BSc or other Degree (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).

#### **Revocations**

8.(1) The course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(2) The Regulations governing the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts last published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1974 are hereby revoked.

(3) The Regulations governing the Diploma in Fine Arts and the Diploma in Fine Arts (Honours) respectively, last published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1974 are hereby revoked.

9. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1975.

## **THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ARTS**

### **MFA**

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts shall

(a) before his enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or have qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, and

(b) have passed with a Grade higher than C+ in Studio IV in his Bachelor of Fine Arts course provided that in special circumstances where the Head of Department so recommends the Senate may accept a C+ pass, and

(c) follow a Course of study of not less than two years, taking either of the Options prescribed under these Regulations.

2. In these Regulations:

'prescribed or approved papers' in relation to any candidate means the following papers:

**Studio Theory**

Any paper other than a paper in Art History, prescribed for any Degree other than this Degree and approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts for the Course of that candidate and by the Head of the Department in which the paper is taken.

**Course Content**

3. The subjects of examination for the Degree shall be:

**Option I**

First Year; Part I: Advanced Studio V Practice and Theory 27.550 having the value of four papers.

Second Year; Part II: Studio VI 27.650 having the value of three papers. A candidate shall carry out work satisfactory to the Dean of the School of Fine Arts within an individually planned programme approved by the Head of the Department including the presentation of an exhibition of his work and an adequate printed catalogue thereof not later than 1 November in the year in which the work is undertaken or such later date as may be approved by the Head of the Department.

**Option II**

First Year; Part I:

(a) Art History IV: Two papers approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts being either two papers chosen from 19.400–19.409, or one paper chosen from 19.400–19.409 and one of the papers prescribed for Art History III not already credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts; provided that papers 19.305 and 19.401 may not both be taken for this Degree

or

(b) Any two prescribed or approved papers not already credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts. First Year; Part II: Studio V 27.551 which shall have the value of three papers. A candidate shall carry out work satisfactory to the Dean of the School of Fine Arts within an individually planned programme approved by the Head of the Department including the presentation of an exhibition of his work and an adequate printed catalogue thereof not later than 1 November in the year in which the work is undertaken or such later date as may be approved by the Head of the Department.

Second Year; Part III: One of the following which shall have the value of three papers:

(a) Thesis 19.601 on a special topic of Art History approved by the Head of the Department of Art History, or

(b) Thesis 27.601 on a special topic related to the candidate's programme of work for Studio V and approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts.

4.(1) No candidate taking Option I shall take Studio VI without having first passed in Studio V unless the Head of the Department permits the work for Studio V to be examined with the work for Studio VI in the second year of the course.

(2) A candidate taking Option II shall not take Art History IV unless he has either passed 8 papers in Art History including three Stage III papers or complied with such prerequisites as the Head of the Department of Fine Arts may otherwise prescribe for him.

(3) In respect of any prescribed or approved paper taken in Option II and prescribed for a Degree other than this, a candidate shall be required to comply with all Regulations applicable thereto for that other Degree (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).

**Savings and Transitional Provisions**

5.(1) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(2) The Regulations governing the Degree of Master of Fine Arts which were last published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1974 (in this Regulation called "the old Regulations") are hereby revoked.

(3) A candidate who began the course for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts in 1974 shall be entitled to the following credits:

(a) If he passed Art History IV and Studio IV under the old Regulations and chooses Option I, he shall be credited with Studio V and one prescribed or approved paper.

(b) If he passed Art History IV under the old Regulations and chooses Option II, he shall be credited with Art History IV.

**Honours**

6(a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions: First Division and Second Division.

(b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate is examined in Art History

for this Degree are unsatisfactory or if either the work in Studio V, VI, or the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory: provided that, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation, a candidate whose performance at the written examination has been seriously impaired by illness (certified as under the aegrotat Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat award, to present himself at a subsequent written examination and still be eligible for the award of Honours.

(c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he completes the requirements for Honours within three years of passing the final subject of his Bachelor's Degree; provided that this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1976.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF ART HISTORY

#### Art History I

(Two papers).

##### 19.151 Renaissance Art to c.1520

19.152 Western Art from c.1840 to the present day.

#### Art History II

(Three papers).

##### 19.259 Topics in 18th and early 19th Century Art.

Prerequisites: 19.151, 19.152.

##### 19.260 Topics in Baroque Art

Prerequisites: 19.151, 19.152. Restrictions 19.257.

##### 19.261 Topics in 17th and Early 18th Century Art in Northern Europe.

Prerequisites: 19.151, 19.152. Restrictions 19.258.

#### Art History III

(Three papers).

##### 19.301 Special Topic in Medieval Art

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251–19.253, or two of 19.257–19.261.

##### 19.302 Mid-19th Century Painting in France and Britain

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251–19.253, or two of 19.257–19.261.

##### 19.304 Durer and his Sources and Influence

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251–19.253, or two of 19.257–19.261.

##### 19.305 New Zealand Art (General)

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251–19.253, or two of 19.257–19.261, corequisite 19.308, or 19.302, or 19.307.

##### 19.306 Special Topic in Western Art after 1500

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251–19.253, or two of 19.257–19.261.

##### 19.307 Art in the USA, 1945 to the present day

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251–19.253, or two of 19.257–19.261.

##### 19.308 Topics in early 20th Century Art

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251–19.253, or two of 19.257–19.261.

##### 19.309 Women in Art

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251–19.253 or two of 19.257–19.261.

Restriction: Paper 19.306 under 1981 Regulations.

##### \*19.310 Topics in 17th Century Graphic Art

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251–19.253, or two of 19.257–19.261

#### Art History for MFA

##### †19.400 Topics in 17th Century Drawing

19.401 Topics in Australian and New Zealand Art (advanced)

##### 19.402 Special Topic in Western Art before 1600

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

##### \*19.403 Watteau and his Sources and Influence

##### 19.404 Film Studies

##### †19.405 Nicolas Poussin and 17th Century Classicism.

Note: A candidate who has been credited with a pass in 19.303 may not take this paper.

##### 19.406 Art Historiography

##### \*19.407 A Topic in Medieval Art

##### 19.408 A Topic in 19th Century Art

##### 19.409 Topics in The Theory of Modern Art

### ELAM SCHOOL OF FINE ARTS

As a University Centennial gesture, the name of the School this year reverts to Elam School of Fine Arts, acknowledging John Edward Elam who, when he died in 1888, bequeathed funds to establish an art school in Auckland. Elam School of Art & Design opened in 1890 in rooms at the Auckland Art Gallery, with E. W. Payton its first Director. The School quickly became an important influence on the artistic life of the city, becoming registered in 1900 and adding evening classes in 1902. A new building in Rutland Street provided space for the growing School from 1914, and in 1925, A. J. C. Fisher was appointed Director, remaining in that post until his death in 1959. During the mid-30s the School moved to more spacious accommodation in the Old Grammar School in Symonds Street, using the Old Newton West Primary School after the January 1949 fire. In 1950, the school became part of Auckland University College, and began offering Diploma courses. The First Chair of Fine Arts was established in 1961 and Professor Paul J. Beadle was appointed. In 1962, the School moved to its present building in Whitaker Place. Degree courses began in 1967, and in 1968 a separate Department of Art History was established. Professor Jolyon D. Saunders became Head of the Faculty of Fine Arts in 1977 when Professor Beadle assumed the first Personal Chair in Fine Arts.

Exhibitions and displays planned as part of the University Centenary this year, will act as fore-runners of the Elam School of Fine Arts Centenary to be held in 1990.

## Studio Theory

### 27.201 Art Criticism

### 27.202 Comparative Studies

A reading/seminar programme concerned with ideas, philosophy and attitudes.

### †27.203 Design Methodology

The study of methods used in the collection and collation of information, the recognition, analysis and description of complex problems, and the generation and presentation of solutions.

### †27.204 Two-Dimensional Development

The evolution and communication of ideas and information through drawings and diagrams based on formal conventions.

### Topics from the development of photography

### †27.205 Up to Alfred Stieglitz in Berlin, i.e. 19th century

### †27.206 From Alfred Stieglitz in America, i.e. 20th century

### 27.212 Intermedia Studies

### 27.215 Theory and Practice of Painting

### 27.216 Workshop Practice

### Special Topics in painting, sculpture or design approved by the Head of the Department.

For Studio III and IV students only. A programme based on discussions of art-works displayed by students at seminar meetings with written comments or reviews of the works.

### 27.207 Special Topic

### 27.208 Special Topic

### ††27.211 Special Topic

### ††27.213 Special Topic

### ††27.214 Special Topic

### †27.301 Professional Practice for Designers

Business methods and procedures commonly used by professional designers; Topics may include:

- (a) Preparation of a portfolio; (b) What to expect after graduation; (c) Correspondence; (d) Reports and report writing; (e) Fee structure; (f) Estimating fees, fee letters and contracts; (g) Business structure; (h) Setting up an office; (i) Running an office; (j) Budgeting (overheads etc.); (k) Securing work and clients; (l) Accountants and taxation; (m) Design and the Law; (n) Ethics; (o) Design organisations; (p) Special topics related to the individual student's requirements.

## Studio for BFA

### Studio I

#### Option I 27.150 and Option II 27.151

Exploration of those disciplines which are fundamental to the development of the artist and designer. Basic elements of two and three-dimensional design (space, shape, line, rhythm, texture) and the varied properties and qualities of colour and light. The creative potential and characteristic limitations of various media such as wood, stone, plastic, metal, glass and pigment. Methods of techniques such as welding, casting, print-making, painting, and photographic media. Observation and analysis of the structure of the natural world and human environment. Drawing as an expressive means of communication, and as a vital stimulus to personal development.

### Studio II

#### Option I 27.250, 27.251 and Option II 27.252, 27.253

Individually planned programme as approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts, with content related to the student's requirements, for example, drawing and one or more of the following: painting, sculpture and design. Advanced experimentation in techniques and materials.

### Studio III

#### Option I 27.350, 27.351 and Option II 27.352, 27.353

Development of Studio II in selected fields.

### Studio IV

#### Option I 27.450, 27.451 and Option II 27.452

Development of Studio III in selected fields.

## Studio for MFA

### Studio V

#### Option I 27.550 and Option II 27.551

The candidate's programme shall be a practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts. The proposed programme shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

### Studio VI

#### Option I 27.650

The work in Studio VI may be in an aspect of the fine arts other than that approved for Studio V. The proposed programme shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

## Thesis for MFA

### Option II Either

#### 19.601

A thesis on a topic in Art History, to be approved by

the Head of the Department of Art History. The thesis must be submitted to the Registrar by 1 November or

**27.601**

A thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate of an original investigation or advanced

study relative to the candidate's programme in Studio V. The proposed topic shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

**Notes:**

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

††Not all electives will be available in a given year.

---

# Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology

## *Contents*

---

### *380 School of Medicine*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	382	Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology
	383	Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery
	384	Degree of Master of Human Biology
	385	Degree of Master of Medical Science
	386	Degree of Doctor of Medicine

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	388	Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology
	389	Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery
	390	Degree of Master of Human Biology

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	392	Diploma in Paediatrics
	392	Diploma in Psychiatry

---

### *392 Post Graduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	393	Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics
	394	Diploma in Obstetrics

---

	395	Higher Academic Training in Obstetrics and Gynaecology
	395	Refresher Training for Family Doctors and Specialists

---

### *396 Post Graduate Medical Committee*

---

## SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

The medical Course in the University of Auckland is of six years' duration. The degree of Bachelor of Human Biology (BHB) is awarded upon satisfactory completion of the first three years. Ultimately the course leads to the degrees of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery (MBChB).

### **Bachelor of Human Biology**

Although subjects for the early years of the course are taught in association with departments of the Faculty of Science the Curriculum has been drawn up as a fully integrated medical Course. During the first year such aspects of Biology, Chemistry and Physics as provide the necessary language and concepts for the understanding of the Medical Sciences are studied. The Behavioural Sciences and Biochemistry are introduced and opportunities provided for hospital visits and attendance at case presentations and lectures on selected medical topics. During the second and third years the Course presents a detailed analysis of the normal structure and function of man together with an introduction into the ways in which the intrinsic biological mechanisms are disturbed in disease and may be modified by drugs or poisons. The course during these two years is presented by the Departments of Anatomy, Pharmacology, Physiology, Biochemistry, Pathology, and Psychology, with assistance from the Clinical Departments. It is over this period that the medical students pursue a child study by following the progress and growth of a new born infant.

Fundamental biochemical and physiological mechanisms — largely expressed at cellular levels — and their structural bases are considered first, followed by a study of the principal organ systems which ensure the continuance of these functions. The study of the locomotor and nervous systems, of the complex control of body activity, metabolism and nutrition, of reproduction and growth, and of fundamental aspects of Pathology and Pharmacology form further major units of the course.

Admission to the first year of the course is restricted to those students who intend to complete the six year Course for entry into the medical profession.

### **Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery**

The clinical triennium follows qualification for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology. The Auckland Hospital Board has made available for teaching purposes all hospitals under its control; at present instruction has been arranged at the four major hospitals — Auckland Hospital, Green Lane, Middlemore and National Women's. The Waikato Hospital Board also provides teaching facilities at Waikato Hospital for students.

Subjects to be studied include Medicine, Surgery, Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Paediatrics, Pathology, Psychiatry, Clinical Pharmacology and Community Health together with their main sub-specialities. During their final year Trainee Interns will be expected to undertake some supervised responsibility for the care of patients.

An introductory course of five weeks duration acquaints the students with the art and techniques of interrogating and examining patients. This is followed by a period of study in the hospital wards and outpatients clinics during which the student is given the opportunity to witness the forms in which disease may present itself, and to study the management of disease processes within the general and special fields of modern medicine. Emphasis is placed upon topic teaching by which a particular disease or injury is studied at the one time in all its aspects — medical, surgical, pathological, social, etc.

During the Clinical Course students will spend a proportion of their time in elective studies, that is pursuing in depth, subjects of particular interest to them. They will also serve a period in general practice under the direction of family doctors.

### **Masters Degrees**

All departments undertake graduate teaching in Medicine and one year Masters courses are available.

#### **Master of Human Biology (MHB)**

is undertaken after completion of the BHB and is available in the basic medical science departments. It corresponds to the degree of BMedSc in some Commonwealth Universities.

#### **Master of Medical Science (MMedSc)**

is a one-year Masters degree that may be taken in clinical subjects after completion of the second year of the MBChB.

Both these are supervised research degrees embodying both papers and a thesis.

#### **Doctoral Degrees. Doctor of Philosophy (PhD)**

All departments undertake graduate teaching for the research Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) in accordance with the regulations of the University.



**Doctor of Medicine (MD)**

is offered as a non-supervised research degree by thesis alone and this may not be submitted until five years after graduation MBChB. This degree is usually based on clinical research work which may be undertaken outside the University. It is normally available to graduates of the University of Auckland and, under the Ad Eundem Admission Regulations to graduates of other medical schools who are working as members of the University of Auckland teaching staff.

Candidates do not enrol in the normal fashion but at an appropriate stage in their research seek the recommendation of the Faculty to enrol for the degree. Faculty's recommendation is then based on a preliminary review of the topic, the methods involved in the investigation and the contribution of this work to medical knowledge. The permission to submit the thesis may be obtained after the work is completed or before it is undertaken but there is a five year upper limitation of time between permission to submit and the actual submission of the thesis.

**Diplomas**

In addition diploma courses are offered in the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology and by the department of Paediatrics. All clinical departments are associated with the basic and advanced vocational training for the examinations and diplomas offered by the various colleges.

**Materials Fees (See Fees Regulations)**

BHB I	\$15.00	for learning material (major texts, tapeslides,
BHB II and III	\$20.00	reprints and notes) largely provided in the
MBChB I and II	\$30.00	A. V. Carrell.
MBChB I and II	\$17.50	for provision and laundering of white coats.
MBChB I	\$ 5.00	Case notes folder (personal property).

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF HUMAN BIOLOGY BHB

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Human Biology shall follow a Course of study of not fewer than three years.

#### Admission

2. (a) Admission to the Course of study in Human Biology shall be at the discretion of the Senate. Application for admission to the Course shall be made to the Registrar in writing before 1 October or such other date as the Senate may determine, of the year preceding that in which the applicant proposes to enrol.

(b) Admission to Part I of the Course of study shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the past performance of the applicant at school and in public examinations, and upon an interview where this is required.

(c) In such exceptional circumstances as the Senate may approve or under the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, admission may be granted to an applicant to Part II or Part III.

#### Course Content

3. The Course of study shall consist of three Parts. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Part of the Course of study: provided that a candidate, who re-enrols for a Part of the Course of study having failed to pass it as a whole at the first attempt, may be allowed to carry out, to the satisfaction of the Heads of Departments concerned, alternative work in lieu of the work in that Part where his previous performance was satisfactory.\* For the purpose of assessing the grade of this candidate as a whole for a Part of the Course of study the Senate may approve that the satisfactory pass grade in that previous work be carried forward.

\*Normally a B-grade or better.

4. Except as provided in Regulation 2 (c) hereof no candidate shall be permitted to enrol in Part II of the Course until he has passed Part I, or in Part III until he has passed Part II.

5. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Senate such practical written and tutorial work in each Part of the Course of study as may be required.

6. The papers prescribed for examination for the Course of study in Human Biology are:

#### Part I

Biology 60.100, 60.101, 60.102

Physico-Chemistry 60.103, 60.104, 60.105

Behavioural Science I 60.108

#### Part II

Anatomy 60.205

Biochemistry 60.206

Physiology (Medical) II 60.207

Behavioural Science II 60.208

#### Part III

General Pathology 60.301

Neurolocomotor Systems 60.302, 60.303

Human Reproduction and Development 60.304

Physiology (Medical) III 60.305

Pharmacology 60.306

Behavioural Science III 60.308

7.(a) The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

(b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1979.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MEDICINE AND BACHELOR OF SURGERY

### MBChB

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery shall before enrolment have qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology not more than one academic year previously, except where the Senate otherwise permits.

2.(a) Each candidate shall follow a Course of study of not fewer than three years.

(b) No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to his second year of study until he has completed, to the satisfaction of the Senate, the work prescribed for his first year.

(c) Each candidate shall follow his course of study for Year I and Year II continuously and where he fails to do so he may return to his course of study only with the approval of the Senate, and on such conditions as the Senate may determine.

(d) No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Year III until he has passed Years I and II as a whole.

#### Practical Work

3. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Senate, such practical and clinical work in each year of the course as may be required.

#### Course Content

4. The Course shall consist of:

##### Year I (Year IV of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.100

(a) Lectures, laboratory work and instruction in the clinical skills of medicine, including methods of interviewing and examining the patient, Clinical Pharmacology, Community Health, Pathology.

(b) Lectures, laboratory work and clinical instruction in systematic medicine with instruction in diagnosis and management of patients in the hospital and the community. The study of man in his environment.

A candidate will be required to undertake a four week clerkship in July/August, in either Medicine or Surgery. A further clerkship of four weeks shall be taken either in November or in the following February in another clinical discipline.

##### Year II (Year V of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.200

Lectures, laboratory work and clinical instruction continue in systematic medicine, with increasing emphasis on clinical work in the specialties of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Paediatrics, Psychiatry, together with practical experience in Community Health and courses in environmental health and forensic pathology.

At the conclusion of Year II there will be a composite examination of four written papers and four oral and/or clinical examinations.

##### Year III (Year VI of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.300

Clinical work as a trainee intern and with responsibility for patients over three successive periods of three months each together with a further three month elective period.

5.(a) A candidate shall be deemed to pass Years I and II of the course when the Senate so resolves after consideration of a report from the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology, as to the candidate's performance and results in his work for those Years.

(b) A candidate shall be deemed to have completed Year III successfully if he obtains passing assessments from each of the periods of that academic Year.

The candidate shall not be deemed to be qualified for admission to the Degree except upon a favourable recommendation of the Senate based on those assessments and on a general report by the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology of the candidate's general performance throughout the course.

6. The regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1979.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF HUMAN BIOLOGY

### MHB

*The personal Course of Study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of Study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this degree must consult the Head of the appropriate Department and obtain his approval before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Human Biology shall before his enrolment for this degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology.

#### Course Content

2. Every candidate for the degree shall

(a) pass the examinations, and

(b) pass in respect of a thesis (which shall count as four papers) in one of the following subjects:

65.405, 65.406 Anatomy (two papers and a thesis 65.601)

63.403, 63.404 Behavioural Science (two papers and a thesis 63.601)

66.405, 66.406 Biochemistry (two papers and a thesis 66.611)

68.403, 68.404 Pathology (two papers and a thesis 68.601)

67.405, 67.406 Physiology (two papers and a thesis 67.601)

96.400, 96.401 Pharmacology (two papers and a thesis 96.601)

#### Thesis

3. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis:

(a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department.

(b) The thesis must embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.

(c) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, the Supervisor shall certify to the Registrar in writing that the laboratory work has been carried out within the University, or within such other institution as may be approved by the Senate for the purposes of this regulation. Laboratory work for the degree in Biochemistry shall be conducted in the Department of Biochemistry.

(d) A candidate shall submit his thesis to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which he first enrolls for the degree or at such later date in that or the next year as may be arranged by the Head of Department in consultation with the Supervisor. An extension of time beyond two years from the date of first enrolment for the degree may in exceptional circumstances be approved by the Senate.

(e) If the Supervisor, after consultation with the Head of Department and with the consent of the Assessor, so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory will be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise and resubmit the thesis at a later date to be specified by the Head of Department after consultation with the Supervisor.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulation 14.

#### Honours

4.(a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

(b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in which a candidate takes an examination for the degree are unsatisfactory; provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination, so that he shall still be eligible for the award of Honours subject to the provisions of sub-clause (c) of this regulation.

(c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he completes the requirements for Honours within two years of his first enrolment for this degree provided that this period may be extended, in exceptional cases, by the Senate.

5. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF MEDICAL SCIENCE

### MMedSc

*The personal Course of Study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this degree must consult the Head of the appropriate Department and obtain his approval before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Medical Science shall

- (a) before his enrolment for this Degree have passed year II of the course prescribed for the degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery; and
- (b) follow a Course of study of not less than one year.

2. A candidate who is not devoting his full time to University study shall if the Senate so requires follow a two-year course of part-time study of such content as the Senate may prescribe.

#### Course Content

3. Every candidate for the Degree shall

- (a) pass the examinations, and
- (b) pass in respect of a thesis (which shall count as four papers) in one of the following subjects:

96.402, 96.403 Clinical Pharmacology (Two papers and a thesis 96.611)

91.400, 91.401 Community Health (Two papers and a thesis 91.601)

92.400, 92.401 Medicine (Two papers and a thesis 92.601)

47.400, 47.401 Obstetrics and Gynaecology (Two papers and a thesis 47.601)

93.400, 93.401 Paediatrics (Two papers and a thesis 93.601)

68.405, 68.406 Pathology (Two papers and a thesis 68.611)

94.400, 94.401 Psychiatry (Two papers and a thesis 94.601)

95.400, 95.401 Surgery (Two papers and a thesis 95.601)

90.400, 90.401 A Medical subject approved by the Senate on the recommendation of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology (Two papers and a thesis 90.601)

#### Thesis

4. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis:

(a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of the Department.

(b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.

(c) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, a supervisor shall certify to the Registrar in writing that the laboratory work has been carried out within the University, or within such other institution as may be approved by the Senate for the purposes of this Regulation.

(d) A candidate shall present his thesis in the same year as that in which he first takes his examination (if any) or with the consent of the Head of the Department and subject to paragraph (g) of this Regulation, in any subsequent year.

- (e) The candidate shall submit his thesis to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which it is presented or at such later date as may be arranged with the Head of the Department.
- (f) If the supervisor with the consent of the Assessor so recommends a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to submit it again at a later date to be specified by the supervisor.
- (g) No thesis shall be presented later than the third year after that in which the candidate first takes his examination for this Degree provided that this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulation 14.

- 5. A candidate shall not enrol for a subject which he has already passed for the Degree of Master of Science.
- 6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1972.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MEDICINE

### MD

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations.*

#### General Provisions

- 1. Except as provided in the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Medicine shall hold the degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery of the University of Auckland.
- 2. A candidate shall be required to present a thesis in any branch of medicine or medical science. The thesis shall be specially written for the purposes and shall embody a critical account of original studies carried out by the candidate which may include previously published work.
- 3. No candidate shall submit a thesis for this Degree until at least five years after graduation to the degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery.

#### Application to be Examined

- 4. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined. The application shall be lodged with the Registrar. It shall state the title of the thesis to be examined and be accompanied by an outline of the proposed or actual scope of the work and the methods involved.
- 5. As soon as reasonably possible, the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology shall examine the application and shall make its recommendation thereon to the Senate. The Senate shall then determine whether or not the application and the title and outline of the thesis should be approved.

#### Submission of the Thesis

- 6. The candidate shall (subject to Regulation 3) be required to submit the thesis by lodging three copies of it with the Registrar within five years of the date on which the Senate approves the title and outline of the thesis (or within such further time as the Senate may permit).
- 7. The thesis shall be accompanied by a Statutory Declaration which shall:
  - (i) state the extent to which the thesis is based on the candidate's own work and identify as clearly as possible any parts which are not so based;
  - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the thesis submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma; and
  - (iii) declare that the thesis in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

#### Examination of the Thesis

- 8. On receipt of the thesis, the Senate, on the recommendation of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology, shall appoint two External Examiners (of whom at least one is resident outside New Zealand) and one Examiner who is a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
- 9. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (i) to report independently on the quality of the thesis and its value as a significant contribution to learning, and

(ii) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the thesis at a later date.

10. The candidate may be required to take an oral or a written examination, or both, in the field of knowledge in which the thesis lies.

11. The reports of the Examiners shall be placed before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the Degree should be awarded.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BHB

#### Course of Study in Human Biology – Part I

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Botany, Cell Biology, Chemistry, Physics, Physiology, Psychology, Zoology.

##### Biology

(Three papers and practical work)

##### 60.100, 60.101, 60.102

Cells, structure and physiology; elementary biochemistry; form and function of animals and plants; the history of the vertebrates; genetics; evolution; principles of ecology and behaviour; biological mathematics.

##### Physico-Chemistry

##### 60.103, 60.104, 60.105

A study of the structure and properties of matter covering the following areas:

*Organic and Biochemistry* (nomenclature, structure and isomerism, functional group reactivity, fats, carbohydrates, proteins, enzymes, intermediary metabolism).

*Analytical and Physical Chemistry* (spectrophotometry, spectrometry, chromatography, radiochemistry, solution chemistry, reaction kinetics).

*Physics* (mechanics, thermodynamics, fluids, surfaces, solids, electromagnetism, oscillations and waves, light and sound, modern physics).

*Computing* (microcomputer operation, BASIC, project work involving the analysis of medical records).

##### Behavioural Science I

(One paper and practical work).

##### 60.108

An introduction to the scientific study of behaviour. The course includes a treatment of the topics of learning, motivation, emotion, sensory and perceptual processes, verbal behaviour, and cognitive functions. An introduction to experimental methods and statistics. An introduction to medical sociology.

#### Course of Study in Human Biology – Part II

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Physiology, Psychology.

##### Anatomy

(1 paper and coursework)

##### 60.205

The study of the microscopic and gross anatomy of the trunk and its organ systems.

##### Biochemistry

(2 papers and coursework)

##### 60.206

Extension of subject matter taught in Part I and the biochemistry of major topics with particular reference to those relevant to medicine. This paper includes a section dealing with fundamental concepts in microbiology and cellular immunology.

##### Physiology (Medical) II

(2 papers and coursework)

##### 60.207

The study of circulatory, respiratory, alimentary and renal function and associated topics.

##### Behavioural Science II

(One paper and practical work)

##### 60.208

The study of development from conception through infancy, childhood, adolescence, youth, the working years, to old age. Adjustment to stresses, resources available to individuals and to the community. Communication and interpersonal processes. Topics in medical sociology. Brain and behaviour.

#### Course of Study in Human Biology – Part III

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Pathology, Physiology, Psychology, Pharmacology/Clinical Pharmacology.

##### General Pathology

(One paper and practical work)

##### 60.301

A study of the principles of Pathology.

##### Neurolocomotor System

(Two papers and practical work)

##### 60.302, 60.303

A study of the limbs and back and of the nervous system including the special senses.

##### Human Reproduction and Development

(One paper and practical work)

##### 60.304

A study of the biology of human reproduction and sexuality; aspects of human genetics, foetal development, growth and ageing; biochemical aspects of endocrinology and nutrition.

##### Physiology (Medical) III

(One paper and practical work)

##### 60.305

A study of the integrated physiology of human organs systems including their control, the correction of disturbance.



**Pharmacology**

(One paper and course work)

**60.306**

This course covers the absorption, distribution and fate of administered drugs; drug toxicity and abuse; the evaluation of new drugs; and the mechanisms of action of drugs that affect the various homeostatic control systems of the body.

**Behavioural Science III**

(One paper and practical work)

**60.308**

Assessment of normal and disabled persons. Introduction to aspects of clinical practice, counselling and human sexuality.

Course work assessment is included and a pass in both written examinations and in course work is necessary.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR MBChB**

The duration of the course will be three years.

**First year of course for MBChB****(Fourth year of the Medical Course)****Clinical Methods**

An introduction to clinical medicine is provided during the first section of the first term. Methods of history taking and physical examination are demonstrated and practised by students. Students are also introduced to the principles underlying application of laboratory techniques and organ imaging to solving of patients' problems. The disciplines of medicine, surgery, paediatrics, psychiatry, obstetrics and gynaecology, pathology and radiology (organ imaging) contribute to the course. Lectures, symposia, case demonstrations, tutorial teaching, and bedside instruction, all play a part in this section of the course.

**Systems of Medicine**

During the remainder of the first year, a combined course, the Systems of Medicine, will cover the wide range of human disease arranged on a System basis. The natural history, pathology, disordered physiology, methods of diagnosis and treatment of common diseases will be covered. Each discipline of medicine will contribute to the teaching. The principles of clinical pharmacology and therapeutics will be taught together with the Systems of Medicine course.

**Clinical Clerkship**

In addition to the theoretical teaching, practical clinical experience will be gained in physical examination as it relates to gynaecology and obstetrics, medicine, paediatrics, psychiatry and surgery. Instruction will take the form of supervised history taking and examination with bedside demonstration, combined with tutorials.

**Second year of the Course for MBChB  
(Fifth year of the Medical Course)**

The combined topic teaching of the Systems of Medicine and Community Health will be completed. The class will be divided in halves, one majoring in Medicine and Surgery and completing topic (organ systems) teaching; the other in Psychiatry, Paediatrics and Obstetrics and Gynaecology. These allocations will change at mid-year.

A number of topics not included within the Systems of Medicine teaching will be covered in whole and half-class sessions. These include Medico-legal aspects of practice, a short course in ethics and the humanities, management of patients with malignant disease, head injuries, alcoholism and aspects of rehabilitation medicine.

At the conclusion of the year, there will be a composite examination consisting of four written papers and oral and/or clinical examinations.

**Third year of the Course for MBChB  
(Sixth year of the Medical Course)**

This is a trainee intern year of 52 weeks divided into four quarters of 12 weeks each and 4 weeks holiday. One of these quarters will be an "Elective" period when the student may take optional training in special disciplines of medicine. A list of approved electives will be provided from which to choose.

The remaining 36 weeks will be spent participating, under supervision, in the responsible care of sick people in hospital and in the home.

Assessment, including clinical and oral examinations where appropriate, of the student's progress will be made at the end of each assignment.

A salary will be paid to the trainee intern by the Hospital Board.

**Experience in General Practice**

The student is attached to an approved teaching practice for four weeks, during which time he sees patients and discusses their management with the general practitioner, attends house visits with him and takes part in a weekly seminar conducted by a general practice member of the Department of Community Health.

**Community Health**

The Community Medicine Course covers selected topics in preventive medicine, health education, epidemiology and occupational health. The object is to emphasise the importance of prevention, and to give the student an understanding of the health service and how the various arms of the service, both hospital and community based, interact with the population. In Year 2 students undertake an investigation of some

aspects of community medicine which entails practical experience in dealing with health problems. Concurrently with the Community Medicine course there are a series of seminars and visits concerning Primary Health Care and General Practice.

### **Gynaecology and Obstetrics**

Gynaecology and Obstetrics will deal with the physiology, endocrinology and pathology of human reproduction and their application to the clinical practice of gynaecological and obstetric medicine.

The teaching will emphasise the incorporation of the principles of this subject into total medical practice. The theoretical teaching will be within the course on the systems of medicine and clinical clerkships will be required during the third year of the course concurrent with a clerkship in neonatal paediatrics.

### **Medicine**

Various common medical diseases affecting different organ systems of the body will be considered with emphasis on their natural history, clinical presentation, methods of diagnosis, together with principles of treatment and prevention. Clinical clerkship will provide experience both in acute general medicine and, during the second year of the course, on selected aspects of different specialities within internal medicine. Tutorial teaching will play an important part in this teaching programme in which emphasis will be placed on the quality of the written as well as the verbal case presentations.

### **Paediatrics**

The undergraduate course in Paediatrics commences with an interdisciplinary child development and family study in the second and third years of the course in Human Biology. Patient-based teaching in Paediatrics is carried out in the hospital and community setting over the three years of the clinical course.

Prevention of disease and the effect of disease on the developing child are emphasised in the departmental contribution to the course of lectures given in the first two years of the clinical course on the organic and psycho-social basis of ill health. At the end of this course of lectures students are examined in their knowledge and comprehension of the principles of Paediatrics. In the third year of the clinical course there is a period of trainee internship in Paediatrics which is mandatory and a term of elective study in the broad field of child health is offered.

### **Pathology**

Teaching in Pathology commences in the third term of the third year of the course in Human Biology, and continues throughout the first, second and third years of the course for MBChB. Subjects under the aegis of Pathology include the Morphological Basis of Dis-

ease, Medical Microbiology, Haematology, Immunology, Chemical Pathology, and Forensic Medicine. During the first part of the first year of the Course for MBChB, the principles of pathology and microbiology are taught on the basis of the teaching in these subjects undertaken during the latter part of the course in Human Biology.

During the remainder of the first year, and through the second year, the teaching in pathology is largely integrated with the teaching programmes of other clinical departments.

An elective programme in pathology is available for periods of up to 3 months during the third year of the course.

### **Psychiatry**

With a background concept of normal human behaviour patterns engendered in the Behavioural Sciences component of the Human Biology course, students will receive instruction during the clinical triennium in the recognition of mental aberration and abnormal behaviour, and in the management of patients who suffer psychiatric disturbance. Most of this teaching will be incorporated in the Systems of Medicine course.

The Department of Psychiatry will join with other clinical departments, especially the departments of Paediatrics and Community Health, in conducting research towards the identification of health problems in society and the delineation of remedial measures, including methods of health education. Students will participate in these projects.

### **Surgery**

Surgical diseases will be taught covering their natural history, pathology, methods of diagnosis (including special investigations such as radiology and clinical biochemistry), and general principles of treatment. Included in the surgical diseases will be those related to eye, ear, nose and throat, the musculo-skeletal system, the genito-urinary system, the nervous system and those related to plastic surgery. The theoretical teaching of these subjects will be done within the Systems of Medicine course.

Clinical Clerkships will be required in general surgery and the special divisions of surgery listed above, including the Accident and Emergency Department. Theoretical and practical teaching in anaesthesia will be given.

The examination in surgery will be part of the composite examination at the end of the second year together with assignments during the third year.

---

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR MHB**

### **Department of Anatomy**

**65.405, 65.406, 65.601** The study of selected fields

**of Anatomy at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field.**

The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the major feature of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

**Department of Biochemistry**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**66.405, 66.406, 66.611 The general study of Biochemistry at an advanced level with particular reference to topics of medical relevance.**

Candidates for the Master's Degree should consult the Head of the Department as soon as possible after completion of course prerequisites in order to select a thesis topic and obtain advice on vacation reading. Research work for the thesis will be the major feature of the year's work and will be carried out in the Department. Attendance at departmental seminars and informal group discussions is obligatory.

**Department of Pathology**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**68.403, 68.404, 68.601 The study of selected fields of Pathology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field.**

The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the main features of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

**Department of Physiology**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**67.405, 67.406, 67.601 The study of selected fields of Physiology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field.**

The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the major feature of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

**Department of Pharmacology/Clinical Pharmacology**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**96.400, 96.401, 96.601 The study of selected fields of Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field.**

The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the major feature of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

**Department of Psychology**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**63.403, 63.404, 63.601 The general study of the Behavioural Sciences to Medicine. One or more special topics.**

The thesis will be based on a research project. An outline of the project must be submitted for the approval of the Head of the Department, before the end of the previous academic year after discussion with the person, for the time being, in charge of Behavioural Science teaching.

---

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

---

### <sup>†</sup>DIPLOMA IN PAEDIATRICS

#### DipPaed

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Paediatrics shall
  - (a) enrol not later than 1 October or such later date as the Senate approves;
  - (b) on 31 December following his or her enrolment for this Diploma have held a medical qualification registrable in New Zealand, for three years or more, or have been a graduate from the Central Medical School of Fiji for three years or more;
  - (c) sit the examinations in the year following his enrolment.

#### Course Content

2. Every candidate for the Diploma shall
  - (a) follow the prescribed course of study
  - (b) before 30 June of the year in which he or she sits the examinations, have completed six months resident paediatric appointment in a hospital or hospitals approved for this purpose.

#### Examinations

3. The examinations for the Diploma shall be
  - †(a) Written 93.404, 93.406
  - †(b) Clinical
  - †(c) Oral
4. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1974.

Notes: (i) † This Course will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

(ii) The Diploma in Paediatrics is a qualification which serves to recognise general medical practitioners who have been trained to manage the common paediatric abnormalities encountered in practice. The course is limited to two candidates in 1983 **and preference for inclusion will be given to those practitioners who do not have easy access to paediatric consultant services.** The prerequisite of at least a six months' appointment in an approved teaching hospital is mandatory.

Approved teaching hospitals:

1. Princess Mary Hospital for Children, Auckland and
2. National Women's Hospital, Auckland

(for a maximum of three of the six months required under the Regulations for the Diploma).

This list may be extended or varied from time to time with the approval of Senate.

(iii) The examination for the Diploma will test knowledge and ability in the areas of Child Development, Preventive Paediatrics, and Management of Common disorders of childhood with emphasis on those aspects encountered in remote and medically developing areas.

The examinations will normally be held in June each year at the School of Medicine.

---

### DIPLOMA IN PSYCHIATRY

#### DipPsychiat

This Diploma has been discontinued. Any candidate enrolled for the Diploma before 1979 may complete under the former Regulations, provided he re-enrols and completes the course not later than 31 December, 1983.

---

## POSTGRADUATE SCHOOL OF OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY

#### Within the Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology

The Department is situated at the National Women's Hospital, Claude Road, Auckland 3. In addition to training Auckland medical students there are extensive facilities for postgraduate education in obstetrics and gynaecology.

## DIPLOMA IN GYNAECOLOGY AND OBSTETRICS

### DipG&O

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. A candidate for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics shall

- (a) enrol not later than 1 March for the June examination and 1 September for the December examination, or such later dates as the Senate approves; and
- (b) before sitting for Part 2 of the examination:
  - (i) hold a qualifying degree or diploma approved by the Medical Council of New Zealand for four years and be registered in New Zealand or hold equivalent Commonwealth registration for three years, or
  - (ii) be a medical diplomate of the Fiji School of Medicine of six years' standing; and
- (c) hold for at least one year the Diploma of Obstetrics of the University of Auckland or of Otago or of the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists; and
- (d) have undertaken at least two years' training in the specialty of gynaecology and obstetrics in posts approved by the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists provided that only one year of service at the Colonial War Memorial Hospital, Suva, shall count towards the total, and
- (e) prior to his acceptance for Part 2 of the examination, have submitted dissertations on an obstetrical and on a gynaecological subject which has been approved by the Head of the Department.

Notwithstanding anything in this Regulation, the Vice-Chancellor may on the recommendation of Senate relax or modify these conditions.

#### Examinations

2. The examinations for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics shall consist of two parts which may be taken separately or together.

*Part 1* shall consist of a written examination (two papers), 47.101, 47.102 on reproductive biology and basic medical sciences as applied to gynaecology and obstetrics. The *Part 1* examination may be taken during the training period specified above in 1 (d).

#### *Part 2*

- (a) written (two papers), 47.103, 47.104
- (b) Clinical
- (c) oral.

The examinations shall be held at the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology during June and December.

3. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1972.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipG&O

### Part 1

The subjects covered by two papers will include basic sciences such as anatomy, biochemistry, cell biology, embryology, endocrinology, genetics, immunology, medical sociology, microbiology, pathology, pharmacology, physiology and elementary statistics. The examination will deal with those aspects of these subjects which should form part of the general education of any specialist and particularly those aspects which are applicable to obstetrics and gynaecology.

### Dissertations

Candidates are advised to discuss the preparation of their dissertations with the Head of the Department at an early stage in their training period. Both obstetric and gynaecological dissertations are designed to give candidates the opportunity to study in detail conditions of their own choice and to express their own views based on personal experience and on a study of the literature. The dissertations should show clear evidence of ability to make use of a reference library and of the English language. Socio-medical topics may be particularly suitable for one or other of the dissertations. The dissertations should be accurately typed in good English and simply bound. In general the size of the dissertations should be in the order of 3000-4000 words each and credit will be given for original contributions.

**Part 2**

Two written papers

(a) Obstetrics, and such aspects of endocrinology, medicine, neonatal paediatrics and surgery as are relevant to the practice of obstetrics.

(b) Gynaecology, and such aspects of endocrinology, medicine, medical sociology and surgery as are relevant to the practice of gynaecology.

A clinical-examination which will include presentation and discussion of obstetric and gynaecological cases.

An oral examination in obstetrics and gynaecology. In this candidates should be prepared to discuss their dissertations, to be examined on applied anatomy, physiology and pathology, and to be shown radiographs, instruments, specimens and histological slides for comment.

**DIPLOMA IN OBSTETRICS****DipObst**

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. A candidate for the Diploma in Obstetrics shall

(a) enrol not later than 1 March for the June examination and 1 September for the December examination, or such later dates as the Senate approves;

(b) on 31 May preceding the June examination or on 30 November preceding the December examination (i) have either held a registrable medical qualification for eighteen months or been a graduate from the Fiji Medical School for four years, or been a graduate from the Medical Faculty of the University of Papua New Guinea for four years, and

have completed eighteen months appointment in hospitals including at least six months in obstetrics for family practice at one of the hospitals approved for this purpose, or

(ii) have held registrable medical qualification for at least seven years, and have submitted evidence of having personally conducted at least 300 deliveries, and have presented a certificate signed by the Head of the Department that the candidate has during the three years immediately preceding the examinations, attended an approved course of postgraduate instruction in obstetrics and family practice.

**Note:** The approved course should last for at least one week and may be taken after the candidate has enrolled but must be completed before sitting the examinations.

Notwithstanding anything in this Regulation the Vice-Chancellor may on the recommendation of Senate relax or modify these conditions.

**Examinations**

2. The examinations for the Diploma in Obstetrics shall be

(a) Written (one three-hour paper – 47.500)

(b) Clinical

(c) Oral.

3. The examinations shall be held at the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology during June and December each year provided that should there be sufficient candidates, examinations may be held elsewhere at suitable dates.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipObst**

This is a general practitioner qualification and serves to distinguish those general practitioners who have been trained to handle the common abnormalities encountered in obstetrical practice. A six months' resident appointment to the staff of a teaching obstetrical and gynaecological unit is required before candidates are allowed to sit the examination, but see also provision 1 (b)(ii) of the preceding regulations. Details of such appointments are available on application. With the object of encouraging medical practitioners who intend to carry out an obstetric practice modifications have been made to the Diploma regulations to bring these more in line with the Royal College regulations in England and to make it possible for medical practitioners to take

the examinations soon after their obstetric appointment during their first post-registration year. The new regulations also allow diplomates of the Fiji Central School of Medicine to take the examinations following a period of residence at an approved hospital.

The examinations shall include questions on the anatomy, physiology, pathology and management of normal and abnormal pregnancy, labour and puerperium, including the care of the new-born during the first month of life. In addition, the candidates will be required to have a knowledge of the physiology and pathology of medical gynaecology, including abnormal menstruation, amenorrhoea and dysmenorrhoea, endocrine therapy, abortions, infertility and contraception, ectopic pregnancies and moles, vaginal discharges, the diagnostic facets of malignancy, and such minor surgical procedures as may be encountered in a predominantly obstetrical practice.

The following are approved Hospitals for the purpose of Regulation 1(b)(i):

- (1) Auckland: National Women's with or without rotation to Middlemore and St Helens Hospital
- (2) Christchurch Women's
- (3) Dunedin
- (4) Invercargill: Kew Hospital
- (5) Lower Hutt
- (6) Palmerston North
- (7) Rotorua
- (8) Waikato
- (9) Wanganui
- (10) Wellington
- (11) Whangarei
- (12) Any other hospital which meets the current criteria for approval during the full tenure of the post.
- (13) Any hospital recognised by the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists or the Australian College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists.

That approval of hospitals will be recognised on criteria of:

- (i) Specialist and registrar staff in obstetrics, gynaecology and neonatal paediatrics.
- (ii) The number of normal and abnormal patients attending the hospital clinics.
- (iii) The provision of graduate teaching in antenatal, postnatal and gynaecological clinics, wards and delivery rooms, including teaching in neonatal paediatrics and family planning. The post must be a continuous one of six months.

## **HIGHER ACADEMIC TRAINING IN OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY**

### **(i) Membership of the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists and Membership of the Australian College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists**

Resident posts providing specialist training suitable for the Membership examination are available at the National Women's and associated hospitals. A formal teaching programme for both Part I and part II examinations is provided for residents. Elective time post in neonatal paediatrics, anaesthesia and pathology can also be arranged.

### **(ii) MSc or PhD Degrees**

Research appointments are available at the National Women's Hospital and afford the opportunity of preparing for the MSc and PhD Degrees of the University of Auckland.

Applications will be welcome from scientists and medical graduates who wish to carry out research in biochemistry, endocrinology, or the scientific background of obstetrics, gynaecology, and neonatal paediatrics.

## **REFRESHER TRAINING FOR FAMILY DOCTORS AND SPECIALISTS**

(i) Practitioners with interests in the fields covered at the School may attend for periods of up to four weeks as visiting postgraduates. During the time they are attending the Postgraduate School attachments to the Auckland Hospital Board as Honorary Medical Officers can be made in order to facilitate the performance of practical procedures. Visitors may attend the daily teaching sessions as well as gain practical experience tailored to their needs.

(ii) Short courses usually of a week's duration are held at regular intervals. In addition to teaching at Diploma level advanced courses are provided.

(iii) Departmental staff are available to participate in courses throughout New Zealand by arrangement with the Head of the Department.

---

## THE POSTGRADUATE MEDICAL COMMITTEE

The Postgraduate Medical Committee, under the Chairmanship of the Associate Dean of Postgraduate Affairs in Medicine accepts responsibility for the organisation and supervision of graduate and postgraduate work among the medical practitioners in Auckland. The activity of the Committee is linked with the School of Medicine and with the hospitals under the control of the Auckland Hospital Board.

The Committee arranges annual courses throughout the academic year in internal medicine, surgery, anaesthesia, radiology, pathology, psychiatry, paediatrics and dentistry. It also arranges visits by overseas medical speakers both in the University and in the associated hospitals and publishes a monthly bulletin of medical postgraduate affairs, *This Month*.

The co-ordination and supervision of post graduate studies is carried out with the help of advisory committees of the Postgraduate Committee, each of which is responsible for its particular area of medical education including supervision of the registrar and graduate training programme and the organisation of such visiting professors as come to Auckland under the sponsorship of the Auckland Savings Bank and other auspices. All graduates attending one of the annual courses of the Committee and all overseas graduates undergoing postgraduate training in the Auckland hospitals are required to enrol with the Postgraduate Medical Committee as graduate students of the University of Auckland.

The activities in postgraduate medicine are outlined in a booklet which is available from the Associated Dean's office.

The members of the Postgraduate Committee are the Chairman, the Associate Dean of Post-graduate Affairs in Medicine, Dr C. H. Maclaurin; the Deputy Chairman, Dr P. M. Barham; the Honorary Treasurer, Dr E. J. W. Stephens; the Honorary Secretary, Dr Robin H. Briant; Associate Professor R. A. Boas; Professor D. G. Bonham; Dr P. J. Chapman; Professor D. S. Cole, Dean of Medicine; Dr H. Doerr; Dr R. K. Haydon; Dr T. G. Hawley; Dr J. R. D. Mathews; Dr R. F. Moody; Dr O. R. Nicholson; Associate Professor J. C. Probert; and Associate Professor J. D. Wilson.

The office of the Committee is in the School of Medicine.



---

# Higher Degrees

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course</b>	398	Degree of Doctor of Literature
<b>Regulations</b>	399	Degree of Doctor of Science
	400	Degree of Doctor of Laws
	401	Degree of Doctor of Music

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF LITERATURE

#### LittD

##### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Relations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself for the Degree of Doctor of Literature until at least eight years after graduation to his first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to linguistic, literary, philosophical, social or historical knowledge.
4. The degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
5. No work shall be considered for the degree if the work, or a major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined;
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

##### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw his application; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. If the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw his application, the candidate shall be notified of the recommendation by the Registrar and in such case the candidate may
  - (a) withdraw his application, whereupon he shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under the provisions of Regulation 6 of these Regulations; or
  - (b) elect to proceed with the examination.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, provided that the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
- (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work together with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall place the reports of the Examiners before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the degree shall be awarded.

13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF SCIENCE

### DSc

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Science shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself for the Degree of Doctor of Science until at least eight years after graduation to his first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Science shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of pure or applied science.
4. The degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
5. No work shall be considered for the degree if the work, or a major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined;
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

#### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate be advised to withdraw his application.
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. If the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw his application, the candidate shall be notified of the recommendation by the Registrar in such case the candidate may
  - (a) withdraw his application, whereupon he shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under the provisions of Regulation 6 of these Regulations; or
  - (b) elect to proceed with the examination.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand.
- (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the degree should not be awarded the examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work together with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.

11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where the Examiners' recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner, and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## **THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF LAWS**

### **LL.D**

#### **General Provisions**

1. Except as provided in the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall be eligible for the award of the Degree of Doctor of Laws until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to the history, philosophy, exposition or criticism of law.
4. The Degree shall be awarded on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation, but in addition to the published work the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work or a major portion of it has previously formed the basis of an award of any Degree or Diploma in this or any other University.
6. Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined; and
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of work submitted has been previously presented for a Degree or Diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a Degree or Diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a Degree or Diploma in any other University.

#### **Examination Procedure**

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted but the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. If the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application, the candidate shall be notified of the recommendation by the Registrar. The candidate may then
  - (a) withdraw the application, and shall then be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under the provisions of Regulation 6 of these Regulations; or
  - (b) elect to proceed with the examination.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand; and the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
- (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.

10. The duties of each Examiner shall be

(a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and

(b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work together with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.

11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.

12. The Moderator shall place the reports of the Examiners before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.

13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MUSIC

### MusD

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Music shall hold the Degree of Master of Music of the University of Auckland or Bachelor of Music of the University of New Zealand.

2. No candidate shall present himself for the Degree of Doctor of Music until at least five years after graduation to the qualifying degree.

3. The Degree of Doctor of Music shall be awarded for distinction in musical composition.

4. The candidate shall submit not more than three works of his own, published or otherwise, such works to be selected from the following:

an oratorio, an opera, a cantata, a symphony for full orchestra, a concerto, an extended piece of chamber music.

5. No work shall be considered for the degree if the work, or a major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.

6. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with

(a) three copies of the work to be examined,

(b) a statutory declaration which shall

(i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and

(ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and

(iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

#### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall

(a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether in his opinion the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw his application,

(b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.

8. If the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw his application, the candidate shall be notified of the recommendation by the Registrar and in such case the candidate may

(a) withdraw his application, whereupon he shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under the

provisions of Regulation 6 of these Regulations; or

(b) elect to proceed with examination.

9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, provided that the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.

(b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.

10. The duties of each Examiner shall be

(a) to report independently on the quality of the work; and

(b) to recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the degree should not be awarded the examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work together with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.

11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.

12. The Moderator shall place the reports of the Examiners before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the degree shall be awarded.

13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner; and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

---

# Inter Faculty

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	404	Degree of Master of Philosophy
	404	Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

---

<b>Certificate Course Regulations</b>	407	Certificate of Proficiency
---------------------------------------	-----	----------------------------

---

<b>Inter Faculty Studies</b>	407	Operations Research
------------------------------	-----	---------------------

---

<b>Intermediate Course for other Universities</b>	408	Intermediate Courses for Degrees and Diplomas
---	-----	---

---

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

---

### THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PHILOSOPHY

#### MPhil

**Note:** A student who has qualified for a Bachelor's Degree in one Faculty but who wishes to take a Masters course which is only available in another Faculty may be permitted by Senate to do so for the degree of Master of Philosophy.

Permission will normally be given where the Senate is satisfied that the student holds qualifications at least equivalent to the prerequisites for the Masters course concerned. In some cases, instead of MPhil, the Master's Degree of the Faculty will be approved as the course for a student particularly appropriately qualified, (e.g. a student qualified in engineering but with a Bachelor's Degree in another Faculty may be permitted to take a Masters course in Engineering for ME instead of MPhil.)

*The personal Course of Study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of Study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate shall before his enrolment for this Degree
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree, and
  - (b) have been approved by the Senate as qualified to pursue a Course of study for a Master's Degree in a Faculty other than that in which he qualified for his Bachelor's Degree.

#### Course Content

2. Every candidate for the Degree of Master of Philosophy shall comply with the Course Regulations for a Master's Degree prescribed in the Faculty in which he is pursuing his Course of study.
3. The Degree shall be awarded by the Senate after receipt of a certificate from the Head of the Department in which the Course for the Degree has been taken, stating that the candidate has completed the prescribed requirements.

#### Honours

4. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
  - (b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate takes an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory: provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so that he shall still be eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provision of subclause (c) of this regulation.
  - (c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he completes the requirements for Honours within three years of his first enrolment for this Degree: provided that this period may be extended, in exceptional cases, by the Senate.
  5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1971.
- 

### THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

#### PhD

*The personal Course of Study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of Study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Every candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy shall apply to the Head of his Department for registration as such, showing:
  - (a) that he has the requisite preliminary qualification set out in regulation 2 hereof, and
  - (b) that he has adequate training and ability to pursue a Course of advanced study and research.
2. The preliminary qualification shall be



- (a) qualification for admission to a Bachelor's Degree with Honours, or a Bachelor's (Honours) Degree, or a Master's Degree with Honours of this University, or
  - (b) qualification for admission to a Master's Degree First Class or Second Class, or
  - (c) qualification for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery together with evidence that the candidate has carried out research which, in the opinion of the Senate, is satisfactory evidence of the candidate's ability to pursue a Course of advanced study and research for this Degree
  - (d) in the case of a graduate of another University, admission to the Course under the provisions of the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, or
  - (e) any other qualification approved by the Senate in the particular case of any candidate.
3. (a) The Senate (Deans Committee) having received a recommendation from the Head of the Department concerned (or in Engineering and Medicine and Human Biology, from the Dean concerned) shall determine if the candidate may be registered and the date and conditions of that registration.
- (b) A recommendation for registration shall include:
- (i) the field of study
  - (ii) the date of registration
  - (iii) the name of a supervisor or supervisors from members of the academic staff
  - (iv) satisfactory evidence of the candidate's training and ability to pursue the proposed Course of Study
  - (v) a statement of any foreign language requirement (or none) which the candidate must satisfy as part of the Course of Study
  - (vi) where submitted by the Dean of Engineering, a description of the papers required in terms of clause 8(a) of these Regulations.
4. A candidate for a Master's Degree may, after the completion of at least one year's work for that Degree at a standard considered satisfactory by the Senate, be registered as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. Any such candidate so registered may be allowed credit for the work for the Master's Course if that work can form part of the doctoral thesis. The date of registration shall not be earlier than the end of the academic year in which he completed papers for a Master's or Bachelor's Degree with Honours.
5. (a) After being registered as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy the candidate shall pursue a Course of advanced study and research at the University to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department and the Supervisor for a period of at least two calendar years from the date of registration, during which he shall work at his advanced study and research full time under the supervision of a teacher in the University; provided that
- (i) laboratory work may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;
  - (ii) field work may be carried out at such places and for such periods as the Senate may determine;
  - (iii) research requiring the use at first hand of documents or books not available within the University may be undertaken in an approved institution outside the University, for such period or periods and on such conditions as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;
  - (iv) when a candidate has completed the initial period of two years full-time study and research he may apply to the Senate for permission to continue as a part-time candidate. Any such application must be supported by the Supervisor and the Head of the Department.
- (b) For the purpose of this regulation a candidate shall be deemed to work full time if he has no occupation other than his study or research; provided that he may
- (i) with the approval of his Supervisor and the Head of the Department engage for an average period of not more than six hours in any one week in academic work other than his study or research;
  - (ii) take such statutory, recreational and other holidays as are normally incidental to full-time occupation.
6. (a) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a part-time member of the academic staff whose duties as such require of him not more than 12 hours in any one week and who has no other occupation except his study or research may register as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being so registered he shall pursue a course of advanced study and research at the University over a period which shall, except in special circumstances to be determined by the Senate, be of at least three calendar years from the date of his registration, to the satisfaction of the Head of his Department and the Supervisor.
- (b) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a full-time member of the academic staff, other than a Head of the Department, may register as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being so registered he shall pursue a course of advanced study and research at the University over a period which shall, except in special circumstances to be determined by the Senate, be of at least four calendar years from the date of his registration to the satisfaction of the Head of his Department and the Supervisor.

(c) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a full-time member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College in Greater Auckland may apply for registration as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy and shall submit with his application a statement from the Principal of the College that his college work is such as to allow him to pursue a course at the University for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being registered he shall pursue to the satisfaction of the Head of his Department and the Supervisor, a course of advanced study and research at the University over a period of at least four calendar years from the date of his registration.

7. The Supervisor shall submit to the Senate, through the Head of the Department, a brief report on the progress of the candidate at the end of each year, provided that in the case of a candidate who is a member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College the Supervisor shall submit a report at the end of each six months. A candidate's registration may be terminated by the Senate if an unfavourable report is received.

8. (a) A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Engineering shall take three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Engineering or papers deemed by the Deans Committee to be equivalent provided that the Senate on the recommendation of the Deans Committee may waive or modify this requirement.

(b) A candidate shall not be eligible to enrol for any other course while registered for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy unless he obtains the prior permission of the Senate.

9. (a) A candidate who has fulfilled the conditions required by these Regulations may apply at any time within six years from the date of resignation to the Registrar to be examined provided that a full-time member of the academic staff, or a member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College, may apply at any time within eight years and this period may in special circumstances be extended by the Senate for a full-time member of the academic staff who has not while registered for the Degree been a full-time research student.

(b) A candidate shall submit to the Registrar three bound copies of a thesis embodying the results of his research which shall be retained by the University.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

10. (a) After having accepted the candidate's application to be examined the Senate, shall upon the recommendation of the Head of the Department, approve the title of the thesis and shall appoint as examiners:

(i) the Supervisor or Supervisors,

(ii) one person, who shall also act as Oral Examiner, and who may be a member of the staff of this University if there is no specialist in the field at another University in New Zealand, and

(iii) one person who may not be a member of the staff of this University except in such circumstances as the Senate thinks fit.

(b) The Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department, appoint a further Examiner and in exceptional circumstances two further Examiners.

11. The Supervisor shall forward to the Registrar a certificate stating that the work described in the thesis was carried out by the candidate under his supervision and that the conditions laid down in Regulation 5 or 6 have been fulfilled.

12. (a) A copy of the thesis shall be submitted to each examiner who shall report on the thesis independently. Except where the Vice-Chancellor acting on the advice of the Examiners otherwise authorises, the Supervising Examiner and one External Examiner shall together examine the candidate orally on the subject of the thesis and on the general field to which the subject belongs. The oral examination shall be held after the reports from all the examiners have been received, and not sooner than six weeks after the submission of the thesis, except in very special circumstances and with the approval of the Senate. At the request of the Oral Examiners the candidate may be required to take a written examination. The Oral Examiners shall make a joint report to the Senate on the whole examination. The Examiners may recommend that a thesis, not considered entirely suitable by them for acceptance, may be revised by the candidate for resubmission on one further occasion only.

(b) Where a candidate registered for this Degree who has not qualified for or been awarded a Master's Degree of this University submits or re-submits a thesis not considered entirely suitable to the examiners, the Senate may recommend that the thesis be submitted for a Master's Degree without Honours in the appropriate Faculty provided that the candidate satisfies all other requirements for that Master's Degree.

---

## CERTIFICATE COURSE REGULATIONS

---

### CERTIFICATE OF PROFICIENCY COP

*The personal Course of Study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of Study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. In these regulations a "pass" means a pass in any paper or subject or in any examinable part of a subject. "Certificate of Proficiency" means a Certificate issued by the University as to a pass otherwise than for a Degree or Diploma.
2. With the permission of the Senate a matriculated student may be enrolled under the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) for the purpose of obtaining a Certificate of Proficiency.
3. To obtain a Certificate of Proficiency a student who is enrolled under Regulation 2 must comply with the provisions of the Examination Regulations and pass the appropriate examinations.
4. Where a candidate has obtained a pass for a Certificate of Proficiency he may at any time have that pass credited to a Degree or Diploma if he has complied with, or in exceptional circumstances is exempted by the Senate from, any prerequisite, corequisite condition or other requirement prescribed for that Degree or Diploma.
5. A candidate who (a) has obtained a pass in any subject at Masters level for a Certificate of Proficiency and (b) would have been eligible for Honours if he had presented that subject under the appropriate Master's Degree Regulations, may be awarded a Certificate of Proficiency with Honours of the appropriate class provided in those Regulations.

**Note:** A member of the permanent academic staff of this University with overseas university qualifications may be permitted to enrol for a paper or a subject for Certificate of Proficiency without having to make a formal application for Admission Ad Eundem Statum.

---

## INTER FACULTY STUDIES

### Operations Research

Operations Research can be defined briefly as the application of scientific methods to the management problems. It is widely used in areas such as optimal scheduling, inventory control, decision analysis and many similar applications, both on a short-term basis and to assist in long-range planning.

Training for Operations Research is frequently inter-disciplinary and in the University there are several paths along which Operations Research may be approached. Because of this, the major routes are described here, and further reference should be made to relevant prescriptions in the Faculties of Commerce, Engineering and Science.

1. In the Faculty of Science, the Department of Mathematics and Statistics offers courses which contain topics dealing with the theory and methodology of basic stochastic and deterministic techniques in Operations Research. In particular the following Courses are relevant:

Probability	26.380
Optimization in Operations Research	26.391
Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research	26.395
Related papers are available at undergraduate and graduate level towards the Degrees BSc, BSc(Hons), MSc or towards the Diplomas DipCompMaths, DipStats. Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.	

2. In the Faculty of Commerce students wishing to specialise in Operations Research for the BCom degree should consider the following papers offered by the Departments of Management Studies and Economics:

Management Science	72.202
Operations Research	72.308 (13.303)
Operations Research	72.408
Mathematical Programming	72.409

together with related papers in Accounting, Computer Science, Economics, Engineering, Management Studies and Mathematics.

At the graduate level students may choose courses in Operations Research towards the degrees of MCom or MPhil which may include a thesis or a research essay in this area. Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Management Studies or of Economics.

3. In Engineering students may specialise in Operations Research within the professional degree by taking the Engineering Science course, which includes:

Operations Research I	54.251
Operations Research II	54.351
Engineering Science Design	54.291
Project in Engineering Science	54.303
Stochastic Models in Operations Research	54.352

Appropriate papers in such areas as computation, statistics, industrial administration and transportation are also available. The project topic can be chosen from a wide area of application in industry and corporate administration.

At the graduate level, students may specialise in Operations Research for the degrees of ME, MPhil and PhD by choosing from:

Studies in Operations Research A	54.760
Studies in Operations Research B	54.770
Random Processes	54.790
Studies in Engineering Science	54.710

and related papers (offered by several Engineering Departments) such as Control, Transportation, Micro-processors and Minicomputers.

Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics.

## **INTERMEDIATE COURSE FOR DEGREES OR DIPLOMAS FOR OTHER NZ UNIVERSITIES**

### **Intermediate Courses for Degrees or Diplomas of other New Zealand Universities**

Intermediate courses may be taken at the University of Auckland for a number of degrees and diplomas offered by other New Zealand universities except for Medicine, Dentistry and Pharmacy at the University of Otago as from 1983. Enquiries in the first instance must be made to the University concerned before any enrolment for that University is made at the University of Auckland.

A student wishing to enrol at Auckland for an Intermediate course for a degree or diploma at another University is required to include on the enrolment forms the course of study and the University for which it is being taken as an Intermediate e.g. Forestry Intermediate (Canterbury).

A student who decides to remain at Auckland after having passed Intermediate papers for another University's course may apply to have those papers credited to an Auckland course by completing the appropriate form (Abandonment) and paying the prescribed fee of \$10.

---

# **Centre For Continuing Education Computer Centre**

## *Contents*

---

410	Centre for Continuing Education
410	Computer Centre
411	Computer System Regulations

---

## CENTRE FOR CONTINUING EDUCATION

The Centre for Continuing Education is a department of the University, the special function of which is to create opportunities for the whole community to attend courses and other activities of a university standard for personal enjoyment and development or advancement of professional knowledge. Nearly all courses are conducted by university academic staff or outside specialists. It makes available to the general public a wide variety of courses in the humanities, sciences, music and the arts. These are usually of ten weeks or longer. Day or weekend seminars are also promoted both at the Centre and in Northland. In addition to its general offering of music courses, the Centre organises and promotes the annual Cambridge Music School, a two week residential school for serious performers and composers from throughout New Zealand.

Adults contemplating degree studies for the first time are offered a "New Start" programme which is designed to introduce them to university study methods and facilities. Short introductory courses in some arts subjects not taught in the secondary schools, e.g. psychology, economics, sociology, education, Maori studies, are specifically designed for intending degree students.

Certificate courses are conducted in (i) Personnel Management and Industrial Relations, (ii) Community Studies. Short courses providing professional development for workers in health, education, welfare, recreation, community development and counselling fields are also available. These courses are conducted under the heading of 'Working With People.'

The Centre also promotes a wide-ranging series of seminars, courses and conferences for such professional groups as engineers, businessmen, teachers, surveyors, valuers.

Publicity brochures about the Centre's activities are available on request from the Centre for Continuing Education. More information can be obtained by telephoning the Centre 737,999 extensions 7720 or 8735, writing to the Centre for Continuing Education, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland or calling at the General Office of the Centre, Old Choral Hall, 7 Symonds Street.

## COMPUTER CENTRE

The Computer Centre provides a digital computing service for users throughout the campus. The two main computer systems used are:

### IBM 4341 & Series/1

Memory	4 Mb
Disk	1100 Mb (later 1700 Mb)
Magnetic tape	2 @ 1600/6250 bpi, 470 Kb, p.e.
Card reader	600 cpm
Line printer	450 lpm
Graph plotter	8-pen, A3
Graphics screen	ADE colour unit

Terminals & remote printers connect through three Series/1 communications computers. Two further Series/1 computers are used for the University's administrative data processing.

### DEC System-10

Memory	1 Mb
Disk	120 Mb
Magnetic tape	1 @ 800 bpi NZRI

Terminals and remote printers connecting to the two systems are installed in clusters at key locations on the campus; further clusters and some individual stations will be installed during the year.

A further system, a Prime P400, provides time-sharing services for a small number of terminals. A wide range of languages and packages is available, particularly on the IBM system. Languages include Fortran IV, Fortran 77, PL/1, Cobol, Pascal, Basic, Lisp and Snobol 4; packages include SPSS, Minitab and SAS (statistics), LINDO and LP 1 (optimization), simulation languages and other facilities.

## USER SERVICES

**Undergraduate classes** are expected to use terminals to the Dec-10 system, or small computers installed in various teaching departments. Limited access to the IBM 4341 is available for the specialised requirements of small, advanced classes.

**Research Services** for staff members and post-graduate students are based on the IBM 4341.

**Key-Data Services** are based on three IBM 5280 key-diskette units which can connect to the IBM or DEC-10 main-frames.

**Advisory Services** are provided throughout the day by a roster of staff members. Introductory courses and lectures on more advanced aspects of computer use are given at intervals through the year.

University departments are charged for all use of the IBM system, and are provided with fixed resource allocations for their students' use of the DEC-10 system. Information about charging rates, budget and student resource allocations and access controls generally is available through the Computer Centre office. The office staff can also advice on the range of documentation available to users, whether as manuals and guides sold through the University Book Shop or as User Notes issued by the Centre.

The Computer Centre building is open between 8 am and 11.30 pm week-days only, including all vacations. The computer systems operate continuously, and access to them through terminals in other buildings is available whenever these buildings are open.

## COMPUTER SYSTEM REGULATIONS

Pursuant to section 22 of the University of Auckland Act, 1961 the Council of the University makes the following Regulations:

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Computer System Regulations 1975 and shall come into force on 1 January 1976.
2. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires – “System” means any Computer System controlled and operated by the Council whether at the Computer Centre established in the University or elsewhere. “Director” in relation to any System means the person authorised by the Council to control it.
3. No student or any other member of the University shall:
  - (a) without authority of the Director gain access or attempt to gain access to the System;
  - (b) obtain or attempt to obtain from the System any information to which he is not entitled;
  - (c) use or attempt to use the System so as to cause costs to be incurred –
    - (i) by the University, without the consent of his Head of Department and the Head of any other Department concerned;
    - (ii) by any person other than the University, without the consent of that other person.
4. Any breach of Regulation 3 of these Regulations shall be deemed to be a breach of the Disciplinary Regulations of the University.

**Notes:** (i) Application to use a Computer System must be made to the person in control – that is, to the Director of the Computer Centre or, in the case of a system under the control of a Head of Department, to that Head of Department or his nominee.

(ii) Withdrawal of complete facilities for improper use:

The purpose of the Regulations is to make certain improper uses of the Computer Centre, breaches of University discipline, so that any breach of Regulation 3 may, if committed by a student, be dealt with under the Disciplinary Regulations. Each user of the Computer System must note that any improper use, whether or not it can be or is dealt with and whether or not it is within the scope of Regulation 3 above, may lead to his being temporarily or permanently refused the use of the System, by the Director of the Computer Centre or by the Head of Department concerned. Any person aggrieved by such a refusal may, in the ordinary course of University administration, have the matter referred, through the Vice-Chancellor, to the Council.

# Blank Page



---

# General Student and Staff Information

## *Contents*

---

<b>Student Services</b>	414 Academic Dress
	414 Careers Advisory Service
	414 The Chapel
	415 Accommodation Service
	415 Halls of Residence
	415 Applied Research Office
	415 Inventions and Patents
	416 Lost Property
	416 Parking
	416 Press Correspondence
	416 Student Counselling
	416 Student Health Service
	417 The Crèche
	417 Telephones
	417 Students' Association
	419 New Zealand University Students' Association
	419 Auckland University District Graduates' Association (Inc.)
	420 Auckland University Club (Inc.)
	420 New Zealand Universities Graduates' Association (U.K.)

---

<b>Enrolment</b>	421 Limitations on Enrolment 1983
	423 Lecture Timetable 1983
	439 Laboratory Timetable 1983

---

---

## STUDENT SERVICES

---

### ACADEMIC DRESS

The Auckland Branch of the New Zealand Federation of University Women owns a stock of Academic Gowns, Hoods and Caps (black trencher with a tassel). These are available for hire at all times during the year. Details may be obtained at the Registry. A student completing the requirements for a degree or diploma will receive information regarding the hire of academic dress for the Graduation Ceremony with his result card.

---

### CAREERS ADVISORY SERVICE

The Careers Advisory Service has four main functions:

1. To give advice and information to students and graduates of the University about career opportunities, and to put them in touch with prospective employers.
2. To prepare and circulate through *Craccum* (the student newspaper) a schedule of job vacancies, informing students and graduates of specific opportunities offered by employers.
3. To arrange the MID YEAR CAMPUS VISITS (held throughout the second term) and CAREERS WEEK (held November). These programmes provide opportunities for students to meet employers on the campus and discuss employment prospects.
4. To increase the awareness of the community of the potential benefits of employing University graduates. Students are encouraged to visit the Careers Advisory Service in the early stages of their University course to discuss suitable employment opportunities for when they complete their study programmes.

The Careers Advisory Service is located in the suite of offices behind the Upper Lecture Theatre – inquiries to the Secretary in Room 14. The Service is open during normal university administrative hours. Ph. 737-703.

---

### THE CHAPEL

The Maclaurin Chapel was established under a deed of trust by Sir William Goodfellow, Hon. LLD, in memory of his son, Richard Maclaurin Goodfellow, killed during service with the Fleet Air Arm in World War II, and of Professor Richard Cockburn Maclaurin, one of Auckland's most distinguished graduates. University representatives are included in the Board of Management which is responsible for administering the trust.

Services conducted in the University Chapel are non-denominational in character, and all members of the University are welcomed. Regular services are held during term time as follows: Morning Prayer each weekday at 9.40 a.m.; Communion Service, 1.10 pm on Thursdays. Special Services as advertised.

---

### CHAPLAINS

There are three chaplains to the University – two of whom represent those denominations which have membership in the National Council of Churches, and the Roman Catholic chaplain who works in a chaplaincy team of students and staff at Newman Hall. The Maclaurin Chaplain, the Rev. Dr K. J. Sharpe, who is appointed by the Richard Maclaurin Goodfellow Foundation, may be contacted in his office in the Chapel complex (phone 737-732).

The Chaplain appointed by the Auckland Council of Churches, the Rev. J. M. Ker, has his rooms behind the Upper Lecture Theatre (Room 10) (phone 737-999, extension 7495).

The Roman Catholic Chaplain, Father D. Halstead, OP, resides at Newman Hall, 16 Waterloo Quadrant. (phone 732-097).

The three chaplains work together as the University chaplaincy service. They are available to any member of the University for consultation.

---

### NEWMAN HALL

Newman Hall is the University Catholic Centre at 16 Waterloo Quadrant. It is named for Cardinal Newman, the nineteenth century scholar, in commemoration of whom the annual Newman Lecture is held.

Newman Hall is the centre for the University Parish, which is the community of students, graduates and staff. The chaplaincy is carried on by a group consisting of the University Catholic Chaplain who is a Dominican priest, and students and staff. Some of the members of the community live at Newman Hall and are available

*Student Services, Accommodation, Halls of Residence, Applied Research Office, Inventions & Patents 415*

at any time (student members, phone 32-618). The major services are Mass at 7.00 pm every Sunday evening (February till Christmas), weekday mass daily during term at 1.10 pm. Further details may be obtained from the Newman Hall secretary (phone 732-097).

## ACCOMMODATION SERVICE

An accommodation service is provided without charge for students and intending students of the University. The Student Lodgings Officer is available to receive applications for admission to University Halls of Residence and to assist students to find board in private homes.

A notice board giving details of houses, flats and rooms available for occupation by students is maintained in the accommodation office, which is situated in room 005 in the basement of the Old Arts Building.

## HALLS OF RESIDENCE

The University administers two Halls of Residence and, in addition, one other Hall works within the University system.

All three Halls offer three meals a day. There are also two other University administered establishments which offer students furnished accommodation but do not provide meals. All establishments accommodate both men and women. Applications for admission, which close on 30 October 1982, should be addressed to the Student Lodgings Officer, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland. Late applications are accepted for the waiting list.

**Grafton Hall**, Seafeld View Road, Grafton, administered by the Presbyterian Methodist Congregational Foundation Inc and within 15 minutes' walk of the University. Accommodation and full board is provided for 160 students.

**International House**, 27 Whitaker Place, administered by the University and within seven minutes' walk of the campus. Accommodation and full board is provided for 163 students.

**O'Rorke Hall**, 49 Symonds Street, administered by the University and within three minutes' walk of the campus. Accommodation and full board is provided for 172 students.

**Norman Spencer Senior Student Apartments**, 9 St Stephens Avenue, Parnell. Accommodation is available for approximately 50 senior students in single study bedrooms with use of well equipped communal cooking and bathroom facilities. There is limited accommodation for married couples.

**Park Road Student Flats**, Grafton. Accommodation is provided for 44 students (12 in single rooms and 32 in shared rooms). Each room has its own bathroom but residents must share the communal kitchen.

## APPLIED RESEARCH OFFICE (ARO)

The basic objective of the Applied Research Office is to bring together interested academic staff and outside sponsoring bodies so that University expertise and facilities can be made available to the community and so the University will benefit from an increased flow of research funds. The experience of working on projects carried out through the ARO can often be of considerable benefit to individual academic staff involved and also of general benefit to the University.

The ARO will also arrange for the patent protection of inventions made by University staff and students where there is a good possibility of commercialisation of the invention.

The ARO is headed by an Executive Officer who reports to the ARO Management Subcommittee of Research Committee. The Office is located on the sixth floor of the School of Engineering and is open during normal University administration hours. (Phone 737-999 extensions 7808 and 7809).

## INVENTIONS AND PATENTS

When staff or students consider that during the course of their University activities a discovery or innovation has occurred which may have possibilities for commercial exploitation, the University expects them to disclose such a discovery to the University by informing the Applied Research Office. The Applied Research Office Management Subcommittee would, in due course, make a decision as to whether to recommend its assignment to the University, its protection and its course of commercialisation. An agreement between the inventor(s) and the University would then be entered into, such an agreement describing the obligations of the parties and the division of any income and expenditure.

*416 Student Services, Student Health Service, Lost Property, Parking, Press Correspondence, Counselling*

Members of staff and students should know that prior to the granting of a provisional patent, publication is likely to render any research result unpatentable. It is not the wish of the University, however, that this circumstance should inhibit the free publication of research work.

Staff or students are not to use for commercial purposes any invention or development or computer program to which they have had access while at the University without the specific approval of the University obtained through the Head of Department concerned.

## LOST PROPERTY

All enquiries regarding lost property should be referred to the Head Custodian or the Enquiries counter in the Registry.

## PARKING

Street parking is available for two-wheel vehicles in Symonds Street between Alfred and Wellesley Streets, in Alfred Street, in Symonds Street between Grafton Road and the Human Sciences building, Princes Street outside Maidment Arts Centre and School of Medicine.

Provision has been made for parking of bicycles on the following areas: Concourse, School of Engineering, Symonds Street; Upper and lower Concourses, Recreation Centre, Symonds Street; Physics Building, Princes Street side; Accountancy, Area 1, Alfred Street; Concourse, lower lecture Theatre and Library; School of Architecture, Symonds Street; School of Medicine, Park Road.

An area in lower Grafton Road (area No. 13) has been set aside for students' cars. Admission is on production of student identity card and payment of 20 cents. Check out passes are available for re-entry later the same day but no guarantee is given that a space will be available. No charge is made for this area during the weekend or after 4 pm on weekdays.

Students may use the parking facilities in Wynyard Street (between Grafton and Alten Roads) without charge after 5.45 pm any day, at any time during the weekends and during December and January. Students may be asked to show identity cards in order to distinguish themselves from ordinary members of the public.

The parking building at 36 Princes Street is available for general parking after 5.45 each evening and weekends.

## PRESS CORRESPONDENCE

Members of the University are reminded that it is normal practice to sign Press correspondence as from the University only when the writer has some special competence in the subject discussed. For members of the teaching staff, such subjects would normally be those within the area of their academic competence, and for students, matters of general student concern. Student members should indicate their student status either in the body of the letter or in the address given. On matters of general public interest, all members of the University write in their private capacity.

## COUNSELLING

The Counselling Service is available and confidential for any member of the University community who wishes to use it. Anyone using the Service (and this includes intending students) may discuss without fear or judgment, criticism or pressure any issue of a personal, social, vocational or academic nature. The aim of the Service is to enable people to relate more satisfactorily with other people in their immediate and general environment. For this purpose, personal counselling is provided, as well as group activities. The Counselling Service also offers direct assistance for improving study and reading skills. The Service is confidential, voluntary and readily available. The three full-time counsellors are Lorna McLay, David Simpson and Brian Lythe, the last-named with a special responsibility for overseas students. They are available during usual University hours, preferably by appointment, but in matters of urgency, without. An appointment may readily be made by ringing the Secretary, telephone 737-895/896, at Counselling, above the Post Office, main campus.

## STUDENT HEALTH SERVICE

The University of Auckland Student Health Service is available to all students and is designed to help them maintain an optimum state of health. There is a full-time Director, a nursing sister and eleven part-time

doctors including a Psychiatrist and those in the Family Planning and Physical Medicine fields. A full clinical service is provided as well as immunisations against infectious disease and for those going on overseas travel.

The hours of appointment are as follows:

Monday to Friday: 9 am to 4.30 pm.

During the evening and at weekends an emergency service is available and the doctor on duty can be contacted by phoning 599-095.

Emergency medical services are available

(1) 153 Newton Road

(2) 1958 Great North Road, Avondale

(3) 736 Manukau Road, Royal Oak

(4) 4 Great South Road, Papatoetoe.

## THE CRÈCHE

The University operates a crèche which is primarily available for the children of students. It is run by a staff of 10 people trained in early childhood care; Mrs Elaine McCulloch is the supervisor. Children from 0–5 years may attend but in terms of the crèche's licence children can only stay for up to 4 hours at any one time. The crèche is open 8 am – 5 pm Monday to Friday during the University year: it is also open for one week in each of the May and August holidays to enable parents to study.

The crèche is only able to take 38 children at any one time of whom only 10 may be under 2 years of age. The pressure for use is greatest in the morning.

Enrolments for the crèche are accepted during Enrolment Week. To assist in allotting places and times, early enrolment is encouraged.

Crèche charges are \$1.00 hr with a \$12 enrolment fee. A childcare subsidy administered by the Social Welfare Department is available to the parents of children using the crèche for more than 12½ hours a week. The subsidy is subject to an income qualification.

For further information telephone Mrs McCulloch Ext. 7755.

## TELEPHONES

Telephones for the use of students are provided by the Students' Association in the Student Union Building. In addition, Public Telephones are provided by the Post Office in the Arts Building (adjacent to the Bank), the Library Building (first floor by the lifts), the Thomas Building and at the School of Engineering (adjacent to the Library), Human Science Building (adjacent to lecture theatres), School of Architecture (adjacent to lecture theatres), Physics Building basement and School of Medicine near cafeteria.

Students are not permitted to make or receive outside calls through the University main telephone system except on University business.

## STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION

The Association is an Incorporated Society founded in 1891. The aim of the Association is to further the interests of the student body within the University and without. The student body is an integral part of the University community and the Association and its members are involved not only in the government of the University but also in fostering social, intellectual, political, cultural and sporting activities within the University.

In recent years the Association has changed from a merely social and service organisation catering for the needs of students on Campus to an organisation concerned with student problems in their widest context.

The control of the business and affairs of the Association rests with the Executive Committee elected annually and comprising a full-time President and fourteen portfolio holders together with the Association Secretary – a full-time administrative post. The Executive is the official mouthpiece for the Association and takes official action on behalf of the Association in the interests of the student body. Through this Executive which acts as a co-ordinating body the Association undertakes a wide and varied number of activities.

The Association is a link between individual students, the academic and administrative staff of the University. Students now elect four representatives to Senate, one representative to University Council, representatives to departmental and faculty committees as well as representatives to committees of Senate, Council and the Association. Through its Executive, the Association represents students in matters involving their interest within the University and the Community at large.

The Student Representative Council (SRC) was set up in 1969 and membership is open to all students. The political and policymaking body of the Association, SRC is empowered to act on any matter of concern to students.

There are over one hundred clubs and societies affiliated to the Association covering many spheres of student interest. The sports clubs cater for almost all sporting interests and most participate in the local Auckland inter-club competitions and in the NZUSU tournaments. The cultural societies cater for a wide range of religious, academic, social, cultural and political interests. Information about these clubs and societies is available in the *Orientation Handbook*. The Association organises social functions during the course of the year ranging from informal dances to the Graduates Ball. During the first two weeks of the academic year the Association organises the Orientation Fortnight to acquaint new students with the varied facets of University life. The Association organises student concessions for its members with a number of city firms and with the promoters of attractions of interest to students, through the *Discount Handbook* available to all students.

The Association runs a Student Information Office (SIO). Various welfare activities (e.g. school visits, blood days, TITWTI, student accommodation) are co-ordinated through the SIO by the Welfare Officer. The SIO also provides general information about various on-campus student activities. The Association runs an employment bureau to obtain part-time and vacation work for students. There is also a travel office in the Administration block for use by staff and students.

The Association is responsible for various publications including a newspaper *Craccum* which appears weekly during term and traditionally expresses students' views and features news of interest to students; such publications as *Tenancy Booklet* and *Sexuality Booklet* and as well distributes the various publications of the national body, NZUSA.

The Association occupies the Student Union Building whose control and use is subject to management by the Student Union Management Committee consisting of six students and five representatives of the University including representatives of the Senate, Council and Sub-Professorial staff.

The Student Union is made up of five blocks. The cafeteria block is under the general supervision of the Catering Manager and contains a basement and kitchen and the ground floor cafeteria seating 600 where a full hot and cold meal service is available. The Restaurant which seats 100 is on the first floor and provides a higher quality meal for students and staff. The Milk Bar on the basement level offers sweets, milkshakes, ice-creams, etc, and has indoor and outdoor seating for 70. The Coffee Bar also on the basement level which seats 90 is open for extended hours and serves coffee, tea and light snacks.

The Administration block contains the Association offices, Council Room, general meeting rooms, and the Executive offices along with the offices of the President and the Association Secretary, Assistant Registrar (Student Union), and the Accountant.

The public office is open from 9 am to 5 pm for Association business. Alongside this stands the block housing the University Bookshop Auckland Ltd, in which the Association has a half interest, above which are the main common rooms. Underneath both these blocks is the basement, storage, toilets and student locker area. The two blocks nearest Alfred Street contain the TV room, billiards room, the sick bay, a common room, and table tennis room.

All students are required to pay the annual Students' Association fee of \$52, a portion of which is paid into the building fund. The building fund levy is payable for 5 continuous years of attendance at the University of Auckland, credit being given for attendance at other New Zealand Universities for any full year. The building fund is used to finance present and future buildings in the Student Union.

The Maidment Arts Centre, on the corner of Princes Street and Alfred Street, caters for the cultural activities of the Association and the University. The centre contains two theatres, the larger being the Kenneth Maidment Theatre seating 450, while the smaller Little Theatre is suitable for audiences of up to 120. The Centre is managed by Theatre Management Committee which comprises five Association and four University Members.

The Recreation Centre, administered by a Joint Students' Association/University Committee, opened mid 1977 and provides seven squash courts, a work-out gymnasium and weight training area on a lower level. On the ground level is the main gymnasium adjacent to which are areas for fencing and the martial arts. The Recreation Centre also includes badminton, basketball and tennis courts and has been planned to meet a comprehensive range of student sporting needs.

The official Association noticeboard outside the Custodian's Office carries information on Association activities and meetings, as well as details on Association appointments to various bodies and committees.

**Hours of Catering Services**

	<i>Term</i>	<i>Study Breaks</i>
Cafeteria	7.30 am – 4.00 pm	
Restaurant	12.00 pm – 2.00 pm, 4.30 pm – 8.00 pm	4.30 pm – 7.45 pm
Coffee Bar	8.00 am – 10.00 pm	9.00 am – 6.00 pm
Milk Bar	8.30 am – 5.30 pm	10.00 am – 4.30 pm

**THE NEW ZEALAND UNIVERSITY STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION**

Formed in 1929, the New Zealand University Students' Association is the national union of New Zealand's university students, to which all seven local university students' association are affiliated, giving a total membership of approximately 50,000.

NZUSA acts for students in all matters of national concern. Education and student welfare are NZUSA's major concerns, but it also takes stands on wider social and political issues on which students, through their representatives, have expressed their collective views.

NZUSA's National Office is in Wellington and is headed by the President along with General, Women's and Education and Welfare Vice-Presidents and two Research Officers. In addition there is one part-time officer, the National Overseas Students' Action Committee Co-ordinator.

NZUSA's policies are made by representatives of its constituent students' associations at Council Meetings twice a year. These policies are carried out under the guidance of the National Executive consisting of the Presidents of the constituent associations and the full-time elected officers of NZUSA.

NZUSA also maintains a travel service through its wholly owned company Student Travel Service Ltd. STS Ltd operates the Air New Zealand domestic standby scheme and provides students with low cost overseas travel and other discounts. STS Ltd has offices on most university campuses including Auckland.

NZUSA's activities are funded by an annual levy of approximately \$5 paid by constituent students' associations on account of each individual member. More information about NZUSA can be gained by contacting AUSA or by writing to the President, PO Box 9047, Courtenay Place, Wellington.

**AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY DISTRICT GRADUATES' ASSOCIATION (INC.)**

*President:* R. H. Lockstone, BA, N.Z.

*Secretary:* M. A. Perkinson, MCom, ACA.

The Graduates' Association was formed in 1951 with the primary aim of assisting the Court of Convocation to carry out its function of electing six members of the Court to the University Council, the governing body of the University of Auckland, and to make representations to the Council on any matter concerning the interests of the University.

Other objects of the Graduates' Association are the provision of facilities for intellectual and social intercourse among University graduates, the promotion of interest in University affairs among graduates and others, the publishing of magazines, periodicals, etc dealing with matters concerning graduates or University affairs, and generally furthering the interests of University graduates who are, or have been, members of the Court.

The Association also concerns itself with the interests of undergraduates, particularly in relation to welfare, accommodation, etc. A recent Association project was the setting up of a student loan fund for short-term loans to students in temporary financial difficulties. (Applications for these are made through the Student Counsellors.)

Membership of the Association is open to graduates and diploma holders of any University (in or out of New Zealand).

Those eligible to join the Association who have not already done so would be welcomed as members. The President, Mr R. H. Lockstone, 40 Landscape Rd, Mt Eden, phone 689-519, or Mr M. Perkinson of the Department of Accountancy Auckland University, will be pleased to receive membership inquiries or to give further information about the activities of the Association and the Court of Convocation.

**AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY CLUB (INC.)**

*President:* R. B. Wheeler

*Vice-President:* G. Witton.

*Secretary/Manager:* Jane Jamieson.

*Phone:* 732-279.

The Auckland University Club Inc., having obtained a Club Charter, opened its premises on the top floor of the Cafeteria Block in the Student Union on 1 June 1968. The Club provides the means by which former graduates can maintain close links with other graduates, with present students and with members of the University Staff. It encourages a closer relationship between the University and the professional and business community.

Membership is open to persons over the age of 20 who are members of the Court of Convocation of the University of Auckland, graduates or diploma holders of other Universities, members of professional societies who have gained a substantial portion of their professional qualifications as students of the University of Auckland, and members of The Auckland University Students' Assn (Inc.). Numbers are limited in terms of the Club Charter to 2250. Application forms are available from the Secretary.

The Club is located in its own premises at 23/25 Princes St where the facilities include a restaurant, two bars, private function room, reading room and a pool room.

---

**THE NEW ZEALAND UNIVERSITIES GRADUATES ASSOCIATION (UK)**

The New Zealand Universities Graduates Association (UK) was formed in 1967 with the main aim of creating and fostering opportunities for graduates of New Zealand Universities to establish contacts with other New Zealand graduates in the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

Other objects of the Association are the establishment of links with Universities and University organisations throughout the United Kingdom and New Zealand, and to make known to visitors the names of individuals or organisations who might be helpful to them.

Membership is open to holders of a degree or equivalent professional qualifications and associate membership is available to all members of NZUSA who are not yet graduates. Subscriptions are subject to review and in 1981-82 were member £2, Associate member £1.50, Student £0.75, husband and wife (both qualified) £3. The Secretary will be pleased to receive membership inquiries and give further information. Postal Address: Secretary Jocelyn Cook, 132 Woodwarde Road, Dulwich, London SE 22 UK.



## ENROLMENT

### ENROLMENT LIMITATIONS 1983

Limitations have been placed on the number of students that can be accepted for 1983 for the following Courses of Study or papers.

#### FACULTY OF ARCHITECTURE AND TOWN PLANNING

First Professional for BArch .....	60
First Town Planning Examination (for BTP and DipTP) .....	45
Dip Val (for the first time) .....	40

#### FACULTY OF ARTS

##### ACCOUNTING

01.102, 01.103 each .....	25
---------------------------	----

##### ANTHROPOLOGY

03.100 .....	800
03.101 .....	600
03.102/04.101 combined .....	250
03.200, 03.201, 03.213 each .....	90
03.202 .....	180
03.203 .....	75
03.204, 03.206, 03.207 each .....	80
03.208/04.203 combined .....	120
03.210 .....	50
03.211, 04.202 combined .....	90
03.320, 03.323 each .....	20
03.325 .....	15
03.329 .....	35
All other Stage III papers in Anthropology (excluding 03.306/04.302, 03.318/28.314, 03.319/12.303) each ..	25

##### ART HISTORY

19.151, 19.152 each .....	270
19.259, 19.260, 19.261 each .....	80
19.310 .....	12
All other Stage III papers each .....	26

##### COMPUTER SCIENCE

(See Faculty of Science below)

<b>DIPLOMA IN BROADCAST COMMUNICATION</b> .....	6
---	---

<b>DIPLOMA IN DRAMA</b> .....	20
-------------------------------	----

##### ECONOMICS

(See Faculty of Commerce below)

##### EDUCATION

14.206 .....	60
14.323 .....	20
14.410 .....	16
DipEdPsych (first year) 16.100 .....	10
14.326 .....	12

##### ENGLISH

18.328 .....	12
--------------	----

##### MUSIC

(See Faculty of Music below)

##### PSYCHOLOGY

32.109 .....	450
32.206, 32.207 each .....	150
32.408, 32.421 each .....	10
32.409, 32.418 each .....	25

**FACULTY OF COMMERCE****ACCOUNTING (FOR BCOM)**

Accounting 01.100, 01.101 each .....	475
Accounting 01.102, 01.103 each .....	75
Commercial Law 02.100 .....	475

**COMPUTER SCIENCE**

(See Faculty of Science below)

**ECONOMICS**

13.100, 13.101 each .....	300
---------------------------	-----

**MANAGEMENT STUDIES**

72.100 .....	100
72.220, 72.221 combined .....	60

<b>BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (Masters Course)</b> .....	30
---	----

**FACULTIES OF COMMERCE AND ENGINEERING**

DipBIA (for the first time) .....	30
-----------------------------------	----

**FACULTY OF ENGINEERING**

First Professional Year .....	210
-------------------------------	-----

**FACULTY OF FINE ARTS**

For all Courses in the Faculty of Fine Arts .....	150
---	-----

**FACULTY OF LAW**

For All Courses in the Faculty of Law (excluding Intermediate) .....	770
--	-----

First Law Examination .....	200
-----------------------------	-----

**FACULTY OF MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY**

Bachelor of Human Biology (for the first time) .....	105
--	-----

DipPaed .....	2
---------------	---

**FACULTY OF MUSIC**

28.101, 28.102, 28.122 each .....	40
-----------------------------------	----

28.103 .....	80
--------------	----

28.110, 28.215, 28.217, 28.212, 28.302 each .....	15
---	----

28.112, 28.202, 28.211, 28.218 each .....	20
---	----

28.210, 28.216 each .....	10
---------------------------	----

28.310, 28.318 each .....	5
---------------------------	---

Music, Masters .....	12
----------------------	----

**FACULTY OF SCIENCE****BIOCHEMISTRY**

66.201 .....	100
--------------	-----

66.301, 66.302 each .....	36
---------------------------	----

**BIOLOGY**

39.211, 39.213 each .....	60
---------------------------	----

39.207/39.307 .....	80
---------------------	----

39.315 .....	25
--------------	----

39.316 .....	24
--------------	----

**BOTANY**

06.201/06.301 .....	108
---------------------	-----

**CELL BIOLOGY**

40.303, 40.304 each .....	48
---------------------------	----

40.305 .....	24
--------------	----

**CHEMISTRY**

08.360 .....	24
--------------	----

08.370 .....	30
--------------	----

**COMPUTER SCIENCE**

07.100, 07.101 each .....	200
---------------------------	-----

07.210, 07.220, 07.230, total .....	300
-------------------------------------	-----

07.310, 07.320, 07.340, total .....	150
-------------------------------------	-----

**GEOLOGY**

Stage II papers, each .....	36
-----------------------------	----

Stage III papers, each .....	25
------------------------------	----

BSc(Hons) Pt IV, MSc, PhD .....	40
---------------------------------	----

**PHYSIOLOGY**

67.201 .....	64
67.301 .....	32

**PSYCHOLOGY**

(as for Faculty of Arts)

**ZOOLOGY**

38.201/38.301, (total) .....	144
38.310 .....	24
MSc, PhD .....	60

**OPTOMETRY**

DipOpt Div II and BOptom Year II .....	12
--	----

**DIPCLINPSYCH**

(first year) .....	5
--------------------	---

**LECTURE AND LABORATORY TIMETABLES**

The following section contains lecture and laboratory times for students taking Courses in the Faculties of Arts, Commerce, and Science.

Timetables for lectures in the Schools of Architecture, Engineering, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine, and Music will appear on departmental noticeboards at the beginning of the session.

**Notes:**

- (1) The timetable is a basic structure only; additional information is available from the Department.
- (2) Certain classes are held at times arranged by the Departments concerned, in particular these are:
  - (i) lecture for Masters degree courses;
  - (ii) tutorials and oral and practical classes (this applies to a large number of subjects);
 details of all the above are placed on Departmental noticeboards or promulgated at early class meetings.
- (3) Stage I Science lectures are given in sets. Before the beginning of the session students should consult Departmental noticeboards to see which sets of lectures they are required to attend and to confirm the hours shown in the timetable.
- (4) Departments will announce the allocation of individual courses to particular lecture hours. Some of the lecture hours shown will be used for optional or alternative courses and in some cases all lecture hours allocated may not be utilised.
- (5) Students will not be permitted to enrol in Courses of Study that have a clash in lecture times, except with the approval of the Senate.
- (6) Bracketed Papers. Each bracketed paper will be taught at one or more of the times listed. Details are available from the Departments concerned.

**ABBREVIATIONS**

For Building locations see map inside front cover.

ALR	Architecture Lecture Room
Bot	Botany Lecture Theatre, Old Biology Building (access from 3A Symonds St)
C Bio	Cell Biology Lecture Theatre, Room 220 Thomas Building (access from 3A Symonds St)
Chem	Chemistry Building (corner Symonds and Wellesley Streets) contains the large and medium lecture theatres.
Eng	Engineering School, 24 Symonds St.
HSB	Human Sciences Building, entry from 10 Symonds Street.
Lib	Library Building, corner Princes and Alfred Streets.
ULT	Upper and Lower Lecture Theatre Building.
LLT	Behind Old Arts building, access from 22 Princes Street or 1A Symonds Street.
Maths	Mathematics Lecture Theatre, Physics/Maths Building (36 Princes St).
O A	Old Arts Building (22 Princes Street).
OCH	Old Choral Hall, corner Symonds and Alfreds Streets
Phys	Physics Lecture Theatres, Physics/Maths Building (36 Princes Street).
Zoo	Zoology Lecture Theatre, Old Biology Building (access from 3A Symonds St).
Dept	Departmental Room.
LT	Lecture Theatre
(i)(x)	Class Streams.
1-4	Quarters of year (for Science classes only). Where teaching is for the full year quarters are not shown.

**Note:** This timetable is subject to change as class numbers and staff teaching commitments become stabilized.

**FOR ARTS AND COMMERCE ONLY**

- (A) – first HALF year only, commencing approx 28 February  
 (B) – second HALF year only, commencing approx 20 June  
 (C) – first THIRD year only, commencing approx 28 February  
 (D) – second THIRD year only, commencing approx 28 April  
 (E) – third THIRD year only, commencing approx 27 July

As these are approximate dates, Departmental notice boards for information handouts should be checked for exact dates.

**LECTURE TIMETABLE 1983****ACCOUNTING**

I	01.100		i	M2,3	Lib B10
			ii	W11,12	Lib B10
			iii	Th11,12	ULT
	01.101	(Advanced)	i	T10,11	Lib B10
			i	M11	Lib B28
			ii	W9,10	Lib B15
	01.102	(Advanced)	ii	Th2	OA 202
			i	T, Th9	OCH 1
			ii	Th10	OCH 1
	01.103			W11	OA 006
i			T10,11	OCH 1	
ii			W9,10	OCH 1	
II	01.200	A - L	i	T4,5	OA 202
			ii	W11,12	Lib B15
		M - Z	i	T4,5	HSB 2
	01.201		ii	W11,12	LLT
			i	Th3	ULT
			ii	F9	ULT
	01.202	A - L	i	M9,10	OA 102
			ii	T8,9	OCH 2
		M - Z	i	M9,10	OA 202
	01.203	A - L	ii	T8,9	Lib B15
				T11,12	ULT
		M - Z		W4,5	ULT
	01.204		i	W2,3	OA O36
			ii	F8,9	OCH 2
			i	W3,4	OA 002
01.205		ii	Th10,11	OA 002	
		i	M10,11	OA 006	
		ii	M4,5	OA 002	
III	01.300	A - L	i	M10,11	OA 002
			ii	M4,5	OA 006
		M - Z	i	M10,11	OA 102
	01.301	A - L	ii	M4,5	OA 002
			i	W10,11	OA 102
		M - Z	ii	Th10,11	OA 102
	01.302	A - L	i	W10,11	OA 002
			ii	Th10,11	OA 006
		M - Z	i	M8,9	OCH 1
	01.303		ii	M2,3	OCH 1
			i	M8,9	OCH 2
			ii	M2,3	OA 006
i			W3,4	OA 006	
ii			T2,3	OA 006	

**ANCIENT HISTORY**

I	12.100	T Th 9	ULT
	12.102	T Th 5	ULT
	12.103	M W 12	ULT
II	12.201	T Th 3	OA 036
	12.202	T Th 11	OA 202
	12.203	M W 4	OA 036
	12.210	M Th 2	OA 011A
	12.211	W F 4	OA 011A
III	12.220	W F 3	OA 102
	12.300	W F 3	OA 102
	12.303	W F 2	OCH 2
	12.304	M F 9	OA 011A
	12.310	M F 10	OA 011A
	12.332	T Th 11	OA 202

**ANTHROPOLOGY**

I	03.100	i	T 5	HSB 1
		ii	T 11	Lib B28
	03.101	i	M 12	HSB 1
II		ii	M 4	Lib B28
	03.102		W 5,6	HSB 1
	03.200		F 9,10	HSB 2
	03.201	i	M 10,11	Dept
		ii	M 6,7	Dept
	03.202		W 5	Lib B10
	03.203		T 6,7	OA 102
	03.204		M 5	Dept
	03.206		T 2	Lib B15
	03.207		W 9	Dept
	03.208		Th 2	OA 102
	03.209		Th 10,11	Dept
	03.210		M 4,5	OA 102
	03.211		Th 11	OCH 1
	03.212		M, Th 3	Dept
	03.213		T 11	Dept
	03.302		F 11,12	Dept
	03.304		M 2,3	Dept
	03.306		M 9,10	Dept
III	03.307		W 2,3	Dept
	03.308		F 10,11	Dept
	03.309		T 9,10	Dept
	03.311	(C,E)	T 6,7 F 4,5	Dept
	03.314		Th 10,11	Dept
	03.315		T 5,6	Dept
	03.317		T 11,12	Dept
	03.318		Th 12	Dept
	03.319		W F 2	OCH 2
	03.320		W 6,7	Dept
	03.322		T 4,5	Dept
	03.323		M 5,6	Dept
	03.325		W 11,12	Dept
	03.327		M 9,10	Dept
	03.328		M 9,10	Dept
	03.329		F 2,3	Dept
	03.330		Th 10,11	Dept
	03.331		W 3,4	Dept
	03.332		W 4,5	Dept
	03.333		M 9,10	Dept

**ART HISTORY**

I	19.151	(A)	W Th F 3	Lib B28
	19.152	(B)	W Th F 3	Lib B28
II	19.259		Th 2	ALR 1
	19.260		M 2	ALR 1
	19.261		W 2	ALR 1
III	19.301		T10	Dept
	19.302		M11	Dept
	19.304		W10	Dept
	19.305		T11	Dept
	19.307		F10	Dept
	19.308		M10	Dept
	19.309		Th10	Dept

**ASIAN GEOGRAPHY**

II	20.240		T 11,12 W Th 12	Dept
III	20.310		T 11,12 W Th 12	Dept

**ASIAN HISTORY**

I	24.130	(B)	M Th F 12	OA 006
	24.132	(A)	M Th F 12	OA 006
II	24.222	(B)	T F 4	OA 036
	24.224	(A)	T F 4	OA 036
III	24.312	(B)	M10 W11,12	Dept
	24.324	(A)	M10 W11,12	Dept
	24.330	(A)	T11 Th10,11	Dept

**ASIAN POLITICS**

I	30.103	(B)	T W F 10	OA 202
	30.104	(A)	T W F 10	OA 202
II	30.305	(D)	M W Th 4	OCH 2
	30.207	(E)	M W Th 4	OCH 2

**BIBLICAL HISTORY AND LITERATURE**

I	11.103		M,W 12	ULT
		(B)	W 9	OA 006
	11.113		T 9,10	OA 102

**BIOCHEMISTRY**

II	66.201		M Th 8	Chem LT2
III	66.301		M T Th F 2	Chem LT1
	66.302		M T Th F 2	Chem LT1

**BIOLOGY (for Arts)**

I	39.111		T 5,6	Zoo LT
---	--------	--	-------	--------

**BIOLOGY (for Science)**

I	39.101	i	M T Th F 2	LLT	1,2
		ii	M T Th F 4	LLT	1,2
II	39.207		M T Th F 2	Zoo LT	1
	39.211		M T Th F 2	Zoo LT	2
	39.212		M T Th F 9	Zoo LT	2
	39.213		M T Th F 3	Zoo LT	4
	39.307		M T Th F 2	Zoo LT	1
III	39.311		M T Th F 9	Bot LT	2
	39.312		M T Th F 9	Zoo LT	2
	39.313		M T Th F 9	C Bio LT	1
	39.314		M T Th F 9	Bot LT	4
	39.316		M T Th F 9	Bot LT	3

**BOTANY**

I	06.102		M T Th F 3	HSB1	3,4
II	06.201		M T Th F 3	Zoo LT	1,2
	06.203		M T Th F 3	Bot LT	4

III	06.221		M T Th F 3	Bot LT	3
	06.301		M T Th F 3	Bot LT	1,2
	06.303		M T Th F 3	Bot LT	4
	06.321		M T Th F 2	Bot LT	1
	06.325		M T Th F 2	Bot LT	3
	06.331		M T Th F 2	Bot LT	2
	06.332		M T Th F 2	Bot LT	4
	06.341		M T Th F 4	Bot LT	4
	06.361		M T Th F 3	Bot LT	3
<b>CELL BIOLOGY</b>					
III	40.303		T 5,W 9,12 Th 5	C Bio LT	1,2
	40.304		M 5,W 9,2 F 5	C Bio LT	3,4
	40.305		T 8,5 Th 5,F 8	C Bio Lt	3,4
<b>CHEMISTRY</b>					
I	08.110		M T Th F 2	Chem Large	1,2
	08.113	i	M T Th F 9	Chem Large	1,2
		ii	M T Th F 11	Chem Large	1,2
	08.115		M T Th F 4	Chem Large	3,4
	08.123	i	M T Th F 9	Chem Large	3,4
		ii	M T Th F 11	Chem Large	3,4
	08.125		M T Th F 4	Chem Large	3,4
	08.210	i	T F 11	Chem Med	
II		ii	M Th 2	Chem Med	
	08.211		T 11	Chem Med	
	08.220		M Th 9	Chem Med	
	08.230		T F 9	Chem Med	
	08.310		W 9	Chem Dept	
III	08.311		W 2	Chem Dept	
	08.320		M 9	Chem Dept	
	08.321		Th 9	Chem Dept	
	08.330		T F 9	Chem Dept	3,4
	08.331		T F 9	Chem Dept	1,2
	08.340		T Th 2	Chem Dept	
	08.350		F 3	Chem Dept	1,2
	08.351		F 3	Chem Dept	3,4
	08.360		M 2	Chem Dept	
	08.370		F 2	Chem Med	
<b>CHINESE</b>					
I	48.100)		T11,12	Chem 1048	
	48.101)		W11,12	Chem 1048	
II			M Th2	Chem 1048	
	48.102		M W4	Chem 1064	
	48.200)		M Th3	Dept	
	48.201)		T W2,3	Dept	
	48.202)				
III	48.300)		T2,3	Dept	
	48.301)		W2,3	Dept	
	48.302)		M Th3	Dept	
<b>CLASSICAL STUDIES</b>					
I	73.104		T Th2	OA 036	
<b>COMMERCIAL LAW</b>					
I	02.100	i	M9,10	Lib B15	
		ii	Th9,10	Lib B15	
II	02.200	i	T10	LLT	
			Th10	Lib B10	
		ii	Th F2	Lib B10	
	02.201	i	W Th9	LLT	

III	02.300	A - L	ii	W Th11	Lib B28	
			i	T4,5	OA 002	
		M - Z	ii	T W12	OA 006	
			i	T4,5	OA 006	
	02.301		ii	T W 12	OA 036	
			i	W4,5	OA 102	
	02.302		ii	Th8,9	OA 102	
	02.304			M2,3	OA 035	
<b>COMPUTER SCIENCE</b>				T4,5	OA 011B	
I	07.100		i	T Th F11	LLT	1,2
			ii	T W F3	MLT 2	1,2
	07.101		i	M 9	Lib B28	
				Th 9	Lib B10	
	07.105		ii	M Th 4	MLT 2	
			ii	T Th F11	LLT	3,4
			ii	T W F3	MLT 2	3,4
				T F9	OA 202	
II	07.210			M Th3	PLT 1	
	07.220			M11	MCLT	1,2
	07.230			W10	PLT 1	1,2
				M 11	MCLT	3,4
	07.235			W10	PLT 1	3,4
				T F3	OCH 2	
	07.290			M12	OA 202	
	07.304			Th12	OCH 2	
III	07.310			W9	PLT 1	
				F2	OCH 1	
	07.320			M2 W11	PLT 1	
	07.340			M Th4	PLT 2	
	07.350			M Th9	Chem 1056	
	07.390			Refer Enquiries to Dept		
<b>ECONOMICS</b>						
I	13.100)			M T Th 12	LLT	
	13.101)					
	13.102			T Th F 2	Lib B28	
	13.103	(A)	i	M T Th 12	Lib B28	
			ii	M T Th 4	Lib B15	
	13.104	(B)	i	M T Th 12	Lib B28	
			ii	M T Th 4	Lib B15	
	13.200			M Th 10	ULT	
II	13.201			T Th 9	OA 002	
	13.203			T Th 8	Lib B10	
	13.204			T 10	OA 036	
				W 10	OA 006	
	13.205			T W Th 11	OA 035	
	13.210	(A)		M Th F 12	OA 036	
	13.211	(B)		M Th F 12	OA 036	
	13.213			T Th 2	OA 035	
III	13.214			M Th 3	OA 102	
	13.300			T W 10	ULT	
	13.301			M Th 4	OA 202	
	13.302			T Th 3	OA 035	
	13.304			W F 12	OA 035	
	13.305			M Th 10	OA 011B	
	13.306			M W 9	OA 011B	
	13.307			M Th 11	Chem 1064	



	13.308	(D & E)		M Th 12	Chem 1064
	13.310		i	M 9,10	Dept
			ii	F 2,3	OA 036
	13.313			T W 11	OA 011A
<b>EDUCATION</b>					
I	14.100	All year	i	M 10	LLT
		(A)		W 10	LLT
		All year	ii	M 5	LLT
		(A)		W 5	LLT
	14.101	All year	i	Th 10	LLT
		(B)		W 10	LLT
II		All year	ii	Th 5	LLT
		(B)		W 5	LLT
	14.200	(A)		M 5, 6	OA 036
	14.201			T 5	OA 102
	14.202			Th 4,5	OCH 1
	14.203			W 4,5	OA 202
III	14.204			Th 6	Dept
	14.207			Th 5	Dept
	14.208			W 2	OCH 1
	14.209			Th 4	Dept
	14.300	(A)		T 6, 7	HSB 2
	14.301			W 4	OCH 1
	14.302			M 2	OA 002
	14.303			F 4	OCH 1
	14.306			Th 12	OCH 1
	14.307			T 4,5	Dept
	14.308	(A)		M5 T 4,5	OCH 1
	14.309	(B)		M5 T 4,5	OCH 1
	14.310			M 3,4	Dept
	14.311			M 3,4 T4	Dept
	14.312			W 11	Dept
	14.313			T 10	Dept
	14.314			Th 11	OA 210
	14.316			W 5	OCH 1
	14.317			W 2,3	Dept
	14.318			W 6	OA 036
	14.319			T2 Th5	Dept
				Th4	OA 002
	14.320			M 12	Dept
	14.321			Th 2	OA 011B
	14.322			Th10,11	Dept
	14.323			T2,3 Th5	Dept
	14.325			W4	Dept
<b>ENGINEERING MECHANICS</b>					
I	55.001		i	T F11	Eng 1.401
			ii	T F2	Eng 1.401
<b>ENGLISH</b>					
I	18.100		i	W 12	Lib B28
			ii	W 5	Lib B28
	18.101	(A)	i	M 3	Lib B28
				T 3	LLT
		(A)	ii	M 5	Lib B28
				T 5	LLT
	18.103			F 12	LLT
		(B)		Th 12	Lib B15
	18.104			M 12	Lib B15

		(A)	Th 12	Lib B15
II	18.200		T 4	Lib B10
	18.201		W 2	OA 006
	18.210		W 4	Lib B10
	18.211		T 10	Lib B15
	18.212		Th 4	Lib B10
	18.220		F 10	Lib B15
	18.222		T 11	OA 102
III	18.300		Th 4	OA 006
	18.301		Th 9	OCH 2
			F 12	ULT
	18.302		T 12	Lib B15
	18.303		M 10	Lib B28
	18.304		F 2,3	OA 006
	18.306		W 3	OCH 2
	18.307		Th 5	OA 006
	18.308		M 12	OA 002
	18.310		M 11	OCH 1
	18.314		F 11	OA 002
	18.320		T 11	OA 006
	18.323		W 12	OA 002
	18.325		W 11	Chem 1056
	18.326		W 5	OA 006
	18.327		F 10	OA 002
	18.328		Th 1,2,3	Dept
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES</b>				
II	84.200		T F 12	OA 002
<b>FRENCH</b>				
I	34.100		M 11	LLT
		i	T Th 10	Dept
		ii	T Th 10	Dept
		iii	T Th 10	Dept
		iv	T Th 11	Dept
		v	T Th 11	Dept
		vi	T Th 11	Dept
		vii	T Th 3	Dept
	34.101		W 4	LLT
	34.102		W 2	Dept
	34.103		M 2	Dept
	34.104		W 3	Dept
	34.106	Art	W 3	Dept
		Music	W 3	Dept
	34.110		T Th 10	Dept
		i	T Th 11	Dept
		ii	T Th 11	Dept
II	34.200		M W 10	Dept
		i	M W 10	Dept
		ii	M W 10	Dept
		iii	M W 11	Dept
		iv	M W 11	Dept
	34.201		W 2	Dept
	34.202		W Th 9	Dept
	34.204		Th 11	Dept
	34.205		T 9	Dept
	34.209		T 2	Dept
	34.210		M 12	Dept
	34.214		W 4	Dept
III	34.300		M 11	Dept
		i	M 11	Dept
		ii	M 2	Dept

## Enrolment, Lecture &amp; Laboratory Timetable, Lecture Timetable 1983

431

	34.302		T 9	Dept	
	34.305		F 10	Dept	
	34.306		F 11	Dept	
	34.307		W 12	Dept	
	34.308		Th 12	Dept	
	34.309		T 12	Dept	
	34.310		W 2	Dept	
		(A)	F 9	Dept	
		(B)	M 9	Dept	
	34.318		T 11	Dept	
<b>GEOGRAPHY</b>					
I	20.101	(A)	M W Th 4	HSB 1	
	20.102	(B)	M W Th 4	HSB 1	
II	20.201		T Th 2	HSB 2	
	20.202		M W 2	HSB 2	
	20.203		W 9	Dept	
	20.204		M W 11	ULT	
	20.205		Th 10,11	Dept	
III	20.301		W 2,3	Dept	
	20.303		T Th 9	Dept	
	20.304		M 2,3	Dept	
	20.305		T 4,5	Dept	
	20.306		Th 2,3	Dept	
	20.313		M W 9	Dept	
	20.316		M W 10	Dept	
	20.320		M 11,12	Dept	
<b>GEOLOGY</b>					
I	21.100		M T F 2	ULT	
	21.150		Th 2	ULT	
II	21.201		M Th 8	Dept	
			W 8	Dept	3,4
	21.202		T F 8	Dept	
			W 8	Dept	1,2
	21.203		T F 3	Dept	
III	21.301		T 2,W 10	Dept	
	21.302		M 9,F 9	Dept	
	21.303		M 2,F 3	Dept	
	21.304		M 3,W 9,Th 2	Dept	
	21.305		T 9,Th 9	Dept	
	21.306		T 3,Th 11-1	Dept	2,3
<b>GERMAN</b>					
			T4	ULT	
I	22.100)		F10	LLT	
	22.101)		M T W Th 10	Dept	
			M Th4,5 W4	Dept	
	22.102		T F12	OCH 2	
	22.103		T F10	Dept	
<b>NOTE: German I students attend T 4 plus an additional four hours from the other listed times. These other classes are streamed and students are allocated to particular streams on the basis of their previous language experience. All students must consult the departmental timetable (available prior to enrolment week in the German Department) before arranging their lecture hours.</b>					
II	22.200		M 12	OCH 2	
			W Th F 11, W 3,4 Th2	Dept	
	22.201		W 12	OCH 2	
	22.202		Th 12	OA 002	
			M 2 W 10	Dept	
III	22.300		M 12,2 T 3 W 11 Th4	Dept	
			Th 2	OA 002	

	22.301		W F 2	OA 002
	22.302		T 2	OA 002
			W Th 3	Dept
<b>GREEK</b>				
I	10.100)		M T W Th F9	OA .036
	10.101)			
II	10.200)		M T Th12	OA 011A
	10.201)		F12	OA 011A
	10.202)		W12	OA 011A
III	10.300)		M T12	OA 011A
	10.301)		Th12 M2	OA 011B
	10.302)		W F 12	OA 011B
<b>HEBREW</b>				
I	23.100)		W Th 3 F 2,3	OA 011A
	23.101)			
<b>HISTORY</b>				
I	24.100	(A)	M T W5	Lib B15
	24.101	(A)	M W2	Lib B28
			Th2	Lib B15
	24.103	(B)	M T W5	Lib B15
	24.104	(A)	M W F11	OA 202
	24.105	(B)	M W2	Lib B28
			Th2	Lib B15
	24.106	(B)	M W F11	OA 202
	24.120	(B)	M W Th4	HSB 2
	24.121	(A)	M W Th4	HSB 2
II	24.200	(A)	M W3	LLT
	24.201	(B)	M W3	LLT
	24.208	(A)	W Th5	HSB 2
	24.212	(B)	T W2	Lib B10
	24.213	(B)	W Th5	HSB 2
	24.214	(A)	T Th3	Lib B10
	24.215	(B)	T Th3	Lib B10
	24.230	(A)	T Th10	HSB 1
	24.232	(A)	T W 2	Lib B10
	24.233	(B)	T Th10	HSB 1
III	24.301	(B)	T2,3 F2	Dept
	24.302	(A)	T4 W4,5	Dept
	24.303	(B)	M2,3 Th2	Dept
	24.304	(A)	T9,10 W 9	Dept
	24.307	(B)	W2,3 F3	ULT
	24.309	(A)	Th12, F11,12	Dept
	24.314	(A)	Th9 F9,10	Dept
	24.315	(A)	T2,3 F2	Dept
	24.321	(B)	Th12 F11,12	Dept
	24.322	(A)	M2,3 Th2	Dept
	24.326	(B)	T9,10 W9	Dept
	24.327	(B)	M4,5 Th5	Dept
	24.328	(B)	Th9 F9,10	Dept
	24.331	(B)	Th3,4 F4	Dept
	24.332	(A)	Th3,4 F4	Dept
	24.333	(A)	M4,5 Th5	Dept
	24.334	(A)	W2,3 F3	ULT
	24.336	(B)	T4 W4,5	Dept
<b>INDONESIAN</b>				
I	80.100)		T W10 Th9,10	OA 035
	80.101)		F2,3	OA 035

	80.103		M,F10	Dept
II	80.200)		T W10 Th 9,10	Dept
	80.201)		F2,3	Dept
	80.202)			
	80.203		M Th2	Dept
III	80.300)		M Th9	Dept
	80.301)		T 9,10	Dept
	80.302)		W9,10	Dept
<b>ITALIAN</b>				
I	25.106)	All Students	M F 10	OCH 1
	35.107)		M 12 W 11	Dept
		i	W Th 2	Dept
		ii	W Th 3	Dept
		iii		
<b>Note:</b> Papers 35.106 and 35.107 are linked and involve 6 hours per week. All students must attend M 10 and F 10, plus the hours shown for any one of the three streams. In addition each student will choose two hours for conversation and language laboratory from a wide range of possible times.				
	35.108	(A)	F 11	OA 036
			W F 12	OA 202
II	35.200	i	M10	Dept
		ii	M 12	Dept
(Language laboratory and conversation classes arranged at enrolment.)				
	35.202		T 10,11	Dept
	35.203		W 2,3	Dept
	35.204		Th 10,11	OA 036
III	35.300		T 12,3	Dept
(Conversation classes arranged at enrolment.)				
	35.302		T 10,11	Dept
	35.303		W 2,3	Dept
	35.305		Th 10,11	OA 036
<b>JAPANESE</b>				
I	81.100)		M9,10	Lib B10
	81.101)		T W9	Lib B10
			F9,10	Lib B10
	81.102		T W10	OA 011B
II	81.200)		M9,10	OA 035
	81.201)		T,W9	OA 035
	81.202)		F9,10	OA 035
III	81.300)		M11,12	Dept
	81.301)		T11,12	Dept
	81.302)		Th10,12	Dept
	81.303		F2,3	Dept
<b>LATIN</b>				
I	09.100)		T W Th3	OA 011B
	09.101)		F11	OA 035
	09.102		T Th F4	OA 035
II	09.200)		M W Th11	OA 011B
	09.201)		T11	OA 036
	09.202)		F11	OA 011A
III	09.300)		M T W Th11	OA 011B
	09.302)		F 11,2	OA 011B
<b>LINGUISTICS</b>				
I	83.102		T9,10	Dept
	83.103		M W9	ULT
II	83.202		M Th3	Dept
	83.203		Th 9,10	Dept
	83.204		T Th12	Dept
III	83.300		W2,3	Dept

	83.302		T 2,3	Dept
	83.303		W F12	Dept
	83.305		M10	Lib B28
	83.307		F2,3	OA 006
	83.308		T11,12	Dept
	83.309		F9,10	Dept
	83.310		W10,11	Dept
<b>MANAGEMENT STUDIES</b>				
I	72.100		F 12,T 3	Lib B28
II	72.201		W Th 12	HSB 1
	72.202		T Th 8	Lib B10
	72.203		T Th 2	HSB 1
	72.204		W Th 4	Lib B28
	72.220		M 11	Chem 1050
			W 10	Chem G053
	72.221		M 10	Chem 1050
			W 9	Chem G053
III	72.300		M 4,5	Lib B10
	72.301		Th 9,10	OA 202
	72.302		Th 4,5	OA 036
	72.303		M W 10	HSB 1
	72.306		Th 2,3	OA 006
	72.307		W 2,3	OA 202
	72.308		M F 11	Lib B10
	72.309		T 2,3	OCH 1
	72.312		M W 9	OA 002
	72.313		M T 12	OCH 1
	72.320		M 2,3	OA 036
	72.321		T Th 11	Dept
	72.322		T 9,10	OA 006
	72.323		W 11,12	OCH 1
	72.324		F 8,9	OCH 1
<b>MAORI STUDIES</b>				
I	04.100		M3	HSB 2
			T 3	Dept
	04.101		W 5,6	HSB 1
II	04.202		Th11	OCH 1
	04.203		Th2	OA 102
	04.204		F10,11	OA 102
	04.206		T10,11	Dept
III	04.302		M9,10	Dept
	04.303		M4,5	Dept
	04.304		T3,4	Dept
	04.305		W F12	Dept
	04.306		Th9,10	Dept
	04.307		W2,3 Th3	Dept
	04.308		M2,3	Dept
	04.309		M9,10	Dept
<b>MATHEMATICS</b>				
I	26.120	i	M Th9 (W9 odd weeks)	MLT 1
		ii	M Th12 (W12 odd weeks)	MLT 1
	26.121	i	M Th10 (W10 odd weeks)	MLT 2
		ii	T F12 (W12 even weeks)	PLT 2
		iii	T F3 (W3 even weeks)	MLT 1
		iv	M Th5 (W5 odd weeks)	MLT 1
		v	T F10 (T3 even weeks)	MLT 1 (PLT 1)
	26.122	i	M Th10	MLT 1

	ii	Th 11	Lib B10	
		F11	Lib B28	
	iii	T Th5	MLT 2	
	iv	W9	PLT 2	
		F9	Lib B15	
26.140	i	T F9 (W9 even weeks)	MLT 1	
	ii	T F12 (W12 even weeks)	MLT 1	
26.141	i	T F10 (W10 even weeks)	MLT 2	
	ii	M Th12 (W12 odd weeks)	PLT 2	
	iii	M Th 3 (W3 odd weeks)	MLT 1	
	iv	T F5 (W5 even weeks)	MLT 1	
	v	T F11 (T3 odd weeks)	MLT 1 (PLT 1)	
26.142	i	M Th9	HSB 1	
	ii	M Th4	MLT 1	
	iii	M W5	MLT 2	
26.170		M W Th11	MLT 2	
26.180	i	T F12	MLT 2	
		W11	MLT 1	
	ii	T W F4	MLT 2	
26.181	i	T W F9	MLT 2	
	ii	T W F2	MLT 1	
	iii	T W F4	MLT 1	
II 26.210		T F9 W11	MLT 3	
26.220	i	M Th9	MLT 2	
		W9	MLT 3	
	ii	M Th11 W10	MLT 1	
26.221		M Th9	MLT 3	
		W 10	PLT 3	
26.240	i	M Th2	MLT 1	
	ii	M Th3	MLT 2	
26.241		T F9 W12	PLT 4	
26.260	i	T F11	MLT 2	
	ii	M Th12	MLT 2	
26.280		T F2	MLT 2	
26.281		T F12	MLT 3	
III 26.311		T F4	PLT 3	
26.315		M Th3	OA 210	
		W3	PLT 3	
26.320		T F12	SCLT 1	
		W12	MLT 3	
26.321		M Th2 W4	MLT 3	
26.330		M Th12 W2	MLT 3	1,2
26.331		M Th2 W11	PLT 3	
26.335		M Th12 W2	MLT 3	3,4
26.340		M W Th10	MLT 3	
26.345		M Th4	MLT 3	1,2
26.350		W F11	Maths 323	
26.360		T F10 (M4q 3,4)	MLT 3	
26.370		M Th9 (W9 odd weeks)	PLT 4	
26.371		T F2 (W9 even weeks)	MLT 3 (PLT 4)	
26.380		T F3 (W3 even weeks)	MLT 3	
26.381		M Th3 (W3 odd weeks)	MLT 3	
26.391		M Th11 (W11 odd weeks)	MLT 3 (School of Engineering)	
26.395		T F11 (W11 even weeks)	MLT 3 (School of Engineering)	

**MUSIC**

I	28.101	M 11,12	Dept
	28.102	M 11,12 Th 2,3	Dept
	28.103	T W Th 12	Dept
	28.109	W 3,4	Dept
	28.110	M 10	Dept
	28.113	T 3	Dept
II	28.122	W 9	Dept
	28.202	F 2,3	Dept
	28.203	M 11,12	Dept
	28.205	T 9,10	Dept
	28.207	W 3,4	Dept
	28.209	T Th 2	Dept
	28.210	M 9 F 4,5	Dept
	28.211	T 12	Dept
	28.214	Th 10,11	Dept
	28.215	W 11	Dept
	28.216	F 11,12	Dept
	28.218	T 11,W 2	Dept
III	28.222	W 9,10	Dept
	28.302	F 2,3	Dept
	28.303	M 11,12	Dept
	28.305	T 9,10	Dept
	28.307	W 3,4	Dept
	28.309	M 9,10 Th 3,4	Dept
	28.310	T 2	Dept
	28.314	Th 12	Dept
	28.316	F 11,12	Dept
	28.323	T 4,5	Dept

**PHILOSOPHY**

I	29.100	M11	Lib B15
		Th11	Lib B15
	29.101	M Th 4	ULT
	29.102	M W2	Lib B15
II	29.103	T11	Lib B15
		Th11	Lib B15
	29.201	M W Th2	Dept
	29.203	M Th5	OA 202
	29.204	W9,10	Dept
	29.205	M11,12	Dept
	29.207	T2,3	OA 202
	29.208	F11,12	OCH 1
	29.211	W4,5	OA 035
	29.300	T9,10	Dept
III	29.302	F9,10	Dept
	29.304	Th9,10	Dept
	29.305	M Th3	Dept
		W3	PLT 3
	29.306	T4,5	Dept

**PHYSICS**

I	31.104	M 3	Phys LT 2	3,4
	31.105	T 3	Phys LT 2	
	31.110	M T Th F 10	Phys LT 1	1,2
	31.113	M T Th F 12	Phys LT 1	1,2
		M T Th F 4	Phys LT 1	1,2
	31.115	M T Th F 9	Phys LT 1	1,2
	31.120	M T Th F 10	Phys LT 1	3,4



II	31.123	i	M T Th F 12	Phys LT 1	3,4
		ii	M T Th F 4	Phys LT 1	3,4
	31.125		M T Th F 9	Phys LT 1	3,4
	31.200		W 3,4	Phys LT 1	
	31.201		T F 2	Phys LT 1	1,2
	31.210		T F 10	Phys LT 2	1,2
	31.220		M Th 10	Phys LT 2	3,4
	31.240		M Th 10	Phys LT 2	1,2
	31.250		T F 10	Phys LT 2	3,4
	31.312		T F 9	Phys LT 2	1,2
III	31.313		T F 2	Phys LT 2	3,4
	31.320		T F 11	Phys LT 2	3,4
	31.330		M Th 2	Phys LT 2	1,2
	31.331		T F 2	Phys LT 2	1,2
	31.332		M Th 2	Phys LT 2	3,4
	31.341		M Th 11	Phys LT 2	1,2
	31.342		T F 11	Phys LT 2	1,2
	31.343		M Th 11	Phys LT 2	3,4
	31.350		M Th 9	Phys LT 2	1,2
	31.352		M Th 9	Phys LT 2	3,4
PHYSIOLOGY	31.353		T F 9	Phys LT 2	3,4
	31.356		T F 2	Phys LT 3	1,2
	II 67.201		M Th 12	Henley (Medical School)	
	III 67.301		M W 5	Henley (Medical School)	
POLITICAL STUDIES					
I	30.100	(B)	M T Th3	Lib B15	
	30.101	(A)	M T Th3	Lib B15	
	30.102	(B)	M T F12	Lib B10	
	30.105	(A)	M T12	Lib B10	
			Th12	OA 102	
II	30.201	(A)	T Th12	OA 202	
	30.202	(C)	T W Th5	OCH 2	
	30.203	(D)	T W Th5	OCH 2	
	30.204	(E)	T W Th5	OCH 2	
	30.208	(B)	T Th12	OA 202	
	30.209	(A)	M11	OA 102	
			W11	HSB 1	
III	30.301	(B)	M T12	OA 035	
	30.302	(B)	T Th4	OA 102	
	30.303		Th11,12	Chem 1048	
	30.304	(A)	T Th4	OA 102	
	30.305	(A)	M T2	OA 102	
	30.307	(A)	M T12	OA 035	
	30.309	(B)	M T2	OA 102	
	30.310	(B)	T W10	Chem 1056	
PSYCHOLOGY					
I	32.108		M Th11	HSB 1	
		ii	M Th5	HSB 1	
	32.109	i	T11	HSB 1	
II		ii	T4	HSB 1	
	32.206		T12	HSB 1	
	32.207		W12	HSB 2	
	32.208		F 12	HSB 1	
	32.301		Th2	OCH 1	
III					

	32.302			W9,10	Dept
	32.303			T Th10	HSB2
	32.304			F10	Dept
	32.305			Th11	HSB 2
	32.306			T 11,Th 12	Dept
	32.307			F11	Dept
	32.309			M10 Th9	Dept
	32.311			T Th 3	HSB 2
	32.312			T 9	HSB 2
<b>RUSSIAN</b>					
I	43.100)			M T W F12	OA 102
	43.101)			Th12	OA 035
Note: Papers 43.100 and 43.101 are linked and involve six hours per week. The sixth hour will be arranged at enrolment.					
	43.111			M3,4 W3	Dept
	43.112			T10,11	OA 002
	43.113			M10,11	OA 036
				T2	OA 011B
II	43.210			W10,11	OA 036
		(C)		Th2	Chem 1064
	43.211	(D & E)	i	Th 2	Chem 1064
			ii	W2	OA 011B
	43.212			F2	OA 102
III	43.310			T2 Th10,11	OA 011A
	43.311			Th3	Dept
	43.312			T10,11	Dept
	43.313			M10,11	Dept
<b>SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES</b>					
I	46.100		i	M T W Th12	Dept
			ii	M T W Th2	Dept
	46.101			M T11	Dept
II	46.200			M9 T9,10	Dept
	46.201			W F9	Dept
	46.202			Th9,10	Dept
III	46.300			T2 Th9,10	Dept
<b>SOCIOLOGY</b>					
I	82.100			T4,5	Lib B28
	82.101			Th9,10	Lib B28
	82.102			T10	Lib B28
II	82.200	(A)		M2	HSB 1
				Th2	OCH 2
	82.201	(B)		M2	HSB 1
				Th2	OCH 2
	82.202	(B)		T11 Th11,12	Dept
	82.204	(A)		T11 Th11,12	Dept
	82.205	(A)		M11,12 W12	Dept
	82.208	(B)		T2,3 W12	Dept
III	82.300	(A)		Th11,12,2	Dept
	82.301	(B)		F10,2,3	Dept
	82.303	(A)		W11,12 Th9	Dept
	82.304	(B)		Th11,12,2	Dept
	82.305	(B)		M2,3 F11	Dept
	82.307	(A)		M3 F10,11	Dept
	82.309	(A)		T11,12 Th10	Dept
	82.310	(A)		T9,10,2	Dept
	82.312	(B)		M11,12 W12	Dept
	82.315	(B)		Th2,3,4	Dept

**SPANISH**

I	45.100		i	T W Th F9	Dept
			ii	T W Th F12	Dept
			iii	T W4,5	Dept
			iv	W F11	Dept
II	45.101	(D & E)		Th9	OA 006
				Th4	Dept
	45.102			W Th11	Dept
	45.103	(D & E)		Th12	Dept
	45.200			T Th2	Dept
	45.201			M10	Dept
	45.202			W2	Dept
	45.203			Th3	Dept
	45.204			M2	Dept
	45.300			W9	Dept
III	45.301			T10	Dept
	45.302			T9	Dept
	45.303			M11	Dept
	45.304			M2	Dept
	45.305			F10	Dept

**ZOOLOGY**

I	38.102		i	M T Th F 2	LLT	3,4
			ii	M T Th F 4	LLT	3,4
II & III	38.201/301			M T Th F 4	Zoo LT	1,2
	38.203/303			M T Th F 4	Bot LT	4
	38.204/304			M T Th F 4	Bot LT	3
	38.205/305			M T Th F 2	Zoo LT	4
	38.209/309			M T Th F 3	Zoo LT	3
	39.310			M T Th F 3	Zoo LT	4
	38.315			M T Th F 2	Zoo LT	3

**LABORATORY TIMETABLE 1983**

Note: Laboratories are taken over the same period as the corresponding lectures, unless otherwise stated.

**BIOCHEMISTRY**

201	M W 10-1	3,4
	M F 10-1	3,4
301/302	M Th 10-1	

**BIOLOGY**

101	i	Th 10-1
	ii	Th 10-1
	iii	F 10-1
	iv	F 10-1
	v	M 10-1
	vi	M 10-1
	vii	T 10-1
	viii	T 10-1
	ix	W 10-1
	x	W 10-1
111		Th 4-6
207/307	i	M Th 10-1
	ii	T F 10-1
	iii	W 9-12, 2-5
211	i	M Th 10-1
	ii	T F10-1

**BOTANY**

102		i	M 10-1
		ii	T 10-1
		iii	W 10-1
		iv	W 2-5
		v	Th 10-1
		vi	F 10-1
201	Group A		M T10-1, W 9-12
	Group B		W 2-5, Th F 10-1
			Students attend one laboratory from each group
203		i	M Th 10-1
		ii	T F 10-1
221		i	M Th 10-1
		ii	T F 10-1
301	Group A		M T 10-1, W 9-12

Group B	W 2-5, Th F 10-1	or	T 3-6 and one time chosen from
	Students attend one laboratory from each group		Th 10-1 Th 3-6 F 10-1 F 3-6
303	i M Th 10-1	310 } 311 } 320 } 321 }	Two time, in Q1,2,3 or 4 chosen from
	ii T F 10-1		
321	M Th 10-1		
325	M Th 10-1		
331	T F 10-1		
332	T F 10-1		i T 10-1
341	M Th 10-1		ii T 3-6
361	T F 10-1		iii W 10-1
			iv W 3-6
In no case must 310 & 311, or 320 & 321 be taken in the same quarters			
		330 }	Two times, in Q1 or 2(331), or Q3 or 4(330);
		331 }	
			W 10-1 and one time chosen from
		i	Th 10-1
		ii	Th 3-6
		iii	F 3-6

**CELL BIOLOGY**

303	i M Th 10-1
	ii T F 10-1
304	T F 10-1
305	W 10-1,3-6

**CHEMISTRY**

Must select one 3 hour lab for each paper per week in appropriate quarters of year.

110/120	i M 10-1
113/123	ii M 3-6
115/125	iii T 10-1
	iv T 3-6
	v Th 10-1
	vi Th 3-6
	vii F 10-1

For some of the following Stage II and III Chemistry Laboratories it may be possible in special circumstances to arrange alternative laboratory periods in order to overcome a personal timetable clash.

210	i M Th 3-6 1,2
	ii M Th 3-6 3,4
	iii M Th 10-1 1,2
	iv M Th 10-1 3,4

211	Choose one quarter only
	i M T 10-1 1 or 2
	ii M Th 3-6 or 3 or 4

220	Two times, in Q1,2 or 3,4. M 10-1 and one time chosen from
-----	--

M 3-6  
W 10-1  
W 3-6  
Th 10-1  
Th 3-6

or	M 3-6 and one time chosen from
	W 10-1 W 3-6 Th 10-1 Th 3-6

230	Two times, in Q1,2 or 3,4. T 10-1 and one time chosen from
-----	--

T 3-6  
Th 10-1  
Th 3-6  
F 10-1  
F 3-6

340	See Department
350	i M 10-1 1,2
	ii T 2-5 1,2
	iii Th 10-1 1,2
	iv F 10-1 1,2
351	i M 10-1 3,4
	ii T 2-5 3,4
	iii Th 10-1 3,4
	iv F 10-1 3,4
360	Three times, in Q1,2 or 3 chosen from
	i M 10-1
	ii M 3-6
	iii Th 10-1
	iv Th 3-6
	v F 10-1
	F 10-1

**COMPUTER SCIENCE**

See Department

**GEOGRAPHY**

101/102	i W 9-11
	ii W 11-1
	iii W 2-4
	iv W 5-7
	v Th 9-11
	vi Th 11-1
	vii Th 2-4
	viii Th 5-7

**GEOGRAPHY**

201	i W 10
	ii W 12
	iii W 4
	iv W 5
202	i T 10
	ii T 11
	iii T 4
	iv T 5
203	i Th 9-11

	ii	Th 11-1	
	iii	Th 2-4	
	iv	Th 4-6	
204	i	M 9	
	ii	M 10	
	iii	M 3	
	iv	M 4	
	v	M 5	
205	See Department		
301		T 2	
303		Th 10	
304		M 4	
305		T 2	
306	See Department		
313		T 10	
316		W 2	
		T 3	

**GEOLOGY**

100	i	Th 11-1	
	ii	Th 3-5	
	iii	F 10-12	
150	i	T 3-6	2,3,4
	ii	W 10-1	2,3,4
201		M 11-1	
202		Th 11-1	
203	i	W 11-1	
		W 4-6	2,3
	ii	T 4-6	
		Th 3-5	2,3
301		F 10-1	
302		M 10-1	
303		W 2-5	
304		M 4-6	
305		T 10-1	
307		Th F 3-6	3,4

**PHYSICS**

104	i	W 10-12	
	ii	W 2-4	
	i	M 10-1	
	ii	M 3-6	
110/120	iii	T 10-1	
113/123	iv	T 3-6	
115/125	v	Th 10-1	
	vi	Th 3-6	
	vii	F 10-1	
	viii	F 3-6	
290	Two times selected from		
	i	M 3-6	
	ii	T 3-6	
	iii	Th 3-6	
	iv	F 3-6	
390	i	M Th 3-6	1,2
	ii	T F 3-6	1,2
391	i	M Th 3-6	3,4
	ii	T F 3-6	3,4
392	i	M 3-6	
	ii	T 3-6	

iii	Th 3-6	
iv	F 3-6	
v	M Th 3-6	1,2
vi	T F 3-6	1,2
vii	M Th 3-6	3,4
viii	T F 3-6	3,4

**PHYSIOLOGY**

201	i	M 9-12	
	ii	Th 9-12	
301		W 2-5	

**PSYCHOLOGY**

109	i	M 9-11	
	ii	M 2-4	
	iii	T 9-11	
	iv	T 2-4	
	v	W 8-10	
	vi	W 10-12	
	vii	W 4-6	
	viii	Th 9-11	
	ix	Th 3-5	

Other Stage I and III courses by arrangement  
Refer Department.

**ZOOLOGY**

102	i	M 10-1	
	ii	T 10-1	
	iii	W 10-1	
	iv	W 2-5	
	v	Th 10-1	
	vi	Th 10-1	
	vii	F 10-1	

201/301 Group A M T W 10-1  
Group B W 2-5, Th  
F10-1 Students to choose one laboratory  
from each group

203/303 Two times, in Q4 selected from

i	M 10-1	
ii	T 10-1	
iii	W 10-1	
iv	Th 10-1	
v	F 10-1	

204/304 Two times, in Q3 selected from

i	M 10-1	
ii	T 10-1	
iii	W 10-1	
iv	Th 10-1	
v	F 10-1	

205/305

209/309	i	M Th 10-1	
	ii	T F 10-1	
310	i	M Th 10-1	
	ii	T F 10-1	
315		M Th 10-1	

## Blank Page

---

# Scholarships, Tertiary Assistance Grants and Awards

## *Contents*

---

444	Tertiary Assistance Grants
444	Definitions of Full-Time Study, 1983
446	Scholarships and Prizes
447	National Scholarships and Prizes 1982
447	University of Auckland Scholarships 1982
449	University of Auckland Prizes 1981

---

# SCHOLARSHIPS, TERTIARY ASSISTANCE GRANTS AND OTHER AWARDS

## TERTIARY ASSISTANCE GRANTS

Tertiary Assistance Grants are available to students who hold the necessary academic qualifications and are New Zealand citizens or permanently resident in New Zealand.

*Information on the provisions of the Tertiary Assistance Grants Regulations is available at the Registry room 102.* To be eligible for a tertiary study grant a student must be enrolled in and attending all the lectures, laboratories and tutorials in either:

- (a) one of the definitions of full-time study set out below, or
- (b) some other programme of study approved by Senate.

## DEFINITIONS OF FULL-TIME STUDY 1983

### Architecture and Town Planning

Architecture Intermediate	All subjects required for the Intermediate under BArch Reg 5.
BArch	36 credits
Town Planning Intermediate	6 Arts papers or equivalent in the first year.
	7 Arts papers or equivalent in the second year.
BTP	7 papers
DipTP	6 papers
DipVal	6 subjects

When extra papers (e.g. Arts or Science papers) are taken for Arch Int in the second or subsequent year the definition of full-time study for the appropriate Degree or Diploma will apply.

### Arts

BA	Either	7 papers
	or	6 papers only, (i) if this is the first year of enrolment for any course at any University
		(ii) if 3 of the papers are at Stage III level
DipBrC		All work as specified under DipBrC Reg 3.
DipDrama		All work as specified under DipDrama Reg 3 and 4
DipEd		The required 4 papers and Original Investigation. In the case of a student taking Education 14.100 and 14.101 as well as Diploma subjects: 14.100 and 14.101 and either 4 papers or 3 papers and Original Investigation.
DipEdPsych		Pt I or Pt II
DipGuid		Pt I or Pt II
DipLGA		All subjects required under DipLGA Reg 5.

### Commerce

BCom	Either	6 papers
	or	3 Stage III and 2 other papers

### Engineering

Engineering Intermediate	36 credits
BE	A Professional year or equivalent.
DipBIA	All subjects required under DipBIA Reg 4.

### Fine Arts

BFA	6 papers in the first Professional year
	9 papers in the second, third and fourth Professional years.

### Law

Law Intermediate	All subjects required under LLB Reg 3.
LLB	First, second or third Law examination or equivalent
LLB Hons	
DipCrim	Division I or II equivalent



Where extra papers (e.g. Arts or Science papers) are taken for Law Intermediate in the second or subsequent year the definition of full-time study for the appropriate Degree or Diploma will apply.

### Medicine and Human Biology

BHB

Part I, II or III

MBChB

Part I or II

### Music

BMus

Either

6 papers in the first year of enrolment  
at any University

or

7 papers

or

3 stage III and 3 other papers

BMus (Performance)

Performance and 3 papers

BMus (Performance) (Hons)

All work as specified under Reg 4

DipMus

6 papers

DipMus (Hons)

6 papers

### Science

BSc

Either

36 credits

or

30 credits including 18 above Stage I

or

24 credits other than Stage I

or

24 credits including 12 at Stage III

BSc (Hons)

Part III or IV

BOptom

Year I, II, III or IV or equivalent

DipComp Maths

All subjects required under DipComp Maths  
Reg 4

DipEn Tech (Geotherm)

Parts I, II and III

DipMath Ed

All subjects required under DipMath Ed Reg 3.

DipOpt

Division I, II, III or IV or equivalent

DipStats

All subjects required under DipStats Reg 3.

### Masters' Courses

The student must be pursuing a full-time programme approved by the Head of the Department.

Notes: (i) For the purposes of the Tertiary Assistance Grants Regulations the following exceptional combinations of papers/credits have been approved

(a) as more than half of a full-time programme:

BA and BMus

3 papers at stage III level

BSc

12 credits at stage III level

BCom

2 papers at stage III level plus one other

(b) as one-third or more of a full-time programme:

BSc

6 credits at stage III level

BE

Either

3 half-year papers

or

1 full-year paper and 1 half-year paper

Courses, including intermediates,

in Arts and Music

2 papers

BTP, DipBIA

2 papers

A full list of definitions is available from the Tertiary Grants Section, Registry.

(ii) The following course requirements are *not* included in the definitions of full-time study for Tertiary Assistance Grants purposes:

LLB and LLB (Hons)

Legal Practice

BE

Laboratory requirements

## TENURE

In general, students have a standard entitlement to assistance for two recognised courses or five years, whichever is the lesser. (The entitlement to fees grant is for assistance for two recognised courses or the equivalent of five years of full-time study, whichever is the lesser). The period of tenure for the various courses that have been recognised for tertiary grants purposes is as follows:

- One Year: Dip BIA, DipBrC, DipCompMaths, DipDrama, DipEd, DipEdPsych, DipEnTech (Geotherm), DipGuid, DipLGA, DipMus (Hons), DipStats, DipMathEd, MTP, MArch, MJur, LLM (papers only), MMedSc, MHB, BMus (Performance) (Hons), ME (papers only)
- Two Years: DipCrim, DipTP, MBChB, MA, MCom, MSc, MPhil, MFA, ME (papers and thesis) MMus, LLM (papers and thesis), MA/DipClinPsych
- Three Years: BA, BCom, BHB, BMus, BSc, DipMus, DipVal, ACA
- Four Years: BCom/ACA, BE, BFA, BMus (Performance), BOptom, BSc (Hons), BTP, DipOpt, LLB, LLB (Hons)
- Five Years: BArch, BA/LLB†, BA/LLB (Hons)†, BA/BMus†, BA/BMus (Performance)†, BA/DipMus†, BA/DipMus (Hons)†, BCom/LLB†, BCom/LLB (Hons)†, BHB/MBChB, BMus/DipMus†, BMus/DipMus (Hons)†, BSc/DipOpt†, BMus (Performance)/BMus (Performance) (Hons), BA/MA, BA/MA/DipClinPsych, BSc/MSc, BSc (Hons)/MSc, BCom/MCom, LLB/LLM (papers only), LLB (Hons)/MJur, BMus/MMus, BE/ME (papers only), BTP/MTP
- Six Years: LLB/LLM (papers and thesis)\*, BFA/MFA\*, BHB/MBChB/MMedSc\*, BHB/MHB/MBChB\*, BCom/ACA/MCom\*, BArch/MArch\* BE/ME (papers and thesis)\*, BMus (Perf)\*/MMus (Perf)\*, DipOpt/MSc (in Psych)\*

**Notes:** (i) Conjoint courses, marked with a dagger (†), count as two courses. Other combined courses count as one course only.

(ii) Those combinations of courses marked with an asterisk (\*) have been approved as "long" courses and can qualify for a sixth year of tenure.

(iii) Combinations of BSc/MSc in Chemistry/BE(Chem) and BSc(Hons) in Chemistry/BE(Chem) have been designated as Courses of National Importance with a tenure of 6-7 years. Students may apply to the Director-General to receive assistance for these combinations regardless of any previous assistance which has been granted. A combination of a paramedical course and a suitable undergraduate course is also designated as a Course of National Importance.

(iv) A further year's fees assistance is available for Law Professionals in the following combinations only: LLB/LLM/LawProf and LLB (Hons)/MJur/LawProf, LLB/LawProf and LLB (Hons)/LawProf.

## SCHOLARSHIPS AND PRIZES

A booklet entitled *Awards Handbook* is available without charge from the enquiry counter at the Registry, Princes Street. This booklet gives full details of the regulations governing scholarships, bursaries, prizes and other awards administered by the University and details of funds available for special assistance.

A handbook published annually entitled *University Grants Committee Handbook* gives full details of the regulations governing awards administered by the University Grants Committee. This handbook is available from Whitcoulls Ltd, booksellers, and for reference in the University library.

The attention of students and graduates is drawn to the Scholarships Notice Boards in the cloister on the lower ground floor of the Old Arts Building and in the Student Union.

### Review of Scholarship

The Council, in awarding any scholarship, reserves the right to reduce the annual value of such scholarship at any time and from time to time during the tenure of it by any holder should the annual income of the funds of such scholarship, in the opinion, of the Council, render such reduction expedient. All scholarships offered are subject to review in the event of the candidate being awarded other scholarships. Every holder of a scholarship shall be deemed to accept the award of same, subject to the above reservation, and notwithstanding that the value of such scholarship is set out specifically in the Regulations.

### Re-award of a Scholarship discontinued by the Original Holder

Fresh applications may be called for in any scholarships discontinued after a period of three months or more from the original date of award; the re-award in the event of the discontinuation of the scholarship to be made on the basis of the original application if possible.

## NATIONAL SCHOLARSHIPS AND PRIZES – 1982

*B.P. Postgraduate Scholarship*  
*Commonwealth Scholarships (Canada)*

*Commonwealth Scholarships (United Kingdom)*

*William Georgetti Scholarship*  
*McKee Trust Postgraduate Scholarship*

*Postgraduate Scholarships:*

Anderson, Robyn J.  
Badley, A.D.J.  
Boniface, P.J.  
Brown, Elizabeth A.  
Built, R.J.  
Caughy, Celia M.  
Dean, Miriam R.  
Donnell, Deborah J.  
Edwards, Margot F.  
Farrelley, Elizabeth  
Given, N.K.  
Goodyear, P.W.  
Gruzelier, Claire E.  
Guillemin, B.J.  
Haines, A.V.  
Henrys, S.A.  
Jones, Alison

Taylor, Jacqueline A.  
Stone, P.R.  
Waite, J.J.  
Gruzelier, Claire E.  
Caughy, Celia M.  
Triggs, W.J.  
Built, R.J.  
White, G.P.

Look, A.E.  
McRae, Philippa J.  
Malpas, J.E.  
Manning, Joanna M.  
Mataga, P.A.  
Mathews, A.J.  
Newman, P.A.  
Ogden, Jennifer A.  
Parnell, K.E.  
Paton, J.D.  
Reid, M.L.  
Stewart, Georgina  
Stone, P.R.  
Taylor, Jacqueline A.  
Waite, J.J.  
West-Newman, Catherine  
Wilkinson, V.H.  
Wood, Briar A.

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND SCHOLARSHIPS – 1982

*\*Awarded without Emolument*

*Casement Aickin Memorial Bursary*  
*Auckland Centennial Music Festival Scholarships*

*Auckland City Council Bursary in Town Planning*  
*Auckland City Council Scholarship in Botany*  
*Auckland Savings Bank Scholarships*

*Marie d'Albini Scholarship*  
*Bishop Music Scholarships*

*Frances Briggs Memorial Bursaries in Botany*

*Sir Peter Buck Memorial Bursary*  
*Hugh Campbell Scholarships*  
*J.P. Campbell Bursary*  
*Chamber of Commerce Scholarship*  
*Comalco Limited Scholarship in Engineering*  
*John Court Scholarship*  
*A.G. Davis Scholarship*  
*Elam Art Scholarship*  
*E.B. Firth Award*  
*James Fletcher Postgraduate Scholarship*

*Senior*  
*Junior*  
*Senior*  
*Junior*

Boland, M.R.  
Austin, Katherine A.V.  
Snelling, Rachel M.  
Bell, Janine A.  
No Award  
Callahan, K.D.  
Scott, Denise  
McIntyre, Shona M.  
Sutcliffe, W.D.  
Holmes, Leonie J.  
Snowball, Angela M.  
Bartlett, Ruth M.  
No Award  
Muller, Kristina M.  
Clapshaw, Deborah A.  
Fissenden, G.R.  
O'Brien, D.M.  
No Award  
No Award  
Sowman, Erica M.  
No Award  
Beamish, M.J.

## 448 Scholarships, Tert. Assist. Grants &amp; Awards, Nat. Scholarships &amp; Prizes 1982, Auck. Scholarships 1982

*Fletcher Timber Company Research Scholarship*  
*F/O Alfred P. Fogerty Memorial Scholarships*

*Gillies Scholarship*  
*Winifred Gimblett Scholarship*  
*Belinda Godfrey Memorial Organ Scholarship*  
*Sir George Grey Scholarship*  
*Sir James Gunson Scholarship*  
*James Hardie & Co. Pty. Ltd., Bursary in Architecture*  
*Constance Herbert Memorial Music Scholarship*  
*Hollinrake Memorial Scholarships*

*Robert Horton Engineering Scholarship*  
*Evan Gibb Hudson Scholarship in Engineering*  
*T.W.J. Johnson Scholarship in Clinical Medicine*  
*T.R. Johnston Scholarship*  
*Sir Alexander Johnstone Scholarships*

*Kelliher Economics Foundation Bursary*  
*Walter Kirby Singing Scholarship*  
*Duffus Lubecki Scholarship*  
*Janet Bain Mackay Memorial Scholarship*  
*Medical Research Council of NZ Research Award in Medical Sciences*  
*Mercer Memorial Scholarship*  
*Mitsubishi Research Fellowship*  
*National Roads Board Postgraduate Scholarship*  
*N.Z. Institution of Engineers Postgraduate Scholarship*  
*N.Z. Optometrical Association Scholarships*

*N.Z. Planning Institute Bursary*  
*N.Z. Portland Cement Association Postgraduate Scholarship*  
*N.Z. Pottery and Ceramics Research Association Scholarship*  
*N.Z. Steel Research Scholarship*  
*Optical Manufacturing Co. Ltd. Scholarship*  
*Pears-Britten Scholarship in Singing*  
*Wilhelm Penseler Scholarships in Music*

*Elizabeth Mary Phillips Scholarships:*

Arulandam, S.D.  
 Bieleski, Karen J.  
 Croucher, Catherine S.  
 Fitzgerald, Barbara A.  
 Julian, Fiona

Luiten, P.B.  
 Maxwell, Elizabeth A.  
 McCoy, Moyeen M.  
 Meyer, Margaret J.  
 Mills, Gwynneth M.D.

*Grace Phillips Memorial Bursary*

*W.W. Phillipps Scholarships:*

Adam, S.L.  
 Ameratunga, R.V.  
 Anderson, Denise L.  
 Baruch, Morag  
 Black, D.R.  
 Blue, Jacqueline D.  
 Bonning, Rosemary A.  
 Bowen, Susan P.

Hughes, G.W.  
 Hunter, P.A.  
 Jennings, Pamela J.  
 Jessop, Sandra R.  
 Juhasz, Eva S.  
 Klubien, Kristine E.  
 Kuitert, Lieske M.E.  
 Leong, M.K.

No Award  
 Brook, Penelope J.  
 Kerr, Helen J.  
 Fairgray, R.B.  
 Ogden, Jennifer A.  
 Duley, M.R.B.  
 Brimble, Margaret A.  
 Newman, Sheryl-Anne N.  
 Davis, J.R.A.  
 Still, Alexandra R.  
 Naden, L.M.  
 Raine, Susan F.  
 Daines, D.A.  
 No Award  
 Frankish, P.D.  
 Fissenden, G.R.  
 Greenwood, Kathryn G.  
 Rea, Barbara  
 Tarrant, Cecilia  
 Tesiram, P.A.  
 No Award  
 McGredy, Kathryn F.  
 Ogilvie, Robyn F.  
 Snowball, Angela M.  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 Eliason, E.T.  
 No Award  
 Built, R.J.  
 Faulkner, E.M.  
 Morgan, Annette R.  
 Wong, G.  
 Perwick, Michele A.  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 Gainsford, J.R.  
 Jew, Bernadette G.

Mokaraka, V.L.  
 Morgan, G.E.  
 Parr, Deidre C.  
 Smith, J.A.T.  
 Todd, Helen C.R.

Brimble, Margaret A.

Porteus, Louise E.  
 Samarasinghe, D.A.  
 Satterthwaite, P.S.  
 Siatu'u, Teuila M.  
 Simson, Joanne M.  
 Sorenson, Heather  
 Stapleton, A.M.F.  
 Thompson, G.E.

Boyle, Linda M.  
 Chan, R.  
 Cooper, P.M.S.  
 Dhana, R.R.  
 Dickson, J.S.  
 Duncan, M.J.  
 Eaton, P.R.  
 Genner, Susan M.  
 Gill, Judith H.  
 Gudex, Clarie M.

McArthur, C.J.  
 McDonald, Kathryn M.  
 McLaughlin, P.  
 Macedo, T.F.  
 Muir, Margaret G.  
 Nicholls, Vivenne R.  
 Nowak, Lidia T.  
 Orange, Kate L.  
 Pearl, Ann  
 Peat, Elizabeth B.  
 Peters, Julia M.

Titchener, G.R.  
 Tsang, R.K.  
 Twentyman, G.S.  
 Walker, Juliet M.  
 Walker, Wendy M.  
 Wall, R.J.  
 Watt, Denise J.  
 Whitta, R.K.S.  
 Windsor, J.A.  
 Witney, G.B.  
 Young, G.L.  
 Hammer, P.E.J.  
 McKibbin, P.R.  
 Lavin, R.H.  
 Thompson, Margaret L.  
 Gray, Josephine A.  
 Anderson, I.J.  
 Jones, T.I.

*Lissie Rathbone Scholarship*

*Joe Raynes Scholarship*

*Kathleen Mary Reardon Memorial Music Scholarship*

*Rive Memorial Scholarship*

*Sagar Scholarship for String Players*

*Sanders Memorial Scholarship*

*Michael Joseph Savage Memorial Scholarship*

*Senior Scholarships:*

Allis, D.J.  
 Beckett, Linda L.  
 Bishton, Karen  
 Blyth, D.J.  
 Bridge, Diana E.  
 Brook, Penelope J.  
 Brown, Marea L.  
 Built, R.J.  
 Bullivant, D.P.  
 Callender, P.F.  
 Chang, Elizabeth S.  
 Charles, Helen P.  
 Charlton, J.B.  
 Clapshaw, Deborah A.  
 Daly, Mary J.  
 Fissenden, G.R.  
 Green, S.R.

Haines, A.V.  
 Hall, T.  
 Harre, Nicole F.S.  
 Henshaw, B.  
 Hogg, T.P.  
 Hooker, P.H.  
 Horsburgh, Judith M.  
 \*Ingram, Rosemary J.H.  
 \*Isaacs, R.D.D.  
 Jack, A.R.  
 James B.  
 Jamieson, Nicole M.  
 Jenkins, I.R.  
 Jew, Bernadette G.  
 Kovacevich, Vanya L.  
 Macmillan, Margaret A.  
 Mason, Robyn L.

Massey, B.R.  
 Mataga, P.A.  
 Matthews P.J.  
 McConnell, I.G.  
 Paton, J.D.  
 Reckner, J.R.  
 Smith, G.W.  
 Snowball, Angela M.  
 Stapleton, Patricia M.  
 Sutcliffe, W.D.  
 Thornley, J.W.  
 Trainor, M.J.  
 Wass, N.C.  
 Whittome, Julie F.  
 Williamson, Coral J.  
 Wiseman, A.J.  
 Zegers, F.P.  
 Austin, P.T.  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 Smith, A.J.W.  
 Archer, G.B.  
 McGrath, Judith D.

*Sinclair Scholarship*

*S.P.E.L.D. Association Scholarship*

*Maxwell Walker Memorial Scholarship*

*Ivon Watkins-Dow Bursary in Chemical and Materials Engineering*

*Ivon Watkins-Dow Bursaries in Commerce*

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND PRIZES – 1981

*AHI Prize in Glass Design*

*Allergan Awards*

*First Award:*

*Second Award:*

*Accounting*  
*Ancient History*  
*Anthropology*  
*Applied Mathematics*  
*Architecture*  
*Art History*  
*Asian History*  
*Asian Politics*  
*Biblical History and Literature*

*Annual Prizes:*

No Award  
 Dabb, G.K.  
 Denholm, Barbara F.  
 Nicholls, G.D.  
 Fissenden, G.R.  
 Holton, Z.D.  
 Campbell, A.R.  
 Bergstrom, C.A.  
 Green, Briar E.  
 Mare, Barbara A.  
 Price, Patricia J.  
 Berry, S.R.  
 Smith, J.A.T.  
 Wright, Ruth J.

## Annual Prizes

<i>Biochemistry</i>	Read, Kerry M.
<i>Botany</i>	Hart, Sherrol B.
<i>Cell Biology</i>	Stapleton, Patricia M.
<i>Chemistry</i>	Gallop, M.A.
<i>Chinese</i>	Macrae, G.J.
<i>Commercial Law (Commerce)</i>	Scarth, Elaine M.
<i>Commercial Law (Law)</i>	Muller, Kristina M.
<i>Computer Science</i>	James, B.S.
	Thornley, J.W.
<i>Economics</i>	Prouting, F.M.
<i>Education</i>	Barney, A.R.
<i>Engineering — Chemical &amp; Materials</i>	Hooker, P.H.
<i>Civil</i>	Chilcott, G.I.
<i>Electrical</i>	Baun, J.B.
<i>Engineering Science</i>	Mataga, P.A.
<i>Mechanical</i>	Turner, L.C.
<i>English</i>	Smith, J.A.T.
<i>Equity and Succession</i>	Greenwood, Kathryn G.
<i>Fine Arts</i>	Charlton, N.B.
<i>French</i>	Stephenson, Anne
<i>Geography</i>	Bartlett, Ruth M.
<i>Geology</i>	Tebbutt, S.B.
<i>German</i>	Price, Christine
<i>Greek</i>	Phillips, P.J.
	Morrison, T.J.
<i>Hebrew</i>	No Award
<i>History</i>	Baker, P.J.
<i>Human Biology</i>	Le Grice, I.J.
<i>Indonesian</i>	Ghafari, Elahe
<i>Italian</i>	Hepple, Marianne P.
<i>Japanese</i>	Janzen, Kathleen J.
<i>Land Law</i>	Hodge, M.E.A.
<i>Latin</i>	Phillips, P.J.
	Stubbs, P.G.
<i>Linguistics</i>	Williams G.
<i>Management Studies</i>	Brennan, A.P.
	Butterworth, Linda N.
<i>Maori Studies</i>	Woolford, R.B.
<i>Medicine</i>	Ameratunga, R.V.
<i>Music</i>	Toms, A.G.
<i>Optometry</i>	Durrant, A.J.
<i>Philosophy</i>	Price, Christine
	Harris, J.G.
<i>Physics</i>	Mitchell, R.N.
<i>Political Studies</i>	Wigley, C.J.
<i>Psychology</i>	Clark, Alison M.
<i>Pure Mathematics</i>	Goodyear, P.W.
<i>Russian</i>	Stephenson, Anne
<i>Scandinavian Studies</i>	Goodwin, Catherine J.
<i>Sociology</i>	Bennett, R.D.
<i>Spanish</i>	Halls, Lillian M.S.
	Stubbs, P.G.
<i>Town Planning</i>	Gobby, Louise I.
<i>Zoology</i>	Tebbutt, S.B.

<i>P.S. Ardern Memorial Prize</i>		Pedder, Adrienne L.
<i>Auckland Brick Manufacturers' Prize</i>	First:	Graham, R.M.
	Second:	Prosée, P.C.
<i>Auckland District Law Society's Centennial Prizes</i>		Jonas, M.D.
		Macmillan, Gillian M.
		Taylor, C.B.
<i>Auckland District Law Society's Prize</i>		Thomas, Susan E.
<i>Auckland Stock Exchange Prize</i>		Partridge, R. J.C.
<i>Auckland Town Planning Assoc. Prize in Town Planning</i>		O'Sullivan, N.J.
<i>Bartrum Memorial Prizes in Geology</i>	Honours Year:	Rutherford, P.G.
	Stage III:	Callander, P.F.
<i>Beecham Research Laboratories' Prize</i>		Hogg, T.P.
<i>L.H. Briggs Memorial Prizes</i>		Harrington, D.A.
		Palmer, B.D.
<i>Vernon Brown Memorial Award</i>		Boyden, G.M.
<i>Alice Bush Memorial Prize</i>		Ameratunga, R.V.
<i>Butland Prizes</i>		Lockwood, M.A.
		McNaughton, Susan M.
<i>Butterworth Prize</i>		Pasley, M.P.
<i>R. Morrison Cassie Memorial Prize</i>		Massey, B.R.
<i>Chisholm Memorial Prize</i>		Wild, B.
<i>Ciba-Geigy Prize in Applied Pharmacology &amp; Therapeutics</i>		Ameratunga, R.V.
<i>Clarkson Measured Drawing Prize</i>		Gray, J.S.
<i>Cost and Management Accounting Prize</i>		Black, J.L.
<i>Tony Cotton Memorial Prizes</i>	Graduate Award:	No Award
	Undergraduate Awards:	Wilks, S.C.
		Winkelmann, Helen D.
<i>Marian Cranwell Prize</i>		No Award
<i>K.B. Cumberland Prize</i>		Parnell, K.E.
<i>Gary Davies Memorial Prizes</i>		Kidd, D.J.
		Jones, D.P.H.
<i>Davies-Sproule Memorial Prize</i>		Maloney, Peta C.
<i>David Fleming Memorial Prize</i>		No Award
<i>Forensic Medicine Essay Prize</i>		Wang, Caroline W.
<i>Fowlds Memorial Prizes – Architecture &amp; Town Planning</i>		Farrelly, Elizabeth M.
	Arts	Gruzelier, Claire E.
	Commerce	Maiden, Christine C.
	Engineering	Fotherby, C.W.
	Fine Arts	Banwell, Ingrid-Anne
	Law	Carter, Betty H.
	Medicine & Human Biology	No Award
	Music	Badley, A.D.J.
	Science	Newman, P.A.
<i>Gilfillan, Morris &amp; Co. Prizes in Auditing – First Prize:</i>		Fissenden, G.R.
	Second Prize:	Kumar, S.
<i>Eric Hector Goodfellow Memorial Prize</i>		Ingram, Rosemary J.H.
<i>James Gordon Goodfellow Memorial Prize</i>		Mataga, P.A.
<i>Rosemary Grice Memorial Prize</i>		Westwood, Sarah I.
<i>Habens Prize</i>		Windross, S.J.
<i>Haydon Prize</i>		Walsh, J.P.
<i>W.E. Henley Prize in Clinical Medicine</i>		Scott, Ngaire S.
<i>George S. Holmes Memorial Prize</i>		O'Brien, P.A.
<i>George Hopkins Prize</i>		Davies, Lucy E.
<i>Hutchinson Hull &amp; Co.</i>		Fissenden, G.R.
<i>Institute of Chartered Secretaries &amp; Administrators' Prize</i>		Buckmaster, B.C.
<i>Institute of Production Engineers' Prize</i>		Lawson, N.W.
<i>T.L. Lancaster Memorial Prize in Botany</i>		McNeilage, M.A.

*Dr. F. Wilson Lang Memorial Prize*  
*Desmond Lewis Memorial Prize*  
*Arnold Lillie Prize in Geology*  
*F.A. de la Mare Prize*  
*S.R. de la Mare Prizes*

*Dr. R.G. McElroy Prize*  
*Mitsubishi Prize*  
*Monier Prizes*

*Montgomery Memorial Prizes*

*John Mulgan Memorial Prize*  
*N.Z. Institute of Architects' Prizes*

*First Professional:*  
*Second Professional:*

*Third Professional:*

*Fourth Professional:*

*N.Z. Institute of Chemistry (Auckland Branch) Prize*  
*N.Z. Institute of Valuers' Prize*  
*N.Z. Society of Accountants' Prizes*

*Accounting I:*  
*Accounting II:*

*Pathology Prize*  
*Property Management Institute Prize*  
*Douglas Robb Prize*  
*Carrick Robertson Prize*  
*Roche Prize in Psychiatry*  
*Christine Roigard Memorial Prize*  
*Royal N.Z. College of General Practitioners' Prize*  
*Sandoz Prize in Pharmacology*  
*Arthur Sewell Prize in English*  
*Spedding Consolidated Group Prizes*

*Second Professional:*  
*Third Professional:*

*Sweet & Maxwell Prize*  
*John Tinline Prize in English*  
*H.B. Turbott Prize in Community Health*  
*Paul Turtill Memorial Awards in Geology Best Student:*  
*Second Award:*

*Valuers' Registration Board Prize*  
*Wallath Prizes*

*Wilkinson Wilberfoss Prize in Cost & Management Accounting*  
*Wilkinson Wilberfoss Prize in Financial Accounting*  
*W.D. Wilson Prize*  
*Wilson-Allison Memorial Prize in Dermatology*  
*Maharaia Winiata Memorial Prize*  
*1928 Staff Award in Mechanical Engineering*

Limbrick, Elizabeth A.  
 Muller, Kirstina M.  
 Brown, G.H.  
 No Award  
 Hardy, Kirsty J.  
 Stott, Ngaire S.  
 Driscoll, P.J.  
 Haukwa, C.B.  
 Boyden, G.M.  
 Bruce, M.A.  
 Menzies, Johanna C.  
 Goodyear, P.W.  
 Wardle, M.J.  
 Blyth, D.J.  
 Jansen, Sharon L.  
 Boyden, G.M.  
 Bruce, M.A.  
 Davis, J.R.A.  
 Gill, J.R.  
 McConnell, I.G.  
 Upton, G.M.  
 Graham, R.M.  
 Green, Briar, E.  
 McDonald, H.  
 Blucher, K.J.  
 Bright, C.J.  
 Kerr, Helen J.  
 Peat, Elizabeth B.  
 Blucher, K.J.  
 Isaacs, R.D.  
 Bell, D.W.  
 Hardy, I.R.B.  
 Vial, P.J.  
 Clearwater, G.M.  
 Horsburgh, Judith M.  
 No Award  
 Allison, Robin M.  
 Mollison, D.W.  
 Eade, A.J.  
 Ford, G.D.  
 Isaacs, R.D.  
 Corlett, C.J.  
 Slaats, H.M.I.M.  
 Halstead, L.R.W.  
 Gittos, M.J.B.  
 Lawson, A.S.  
 Newman, D.G.  
 Kerr, Helen J.  
 Kerr, Helen J.  
 Bruce, M.A.  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 Lawson, N.W.



---

# Legislation

## *Contents*

---

**Act of  
Parliament**454 University of Auckland Act 1961

---

**University  
Statutes**470 Court of Convocation Statute 1962

---

**University  
Regulations**

- 471 Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Regulations
  - 474 Council Elections (Representatives of Governing Bodies of Secondary Schools) Regulations
  - 477 Council Elections (Lecturers' Representative) Regulations
  - 479 Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives) Regulations
-

## LEGISLATION

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND ACT 1961

## ANALYSIS

*Title**The Senate*

1. Short Title and commencement
2. Interpretation
3. Constitution of the University
4. University District and Court of Convocation
5. Visitor of the University

30. Constitution of Senate
31. Chairman of Senate
32. Meetings of Senate
33. Proceedings of Senate not affected by vacancies, etc.
34. Functions of Senate
35. Senate may appoint committees
36. Council to consult Senate on academic matters

*The Council*

6. Constitution of Council
7. Transitional provisions
8. Term of office
9. Employees as Council members
10. Disqualification of members of Council
11. Casual vacancies in Council
12. Proceedings of Council not affected by vacancies, etc.
13. Election of members
14. Meetings of Council
15. Special meetings of Council
16. Council may appoint committees

*Affiliated Institutions*

37. Admission of affiliated institutions

*Financial Provisions*

38. Benefactions to be strictly applied
39. Application of income and capital of University
40. Money to be paid into bank
41. Loan money to be paid into a separate account
42. Investment of money
43. Provision for Common Fund investment
44. Travelling allowances and expenses of members of Council
45. Council may insure members against personal accident while engaged in duties
46. Unauthorised expenditure of Council
47. Council to prescribe fees
48. Fees payable to associations of students
49. Grants by Council to associations of staff or students
50. Powers of Council in respect of property
51. Power to borrow by way of overdraft or temporary loan
52. Annual report and statement of accounts

*Powers of the Council*

17. Council to be governing body of University
18. Appointment of professors, lecturers, etc.
19. Conferment of degrees
20. Award of certificates, etc.
21. Lectures to members of the public
22. Power to make statutes and regulations
23. Seal of the University
24. Admission of students

*The Chancellor and Pro-Chancellor*

25. Election of Chancellor
26. Election of Pro-Chancellor
27. Right to preside at meetings of Council

*The Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellor*

28. Vice-Chancellor
29. Deputy Vice-Chancellor

*Repeals and Savings*

53. Repeals and savings Schedules

# AN ACT TO CONSOLIDATE AND AMEND CERTAIN ENACTMENTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY RELATING TO THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

BE IT ENACTED by the General Assembly of New Zealand in Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:

**1. Short Title and commencement** – (1) This Act may be cited as the University of Auckland Act 1961.  
(2) This Act shall come into force on the first day of January, nineteen hundred and sixty-two.

**2. Interpretation** – In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, –

“The Chancellor” means the Chancellor of the University of Auckland elected under this Act:

“The Council” means the Council of the University of Auckland:

“Financial year” means the financial year of the University fixed by the Council with the concurrence of the University Grants Committee:

“General course of study” means the structure of any course for a degree or other academic qualification and the subjects of study in the course; and includes the content of any subject in the course, any set works or periods to be studied, the extent and nature of any practical work required for any such subject, any prerequisites to the course or to the subjects of study in the course, and the types of examination:

“Lecturer” means a member of the staff of the University of Auckland who is in terms of his appointment an associate professor, a reader, a senior lecturer, or a lecturer of the University; and includes such other persons and classes of persons as the Council from time to time determines:

“Personal course of study” means the subjects which an individual student selects for a degree or other academic qualification in accordance with the general course of study for the time being prescribed for all students for the degree or other academic qualification:

“The Pro-Chancellor” means the Pro-Chancellor of the University of Auckland elected under this Act:

“Professor” means a professor of the University of Auckland; but does not include an associate professor:

“The Registrar” means the Registrar of the University of Auckland:

“The Senate” means the Senate of the University of Auckland:

“Students’ Association” means the Auckland University Students’ Association Incorporated:

“The University” means the University of Auckland constituted under this Act:

“The Vice-Chancellor” means the Vice-Chancellor of the University of Auckland appointed under this Act.

**3. Constitution of the University** – (1) For the advancement of knowledge and the dissemination and maintenance thereof by teaching and research there shall be in the Auckland University District a University to be called the University of Auckland.

(2) The University shall consist of the Council, the professors emeriti, the professors, lecturers, junior lecturers, Registrar, and librarian of the University for the time being in office, the graduates and undergraduates of the University, the graduates of the University of New Zealand whose names are for the time being on the register of the Court of Convocation of the Auckland University District, and such other persons and classes of persons as the Council may from time to time determine.

(3) The University shall be a body corporate with perpetual succession and a common seal, and may hold real and personal property, and sue and be sued, and do and suffer all that bodies corporate may do and suffer.

(4) The University established under this Act is hereby declared to be the same institution as the institution of that name existing immediately before the commencement of this Act under the University of Auckland Act 1954 (as amended by the University of Auckland Amendment Act 1957), which institution was originally established under the name of the Auckland University College under the Auckland University College Act 1882.

**4. University District and Court of Convocation** – (1) For the purposes of this Act there shall be a district to be called the Auckland University District, comprising the area specified in the First Schedule to this Act.

(2) The boundaries of the Auckland University District may be altered from time to time by the Governor-General by Order in Council.

(3) There shall be a Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.

(4) The said Court of Convocation shall consist of the persons whose names are enrolled on a register to be kept by the Registrar.

(5) Every person shall be entitled to have his name enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation who –

(a) Is a graduate of the University; or

- (b) Being a graduate of the University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reason of having been admitted *ad eundem gradum* before the first day of January, nineteen hundred and forty-three, is not, by reason of that qualification, enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation for any other University District in New Zealand, and is otherwise qualified in accordance with statutes made by the Council to be enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District; or
- (c) Not being such a graduate, is a professor or graduate full-time member of the staff of the University or a graduate member, approved by the Council as being of University status, of the staff of an institution affiliated to the University; or
- (d) Is otherwise entitled in accordance with statutes made by the Council to have his name enrolled on the said register.
- (6) The Council may from time to time make statutes for the keeping of the register of the Court of Convocation, which statutes may include provisions prescribing the persons and classes of persons who are eligible under paragraph (b) or paragraph (d) of subsection (5) of this section for membership of the said Court of Convocation and the conditions (whether as to payment of fee or otherwise) on which persons are entitled to have their names enrolled in the register of the said Court; and, subject to this Act and to the said statutes, if any, the said Court shall have power to make such rules for the conduct of its business as it thinks fit as the Council may determine.
- (7) The said Court may make representations to the Council on any matter concerning the interests of the University.

**5. Visitor of the University** – The Governor-General shall be the Visitor of the University, and shall have all the powers and functions usually possessed by Visitors.

#### *The Council*

**6. Constitution of Council** – (1) There shall be a Council of the University, to be called the Council of the University of Auckland.

(2) The Council shall consist of –

- (a) Three members to be appointed by the Governor-General:
- (b) The Vice-Chancellor or, while there is no Vice-Chancellor in office or during the absence or incapacity of the Vice-Chancellor, –
  - (i) The Deputy Vice-Chancellor; or
  - (ii) While there is no Deputy Vice-Chancellor in office during the absence or incapacity of the Deputy Vice-Chancellor, the Chairman of the Senate:
- (c) Five members to be appointed by the Senate, of whom four shall be professors, and one shall be a lecturer appointed by the Senate from its sub-professorial members:
- (ca) One full-time lecturer to be elected by the full-time lecturers:
- (d) Six members to be elected by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District:
- (e) One member to be elected by the governing bodies of State secondary schools, technical schools, and combined schools, and such registered private secondary schools as the Council may from time to time determine, being in all cases schools situated in the Auckland University District, each governing body to have one vote for the purposes of any such election:
- (f) One member, to be appointed by the Executive Committee of the Students' Association, who shall be, at the time of his appointment, enrolled for a degree or diploma as a full-time or part-time internal student of the University and shall, before being appointed, have been enrolled for at least 2 academic years at a university or universities in New Zealand:
- (fa) The president for the time being of the Students' Association:
- (g) Such number of members (not exceeding three) as the Council from time to time after the commencement of this Act thinks fit, to be appointed by the Council:
- (h) The Mayor of Auckland:
  - (i) One member to be appointed by the Council of the University of Albany. The first member shall be appointed as soon as practicable after such date as shall be prescribed by Order in Council for a term which shall be deemed to have commenced on the date so prescribed.
- (3) The Mayor of Auckland may from time to time nominate a member of the Auckland City Council to be his alternate on the Council; and the alternate for the time being may act in place of the Mayor at any meeting of the Council not attended by the Mayor.

(3a) Notwithstanding anything in subsection (2) of this section, the membership of the Council shall also include for a single term expiring with such date as shall be prescribed by Order in Council, one additional member who shall be appointed by the Council of the University of Albany as soon as practicable after the commencement of the University of Albany Act 1972.

#### **7. Transitional provisions – (Repealed)**

**8. Terms of office** – (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act, the members of the Council elected under paragraph (d) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act shall hold office for a term of four years, the members of the Council appointed under paragraphs (c), (ca), and (f) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act shall hold office for a term of two years, and all other elected or appointed members of the Council shall hold office for a term of three years. All elected or appointed members of the Council may from time to time be re-elected or reappointed.

(2) Elections or appointments of members of the Council to take the place of members whose terms are due to expire with the thirtieth day of June in any year shall be held or made not later than the third Monday in June in that year; and members so elected or appointed shall come into office on the first day of July following the date specified in this subsection for their election or appointment.

(3) Appointments of members of the Council to take the place of members whose terms are due to expire with the thirty-first day of December in any year shall be made not later than the third Monday in December in that year; and members so appointed shall come into office on the first day of January following the date specified in this subsection for their appointment.

(4) If at the time prescribed by this section for the election or appointment of any member or members of the Council no member or members or insufficient members are elected or appointed, the Council may itself appoint a suitable person in the place, and for the term or the remainder of the term, of the member who should have been elected or appointed.

(5) Every member of the Council elected or appointed under any of the provisions of paragraphs (a), (c), (ca), (d), (e), and (f) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act, unless he sooner vacates his office under section 11 of this Act, shall continue to hold office until his successor comes into office. Every member of the Council appointed under paragraph (g) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act shall go out of office at the expiration of his term of office.

**9. Employees as Council members** – (1) No person in the employment of the University shall be eligible for office as a member of the Council, otherwise than under paragraph (b) or paragraph (h) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act, unless he is a member appointed by the Senate:

Provided that the Council may pay to any member for the time being of the Council who has acted, at the request of the Council, as an examiner, assessor, or moderator in any subject or examination a fee or stipend determined in accordance with paragraph (c) of section 18 of this Act, and no person to whom any such fee or stipend is paid shall be ineligible as aforesaid:

Provided also that no person shall be ineligible as aforesaid by reason of any other employment by the University if the amount paid to him in any financial year in respect of that employment does not exceed such amount as the Minister of Education from time to time determines.

**10. Disqualification of members of Council** – The following persons shall be incapable of being elected or appointed to be members of the Council:

- (a) A mentally defective person within the meaning of the Mental Health Act 1911;
- (b) A bankrupt who has not obtained his order of discharge or whose order of discharge has been suspended for a term not yet expired or is subject to conditions not yet fulfilled;
- (c) A person convicted of any offence, punishable by imprisonment, unless he has received a free pardon or has served his sentence or otherwise suffered the penalty imposed on him.

**11. Casual vacancies in Council** – (1) Subject to subsections (1A) and (1B) of this section if any elected or appointed member of the Council –

- (a) Dies; or
- (b) Resigns his office by writing under his hand delivered to the Registrar; or
- (c) Is absent without leave from three consecutive meetings of the Council; or
- (d) Becomes ineligible for election or appointment to the Council under the provision of this Act under which he was elected or appointed; or
- (e) Becomes a mentally defective person within the meaning of the Mental Health Act 1911; or
- (f) Is adjudged a bankrupt; or
- (g) Is convicted of any offence punishable by imprisonment for a term of 2 years or more; or

- (h) Is convicted of any offence punishable by imprisonment for a term of less than 2 years and is sentenced to imprisonment for that offence, he shall thereupon cease to be a member and the vacancy thereby created shall be deemed to be a casual vacancy.
- (1A) In any case to which paragraph (g) of subsection (1) of this section applies –
  - (a) The disqualification shall not take effect until the expiration of the time for appealing against the conviction and, in the event of an appeal conviction, until the appeal is determined; and
  - (b) The member concerned shall be deemed to have been granted leave of absence until the expiration of that time, and shall not be capable of acting as a member during the period of that leave of absence.
- (1B) In any case to which paragraph (h) of subsection (1) of this section applies –
  - (a) The disqualification shall not take effect until the expiration of the time for appealing against the conviction or the sentence and, in the event of an appeal against conviction or against the sentence or both, until the appeal is determined; and
  - (b) The member concerned shall be deemed to have been granted leave of absence until the expiration of that time, and shall not be capable of acting as a member during the period of that leave of absence.
- (2) If any elected or appointed member of the Council becomes the Mayor of Auckland or the Vice-Chancellor, a casual vacancy shall arise in respect of the office previously held by him.
- (3) Every casual vacancy in the office of an elected or appointed member of the Council (other than a member appointed under paragraph (g) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act) shall, as soon as practicable, be filled by the election or appointment of a new member, in place of the vacating member, in the same manner as in the case of the vacating member, and the member elected or appointed to fill any casual vacancy shall hold office for only the residue of the term of the vacating member.

**12. Proceedings of Council not affected by vacancies, etc.** – No act or proceeding of the Council, or of any committee thereof, or of any person acting as a member of the Council, shall be invalidated in consequence of there being a vacancy in the number of the Council at the time of that act or proceeding, or of the subsequent discovery that there was some defect in the election or appointment of any person so acting, or that he was incapable of being or had ceased to be such a member.

**13. Election of members** – (1) The Registrar of the University, or such other person as the Council appoints, shall be the Returning Officer for the purpose of conducting elections of members of the Council.  
 (2) The elections of members of the Council shall be conducted and determined, and rolls for the elections shall be prepared in the manner prescribed by statutes or regulations of the University.

**14. Meetings of Council** – The Council shall meet at such times and places as it determines: Provided that it shall meet at least once in the month of July in each year.  
 (2) At any meeting of the Council six members shall form a quorum, and no business shall be transacted unless a quorum is present.  
 (3) At any meeting of the Council the person presiding at the meeting shall have a deliberate vote, and in the case of an equality of votes shall also have a casting vote.  
 (4) Every question before the Council shall be decided by a majority of the votes of the members present at the meeting of the Council and entitled to vote on that question.

**15. Special meetings of Council** – (1) The Chancellor may at any time, of his own motion, call a special meeting of the Council, and the Chancellor shall call a special meeting on the requisition in writing of any five members.  
 (2) Notice of any such meeting shall be posted to each member at his usual address at least forty-eight hours before the time fixed for the meeting.

**16. Council may appoint committees** – The Council may from time to time appoint standing or special committees.  
 (2) The council may delegate any of its powers and duties, including any powers, and duties which it has by delegation from any other body of person, but (except as provided in subsection (2) of section 35 of this Act) not including this power of delegation, and not including the power to make statutes and regulations, to any such committee or to the Senate or any person; and the committee or the Senate or person, as the case may be, may, without confirmation by the Council, exercise or perform the delegated powers or duties in like manner and with the same effect as the Council could itself have exercised or performed them.  
 (3) Every such delegation shall be revocable at will, and no such delegation shall prevent the exercise of any power or the performance of any duty by the Council.

- (4) Unless and until any such delegation is revoked, it shall continue to force according to its tenor.
- (5) It shall not be necessary that any person who is appointed to be a member of any such committee, or to whom any such delegation is made, shall be a member of the Council.

*Powers of the Council*

**17. Council to be governing body of University** — The Council shall be the governing body of the University through which the corporation of the University shall act, and shall have the entire management of and superintendence over the affairs, concerns, and property of the University; and, subject to the provisions of this Act and any other Act, shall in respect of all such matters have authority to act in such manner as appears to it to be best calculated to promote the interests of the University and of any other institution controlled by the Council and to promote and foster adult education:

Provided that the Council shall not make any final decision on any matter mentioned in section 36 of this Act until it has first consulted the Senate or in the case of any appointment or removal of academic staff the committee of the Senate specified in the second proviso to that section, and considered any recommendations the Senate or committee may make in that behalf, unless the Senate or committee, having had reasonable opportunity to make such recommendations, has failed so to do.

**18. Appointment of professors, lecturers, etc.** — Subject to the provisions of section 36 of this Act, the Council shall have power —

- (a) To institute the offices of professor and lecturer and such other offices as it thinks fit in connection with the University and any other institution controlled by the Council;
- (b) To appoint, upon such conditions, for such term, and upon such notice, as it thinks fit, all professors, lecturers, teachers, officers, and servants of the University and of all other institutions controlled by the Council.
- (c) To appoint and remove examiners, assessors, and moderators:

Provided that the fee or stipend which the Council may pay to any examiner, assessor, or moderator shall be in accordance with a scale fixed by the Council with the concurrence of the University Grants Committee.

**19. Conferment of degrees** — (1) The Council shall have power to confer any degree or to award any other academic qualification specified in the Second Schedule to this Act.

(2) The Council may from time to time, by statute, add to or omit from the list of degrees and other academic qualifications specified in the said Second Schedule the name or description of any degree or other academic qualification or otherwise amend the list; and every such statute shall have effect according to its tenor:

Provided that no statute adding to the said list of degrees shall come into force until it has been approved by the University Grants Committee.

(3) The Council shall, in accordance with such conditions as it may prescribe, have power to confer any degree or to award any academic distinction as an honorary degree or academic distinction:

Provided that no honorary degree or academic distinction shall be conferred on or awarded to any person by the Council unless that person has been recommended theretofore by a joint committee of the Council and the Senate set up in accordance with the statutes or regulations of the University.

**20. Awards of certificates, etc.** — The Council shall have power, under such conditions as it thinks fit, to award certificates, fellowships, scholarships, bursaries and prizes, and to make other awards.

**21. Lectures to members of the public** — The Council shall have power to provide such lectures and instruction for any persons, whether or not they are members of the University, as it thinks fit, and on such conditions as it thinks fit, and may award certificates to any of them.

**22. Power to make statutes and regulations** — (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act and any other Act, the Council may from time to time make such statutes of the University as may in its opinion be necessary or expedient for the administration of the affairs of the University.

(2) Subject to the provisions of this Act and any other Act and to the statutes (if any) of the University, the Council may from time to time make such regulations of the University as may in its opinion be necessary or expedient for the administration of the affairs of the University.

(3) Without limiting the generality of the foregoing provisions of this section it is hereby declared that statutes and regulations so made may prescribe any matters which by this Act are required or permitted to be prescribed or with respect to which statutes or regulations are, in the opinion of the Council, necessary or expedient for giving effect to this Act.

(4) Subject to the provisions of section 36 of this Act and, where so required by any Act, to the consent of the University Grants Committee or the Curriculum Committee, the Council may make statutes or regulations

with respect to all or any of the degrees and other academic qualifications, certificates, fellowships, scholarships, bursaries, prizes, and awards of the University which the Council may confer or award, and with respect to general courses of study and personal courses of study for the same.

(5) All such statutes and regulations shall be in writing.

(6) No statute passed by the Council of the University as aforesaid shall come into force until it has been approved by the Governor-General.

(7) All such statutes and regulations shall have effect according to their tenor, and shall be published by the Council

(8) A copy of any such statute or regulation under the seal of the University shall be sufficient evidence in all Courts of the same and of its having been made and (where necessary) approved in accordance with this section.

**23. Seal of the University** — The seal of the University shall be in the custody of the Registrar or such other officer as the Council may appoint, and shall not be affixed to any document except pursuant to a resolution of the Council, or by the authority of a resolution of a committee of the Council acting in accordance with an authority for that purpose conferred upon it by the Council.

**24. Admission of students** — (1) Every person who is academically qualified for entrance to a University in New Zealand in accordance with the requirements of the Universities Entrance Board shall be eligible to matriculate at the University without further examination.

(2) The Council shall have power to decline to enrol any student at the University, or in a particular course or courses, or in classes in a particular subject or subjects on the ground of —

(a) The person not being of good character; or

(b) Misconduct or a breach of discipline on the part of the student; or

(c) The Person not having attained the age of sixteen years on the previous thirty-first day of December, or the person not having attained any other age prescribed in respect of any course of study by any course regulations within the meaning of the Universities Act 1961; or

(d) The person being enrolled for full-time instruction in a secondary school, technical school, combined school, district high school, or registered private secondary or technical school;

or

(e) Insufficient academic progress by the student after a reasonable trial at the University or at any other University or University College of Agriculture; or

(f) Insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers in the University or in a faculty, department, class, or course of the University;

Provided that the Council shall exercise its power under this paragraph in accordance with criteria and procedures prescribed from time to time by it after consultation with the University Grants Committee.

(g) The person not having satisfied any conditions prescribed by any course regulations within the meaning of the Universities Act 1961.

(3) The Council shall, as soon as practicable after the commencement of this Act, make a statute or statutes governing the persons and classes of persons who may be enrolled or refuse enrolment as external students of the University, and the conditions under which, and the subjects and course for which, they may be so enrolled or refused enrolment. The Council may from time to time make further statutes for all or any of the purposes specified in this subsection, and may by statute repeal or amend any statute made under this subsection. No statute made under this subsection shall come into force until it has been approved by the University Grants Committee.

(4) For the purposes of paragraph (f) of subsection (2) of this section the Council may, if it thinks fit, from time to time make statutes defining the circumstances in which insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers in the University or in a faculty, department, class, or course of the University shall be deemed to exist, and the maximum number of students who may be admitted to any faculty, department, course or class. No such statute shall come into force until it has been approved by the University Grants Committee. Every such definition that is made by statute under this subsection shall be conclusive for all purposes.

(5) Where any person has obtained in any University or other place of learning any degree or other academic qualification or part thereof which the council is empowered to confer or award, the Council may admit that person at its discretion *ad eundem statum* in the University without further examination and may withdraw any such admission at any time.

(6) A person admitted to the status of the holder of a degree or other academic qualification or part thereof to the University shall not be deemed to be the holder of the degree or other academic qualification or part thereof, nor shall he be entitled to be enrolled as a graduate of the University, but he shall be entitled to



proceed to any degree or other academic qualification of which the degree or other academic qualification or part thereof to the status of which he has been admitted is a prerequisite upon the same terms and conditions as those upon which a holder of the degree or other academic qualification or part thereof is entitled so to proceed.

(7) Where a person who has been a student of another University and has matriculated at any university in New Zealand is admitted to the University of Auckland, the Council of that University shall give him such credits as it considers appropriate for any units or subjects which he has already passed in New Zealand and with which he has been credited towards a degree or other academic qualification in his former University or grant him such exemptions as it considers appropriate, so that he may complete his course without suffering undue hardship as a consequence of his transfer.

(8) Any person who is eligible to be admitted or who has been admitted to a degree of the University of New Zealand, or who has been admitted *ad eundem* at graduate status by the Senate of the University of New Zealand shall be deemed to be of equivalent status in the University of Auckland for the purpose of proceeding to a degree or other academic qualification of the University of Auckland, and shall, subject to the course regulations for the degree or other academic qualification for which he is a candidate, be eligible to proceed to the degree or other academic qualification.

Provided that, in approving his personal course of study, the senate may, at its descretion, require any such person to complete such supplementary courses as it thinks fit either as a prerequisite to or concurrently with his course of study for the degree or other academic qualification for which he is a candidate.

(9) The provisions of subsection (8) of this section shall, with the necessary modifications, apply to any person who is eligible to be awarded or who has been awarded a diploma of the University of New Zealand, or to any person who has been admitted *ad eundem* by the Senate of the University of New Zealand to the status of a holder of a diploma of that University.

#### *The Chancellor and Pro-Chancellor*

**25. Election of Chancellor** — (1) At its first meeting held in the month of July in the year nineteen hundred and sixty-two, and in every third year thereafter, the Council shall elect one of its members to be the Chancellor of the University of Auckland:

Provided that the Vice-Chancellor or any other person who is for the time being a member of the Council under paragraph (b) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act or a member of the Council appointed by the Senate shall not be so elected.

(2) The Chancellor shall be the ceremonial head of the University and the Chairman of the Council.

(3) Unless the Chancellor resigns from that office or vacates his office as a member of the Council under subsection (1) of section 11 of this Act, he shall continue to hold the office until his successor is elected, and (subject to the provisions of section 10 of this Act) shall be eligible for re-election:

Provided that, upon any person completing two consecutive terms each of three years as Chancellor, he shall cease to be eligible for re-election as Chancellor until after the lapse of a period of three years during which he did not hold that office.

(4) If the Chancellor resigns from that office or vacates his office as a member of the Council under subsection (1) of section 11 of this Act, the Council shall elect some eligible person to be the Chancellor for the remainder of the term for which the vacating Chancellor was elected.

(5) For the purpose of the election of the Chancellor for any term, the Registrar of the University shall preside at the meeting, but shall not be entitled to vote. In the event of an equality of votes the election shall be determined by lot.

**26. Election of Pro-Chancellor** — (1) At its first meeting held in the month of July in each year, the Council shall elect one of its members who is eligible to be elected as Chancellor to be the Pro-Chancellor of the University of Auckland.

(2) Unless the Pro-Chancellor sooner resigns from that office or vacates his office as a member of the Council under subsection (1) of section 11 of this Act, he shall continue to hold the office of Pro-Chancellor until his successor is elected, and (subject to the provisions of section 10 of this Act) shall be eligible for re-election.

(3) If the Pro-Chancellor resigns from that office or vacates his office as a member of the Council under subsection (1) of section 11 of this Act or is elected to be the Chancellor he shall thereupon vacate the office of Pro-Chancellor, and the Council shall elect one of its members who is eligible to be elected as Chancellor to be the Pro-Chancellor of the University of Auckland for the remainder of the term.

(4) During any vacancy in the office of Chancellor, or in the absence of the Chancellor from New Zealand, or while he is incapacitated by sickness or otherwise, the Pro-Chancellor shall have and may exercise and

perform all the powers and duties of the Chancellor, other than his powers in relation to the conferring of degrees and the award of other academic qualifications and distinctions.

**27. Right to preside at meetings of Council** – The Chancellor shall preside at every meeting of the Council at which he is present. If at any meeting of the Council the Chancellor is not present or there is no Chancellor, the Pro-Chancellor shall preside at the meeting; and if the Pro-Chancellor also is not present at the meeting or there is no Pro-Chancellor, the Council shall appoint some member present to preside at that meeting. The Pro-Chancellor or person so appointed shall have and may exercise in any such case all the powers and functions of the Chancellor for the purposes of the meeting.

*The Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellor*

**28. Vice-Chancellor** – (1) The Council may from time to time appoint some fit and proper person to be the Vice-Chancellor of the University of Auckland.

(2) The Vice-Chancellor shall have the following functions, powers and duties:

- (a) He shall be the academic and administrative head of the University;
  - (b) He shall, by virtue of his office, be a member of the Council, Chairman of the Senate, a member of every faculty, and a member of every committee set up by the Council or the Senate;
  - (c) He shall have such duties as the Council, subject to the provisions of this Act, may from time to time specify;
  - (d) He may, during the intervals between meetings of the Senate, exercise alone (but subject always to the control of the Council and to a right of appeal to the Senate) such of the powers of the Senate as to maintain the discipline of the University as may be prescribed in that behalf by statutes or regulations made under the authority of this Act;
  - (e) On the occurrence from any cause of a vacancy in the office of Chancellor, or in the absence of the Chancellor from New Zealand, or while he is incapacitated by sickness or otherwise, the Vice-Chancellor shall exercise the powers of the Chancellor in relation to the conferring of degrees and the award of other academic qualifications and distinctions.
- (3) The Vice-Chancellor may appoint any member of the Senate to attend in his place the meeting of any board, committee, or other body which is not constituted by or under this Act (whether created by or under any other Act or otherwise) of which the Vice-Chancellor is a member. Any person so appointed shall while so attending be deemed for all purposes to be a member of the board, committee, or other body and may exercise all the rights and powers which the Vice-Chancellor could have exercised had he been personally present. The fact that any member of the Senate so attends shall be sufficient evidence of his authority so to do.

**29. Deputy Vice-Chancellor** – (1) The Council may from time to time appoint a professor as the Deputy Vice-Chancellor of the University of Auckland.

- (2) The Deputy Vice-Chancellor shall hold office for such period as may be determined by the Council.
- (3) The Deputy Vice-Chancellor may exercise such of the Vice-Chancellor's functions, powers, and duties, whether arising under any Act or otherwise, as the Council, upon the recommendation of the Vice-Chancellor or (in the absence of such a recommendation) of its own motion, may from time to time either specially or generally delegate to the Deputy Vice-Chancellor.
- (4) In addition to the powers conferred upon him by subsection (3) of this section, the Deputy Vice-Chancellor shall, during any vacancy in the office of Vice-Chancellor, or in the absence of the Vice-Chancellor from New Zealand, or while he is incapacitated by sickness or otherwise, be Chairman of the Senate and may exercise such other of the Chancellor's functions, powers and duties, whether arising under any Act or otherwise, as the Council may determine.

*The Senate*

**30. Constitution of Senate** – (1) There shall be a Senate of the University of Auckland.

(2) The Senate shall consist of:

- (a) The Vice-Chancellor;
- (b) The professors of the University;
- (c) The librarian of the University;
- (d) As many full-time lecturers, and each to be elected in such manner, as the Council may from time to time determine:

- (e) As many students, to be appointed by the Executive Committee of the Students' Association, as the Council may from time to time determine;
- (f) As many and such other officers or members of the University as the Council may from time to time appoint.
- (3) The elections of members of the Senate under subsection (2) (d) of this section shall be conducted and determined in the manner prescribed by statutes or regulations of the University, which statutes or regulations shall, in relation to any such election, specify —
  - (a) The time the election is to be held; and
  - (b) The classes of person eligible to vote; and
  - (c) The number of members each such class may elect; and
  - (d) The terms of office of the members to be elected.
- (3A) For the purposes of this section, 'student' means a person who is enrolled for a degree or diploma as a full-time or part-time internal student of the University.
- (3B) The term of office of every member of the Senate pursuant to paragraph (e) or paragraph (f) of subsection (2) of this section shall be the term specified in statutes or regulations of the University.
- (3C) Before making any determination or appointment under paragraph (d) or paragraph (e) or paragraph (f) of subsection (2) of this section, the Council shall seek and consider the advice of the Senate.
- (4) The Senate of the University of Auckland is hereby declared to be the same body as the Professorial Board of the University of Auckland constituted by section 23 of the University of Auckland Act 1954; and every reference in any enactment or document to the Professorial Board of the University shall hereafter be read as a reference to the Senate of the University of Auckland.

**31. Chairman of Senate** — (1) Whenever there is no Vice-Chancellor or Deputy Vice-Chancellor in office, the Senate shall, at its first meeting held thereafter and at its first meeting in each year, elect one of its members, being a professor, to be the Chairman of the Senate; and if it fails to do so the Council may appoint a professor to be the Chairman of the Senate.

(2) The person so appointed shall hold office until the appointment of a Vice-Chancellor or Deputy Vice-Chancellor or until the election or appointment of his successor under this section, whichever happens first, and shall be eligible for re-election or reappointment, but shall not hold office for more than two terms in succession.

**32. Meeting of Senate** — (1) The person who is entitled in accordance with the provisions of sections 28, 29, and 31 of this Act to be the Chairman of the Senate at any meeting thereof at which he is present shall preside at that meeting. In the absence of any such person from any such meeting, the members present shall elect one of their number to be the Chairman for the purposes of that meeting and the person so elected shall preside at that meeting.

(2) At any meeting of the Senate the person presiding shall have a deliberative vote, and in the case of an equality of votes shall also have a casting vote.

(3) Every question before the Senate shall be decided by a majority of the valid votes recorded thereon.

(4) At every meeting of the Senate a quorum shall consist of such number of members as the Senate from time to time determines, and no business shall be transacted unless a quorum is present.

(5) Save as expressly provided in this Act, the Senate shall have power to make rules as to the time and place of its meetings and the procedure thereat:

Provided that it shall meet at least once in each year.

**33. Proceedings of Senate not affected by vacancies, etc.** — No act or proceeding of the Senate, or of any committee thereof, or of any person acting as a member of the Senate, shall be invalidated in consequence of there being a vacancy in the number of the Senate at that time of that act or proceeding, or of the subsequent discovery that there was some defect in the appointment of any person so acting, or that he was incapable of being or had ceased to be such a member.

**34. Functions of Senate** — (1) The Senate shall have power of its own motion, or at the request of the Council, to make recommendations or reports to the Council on any matter affecting the University.

(2) The Senate shall be specially charged with:

- (a) The duty of furthering and co-ordinating the work of faculties and departments and of encouraging scholarship and research; and
- (b) The control of the Library.

(3) The Senate shall have power to deal with all matters relating to the maintenance of discipline amongst the students of the University, and shall have such powers of fining, suspending, and expelling students guilty of

misconduct or breaches of discipline, and such other powers of whatsoever kind as may be conferred on it by statutes or regulations made under the authority of this Act:

Provided that any person aggrieved by any action of the Senate may appeal to the Council, whose decision shall be final.

(4) The Senate shall have power to approve personal courses of study proposed by individual students:

Provided that the Senate shall not approve personal courses of study for a degree or other academic qualification in such a way as to introduce general restrictions not provided for in the course regulations governing the course of study for that degree or other academic qualification.

**35. Senate may appoint committees** — (1) The Senate may from time to time appoint standing or special committees.

(2) The Senate may delegate any of its powers and duties (including any powers and duties which it has by delegation from the Council or any other body or person) to any such committee or to any person; and the committee or person may, without confirmation by the Senate, exercise or perform those powers or duties in like manner and with the same effect as the Senate could itself have exercised or performed them:

Provided that the Council may prohibit, or impose conditions in respect of, the delegation by the Senate of any power or duty that is delegated to the Senate by the Council.

(3) Every such delegation shall be revocable at will, and no such delegation shall prevent the exercise of any power by the Senate.

(4) Unless and until any such delegation is revoked, it shall continue in force according to its tenor.

(5) It shall not be necessary that any person who is appointed to be a member of any such committee, or to whom any such delegation is made, shall be a member of the Senate.

**36. Council to consult Senate on academic matters** — (1) The Council shall not make any statute or regulation or decision in relation to entrance to the University or to any course of study or to the prescription of any subject for any degree or other academic qualification or certificate, or to any fellowship, scholarship, bursary, prize, or award or the examination or qualification therefor, or to the admission, attendance, and discipline of students, or to examinations and other academic tests, or to the institution of the offices of professor or lecturer, or to the appointment or removal of academic staff, including the Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellor, or to the appointment of examiners, assessors, or moderators, or to honorary degrees and other academic distinctions, or to the affiliation of any institution or branch or department thereof, until it has first received and considered any recommendation that the Senate may make in that behalf, unless the Senate, having had a reasonable opportunity to make such a recommendation, has failed to do so:

Provided that a decision to confer an honorary degree or academic distinction shall be made in the manner provided in subsection (3) of section 19 of this Act, and nothing in this section shall apply to such a decision: Provided also that in the case of appointments to the academic staff, or the removal of academic staff, the Council shall need only to secure a recommendation from a committee of the Senate appointed under section 35 of this Act.

(2) Nothing in the foregoing provisions of this section shall limit any power conferred on the Senate by section 35 of this Act to delegate any of its powers and duties.

#### *Affiliated Institutions*

**37. Admission of affiliated institutions** — (1) The Council may, on such terms and conditions and subject to such inspections, reports, and inquiries as it thinks fit, affiliate other institutions or branches or departments thereof situated within the Auckland University District, or recognise selected members of the staffs thereof as teachers of the University, or admit the members thereof to any of the privileges of the University and accept attendance at courses of study in such institutions or branches or departments thereof in place of such part of the attendance at courses of study in the University and upon such terms and conditions and subject to such regulations as may from time to time be determined by the Council.

(2) The Council may at any time revoke any such affiliation, recognition, admission, or acceptance.

#### *Financial Provisions*

**38. Benefactions to be strictly applied** — Subject to the provisions of the Charitable Trust Act 1957, all benefactions at any time vested in or enjoyed by the University with a declaration of trust, or as an endowment for the promotion of any particular branch of science or learning, shall be applied strictly by the Council accordingly.

**39. Application of income and capital of University** — (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act and any other Act and to the terms of any trust or endowment, the income and capital of the University shall be applied in doing whatever the Council thinks expedient in order that the University may best accomplish the purpose for which it is established.

(2) Without limiting the generality of the foregoing provisions of this section it is hereby declared that the Council may from time to time, out of income which may be applied in accordance with those provisions, create, maintain, and add to a fund or funds for any one or more of the purposes for which that income may be applied.

**40. Money to be paid into bank** — (1) All money received by the University amounting to twenty dollars and upwards shall, as soon as practicable after it has come into the hands of the proper officer of the University, be paid into such bank account or accounts of the University as the Council from time to time determines.

(2) No such money shall be withdrawn from the bank except by authority of the Council and by cheque, or other instrument, signed by an officer of the University approved by the Council, and countersigned by a member of the Council, or by another officer of the University, approved by the Council:

Provided that it shall be lawful, with the prior consent in writing of the Audit Office and subject to such conditions as the Audit Office prescribes, for any money to be paid by the Council by cheque issued by means of a cheque-writing machine, and every such cheque issued by means of such a machine and bearing a facsimile of the signatures, of the persons authorised pursuant to the provisions of this section to sign and countersign cheques shall be deemed to have been duly signed and countersigned in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**41. Loan money to be paid into a separate account** — All money borrowed by the Council on behalf of or for the purposes of the University, other than money borrowed under Section 51 of this Act, shall be paid into a separate bank account in the name of the loan, and shall not be drawn out of the bank or expended except for the special purposes for which it was borrowed.

**42. Investment of money** — Subject to the terms of any trust or endowment, any money belonging to or vested in the University and available for investment may be invested in accordance with the provisions of the Trustee Act 1956 as to the investment of trust funds, or in such other manner as the Minister of Finance from time to time approves.

**43. Provision for Common Fund investment** — (1) The Council may at any time, if it thinks fit, establish the following funds and account:

- (a) A Common Fund to be known as the University of Auckland Common Fund;
- (b) A Reserve Fund to be known as the University of Auckland Common Fund Reserve Fund;
- (c) A Common Fund Income Account to be known as the University of Auckland Common Fund Income Account.

(2) Subject to the provisions of this section, if the Council has established the said funds and account, it may invest any trust funds in its possession, whether at the time in a state of investment or not, whether they came into its possession before or after the commencement of this Act, and whether they comprise the whole or part of the trust estate to which they belong, either —

- (a) On a separate account in respect of the trust estate to which the funds belong; or
- (b) If the funds are not directed to be invested in some other specified manner, and investment in the said Common Fund is not inconsistent with the terms of the trust instrument (if any) governing the funds, as part of the said Common Fund.

(3) All funds forming part of the said Common Fund shall be invested in the manner required by Section 42 of this Act.

(4) Where any funds of a trust estate are in the possession of the Council and are lawfully invested in any investment in which the said Common Fund may be invested as aforesaid, then, if in accordance with paragraph (b) of subsection (2) of this section the funds could be invested as part of the said Common Fund, the Council may transfer that investment to the said Common Fund and give credit in that Fund to the trust estate for such amount as it considers proper, having regard to its duty to be fair to all those interested in the said Common Fund and to those beneficially interested in the capital and income of the trust estate to which the investment belongs. Upon any investment being so transferred it shall cease to form part of the trust estate to which it formally belonged.

(5) Investments made from funds forming part of the said Common Fund shall not be made on account of or belong to any particular trust estate, but the Council shall cause to be kept an account showing at all times the entitlement of each trust estate in the said Common Fund.

(6) All income derived from the said Common Fund and from the investments and money included therein shall be paid into the said Common Fund Income Account.

(7) In each year interest on the amount of the entitlement of each trust estate in the said Common Fund shall be transferred from the said Common Fund Income Account and credited to that trust estate at such uniform rate as may from time to time be determined by the Council:

Provided that in no case shall the rate so determined be lower than one half per cent below the rate which would be so paid if all the income paid into the said Common Fund Income Account in that year was so transferred.

(8) The Council shall also each year pay into the said Reserve Fund –

(a) All income in the said Common Fund Income Account which is not transferred to any trust estate in that year in accordance with subsection (7) of this section:

(b) All capital gains arising in connection with the said Common Fund.

(9) The funds forming part of the said Reserve Fund shall be kept separate from all other trust funds, and shall be invested in the manner authorised by Section 42 of this Act.

(10) All income paid into the said Reserve Fund as aforesaid, and all income derived from the said Reserve Fund and from the investments and money included therein shall be applied as the Council thinks fit in any one or more of the following ways:

(a) Towards augmenting the capital of the said Reserve Fund:

(b) Towards stabilising or increasing the income of the said Common Fund:

(c) Towards reinstating any losses of capital in the said Common Fund.

(11) The capital of the said Reserve Fund may, if the Council thinks fit, be applied in reinstating any losses of capital in the said Common Fund.

(12) The Council may at its discretion at any time withdraw from the said Common Fund any amount for the time being to the credit of any trust estate in the said Common Fund; and where any amount is being so withdrawn –

(a) If the capital of the said Reserve Fund has increased while the said amount was in the said Common Fund, the Council shall pay out of the said reserve Fund and add to the amount so withdrawn, as capital, such amount (if any) as it considers equitable having regard to the length of the period during which the amount was in the said Common Fund and to the proportion which the said amount bears to the average amount of the total assets of the said Common Fund during that period:

(b) If losses of capital in the said Common Fund have occurred during the said period, then, so far as those losses have not been reinstated and cannot be reinstated from the amounts in the said Reserve Fund at the time of the withdrawal, that amount shall bear its proportion of those losses, as determined by the Council, and the amount being so withdrawn shall abate accordingly.

**44. Travelling allowances and expenses of members of Council –** (1) The Council may pay to each of its members travelling allowances and expenses; and, in respect of travel in New Zealand, those allowances and expenses shall not exceed those payable in accordance with the Fees and Travelling Allowances Act 1951, and the provisions of that Act shall apply accordingly.

(2) In respect of travel in New Zealand the Council is hereby declared to be a statutory Board within the meaning of the Fees and Travelling Allowances Act 1951.

**45. Council may insure members against personal accident while engaged in duties –** The Council may from time to time enter into contracts of insurance of a type for the time being approved by the Minister of Education insuring members of the Council against loss from personal accident arising out of and in the course of the exercise of their powers or duties as members of the Council, and may pay the premiums payable in respect of those contracts.

**46. Unauthorised expenditure of Council –** The Council may in any financial year of the University expend out of the general fund of the University for purposes not authorised by any law for the time being in force any sum or sums not exceeding in the aggregate a one-thousandth part of the revenue of the University from all sources for the immediately preceding financial year.

**47. Council to prescribe fees –** There shall be payable by the students of the University or any of them such fees as the Council from time to time prescribes:

Provided that scales of tuition and of examination fees may be so prescribed only with the concurrence of the University Grants Committee.

**48. Fees payable to associations of students –** The Council shall have power to impose and collect from time to time from students of the University or from any of them such fees as it considers reasonable for the benefit of any association or organisation of students of the University, and to dispose of those fees accordingly.

**49. Grants by Council to associations of staff or students** – The Council may from time to time make grants or loans from its funds on such terms and conditions as it thinks fit to any association or organisation of staff or students of the University.

**50. Powers of Council in respect of property** – (1) Without limiting or in any way affecting any other powers conferred upon the Council by the Auckland University College Reserves Act 1885 or this Act or any other Act or by law, it is hereby declared that, subject to the provisions of this section, the Council may do all or any of the following things on behalf of and for the purposes of the University, namely:

- (a) Establish, build, maintain, repair, add to, alter, rebuild, reinstate, conduct, manage, and control halls of residence for students and academic staff, and houses for academic staff and any other of its employees whatsoever, and buildings and rooms and other facilities for the recreation or social use of students, academic staff and other employees;
- (b) Purchase, take on lease, or otherwise acquire any real or personal property for any purposes whatsoever in connection with the University or any institution controlled by the Council;
- (c) With the consent of the Minister of Education in the case of land and in other cases without his consent, sell or otherwise alienate any right, title, estate, or interest in any real or personal property vested in the University;
- (d) With the consent of the Minister of Education, borrow money from the Crown or, on such terms and conditions as may be fixed by the Minister of Finance, from any corporation or person; and (for the purpose of securing any money so borrowed) mortgage, charge, or pledge any right, title, estate, or interest in any land vested in the University;
- (e) Grant leases of any land vested in the University; and for that purpose the Council is hereby declared to be a leasing authority within the meaning of the Public Bodies' Leases Act 1908;
- (f) On such conditions as may be prescribed by the Minister of Finance, guarantee loans made to members of the staff for housing purposes by other persons and bodies.

(2) Notwithstanding anything to the Contrary in the Public Bodies' Leases Act 1908 or in any lease granted by the Council, the Council may –

- (a) In its absolute discretion, at any time not earlier than three years nor later than one year before the date of the expiration of any lease of any land vested in the University that does not confer a right of renewal, grant a renewal of the lease upon such terms as it thinks fit; and the provisions of this paragraph shall apply to any such lease whether granted before or after the commencement of this Act;
- (b) With the consent of the Minister of Education, grant leases of land vested in the University upon such terms as that Minister may approve;
- (c) Grant leases and licences for the extraction and removal of coal and other minerals from land vested in the University at such rent or royalties and upon such terms and conditions as the Council may determine.

(3) The Minister of Education is hereby empowered to make advances upon such terms as the Minister of Finance may approve to the Council for the purposes of the University out of money appropriated by Parliament for the purpose.

**51. Power to borrow by way of overdraft, or temporary loan** – In addition to the powers conferred by section 50 of this Act, it shall be lawful for the Council, in anticipation of its revenue, from time to time to borrow money by way of overdraft or on temporary loan on behalf of and for the purposes of the University: Provided that the amount so borrowed shall not at any time exceed one-twelfth of the revenue of the University from all sources during the immediately preceding financial year of the University:

Provided also that at the end of any financial year of the University the amount of the overdraft or loan shall not exceed the outstanding revenue due to the University in respect of that financial year.

**52. Annual report and statement of accounts** – (1) The Council shall, during the month of April, in every year, furnish to the Minister of Education and to the University Grants Committee a report on the University during the immediately preceding year.

(2) The Council shall also, as soon as practicable after the end of every financial year of the University, furnish to the Minister of Education and to the University Grants Committee a statement of the assets and liabilities of the University as at the end of that financial year, together with an account of income and expenditure showing the financial transactions for that year, which statement and account shall be audited by the Audit Office.

*Repeals and Savings*

**53. Repeals and savings** – (1) The enactments specified in the Third Schedule to this Act are hereby repealed.

(2) All bylaws which originated under any of the enactments hereby repealed or under the corresponding provisions of any former enactment and are subsisting or in force on the commencement of this Act shall enure for the purposes of this Act as fully and effectually as if they had originated as regulations under the corresponding provisions of this Act, and accordingly shall, where necessary, be deemed to be regulations and to have so originated; and every reference to any such bylaw in any Act, regulation, order, or other enactment, or in any instrument or document whatsoever shall, after the commencement of this Act, unless inconsistent with the context, be read as a reference to a Regulation made under the corresponding provisions of this Act.



## SCHEDULES

### FIRST SCHEDULE

#### THE AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY DISTRICT

Section 4 (1)

The Provincial District of Auckland and those portions of the Provincial District of Taranaki which are within the boundaries of the Counties of Waitomo and Taumarunui.

### SECOND SCHEDULE

#### DEGREES AND OTHER ACADEMIC QUALIFICATIONS

Section 19 (1)

##### *Degrees:*

Bachelor and Master of Architecture  
 Bachelor and Master of Arts  
 Bachelor and Master of Commerce  
 Bachelor and Master of Engineering  
 Bachelor and Master of Fine Arts  
 Bachelor and Master of Human Biology  
 Master of Jurisprudence  
 Bachelor, Bachelor with Honours, Master, and Doctor of Laws  
 Doctor of Literature  
 Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery  
 Master of Medical Science  
 Bachelor, Bachelor (Performance), Bachelor (Performance) with Honours, Master, and Doctor of Music  
 Bachelor of Optometry  
 Master and Doctor of Philosophy  
 Bachelor, Bachelor with Honours, Master, and Doctor of Science  
 Bachelor and Master of Town Planning

##### *Diplomas in:*

Broadcast Communication  
 Business and Industrial Administration  
 Clinical Psychology  
 Computational Mathematics  
 Criminology  
 Drama  
 Education  
 Educational Psychology  
 Energy Technology (Geothermal)  
 Guidance and Counselling  
 Gynaecology and Obstetrics  
 Local Government and Administration  
 Mathematical Education  
 Music and Music with Honours  
 Obstetrics  
 Optometry  
 Paediatrics  
 Psychiatry  
 Statistics  
 Town Planning  
 Valuation

### THIRD SCHEDULE

Section 53 (1)

#### ENACTMENTS REPEALED

1954, No 74 – The University of Auckland Act 1954.

1975, No 25 – The University of Auckland Amendment Act 1957.

## COURT OF CONVOCATION STATUTE 1962

Pursuant to Section 4 of the University of Auckland Act 1961

1. This Statute may be cited as the Court of Convocation Statute 1962.
2. The Registrar of the University shall prepare and maintain a register to be known as the Register of the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District and shall (subject to Section 5 hereof) enrol thereon the names and addresses (so far as such addresses are known) of all persons entitled to be so enrolled under Section 4 of the said Act and under Section 3 of this Statute.
3. Under and for the purposes of subsection 5 of Section 4 of the said Act each person shall be entitled to have his name enrolled on the Register of the Court of Convocation (without fee) who being a graduate of the University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reason of having been admitted *ad eundem gradum* before the 1st day of January, 1943, is not by reason of that qualification enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation for any other University District in New Zealand and
  - (i) under Section 23A of the New Zealand University Act 1908 was enrolled or entitled to be enrolled on the register of the District Court of Convocation of the Auckland University District at the 31st day of December, 1961, or
  - (ii) was an undergraduate member of the University of Auckland at the 31st day of December, 1961, and became a graduate of the University of New Zealand after that date, or
  - (iii) at a date after the 31st day of December, 1961, and immediately before his enrolment had resided in the Auckland University District for a period of not less than three calendar months.
4. Except as provided in Section 5 hereof it shall not be necessary for any person to be so enrolled on the register to apply for enrolment.
5. Every person who is entitled to be enrolled on the register under paragraph (iii) of Section 3 of this Statute may apply to the Registrar for enrolment and upon making that application and producing such evidence of the facts and matters entitling him to enrolment as the Registrar may reasonably require shall be enrolled on the register.
6. Any enrolled member of the Court may, by notice under his hand delivered to the Registrar, object to the register on the ground that any person whose name is on the register does not possess the necessary qualifications.
7. The Registrar shall enquire into and dispose of any such objection forthwith after receiving it.
8. Any person aggrieved by any decision or act of the Registrar relating to the register may appeal therefrom to the Council by notice under his hand, addressed to the Chancellor, and delivered at the University not later than 5 o'clock on the afternoon of the seventh day before the day on which the register is to be closed for the purposes of an impending election.
9. Every such appeal shall be heard and determined by the Council or a Committee appointed by the Council and the Registrar shall amend the register in such manner as the Council or the Committee when disposing of the appeal directs.
10. (a) Any member of the Court having changed his address shown on the register may request the Registrar to amend the register in respect of that address and the Registrar shall make such amendment accordingly.  
(b) The Registrar being satisfied (otherwise than under the preceding paragraph (a) of this section) that the address of a member of the Court has been changed may amend the register in respect of that address provided that he shall forthwith post notices of that amendment to the member at both the old and the new address.
11. The Registrar shall expunge from the register the name of any person who has died or has ceased to be entitled to be enrolled thereon, and he shall be entitled to make any amendment of name made necessary by marriage.

## THE COUNCIL ELECTIONS (COURT OF CONVOCATION REPRESENTATIVES) REGULATIONS

1. These regulations may be cited as the Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Regulations.
2. For the purposes of conducting the elections to the Council by the Court of Convocation an electoral roll shall be prepared and revised from time to time of the names of those members of the Court who are eligible to vote in accordance with these regulations.
3. The members of the Court who are eligible to vote at an election by the Court are those members (but no other members) who
  - (a) voted at the last two preceding elections
  - (b) (having had their names entered on the Court register since the penultimate election) voted at the last preceding election.
  - (c) have had their names entered on the Court register since the last preceding election
  - (d) (not being in any of the foregoing categories) apply for a voting paper by letter delivered or posted to the Returning Officer so as to be received by him on or before 5 o'clock in the afternoon of the 14th day preceding the day on which the election is to be held.
4. In these Regulations and the forms contained herein:
 

'the roll' means the electoral roll prepared in accordance with this regulation

'elector' and 'voter' respectively refer to those members of the Court whose names are for the time being entered on the electoral roll.
5. The date of election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported to the Council.
6. Whenever any election is to be held the Returning Officer shall (not less than forty days before the election) by notice in at least two newspapers, published in the City of Auckland, call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with him on or before a day, to be fixed by him, being not less than ten days from the date of the first advertisement, which notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect).

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of Member(s) of the Council by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.

An election of member(s) will be held at 5.00 pm on the ..... day of ..... 19 ..... at the office of the Registrar of the University, Princes Street, in the City of Auckland.

No person shall be recognised as a candidate at this election unless he shall have been previously nominated in a document signed by two electors, and unless such nomination paper shall have been delivered to the Returning Officer by postal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 pm on the ..... day of ..... 19 .....

The roll of electors will remain open for inspection and additions until 5.00 pm on the fourteenth day before the election and will then be closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer will issue the voting paper to such voters as are shown in the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge).

.....  
Returning Officer

7. The roll shall be closed at five o'clock in the afternoon of the twenty first day immediately preceding the day on which an election is to be held and shall continue to be closed until the election is completed; and no name shall be entered on the roll while it is closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer shall issue the voting papers simultaneously to such voters as are shown in the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge); nor shall any voting paper be sent to any person whose address is not within New Zealand, Cook Islands, Fiji, Western Samoa or Australia.

**Note:** The voting papers for overseas members to be posted airmail.

8. Notwithstanding anything above set out, the Returning Officer shall issue a voting paper to any elector whose name appears on the roll and who shall apply in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting paper has been issued to him.
9. At every election the votes shall be given by sealed voting papers issued by the Returning Officer in the form prescribed by these regulations, delivered to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or posted to him in a sealed envelope on or before that day.
10. In any election to fill a casual vacancy the notice of advertisement calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.
11. If an election for filling a casual vacancy be appointed to be held at the same time as an election for the filling of a vacancy occurring by rotation, hereinafter called an ordinary vacancy, separate voting papers shall be issued for each election and each nomination and each voting paper shall specify to which election it relates, and at the time of election the Returning Officer shall first complete the election for filling the casual vacancy or vacancies; and when such election shall be complete, he shall at once proceed to complete the election for filling the ordinary vacancy.
12. When two or more elections are to take place as contemplated in the last preceding Regulation, then in every advertisement relating to such an election, notice shall be given that no nomination paper will be valid, unless it distinctly indicates to which of the vacancies it shall relate.
13. Nomination shall be made by two persons qualified to vote and shall contain the written consent of the candidate to his nomination.
14. Nomination shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND**

Election to be held on ..... the ..... day of ..... 19.....  
of Members of the Council by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.

We, ..... and ..... being duly qualified voters, hereby  
nominate

.....  
of .....  
for election to the Council by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.

Date .....

I consent to the above nomination.

.....

15. If the nominations received do not exceed the number of vacancies, the Returning Officer shall declare the candidate(s) duly elected.
16. Every voting paper shall be in the form following or to the like effect, that is to say:

## A. Front of voting paper

<p>VOTING PAPER</p> <p>COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND</p> <p>ELECTION OF MEMBERS</p> <p>By the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.</p>	

Directions

There are ..... vacancies. The voter may vote for any number of candidates up to the maximum number of candidates to be elected.

The voter is to put a cross (X) in the square opposite to the name or names of the candidates for whom he desires to vote.

**THE VOTER *MUST* SIGN HIS NAME AND ADDRESS ON THE BACK OF THIS CARD.**

..... The voting paper shall here be perforated horizontally .....

## B. Back of voting paper (below perforation):

I declare that I am not, by reason of my being a graduate of the University of New Zealand (either by examination at any time or by admission *ad eundem gradum* before 1st January, 1943), enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of any University District in New Zealand other than the Auckland University District.

I request the Registrar to record my address on the roll as appears below.

SIGNATURE OF VOTER: .....

ADDRESS: .....

.....

17. Every voting paper shall be forwarded to the voter accompanied by an envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer.

18. The poll shall close at 5 o'clock on the afternoon of the day of the election; but all voting papers shall be included and counted which are received by the Returning Officer in due course by post before the close of the sixth day after the day of the election, provided the Returning Officer is satisfied that the paper was posted in accordance with the provisions of Section 9. On the seventh day after the day of the election the Returning Officer shall open and count the votes. As soon as the voting papers have been checked with the Roll the name and address shall be removed from each voting paper before the votes are counted.

19. Each candidate shall be entitled to nominate a scrutineer, who shall have the same rights and duties as those vested at the date of the poll in a scrutineer at any polls of the Auckland City Council.

20. Upon completion of the counting of votes, the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll.

21. The Returning Officer shall, subject to the provisions herein contained, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning the election.

22. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the official announcement of the result.

The Council at its meeting held on 18 August, 1975 resolved:

That in respect of elections of members of the Council by the Court of Convocation, Council adopt the following procedure in order to ensure that electors are notified of the qualifications of candidates:

(1) That each candidate for election be invited to send to the Registrar with his nomination paper a short statement, not exceeding 250 words, for inclusion with the voting papers.

(2) That the statement shall include the name, occupation, residence, degrees, academic posts held, publications, and any other relevant information provided by the candidate.

(3) That the Council arrange that a copy of these statements be forwarded to each elector with the voting paper.

## **THE COUNCIL ELECTIONS (REPRESENTATIVE OF GOVERNING BODIES OF SECONDARY SCHOOLS) REGULATIONS**

1. These regulations may be cited as the Council Elections (Representative of Governing Bodies of Secondary Schools) Regulations 1962.

2. For the purpose of Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) of the University of Auckland Act 1961 the Governing Bodies of only such registered private secondary schools as are entitled to accredit persons for entrance to a University shall be entitled to vote for the member of Council elected under that paragraph.

3. Each of the Governing Bodies entitled under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) of the said Act and the foregoing paragraph 2 of these regulations shall be enrolled on the Roll of Electors. The Roll shall be revised in each year as at the 30th April.

4. The date of an Election by the Governing Bodies shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported by him to the Council.

5. Whenever an Election is to be held, the Returning Officer shall (not less than 40 days before the Election), by notice addressed to each Elector upon the Roll, call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with him on or before a date fixed in such notice, being not less than ten days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to be the like effect):

### **THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND**

Election of one Member of Council by the Governing Bodies of certain Secondary Schools situated with the Auckland University District, under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) University of Auckland Act 1961.

An election of one member will be held at 5.00 pm on the ..... day of ..... 19 ..... at the Office of the Registrar of the University, Princes Street, in the City of Auckland.

No person shall be recognised as a candidate at this Election unless he has been previously nominated by an Elector in a paper signed by the Chairman of that Governing Body in pursuance of a resolution in that behalf and signed also by the person nominated, and unless that nomination paper has been delivered to the Returning Officer by postal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 pm on the ..... day of ..... 19 .....

.....  
Returning Officer

6. Nominations shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election to be held on the ..... day of ..... 19 .....  
of one Member of Council by the Governing Bodies of certain Secondary Schools situated in the  
Auckland University District under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) University of Auckland Act  
1961.

..... being the Governing Body of ..... School and being a duly  
qualified Elector hereby nominate ..... of

..... (address)

..... (occupation)

for election to the Council by the Governing Bodies of State Secondary Schools, Technical Schools and  
Combined Schools, and such registered Private Schools as the Council of the University has deter-  
mined by regulation in that behalf, being in all cases schools situated in the Auckland University  
District.

Dated this ..... day of ..... 19 .....

.....  
Chairman

I consent to the above nomination

.....

7. A nomination shall be made by an Elector and shall contain the written consent of the candidate to his nomination.

8. If not more than one nomination is received the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date for the receipt of nominations declare the candidate duly elected.

9. If more than one nomination is received the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for receipt of nominations issue a voting paper to each Elector shown in the Roll as revised.

10. The Returning Officer shall also issue a voting paper to any Elector whose name appears upon the Roll, and who shall apply in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that its voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting paper has been issued to it.

11. At every Election the votes shall be given by sealed voting papers issued by the Returning Officer in the form prescribed by these Regulations, delivered to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the Election, or forwarded to him by post or otherwise, so as to reach him not later than that day and time.

12. In any Election to fill a casual vacancy the notice calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.

13. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the like effect), and shall include occupations and addresses, as well as the names of candidates:

## A. Front of voting paper:

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of one Member of Council by the Governing Bodies of certain Secondary Schools situated within the Auckland University District, under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (c) University of Auckland Act 1961.


## Directions

The voter is to cause a cross (X) to be put in the square opposite to the name of the candidate for whom he has resolved to vote.

THE CHAIRMAN OF THE VOTER *MUST* COMPLETE THE CERTIFICATE  
ON THE BACK OF THIS CARD.

## B. Back of voting paper:

I certify that the vote made on this paper was made in pursuance of a resolution of .....  
Governing Body of ..... School passed at a duly constituted meeting  
thereof.

.....  
*Chairman*

14. Every vote shall be made by an Elector in pursuance of a resolution passed at a meeting of the Elector.
  15. Every voting paper shall be forwarded to the Elector accompanied by a stamped envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer.
  16. All such envelopes received by the Returning Officer shall remain unopened until the close of the poll and no voting paper shall count unless it is received by the Returning Officer not later than the day and hour fixed for the election.
  17. Upon completion of the counting of votes, the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll.
  18. The Returning Officer shall, subject to the provisions herein contained, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning the election.
  19. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the official announcement of the result.
- Council at its meeting on 19 July 1982 adopted the following procedure to ensure that electors are notified of the qualifications of candidates:
1. That each candidate for election be invited to send to the Registrar with his nomination paper a short statement, not exceeding 250 words, for inclusion with the voting papers.
  2. That the statement shall include the name, occupation, residence, degrees, academic posts held, publications, and any other relevant information provided by the candidate.
  3. That the Council arrange that a copy of these statements be forwarded to each elector with the voting paper.



## THE COUNCIL ELECTIONS (LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVE) REGULATIONS

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Council Elections (Lecturers' Representative) Regulations 1978.
2. For the purposes of these Regulations, the Council determines that a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as a junior tutor or tutor, are lecturers within the definition of that term contained in Section 2 of the Act.
3. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires –  
 "the Act" means the University of Auckland Act 1961;  
 "the Council" means the Council of the University;  
 "election" means an election conducted under these Regulations;  
 "elector" means a full-time lecturer and includes a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than three years as a junior lecturer, senior tutor or tutor; but does not otherwise include any person holding a temporary appointment.  
 "Returning Officer" refers to the Registrar of the University.
4. In the election of one member of the Council pursuant to paragraph (ca) of Subsection (2) of Section 6 of the Act –  
 (a) All electors shall be eligible to nominate candidates and to vote; and  
 (b) All electors, except those who are temporary lecturers appointed for less than two years, shall be eligible to be nominated as candidates.
5. The election shall be by secret ballot.
6. The date of the election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported to the Council.
7. Whenever an election is to be held the Returning Officer shall (not less than thirty-five days before the election) by notice addressed to all electors call for nomination for candidates to be lodged with him on or before the date fixed in that notice but being not less than twenty-one days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of one Member of Council by the full-time lecturers under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (ca) of the University of Auckland Act 1961.

I hereby call for nominations for the Lecturers' representative on the Council. Nominations must be delivered to the Returning Officer by personal delivery or otherwise not Later than 5.00 pm on .....

Every full-time lecturer (including a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as a junior lecturer, senior tutor or tutor) is eligible to be an elector and to nominate candidates at this election.

All electors, except those who are temporary lecturers for less than two years, are eligible to be nominated as candidates.

Every candidate must be nominated by two electors on a nomination form which must also be signed by the nominee.

Should an election be necessary it will be held at 5.00 pm on .....  
 at the office of the Registrar of the University in Princes Street. The election will be conducted as a postal ballot.

The person elected will hold office for a term of two years [or as required, in the case of a casual vacancy]

Nomination forms are available from the undersigned.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

8. Each nomination shall:
  - (a) be made by two electors;
  - (b) contain the signature of the person nominated;
  - (c) be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND****ELECTION FOR REPRESENTATIVE OF LECTURERS ON COUNCIL**

ELECTION to be held on the ..... day of ..... 19 ..... of one Member, of the Council by the full-time Lecturers of the University.

We ..... and  
 .....  
 being duly qualified electors, hereby nominate

.....  
 of the Department of .....  
 for election to the Council by the full-time Lecturers of the University.

Date .....

I consent to this nomination .....

NOMINATIONS CLOSE AT 5.00 P.M. ON .....

9. If not more than one nomination is received for the vacancy, the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date of nominations declare the candidate duly elected.

10. If more than one nomination is received for the vacancy, the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for nominations issue a voting paper in the prescribed form to each elector.

11. The Returning Officer shall issue a voting paper to any elector who applies in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the grounds that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced, or that no voting paper has been issued to him.

12. The voting paper shall be returned to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or sent to him by post or otherwise so as to reach him not later than that day and time.

13. In any election for a casual vacancy the notice calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.

14. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the life effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND****REPRESENTATIVE OF LECTURERS ON COUNCIL**

Election to be held at 5.00 p.m. on ..... 19 ..... of .....

ONE Member of Council by the full-time Lecturers of the University.


**DIRECTIONS**

The voter must put an "X" in the square opposite the name of the candidate for whom he wishes to vote.

THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS NAME, AND PRINT HIS NAME AND DEPARTMENT ON THE BACK OF THE ENCLOSED SPECIAL ADDRESSED ENVELOPE.

Voting papers, in sealed envelopes, must be addressed to the Returning Officer and reach him by the above day and time.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

15. On completion of the counting of votes the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll by notice published within the University.
16. The Returning Officer shall, subject to these regulations, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning an election.
17. Where there is an equality of votes between candidates and the addition of a vote would entitle any of those candidates to be declared elected, the Returning Officer shall determine by lot which candidate shall be elected.
18. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the notices announcing the result of the poll.
19. The University shall be deemed a sufficient address for the issuing of notices and voting papers to electors under these regulations.

## THE SENATE ELECTIONS (LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES) REGULATIONS

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives) Regulations 1978.
2. For the purpose of these Regulations, the Council determines that a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as a junior lecturer, senior tutor or tutor, are lecturers within the definition of that term contained in Section 2 of the Act.
3. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires –  
 'the Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961;  
 'election' means an election conducted under these Regulations;  
 'elector' means a full-time lecturer and includes a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than three years as a junior lecturer, senior tutor or tutor; but does not otherwise include any person holding a temporary appointment.  
 'member' and 'lecturers' representative' means a member of the Senate elected by the full-time lecturers in a Faculty under section 30 of the Act and these Regulations;  
 "Returning Officer" refers to the Registrar of the University.
4. For the purpose of these Regulations –  
 The Centre for Continuing Education is deemed to be a Faculty of the University;  
 Each member of the staff of each of the Departments of Art History, Geography, Mathematics, and Psychology shall respectively be allocated by the Senate to an appropriate Faculty.
5. (i) The number of members of the Senate to be elected by the full-time lecturers under section 30 (2) of the Act shall be thirteen.  
 (ii) Those thirteen members shall be elected by secret ballot from and by the full-time lecturers of the respective Faculties of the University, as follows:–  
 The Faculty of Arts; three members.  
 The Faculty of Science; two members.  
 Each of the eight other Faculties of the University – that is:  
 the Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning,  
 the Faculty of Commerce,  
 the Faculty of Engineering,  
 the Faculty of Fine Arts,  
 the Faculty of Law,  
 the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology,  
 the Faculty of Music, and  
 the Centre for Continuing Education; one member.
6. In every election in a Faculty, held under these Regulations –  
 (a) All electors in that Faculty shall be eligible to nominate candidates and to vote; and  
 (b) All such electors, except those who are temporary lecturers appointed for less than two years, shall be eligible to be nominated as candidates.
7. Each member (other than a member elected to fill a casual vacancy) shall hold office on the Senate for a term of two years beginning on the 1st of February next following that member's election.
8. The term of office of each of the present lecturer members of the Senate shall, according to the Faculty

from which that member was appointed and (in the Faculty of Arts and in the Faculty of Science) according to seniority of appointment, end as follows:

Faculty of Architecture and Town Planning (one member)	31 January 1979
Faculty of Arts (three members)	
The member from that Faculty whose present term of office began first	31 January 1979
The two remaining members	31 January 1980
Faculty of Commerce (one member)	31 January 1980
Faculty of Engineering (one member)	31 January 1980
Faculty of Fine Arts (one member)	31 January 1979
Faculty of Law (one member)	31 January 1979
Faculty of Medicine & Human Biology (one member)	31 January 1980
Faculty of Music (one member)	31 January 1979
Faculty of Science (two members)	
The member from that Faculty whose present term of office began first	31 January 1979
The remaining member	31 January 1980
Centre for Continuing Education (one member)	31 January 1979

9. If any member —

- (a) dies; or
- (b) resigns his office by writing under his hand delivered to the Registrar; or
- (c) ceases to be a full-time lecturer; or
- (d) is appointed Acting Head of a Department for a period of more than three months he shall thereupon cease to be a member, and the vacancy so created shall be deemed to be a casual vacancy.

10. (a) Elections other than elections to fill casual vacancies shall take place in the respective faculties not later than July each year so that the names of all lecturers' representatives for the subsequent year are known at the August meeting of the Senate.

(b) An election to fill a casual vacancy shall take place within two calendar months of the arising of the casual vacancy.

11. The Registrar shall be the Returning Officer for the purpose of conducting the elections.

12. Subject to Regulation 10, the date of an election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and shall be reported to the Senate.

13. Whenever an election is to be held, the Returning Officer shall, not less than thirty-five days before the election, by notice addressed to each elector in the appropriate Faculty call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with him on or before the date fixed in that notice but being not less than twenty-one days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND**  
**LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES ON SENATE**

I hereby call for nominations for the following vacancies which will occur on 1.2.19 ...

Faculty of ..... 2 vacancies

Faculty of ..... 1 vacancy

Nominations for vacancies for representatives must be delivered to the Returning officer by personal delivery or otherwise **not later than 5.00 p.m. on ..... 19 .....** Every full-time lecturer in the appropriate Faculty (including a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as a junior lecturer, senior tutor or tutor) is eligible to be an elector and to nominate candidates at this election.

All electors in the Faculty, except those who are temporary lecturers for less than two years, are eligible to be an elector and to nominate candidates in that faculty.

Every candidate must be nominated as candidates in that Faculty on a nomination form which must also be signed by the nominee.

for the purpose of these elections: **The Faculty of Arts** includes the Department of Art History and Geography but not the Departments of Mathematics and Statistics, and Psychology.

**The Faculty of Science** includes the Departments of Mathematics and Psychology.

**Elections** should they be necessary, will be held at **5.00 p.m. on ..... 19.....** at the office of the Registrar of the University in Princes Street. The election will be conducted as a postal ballot.

The persons elected will hold office for a term of two years.

Nomination forms are available from the undersigned.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

14. Each nomination shall:

- (a) be made by two electors;
- (b) contain the signature of the person nominated;
- (c) be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect);

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND**  
**ELECTION FOR LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVE**  
**ON SENATE**

ELECTION is to be held on the .... day of ..... 19 ... of ....

Member(s) of the Senate by the full-time Lecturers of the University teaching in the Faculty of .....

We ..... , and  
 ..... being duly qualified electors, hereby  
 nominate: .....

of the Department of ..... for election to the  
 Senate by the full-time Lecturers of the University teaching in the Faculty of .....

Date .....

I consent to this nomination .....  
 NOMINATIONS CLOSE AT 5.00 p.m. ON THE ..... DAY OF ..... 19.....

15. If not more than one nomination is received for a vacancy, the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date of nomination declare the candidate duly elected.

16. If more than one nomination is received for a vacancy, the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for nominations issue a voting paper in the prescribed form to each elector in the appropriate faculty.

17. The Returning Officer shall also issue a voting paper to any elector who applies in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting paper has been issued to him.
18. The voting papers shall then be returned to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or sent to him by post or otherwise so as to reach him not later than that day and time.
19. In any election for a casual vacancy the notice calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.
20. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the like effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND  
LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES ON SENATE  
FACULTY OF  
VOTING PAPER**

Election to be held at 5.00 p.m. on ..... day, the ..... day of .....  
19 ....., of ..... Member(s) of the Senate by the full-time Lecturers in the Faculty  
of ..... which for the purpose of this Election includes the  
Departments of .....


**DIRECTIONS**

The Voter must put an X in the square opposite the name of the **ONE** candidate for whom he wishes to vote.

**THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS NAME AND STATE HIS DEPARTMENT ON THE BACK OF THE ENCLOSED SPECIAL ADDRESSED ENVELOPE.**

Voting papers, in sealed envelopes, must be addressed to the Returning Officer and reach him by the above day and time.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

21. On completion of the counting of votes the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll by notice published within the University.
22. The Returning Officer shall, subject to these regulations, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning an election.
23. Where there is an equality in votes between candidates and the addition of a vote would entitle any of those candidates to be declared elected, the Returning Officer shall determine by lot which candidate shall be elected.
24. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of two weeks from the date of the notices announcing the result of the poll.
25. The University shall be deemed a sufficient address for the issuing of notices and voting papers to electors under these Regulations.

# Prescribed Texts

## *Contents*

---

484 Prescribed texts	497 Hebrew
484 Accounting	497 History
484 Ancient History	497 Human Biology
485 Anthropology	498 Indonesian
486 Architecture	498 Italian
486 Asian Geography	498 Japanese
486 Asian History	499 Latin
486 Asian Politics	499 Law
486 Biblical History and Literature	501 Linguistics
486 Biochemistry	501 Local Government and Administration
486 Biology	502 Management Studies
486 Botany	502 Maori Studies
487 Cell Biology	503 Mathematics
487 Chemistry	503 Medicine
487 Chinese	503 Music
488 Classical Studies	504 Optometry
488 Commercial Law	505 Philosophy
488 Computer Science	505 Physics
488 Drama	505 Physiology
489 Economics	505 Political Studies
489 Education	507 Psychology
490 Engineering	507 Russian
490 English	508 Scandinavian Studies
493 Environmental Studies	508 Sociology
493 Fine Arts	509 Spanish
493 French	509 Town Planning
494 Geography	509 Zoology
495 Geology	510 Summary of Subject Codes
495 German	
496 Greek	

## PREScribed TEXTS

### Prescribed Texts

Prescribed texts are those texts that students should purchase.

The list of prescribed texts for 1983 which is set out below in alphabetical subject order is not exhaustive. Additional books may be prescribed during the year. Further lists of such prescribed books may be obtained from the appropriate department.

Recommended books are those books which students may purchase if desired. Lists of recommended books and additional reading guides may be obtained from the appropriate departments.

## ACCOUNTING

### Accounting I

**01.100** Ma & Mathews, *The Accounting Framework: A Contemporary Emphasis*, 1st edn, (Longman Cheshire); Ma, Mathews, Kingston & Pandey, *Students' Companion to The Accounting Framework: A Contemporary Emphasis*, 1st edn, (Longman Cheshire).

**01.101** Ma & Mathews, *The Accounting Framework: A Contemporary Emphasis*, 1st edn, (Longman Cheshire).

**01.102** Nobes, C., *Introduction to Financial Accounting*, 1st edn, (George Allen & Unwin).

**01.103** Horngren, *Introduction to Management Accounting*, 5th edn, (Prentice-Hall).

### Accounting II

**01.200** Johnston, Edgar & Hays, *Law and Practice of Company Accounting in New Zealand*, 6th edn, (Butterworths); Ma & Mathews, *The Accounting Framework: A Contemporary Emphasis*, 1st edn, (Longman Cheshire).

**01.201** Barton, *Executors Law and Accounts in New Zealand*, 8th edn, (Butterworths); New Zealand Society of Accountants, *Management Accounting for the New Zealand Farmer*.

**01.202** Awler, L.W.J. & Brown, J.L., *Wheldon's Cost Accounting and Costing Methods*, 14th edn, (MacDonald & Evans).

**01.203** Cushing, B.E. *Accounting Information Systems and Business Organisations*, 3rd edn (Addison Wesley); McCracken, D.D., *A Simplified Guide to Fortran Programming*, 1st edn, (Wiley).

**01.204** *Public Finance Act 1977* (Government Printing Office); *Local Government Accounting Regulations 1979* (Government Printing Office); *The Planning and Control of Government Expenditure* (Government Printing Office); Cheek, L.M. *Zero-base Budgeting Comes of Age*, 1st edn, (AMACOM).

**01.205** Peirson & Bird, *Business Finance*, 3rd edn, (McGraw-Hill).

### Accounting III

**01.300** Hendriksen, E. S., *Accounting Theory*, 4th

edn, (Irwin); Bloom & Elgers, *Accounting Theory and Practice: A Reader*, 1st edn, (Harcourt, Brace & Jovanovich).

**01.301** Arens & Loebbecke, *Auditing: An Integrated Approach*, 2nd edn, (Prentice-Hall); Fraser & Aiken, *Stettler's System Based Audits*, 2nd edn 1981 (Prentice-Hall).

**01.302** Shillinglaw, G., *Managerial Cost Accounting* 5th edn, (Irwin).

**01.303** Sharpe, W.F., *Investments*, 2nd edn, (Prentice-Hall).

## ANCIENT HISTORY

### Ancient History 1

**12.100** G. Roux, *Ancient Iraq* (Pelican); W. K. Simpson (ed.) *Literature of Ancient Egypt* (Yale U.P., New Haven); A. H. Gardiner, *Egypt of the Pharaohs* (O.U.P.).

**12.102** One of A. R. Burn, *Pelican History of Greece*; J. B. Bury, *History of Greece*, revised by Russell Meiggs, (Macmillan); N. G. L. Hammond, *A History of Greece* (Oxford); plus Thucydides, *The Peloponnesian War* (Penguin Classics or Everyman's Library); *Athenian Politics* (Lactor 5, write to LACT Publications, 19B Roxborough Park, Harrow, Middlesex, England).

**12.103** Either W. G. Sinnigen and A.E.R. Boak, *A History of Rome to 565 A. D.* 6th edn (Macmillan) or M. Cary & H.H. Scullard, *A History of Rome* (Macmillan); Tacitus, *The Annals of Imperial Rome* (Penguin) is strongly recommended for those students planning to advance.

### Ancient History II

**12.201** G. Roux *Ancient Iraq* (Pelican); *Art and Architecture of the Ancient Orient*, Henri Frankfort (Pelican History of Art).

**12.202/13.322** Herodotus, *The Histories*: Aeschylus, *Prometheus Bound and Other Plays*: Thucydides, *The Peloponnesian War*; Xenophon, *The Persian Expedition*, *A History of My Times*; Arrian, *The Campaigns of Alexander*, Plutarch, *The Rise and Fall of Athens* (All Penguin Classics); *The Athenian Empire* (Lactor 1 — see paper 12.102); H. Bengtson and others, *The Greeks and the Persians* (Weidenfeld); Plutarch, *The Age of Alexander* (Penguin).

**12.203** N. Lewis and M. Reinhold, *Roman Civilization Vol II* (Colombia Univ Press or paperback Harper Row); Tacitus *On Imperial Rome* (Penguin Classics); *Res Gestae divi Augusti*, (ed.) Brunt and Moore (Oxford) is strongly recommended.

**12.210** A. Gardiner, *Egyptian Grammar* (Oxford); R. O. Faulkner, *A Concise Dictionary of Middle Egyptian* (Oxford). Texts of documents in Egyptian will be supplied by the Department.

**12.211** Materials will be supplied at cost by the Department.



**12.220/12.300** Miriam Lichtheim, *Ancient Egyptian Literature* Vol I. (University of California Press); Cyril Aldred, *Egyptian Art* (Tiranti).

### Ancient History III

**12.300** See 12.220.

**12.303/319** One of either S. Frere, *Britannia* 2nd edn, (Cardinal Paperbacks); John Wachter, *Roman Britain* (Dent) OR M. Todd, *Roman Britain 53BC-400AD*; Tacitus, *On Britain and Germany* (Penguin); Lactor 4, *Some Inscriptions from Roman Britain*; D. J. Breeze and B. Dobson, *Hadrian's Wall* (Penguin).

**12.304** Herodotus, *The Histories*; Thucydides, *The Peloponnesian War*; Xenophon, *A History of My Times* (all Penguin Classics); Livy, *The War with Hannibal*; Caesar, *The Conquest of Gaul*; Sallust, *Jugurthine War and the Conspiracy of Catiline*; Tacitus, *On Imperial Rome and The Histories*; Suetonius, *The Twelve Caesars* (all Penguin Classics).

Recommended for Purchase: M. Grant, *The Ancient Historians* (Paperback edn) (Weidenfeld & Nicolson).

**12.322** See 12.202

### Ancient History for MA & Honours

**12.400** D. S. Russell, *The Jews from Alexander to Herod* (Oxford); Emil Schurer *History of the Jewish People in the Age of Jesus Christ*, (revised edn, T. & T. Clark, Edinburgh 1973); *The Works of Josephus*, trans Whiston (Everyman's Library, Dent); *The First and Second Books of the Maccabees*, (ed) J. R. Bartlett (Cambridge Bible Commentaries); A. H. M. Jones *The Herods of Judea*, (O.U.P.).

**12.406** Frankfort & Others, *Before Philosophy* (Pelican); Aristotle & Xenophon on *Democracy and Oligarchy* (ed.) J. M. Moore (California); C. Rodewald, *Democracy, Ideas and Realities* (Dent); F. E. Adcock, *Roman Political Ideas and Practices* (Michigan, Ann Arbor).

**12.410** Paul Frandsen, *An Outline of the Late Egyptian Verbal System* (Academisk Forlag Copenhagen 1974).

**12.412** M. M. Austin, *The Hellenistic World: From Alexander to the Roman Conquest*, (Cambridge U.P., 1981 Paperback), F. W. Walbank, *The Hellenistic World* (Fontana Paperback, 1981).

**12.414** W. K. Lacey, *The Family in Classical Greece* (available from the Department); John Crook *The Law and Life of Rome* (Cornell U.P.).

**12.502/12.512** As for 10.405.

**12.503/12.513** As for 09.405.

**12.520/12.530** Booklist available from Department.

## ANTHROPOLOGY

### Anthropology I

**03.100** Keesing, Roger M. *Cultural Anthropology: A Contemporary Perspective* (Holt, 2nd edn, 1981 pre-

ferred, but 1st edn, 1976 accepted; Powdermaker, Hortense, *Stranger and Friend: The Way of an Anthropologist* (Norton 1966, paperback); Heider, Karl G., *Grand Valley Dani: Peaceful Warriors* (Holt, 1979, paperback); plus one additional ethnography which will be announced in Anthropology Department handout, and in course handout at first lecture.

**03.101** Fagan, Brian M., *People of the Earth; an Introduction to World Prehistory* (Little, Brown, 3rd edn 1980, paper); Poirier F., *In Search of Ourselves* (Burgess Publishing Co., 1981).

**03.102** Metge, Joan, *The Maoris of New Zealand* (Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1976); Schwimmer, E., *The World of the Maori* (Reed, 1966).

### Anthropology II

**03.200** Firth, R., *We, the Tikopia* (Allen and Unwin, 1964 or any other edition).

**03.202** Chagnon N., *Yanomamo: The Fierce People* (Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Case Studies in Anthropology, 1977); Whyte, W., *Street Corner Society* (University of Chicago Press); Fox R., *Kinship and Marriage* (Penguin). All texts are available in paperback editions.

**03.206** Redman, C. L., *The Rise of Civilisation* (Freeman & Co, 1978, paperback); Weaver, M. P., *The Aztecs, Maya and their Predecessors. Archaeology of Mesoamerica* (Academic Press, 2nd edn 1981).

**03.207** Wolpoff. M., *Paleo-anthropology* (Alfred Knopf, 1980).

**03.208** Houghton, P., *The First New Zealanders* (Hodder & Stoughton, 1979); Leach, B. F., *The Prehistory of The Southern Wairarapa* (Reprint Otago University 1981); Prickett, N. (ed.), *The First Thousand Years* (Dunmore Press, 1982).

**03.209** Nettl, B., *Music in Primitive Culture* (Harvard University Press).

**03.210** Epstein, A. L., *Ethos and Identity* (Tavistock 1978); Barth, F. (ed.), *Ethnic Groups and Boundaries* (Little, Brown, 1969).

**03.212** Trudgill, Peter, *Sociolinguists: An Introduction* (Penguin, 1974); Pride, J. B. and J. Holmes (eds.), *Sociolinguistics: Selected Readings* (Penguin, 1972).

### Anthropology III

**03.308** Hole, F. and Heizer, R. F., *Prehistoric Archaeology: A Brief Introduction* (Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1977); or Thomas, D. H., *Archaeology* (Holt, Rinehart & Winston 1979).

**03.315** Bellwood, P. S., *Man's Conquest of the Pacific* (Collins, 1978); Jennings, J. D. (ed), *Prehistory of Polynesia* (ANU, 1979).

**03.318** McLean, M., *An Annotated Bibliography of Oceanic Music and Dance* (Polynesian Society, 1977).

**03.319** See Ancient History 12.303.

**03.320** Massal, Emile and Jacques Barrau, *Food Plants of the South Sea Islands* (South Pacific Commission Technical Bulletin).

**03.325** Coles, John, *Experimental Archaeology* (Academic Press 1979).

**03.327** Bass, William M., *Human Osteology* (2nd edn Missouri Archaeology Society, 1981, paperback); *Grays Anatomy*.

**03.329** Hoogvelt, A. M., *The Sociology of Developing Societies* (Macmillan Press, 2nd edn, 1978) (paperback).

## ARCHITECTURE

Details of any prescribed texts and reading lists will be published in the Department prior to commencement of lectures.

## ASIAN GEOGRAPHY

See Geography

## ASIAN HISTORY

See History

## ASIAN POLITICS

### Asian Politics I

**30.103** S. R. Schram, *The Political Thought of Mao Tse-tung* (Pelican); J. B. Starr, *Ideology and Culture* (Harper and Row ppr.); J. R. Townsend, *Politics in China* (2nd edn, Little, Brown & Co. ppr.); James C. F. Wang, *Contemporary Chinese Politics: An Introduction*, (Prentice-Hall, ppr.); R. Taylor, *China's Intellectual Dilemma*, (Univ of Br. Columbia Press, 1981).

**30.104** *Asia Yearbook* (latest edition available); J. S. Hoadley, *The Military in the Politics of Southeast Asia* (Schenkman ppr.).

### Asian Politics II

**30.205** T. J. S. George, *Lee Kuan Yew's Singapore* (Deutsch ppr.); R. S. Milne and D. K. Mauzy, *Politics and Government in Malaysia* (UBC Press).

**30.207** H. H. Baerwald, *Japan's Parliament: An Introduction* (Cambridge University Press); R. A. Scalapino and J. Masumi, *Parties and Politics in Contemporary Japan* (University of Calif. ppr.). R. E. Ward, *Japan's Political System* (2nd edn, 1978, Prentice-Hall, ppr.).

## BIBLICAL HISTORY & LITERATURE

### Biblical History and Literature I

**11.103** As 12.103 with the addition of A. H. M. Jones, *The Herods of Judea* (Oxford).

**11.113** A. R. C. Leaney, *The New Testament* (Hodder). D. Hill, *The Gospel of Matthew* (New Cen-

tury Bible), Oliphants; F. F. Bruce, *Commentary on the Book of Acts* (New London Commentary) Marshall, Morgan and Scott; W. Neil, *The Epistle to the Hebrews* (Torch Bible Commentary) S.C.M.

## BIOCHEMISTRY

### Biochemistry II & III

**66.201, 66.301, 66.302** Stryer, *Biochemistry* 2nd edn, (Freeman).

## BIOLOGY

### Biology I

**39.101** Keeton, W. T. *Biological Science*, 3rd edn (Norton).

**39.111** W. T. Keaton *Biological Science*, 3rd edn (Norton).

### Biology II & III

**39.207, 39.307** R. E. Parker, *Introductory Statistics for Biology* (Studies in Biology No. 43), 2nd edn (Arnold, 1979).

**39.211** Krebs, C., *The Experimental Analysis of Distribution and Abundance*, 2nd edn (Harper International).

**39.212, 39.312** Morton and Miller, *The New Zealand Sea Shore*, 2nd edn (Collins)

**39.213** Poole and Adams, *Trees and Shrubs of New Zealand* 4th Impression, (Govt Printer).

**39.316** Open University *Oceanography, Biological Environments*, (Units 9 & 10 (S334) Open University 3rd level Science Course).

## BOTANY

### Botany I & II

**06.102** Weier, Stocking, Barbour & Rost, *Botany* (Wiley).

**06.201, 06.301** Webster, *Introduction to Fungi* (CUP); Bold, Alexopoulos and Delevoryas, *Morphology of Plants & Fungi*, 4th edn (Harper & Row).

**06.221** Sutcliffe, *Plants and Water* (Arnold); Sutcliffe *Plants and Temperature* (Arnold).

### Botany III

**06.331, 06.332** G. Agrios, *Plant Pathology* 2nd edn, (Academic Press, New York and London).

**06.341** Whitehouse, *Towards an Understanding of the Mechanism of Heredity* (Arnold), Rees and Jones *Chromosome Genetics* (Arnold).

**06.361** Radford, Dickison, Massey and Bell, *Vascular Plant Systematics* (Harper and Row).

### Botany For MSc

**06.410** Solbrig, *Demography and Evolution in Plant Populations* (Blackwell); Harper, *Population Biology of Plants* 2nd edn, (Academic Press); Grime, *Plant Strategies and Vegetation Processes* (Wiley); Whitaker, *Communities & Ecosystems* (McMillan).

## CELL BIOLOGY

### Cell Biology III

**40.303, 304, 305** There are no prescribed texts for 40.303, 40.304, or 40.305. A list of books that are recommended reading may be obtained from the Departmental Office after 1 December.

## CHEMISTRY

### Chemistry I

**08.110** Moore and Barton, *Organic Chemistry: An Overview* (Saunders); Coxon, Ferguson and Phillips, *First Year Chemistry* (Arnold); *Laboratory Assignments in Organic and Physical Chemistry for Chemistry 110, 113, 115* (available from the University Bookshop in the Student Union).

**08.120** Coxon, Ferguson and Phillips, *First Year Chemistry* (Arnold); *Laboratory Assignments in Inorganic and Physical Chemistry for Chemistry 120, 123, 125* (available from the University Bookshop in the Student Union).

**08.113, 08.123** Moeller, Bailar, Kleinberg, Guss, Castellion & Metz, *Chemistry with Inorganic Analysis*, International Edition (Academic); Moore and Barton, *Organic Chemistry: An Overview* (Saunders); Aylward and Findlay, *SI Chemical Data* (Wiley); *Laboratory Assignments in Organic and Physical Chemistry for Chemistry 110, 113, 115*, *Laboratory Assignments in Inorganic and Physical Chemistry for Chemistry 120, 123, 125* (available from the University Bookshop in the Student Union).

**08.115** Cram and Cram, *The Essence of Organic Chemistry* (Addison-Wesley) or Moore and Barton *Organic Chemistry: An Overview* (Saunders); Brady and Humiston, *Chemistry Principles and Structure*, 2nd or 3rd edn (Wiley); *Laboratory Assignments in Organic and Physical Chemistry for Chemistry 110, 113, 115* (available from the University Bookshop in the Student Union).

**08.125** Brady and Humiston, *Chemistry Principles and Structure*, 2nd or 3rd edn (Wiley); *Laboratory Assignments in Inorganic and Physical Chemistry for Chemistry 120, 123, 125* (Available from the University Bookshop in the Student Union).

### Chemistry II

**08.210** Atkins, *Physical Chemistry* (Oxford); Levitt and Kitchener, *Findlay's Practical Physical Chemistry*, 9th edn (Longman); Aylward and Findlay, *SI Chemical Data* 2nd edn (Wiley); Fritz and Schenk, *Quantitative Analytical Chemistry*, 4th edn (Allyn and Bacon).

**08.211** Fritz and Schenk, *Quantitative Analytical Chemistry*, 4th edn (Allyn and Bacon).

**08.220** Purcell and Katz, *An Introduction to Inorganic Chemistry*, (Saunders Int. Stud. edn. 1981); OR for

students intending to proceed to 08.321, McWeeny *Coulson's Valence*, paperback edn (Oxford).

**08.230** Streitwieser Jr and Heathcock, *Introduction to Organic Chemistry*; 2nd edn (Macmillan), 1981; Chemistry 08.230 Laboratory Manual (available from Department at enrolment).

### Chemistry III

**08.310** Atkins, *Physical Chemistry* 2nd edn (Oxford); Levitt and Kitchener, *Findlay's Practical Physical Chemistry*, 9th edn (Longman); Aylward and Findlay, *SI Chemical Data* 2nd edn (Wiley).

**08.311** Atkins, *Physical Chemistry*, 2nd edn (Oxford); Harris and Bertolucci, *Symmetry and Spectroscopy* (Oxford); Levitt and Kitchener, *Findlay's Practical Physical Chemistry* 9th edn (Longman); Aylward and Findlay, *SI Chemical Data* 2nd edn (Wiley).

**08.320** Cotton and Wilkinson, *Advanced Inorganic Chemistry*, 3rd or 4th edn (Interscience); Tobe, *Inorganic Reaction Mechanisms* (Nelson).

**08.321** Dekock and Gray, *Chemical Structure and Bonding* (Benjamin-Cummings); Tobe, *Inorganic Reaction Mechanisms* (Nelson).

**03.331** Jones, *Physical and Mechanistic Organic Chemistry* (Cambridge).

**08.330** Carey and Sundberg, *Advanced Organic Chemistry B, Reactions and Synthesis* Paperback edn (Plenum).

**08.340** Dyke, Floyd, Sainsbury and Theobald, *Organic Spectroscopy - An Introduction* 2nd edn (Longman); Harris and Bertolucci, *Symmetry and Spectroscopy* (Oxford).

**08.350 & 08.351** Wang, Willis and Loveland, *Radio-tracer Methodology in the Biological, Environmental and Physical Sciences* (Prentice Hall).

**08.370** Manahan, *Environmental Chemistry*, 2nd edn (Willard Grant Press).

### Chemistry for MSc and Honours

**08.410** Bard & Faulkner, *Electrochemical Methods* (Wylie).

**08.411** Harris and Bertolucci, *Symmetry and Spectroscopy* (Oxford); McLaughlin, *Magnetic Resonance* (Oxford).

**08.420** Cotton and Wilkinson, *Advanced Inorganic Chemistry* (Interscience).

**08.421** Basolo and Pearson, *Mechanisms of Inorganic Reactions* (Wylie).

## CHINESE

### Chinese I

**48.100 and 48.101** *Practical Chinese Reader*, Vols. I & II (Commercial Press, Peking).

**48.102** De Bary, W.T. (ed.), *Sources of Chinese Tradition Vol I* (Columbia Univ. Press); Chan Wingsit, *A Source Book in Chinese Philosophy* (Princeton Univ. Press).

488 Prescribed Texts, Chinese, Classical Studies, Commercial Law, Computer Science, Drama

## Chinese II

**48.200** *Practical Chinese Reader*, Vols. I & II (Commercial Press).

**48.201** Materials supplied by the Department.

**48.202** Dawson, R., *An Introduction to Classical Chinese* (Oxford Univ. Press); Liu, Y.J., *Essentials of Chinese Literary Art* (Duxbury Press); further materials supplied by the Department.

## Chinese III

**48.300, 48.301, 48.302** Materials supplied by the Department.

## Chinese for MA & Honours

**48.400-48.417** Materials supplied by the Department.

## CLASSICAL STUDIES

### Classical Studies I

**73.104** Aeschylus *Oresteia* trans Fagles (Penguin classics); Sophocles, *Electra and other plays* trans. Watling (Penguin); *The Bacchae* of Euripides, trans. with Intro & Commentary, G.S. Kirk; (Cambridge paperback); Seneca, *Four Tragedies and Octavia* (Penguin); Aristotle, Horace, Longinus, *Classical Literary Criticism* (Penguin).

## COMMERCIAL LAW

### Commercial Law I

**02.100** O'Keefe & Farrands, *Introduction to New Zealand Law*, 4th edn, (Butterworths).

### Commercial Law II

**02.200** Cheshire & Fifoot, *Law of Contract*, 5th edn, (Butterworths).

**02.201** Leys & Northey, *Commercial Law in New Zealand*, 7th edn, (Butterworths); *Sale of Goods Act 1908 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Hire Purchase Act 1971 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Hire Purchase and Credit Sales Stabilisation Regulations 1957 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Chattels Transfer Act 1924 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Insolvency Act 1967 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Bills of Exchange Act 1908 & Amendments* (1979 Reprint), (Government Printing Office); *Door to Door Sales Act 1967 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Layby Sales Act 1971 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office)

### Commercial Law III

**02.300** Sealy, L.S., *Cases and Materials in Company Law*, 2nd edn, (Butterworths); Webb and Webb, *Principles of the Law of Partnership*, 2nd edn, (Butterworths); Northey, J.F., *Introduction to Com-*

*pany Law*, 9th edn, (Butterworths); *Companies Act 1955 & Amendments* (Government Printing Office); *Partnership Act 1908 & Amendments* (Government Printing Office).

**02.301** Staples' *Guide to New Zealand Income Tax Practice*, 1982-83, 43rd edn, (Sweet & Maxwell).

**02.302** Szakats, A., *Introduction to the Law of Employment and First Supplement Industrial Relations Act 1973 & Amendments* (Reprinted 1978); 2nd edn, (Butterworths).

**02.304** O'Keefe, J.A.B., *The Commerce Act 1975*, 2nd edn, (Butterworths); Schmitthoff, *The Export Trade*, 7th edn, (Stevens).

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

### Computer Science I

**07.100** G. M. Schneider, S.W. Weingart, D. M. Perlman, *An Introduction to Programming and Problem Solving with Pascal* (Wiley).

**07.101** T.E. Hull, D.D.F. Day, *An Introduction to Programming and Applications with BASIC* (Addison-Wesley).

**07.105** A.M. Tenenbaum, M.J. Augustein, *Data Structures Using Pascal* (Prentice-Hall).

### Computer Science II

**07.210** R.H. Eckhouse, L.R. Morris, *Minicomputer Systems: Organization, Programming and Applications (PDP 11)*, 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall).

**07.220** Refer to Department.

**07.235** Refer to Department.

**07.290** V. Rajaraman, *Computer Oriented Numerical Methods*, 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall India); J.M. Ortega, W.G. Poole Jr., *Numerical Methods for Differential Equations* (Pitman).

### Computer Science III

**07.310** Refer to Department.

**07.320** D.C. Tschrititz, F.H. Lochovsky, *Data Models* (Prentice-Hall).

**07.340** Refer to Department.

**07.350** H.R. Lewis, C.H. Papadimitriou, *Elements of the Theory of Computation* (Prentice-Hall).

**07.390** G. Dahlquist, A. Björck, N. Anderson, *Numerical Methods* (Prentice-Hall); J.M. Ortega, W.G. Poole Jr., *Numerical Methods for Differential Equations* (Pitman).

### Computer Science for MSc

A list of prescribed texts can be obtained from the department.

A list of books which are recommended reading for Computer Science courses can be obtained from the department.

## DRAMA, DIPLOMA IN

A booklist will be available from the English Department.

## ECONOMICS

### Economics I

**13.100, 13.101** R.G. Lipsey, *Positive Economics*, 5th edn (Weidenfeld and Nicolson).

**13.101** E. Shapiro, *Macroeconomic Analysis* 5th edn (Harcourt Brace).

**13.102** P.G. Hoel & R.J. Jesson, *Basic Statistics for Business and Economics* 3rd edn (Wiley).

**13.103, 13.104** John Jackson & Campbell R. McConnell *Economics* Australian edn (McGraw-Hill) OR P.A. Samuelson *Economics*; K. Hancock & R. Wallace *Economics* 2nd Australian edn (McGraw-Hill).

### Economics II

**13.200** Hirshleifer, *Price Theory and Applications* 2nd edn 1980 (Prentice-Hall).

**13.201** M. Parki *Macroeconomics*, 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall, Canada).

**13.204** C.V. Brown & P.M. Jackson *Public Sector Economics* 1978 edn Martin Robertson.

**13.205** Mark B. Stewart & Kenneth F. Wallis *Introductory Econometrics* 2nd edn 1981 (Oxford, Blackwell).

### Economics III

**13.300** L. L. Pasinetti, *Lectures on the Theory of Production* (Columbia U.P.); G. Abraham-Frois & E. Berrebi, *Theory of Value, Prices and Accumulation* (Cambridge U.P.) A.C. Chiang *Fundamental Methods of Mathematical Economics* 2nd edn (McGraw-Hill).

**13.302** A.S. Maddala, *Econometrics* ISE 1977 (McGraw-Hill, Tokyo).

**13.304** B. Soderston *International Economics* 2nd edn (MacMillan)

**13.307** R. Sugden, *The Political Economy of Public Choice*, 1st edn (Martin Robertson).

**13.308** D. Sapsford, *Labour Market Economics*, 1st edn (Allen & Unwin); J. Addison & W. Sickert, *The Market for Labour*, 1st edn (Goodyear); C. Mulvey *The Economic Analysis of Trade Unions*, 1st edn (M. Robertson); J.L. Fallick & R.F. Elliott, *Incomes Policy, Inflation & Relative Pay*, (Allen & Unwin); J.L. King, (ed.) *Readings in Labour Economics*, 1st edn (OUP).

## EDUCATION

### Education I

**14.100** Lankshear, *Freedom and Education*, 1982 (Milton-Brookes); Marshall, *What is Education*, 2nd edn 1982 (Dunmore Press).

**14.101** Hetherington and Parke, *Child Psychology: A Contemporary Viewpoint* 2nd edn (McGraw-Hill).

### Education II

**14.200** Rippa, *Education in a Free Society: An American History*, 4th edn 1980, (David McKay and Co.); King *Other Schools and Ours*, 5th edn 1979 (Holt, Rinehart & Winston); Bell, Fowler and Little (eds.)

*Education in Great Britain and Ireland*, Routledge and Kegan Paul with Open University Press).

**14.201** List of Texts for 1983 available from the Department.

**14.203** Gage and Berliner, *Educational Psychology*, 2nd edn 1979 (Rand McNally).

**14.204** Thorndike and Hagen, *Measurement and Evaluation in Psychology and Education*, 4th edn 1977 (Wiley).

**14.206** Units 1-6 of E202 Schooling and Society, 1977 (Open University).

**14.207** Recommended books for 1983 will be listed in the Course Prescription available from the Department.

**14.208** Lankshear, *Freedom and Education*, 1982 (Milton-Brookes); Cleverley and Phillips, *From Locke to Spock*, 1976 (Melbourne University Press).

**14.209** Hopkins, *Understanding Educational Research*, 1980 (Merrill).

### Education III

**14.300** Bowen, and Hobson, *Theories of Education: Studies of Significant Innovation in Western Educational Thought*, 1st edn 1974 (Wiley).

**14.301** King, *Other Schools and Ours*, 5th edn 1979 (Holt, Rinehart and Winston).

**14.302** List of Texts for 1983 available from the Department.

**14.306** Belkin, *An Introduction to Counseling*, 1980 (Brown).

**14.307** Lawton, *Class, Culture and Curriculum*, 1975 (Routledge and Kegan Paul); Lawton et al, *Theory and Practice of Curriculum Studies*, 1978 (Routledge and Kegan Paul).

**14.308** Sulzer-Azaroff and Mayer *Applying Behaviour Analysis Procedures with Children and Youth*, 1st edn 1977 (Holt Rinehart).

**14.310** Grinder, *Adolescence* 1978 (Wiley); Kagan and Coles (eds.) *Twelve to Sixteen: Early Adolescence*, 1972 (Norton).

**14.311** Kirk and Gallagher, *Educating Exceptional Children*, 3rd edn 1979 (Houghton Mifflin); Robinson and Robinson, *The Mentally Retarded Child: A Psychological Approach*, 2nd edn 1976 (McGraw-Hill); Tuckman, *Conducting Educational Research*, 2nd edn 1978 (Harcourt Brace); N.Z. Department of Social Welfare, *Juvenile Crime in New Zealand*, 1st edn 1973 (Government Printer).

**14.312** Education Act (reprinted) 1976 Govt. Book Shop.

**14.313** Keppel and Saufley, *Introduction to Design and Analysis: A Student's Handbook*, 1980 (Freeman Paperback); Schatzman and Strauss *Field Research: Strategies for a Natural Sociology*, 1973 (Prentice Hall Inc., Paperback).

**14.316** Recommended books for 1983 will be listed in the Course Prescription available from the Department.

**14.317** Owens, *Organizational Behaviour in Education*, 2nd edn (Prentice Hall); Porter Lawler and Hackman, *Behaviour in Organizations*, 1975 (McGraw-Hill).

**14.319** Clay, *Reading: The Patterning of Complex Behaviour*, 2nd edn 1979 (Heinemann Educational Books); Clay *The Early Detection of Reading Difficulties*, 2nd edn 1979 (Heinemann Educational Books); De Stephano, *Language: The Learner and The School*, 1978 (Wiley and Sons); Smith, *Understanding Reading* 3rd edn 1982 (Holt Rinehart and Winston).

**14.320** Downey and Kelly *Moral Education: Theory and Practice*, 1978 (Harper and Row); Snook and McGeorge, *More than Talk*, 1978 (Dept of Educ. Wellington). Purpel and Ryan, *Moral Evocation: It Comes with the Territory*, 1976 (McCutchan).

**14.321** Harris, *Education and Knowledge*, 1979 (Routledge)

**14.322** List of Texts for 1983 available from the Department

**14.323** Clay, *The Early Detection of Reading Difficulties*, 2nd edn 1979 (Heinemann Educ. Books).

### Education for MA and Honours

**14.400** Hirst, *Knowledge and the Curriculum*, 1st edn 1974 (Routledge and Kegan Paul); Peters (ed.). *The Philosophy of Education*, 1973 (Open Univ. Press); Dewey, *Democracy and Education* (1966) (Free Press); Peters (ed.) *John Dewey Reconsidered*, 1977 (Routledge and Kegan Paul).

**14.401** Goulet, *The Cruel Choice* (New York Atheneum); Harrison, *The Third World To-Morrow*, 1980 (Pelican); Holmes, *Comparative Education: Some Considerations of Method*, 1st edn 1981 (Geo Allen and Unwin); King, *Other Schools and Ours*, 5th edn 1979 (Holt, Rinehart and Winston).

**14.406** Peterson and Walberg, *Research on Teaching*, 1979 (McCutchen).

**14.407** Baltes, Reese and Nesselroade, *Life-Span Developmental Psychology: Introduction to Research Methods* 1977 (Brooks Cole).

**14.410** Corsini (ed.), *Current Psychotherapies* 2nd edn, 1979 (Peacock); Egan, *The Skilled Helper* 1975 (Brooks Cole).

**14.412** Hersen and Barlow, *Single Case Experimental Designs: Strategies for Studying Behaviour Change* 1st edn, 1976 (Pergamon Press).

**14.413** Ryan and Thomas, *The Politics of Mental Handicap* (Harmondsworth Middlesex Penguin Books, 1980); Sarson and Doris, *Educational Handicap, Public Policy and Social History*, 1st edn 1979 (Free Press); Tomlinson *A Sociology of Special Education*, 1982 (London: Routledge and Kegan Paul).

**14.414** Stenhouse, *An Introduction to Curriculum Research and Development in Action*, 1980 (Heinemann); Stenhouse, *An Introduction to Curriculum Research and Development*, 1975 (Heinemann).

**14.418** Goldenberg *Family Therapy* 1980 (Brooks Cole); Corsini (ed.) *Current Psychotherapies*, 2nd edn 1979 (Peacock).

## ENGINEERING

Lists of prescribed texts are available from the School of Engineering.

## ENGLISH

### English I

**18.100** Chaucer: *The Prologue* (ed.) R. T. Davis (Harrap); *The Pardoner's Tale* (ed.) N. Goghill & C. Tolkien (Harrap's English Classics); *The Nun's Priest's Tale* (ed.) N. Coghill & C. Tolkien (Harrap); Muriel Bowden, *A Commentary on the General Prologue of the Canterbury Tales* (Macmillan); Shakespeare: *King Richard II* (ed.) Stanley Wells (New Penguin Shakespeare); *The Merchant of Venice* (ed.) W. Moelwyn Merchant (New Penguin Shakespeare); *Macbeth* (ed.) G. K. Hunter (Penguin); Language: C. L. Barber, *The Story of Language* (Pan).

**18.101** Lawrence, *England my England* (Penguin); Joyce, *Dubliners* (Penguin); Faulkner, *As I Lay Dying* (Penguin); Pynchon, *The Crying of Lot 49* (Bantam); Hemingway, *The Sun Also Rises* (Panther); Robert Graves, *Selected Poems* (Penguin); D. H. Lawrence, *Selected Poems* (Penguin); Adrienne Rich, *Poems Selected and New 1950-1974* (Norton); *Contemporary American Poetry* (ed.) Donald Hall (Penguin); Bertolt Brecht, *Mother Courage and her Children* (Methuen paperback); Samuel Becket, *Krapps Last Tape, Not I* (Faber paperbacks); Caryl Churchill, *Cloud Nine* (Pluto Press); Harold Pinter, *Old Times* (Methuen paperback); Tom Stoppard, *Jumpers* (Faber paperback); Trevor Griffiths, *Comedians* (Faber paperback).

**18.103** *An Anthology of 20th Century New Zealand Poetry* (ed.) Vincent O'Sullivan (O.U.P.); Katherine Mansfield, *Selected Stories* (ed.) D. M. Davin (World's Classics, O.U.P.); Frank Sargeson, *The Stories of Frank Sargeson* (Penguin); David Ballantyne, *Sidney Bridge Upside Down* (Longman Paul); John Mulgan, *Man Alone* (Longman Paul); Bill Pearson, *Coal Flat* (Heinemann Educational Books); Janet Frame, *Faces in the Water* (The Women's Press); Witi Ihimaera, *The New Net Goes Fishing* (Heinemann); Ronald Hugh Morrisson, *The Scarecrow* (Penguin); Maurice Shadbolt, *Once on Chunuk Bair* (Hodder & Stoughton); G. McGee, *Foreskin's Lament* (Price Milburn paperback).

**18.104** Blake, *Selected Poems and Letters* (Penguin); Wordsworth and Coleridge, *Lyrical Ballads*, (ed.) Roper (Collins); W. E. Williams (ed.) *Browning* (Penguin); Whitman, *A Choice of Whitman's Verse* (Faber); T. Hughes (ed.), *A Choice of Emily Dickinson's Verse* (Faber).

Hawthorne, *Great Shorter Works of Hawthorne* (Harper & Row); Twain, *Huckleberry Finn* (Penguin); Eliot, *The Mill on the Floss* (Everyman); Jane Austen, *Emma* (Penguin); Dickens, *Great Expectations* (Penguin); Bronte, *Wuthering Heights* (Penguin).

## English II

**18.200** F. N. Robinson, *The Works of Geoffrey Chaucer* (Oxford paperback); Malory, *Le Morte D'Arthur* (ed.) P. J. C. Field (London Medieval & Renaissance Series — Hodder & Stoughton); *Everyman and Medieval Miracle Plays* (ed.) A. C. Cawley (Everyman's Library, Dent); *Four Tudor Interludes* (ed.); J. A. B. Somerset (Athlone Press, University of London); *Middle English Verse Romances*, (ed.) Donald B. Sands (Holt, Rinehart & Winston, New York); N. Davis, D. Grey et al, *A Chaucer Glossary* (Clarendon Press Oxford paperback).

**18.201** E. K. Brown and J. E. Miller, *Syntax: A Linguistic Introduction to Sentence Structure* (Hutchinson); P. Trudgill, *Sociolinguistics: An Introduction* (Penguin); English Department Phonetics Booklet (obtainable from the Department).

**18.210** *The Bible* (Authorised Version); *The Norton Anthology of English Literature*, Vol. I (Norton).

**18.211** Russell A. Fraser and Norman Rabkin (eds), *Drama of the English Renaissance*, vols 1–2 (Macmillan paperback); Andrew Gurr, *The Shakespearean Stage* (Cambridge paperback).

**18.212** *The Taming of the Shrew* (Penguin); *Much Ado About Nothing* (Penguin); *Twelfth Night* (Arden); *Romeo and Juliet* (Penguin); *Orthello* (Penguin); *Hamlet* (ed.) Anne Barton (Penguin); *Antony & Cleopatra* (Arden); *King Lear* (Arden) — all paperbacks.

**18.220** Joseph Conrad, *Lord Jim* (Penguin); Henry James, *What Maisie Knew* (World's Classics); Ford Madox Ford, *The Good Soldier* (Heinemann: The Modern Novel Series); Robert Tressell, *The Ragged Dressed Philanthropists* (Panther); E. M. Forster, *A Passage to India* (Penguin); Virginia Woolf, *To the Lighthouse* (Panther); D. H. Lawrence, *The Rainbow* (Penguin); Evelyn Waugh, *A Handful of Dust* (Penguin); Graham Greene, *Brighton Rock* (Penguin); Christopher Isherwood, *Goodbye to Berlin* (Panther); George Orwell, *Coming up for Air* (Penguin).

**18.222** Yeats, *Selected Poetry* (ed.) Jeffares (Pan); E. A. Robinson; *Tilbury Town* (ed.) L. Thompson, (Macmillan); Robert Frost: *Selected Poems* (ed.) I. Hamilton (Penguin); Ezra Pound, *Selected Poems 1908–1959* (Faber paperback); W. C. Williams, *Selected Poems* (new Directions); Wallace Stevens, *Selected Poems* (Faber paperback); W. H. Auden, *Selected Poems* (Faber paperback).

## English III

**18.300** C. L. Barber, *The Story of Language* (Pan); A. C. Baugh, *A History of the English Language* (Routledge & Kegan Paul). Duplicated material may be issued.

**18.301** Sweet, *Anglo-Saxon Primer*, (rev.) Davis, 9th edn, (Clarendon Press); Sweet, *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, (rev.) D. Whitelock, 15th edn, (Clarendon Press).

**18.302** *The Works of Geoffrey Chaucer* (O.U.P.); *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* (ed.) Tolkien (Clarendon Press); William Dunbar, *Poems* (ed.) J. Kinsley (Clarendon Press); Robert Henryson, *Poems*, (ed.) C. Elliott (Clarendon Press).

**18.303** G. N. Leech, *A Linguistic Guide to English Poetry* (Longman); Norman Page, *Speech in the English Novel*, (Longman paperback); R. Fowler, *Linguistics and the Novel* (Methuen).

**18.304** A. C. Gimson, *An Introduction to the Pronunciation of English*, 2nd edn, (Arnold paperback); *The Principles of the International Phonetic Association* (University College, London); J. D. O'Connor, *Phonetics* (Penguin); P. Ladefoged, *A Course in Phonetics* (Harcourt Brace-Jovanovich).

**18.306** Swift, *Gulliver's Travels & Other Writings* (ed.) Quintana (Modern Library); Pope, *Poems* (either Everyman or John Butt edn.); Johnson, *Rasselas, Poems & Prose* (ed.) Bronson (Riverside edn.); Addison & Steele, *Selections from The Tatler & The Spectator* (ed.) R. J. Allen (Holt & Rinehart); *Restoration and Eighteenth Century Comedy* (Norton Critical edn.); Aristotle Horace Longinus (Penguin); Oliver Goldsmith, *Vicar of Wakefield* (Everyman); George Farquhar, *The Beaux' Stratagem* (ed.) Michael Cordner (New Mermaid paperback); John Gay *The Beggar's Opera* (ed.) E. V. Roberts (Regents paperback); John Vanbrugh, *The Provoked Wife* (ed.) James L. Smith (New Mermaid paperback).

**18.307** Blake, *The Portable Blake*, ed. Kazin (Penguin); Wordsworth, *The Prelude* (eds.) Jonathan Wordsworth, M. H. Abrams, and Stephen Gill (Norton Critical Editions). Coleridge, *Selected Poetry and Prose* (Modern Library College edn.); Keats, *The Complete Poems* (ed.) Barnard (Penguin); Shelley, *Selected Poetry*, (Everyman); Byron, *Don Juan* (Penguin).

**18.308** Cervantes, *Don Quixote* (Penguin); Fielding, *Joseph Andrews* (Penguin), *Tom Jones* (Penguin); Smollett, *Humphry Clinker* (Penguin), *Roderick Random* (Everyman); Sterne, *Tristram Shandy* (Penguin), *A Sentimental Journey* (Penguin); Scott, *Waverley* (Penguin); Jane Austen, *Northanger Abbey* (Penguin); Mark Twain, *Huckleberry Finn* (Penguin).

**18.310** *Pericles* (New Arden); *Cymbeline* (New Arden); *The Winter's Tale* (New Arden); *The Tempest* (New Arden); *Henry VIII* (Penguin); *The Two Noble Kinsmen*, (Penguin).

**18.314** Spenser, *Poetical Works* (Oxford Standard Authors); Milton, *Poetical Works* (Oxford Standard Authors); Bunyan, *Grace Abounding* (Evangelical Press); *Pilgrim's Progress* (Penguin).

**18.320** Charles Dickens, *David Copperfield*, *Bleak House* (both Penguin English Library); George Eliot, *Middlemarch*, (Penguin English Library); *Daniel*

*Deronda* (Penguin English Library); W. M. Thackeray, *Vanity Fair* (Penguin English Library); Charlotte Brontë, *Villette* (Penguin English Library); Thomas Hardy, *Tess of the D'Urbervilles*, *Jude the Obscure* (both Penguin English Library). Thomas Carlyle, *Sartor Resartus* (Everyman); Lewis Carroll, *The Annotated Alice* (ed.) M. Gardner (Penguin); Tennyson; *Selected Poetry* (ed.) Douglas Bush (Random House, Modern Library); *Poems of Robert Browning* (ed.) D. Smalley (Houghton Mifflin Riverside Edition); Matthew Arnold, *Selected Poems and Prose* (ed.) Miriam Allott (Dent).

**18.323** *Contemporary American Poetry* (ed.) A. Poul-in Jr., 3rd edn. (Houghton Mifflin) Donald Hall (ed.), *Contemporary American Poetry* (Penguin).

**18.327** Kenneth Slessor, *Selected Poems*; A. D. Hope, *Selected Poems*; Gwen Harwood, *Selected Poems* (all Angus & Robertson paperbacks); Henry Lawson, *The Bush Undertaker and other Stories*, selected by Colin Roderick (Angus and Robertson); Henry Handel Richardson, *The Fortunes of Richard Mahony*, *(Australia Felix, The Way Home, Ultima Thule)* (all in Penguin); Patrick White, *The Tree of Man* (Penguin); *The Solid Mandala* (Penguin); Christina Stead, *The Man Who Loved Children* (Penguin); Ray Lawler, *Summer of the Seventeenth Doll*; Alexander Buzo and Lewis Esson, *Norm and Ahmed and The Woman Tamer*; Dorothy Hewett, *The Chapel Perilous*; David Williamson, *Don's Party*; John Romeril, *The Floating World* (all Currency Press paperbacks).

### English for MA and Honours

**18.400** Prescribed texts will include: *Beowulf* (ed.) C. L. Wrenn, 3rd edn, revised by W. F. Bolton (Harrap London paperback).

**18.401** Prescribed texts will include: *The Poems of the Pearl Manuscript*, (ed.) R. Waldron and M. Andrews (Arnold); *Piers Plowman* (ed.) A. U. C. Schmidt (Everyman); *The Age of Chaucer* (ed.) B. Ford (Penguin).

**18.402** Prescribed texts will include: Gordon, *Introduction to Old Norse*, revised edition (Clarendon Press), together with duplicated material from the Department.

**18.403** Prescribed texts will include B. M. H. Strang, *History of English* (Methuen); G. L. Brook, *Notes on English Sound Changes* (Manchester U.P.); K. Sisam, *Fourteenth Century Verse and Prose* (Clarendon Press).

**18.405** Yeats, *Collected Poems* (Macmillan); Ezra Pound, *Selected Poems 1908–59*, *Selected Cantos*, (Faber paperbacks); T. S. Eliot, *Collected Poems* (Faber paperback); William Carlos Williams, *Imaginations and Paterson* (both New Direction paperbacks); Allen Curnow, *Collected Poems* (Reed), *An Incurable Music and You Will Know When You Get There* (both A.U.P./O.U.P.).

**18.406** *Sonnets* (ed.) W. G. Ingram and Theodore

Redpath (Hodder and Stoughton, paperback); *Richard II.* (ed.) Peter Ure (Arden paperbacks); *Henry IV, Parts 1 and 2* (ed.) A. R. Humphreys (Arden paperback); *Henry V* (ed.) J. H. Walter (Arden paperbacks); *Troilus and Cressida* (ed.) K. Palmer (Arden paperbacks); *Timon of Athens*, (ed.) H. J. Oliver (Arden paperback); *Measure for Measure* (ed.) J. W. Lever (Arden paperback); *All's Well that Ends Well* (ed.) G. K. Hunter (Arden paperback); *Romeo and Juliet* (ed.) B. Gibbons (Arden paperback). Texts for bibliographic study may be prescribed at a later date; titles will be available from the Department.

**18.407** Coleridge, *Biographia Literaria* (Everyman) (Class set in the Department); Johnson, *Prose and Poetry*, Reynard edn, (Rupert Hard-Davis); Dryden, *Selected Criticism* (ed.) Kinsley and Parfitt (Oxford paperback); T. S. Eliot, *The Sacred Wood* (Methuen paperback); Terry Eagleton, *Marxism and Literary Criticism* (Methuen paperback); Terence Hawkes, *Structuralism and Semiotics* (Methuen paperback).

**18.410** E. K. Brown and J. E. Miller, *Syntax: Generative Grammar* (Hutchinson).

**18.411** *The Complete Works of Geoffrey Chaucer* (ed.) Robinson (2nd revised edn). (O.U.P.).

**18.415** Hawthorne, *Great Shorter Works of Hawthorne* (Harper & Row); Reginald Cook (ed.) Emerson: *Selected Poetry and Prose* (Rinehart); Carl Bode (ed.) *The Portable Thoreau* (Penguin). Herman Melville, *Moby Dick* (Penguin), *The Confidence Man* (Signet Classic); Samuel Clemens (Mark Twain) *Huckleberry Fin* (Penguin); William James, *The Varieties of Religious Experience* (Mentor); Stephen Crane, *The Red Badge of Courage and Selected Stories* (Signet); Henry James, *The Golden Bowl* (Penguin); Henry Adams, *The Education of Henry Adams* (Houghton Mifflin, Dentry edn).

**18.417** Katherine Mansfield, *Collected Stories* (Constable or Penguin); Maurice Duggan, *Collected Stories* (available from the English Department); Frank Sargeson, *The Stories of Frank Sargeson* (Longman Paul or Penguin); Janet Frame, *Owls Do Cry*; *Living in the Maniototo*; Patricia Grace, *Waiariki*. Maurice Gee, *Plumb*; Vincent O'Sullivan (ed.), *An Anthology of 20th Century New Zealand Poetry* (Oxford, 2nd edn., 1976); James K. Baxter, *Selected Poems* (OUP); Kendrick Smithyman, *Dwarf with a Billiard Cue* (AUP/OUP).

**18.418** *Restoration Comedies*, (ed.) Dennis Davison (O.U.P. paperback); Etherage, *The Femal Wits* (ed.) Fidelis Morgan (Virago); Congreve, *Comedies*, (ed.) Dobree (World's Classics); Wycherley, *The Plain Dealer* (ed.) Hughes (Regents paperback); Rochester, *Poems*, (ed.) Pinto (Muses Library) (Class set in the Department); *Seventeenth Century Poetry*, (ed.) H. Kenner (Rinehart paperback); Samuel Butler, *Hudibras Parts I and II and Selected Other Writings* (ed.) Wilders and De Quehen (Oxford paperbacks,



English Texts); Dryden, *Poems and Fables* (ed.) Kinsley (Oxford paperback); Hobbes, *Leviathan* (ed.) MacPherson (Penguin); Pepys *Diary* (Everyman).

**18.420** Gerald Mast and Marshall Cohen (eds.) *Film Theory and Criticism* (O.U.P.); Roger Horrocks and Philip Tremewan, *On Film* (Heinemann).

**18.421** *The Origins of the English Civil War* (ed.) Conrad Russell (Macmillan paperback).

**18.426** Horace, *Satires* (Penguin); Juvenal, *Satires* (Penguin); Petronius, *Satyricon* (Penguin); Dryden: *A Selection* (ed.) Conaghan (Methuen paperback); Pope, *Poetical Works*, any edition; Swift, *The Writings* (ed.) Greenberg (Norton paperback); David Bindman, *Hogarth* (Thames E. Hudson paperback); Pope, *Art of Sinking in Poetry* (Russell paperback).

## ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES

### Environment 200

**84.200** Ehrlich, Ehrlich and Holdren, *Ecoscience* (Freeman, 1977).

## FINE ARTS

### Studio Theory

**27.203** J. Christopher Jones, *Design Methods (Seeds of Human Futures)* (Wiley-Interscience, 1970).

**27.205, 27.206** B. Newhall, *The History of Photography from 1839 to the Present Day* (Secher and Warburg, 1973).

**27.301** Dorothy Goslett, *The Professional Practice of Design* (Batsford, 1971).

## FRENCH

### French I

**34.100** Ollivier, *Grammaire française* (HBJ).

**34.101** Prévert, *Paroles* (Folio); Sartre, *Les Mouches* (LP); Beauvoir, *Le Sang des autres* (Folio); Bessette, *Le Libraire* (CLF); Daninos, *La première planète à droite en sortant par la voie lactée* (LP).

**34.102** Departmental material.

**34.103** Morin, *Le Paradigme perdu* (Seuil); Bosquet & Gortz, *Ecologie et politique* (Seuil); Labbens, *Sociologie de la pauvreté* (Idées, Gallimard); Dumont, *La Croissance de la famine* (Seuil); Strahm, *Pourquoi sont-ils si pauvres* (Geneva, La Baconnière).

**34.104** Gougenheim, *Dictionnaire fondamental de la langue française* (Harrap) and departmental material.

**34.106** Gougenheim, *Dictionnaire fondamental de la langue française* (Harrap) and Coursebook obtainable from the departmental secretary.

**34.110** Ollivier, *Grammaire française* (HBJ).

**34.501** Gougenheim, *Dictionnaire fondamental de la langue française* (Harrap) and Coursebook obtainable

from the departmental secretary.

For dictionaries see department leaflet.

### French II

**34.200** *Dictionnaire du français contemporain Spécial Enseignement* (Larousse); Ollivier, *Grammaire française* (HBJ).

**34.201** Maupassant, *Boule de suif* (LP); Villiers de l'Isle-Adam, *Contes cruels*, (G-F); Balzac, *Short Stories* (OUP); Aymé, *Le Passe-muraille* (Folio); Yourcenar, *Coup de grâce* (LP or in: *Alexis ou le traité du vain combat*, Folio).

**34.202** Hugo, *Les Orientales* (G-F); Gautier, *Emaux et camées* (Cl.Garnier); Alain Borne (Seghers, *Poètes d'Aujourd'hui*); Baudelaire, *Fleurs du mal* (G-F); Verlaine, *Fêtes galantes* (G-F), *La bonne chanson avec Romances sans paroles et Sagesse* (LP).

**34.204** Coursebook obtainable from departmental secretary.

**34.205** Marie de France, *Lais* (Blackwell); Bowen, *Four farces* (Blackwell); Villon, *Poésies complètes* (LP); Faral, *Petite grammaire de l'ancien français* (Hachette).

**34.209** Balzac, *Les Comédiens sans le savoir* in *L'Illustre Gaudissart* (LP); Bernard, *Texts from Dept*; Zola, *L'Affaire Dreyfus: la vérité en marche* (G-F); Le Roy, *Jacquou le Croquant* (LP); Mérimée, *Tamango*, from Dept. Gauguin and others, *Texts from Dept*; Coursebook from Dept.

**34.210** Lécuyer & Virey, *Advanced Non-Literary texts for translation from and into French* (Harrap); *Larousse de la langue française: Lexis* (Larousse).

**34.214** MacCarthy, *The Pronunciation of French* (O.U.P.); Léon, *Introduction à la phonétique corrective* (Hachette/Larousse); Roulet, *Linguistic theory, linguistic description and language teaching* (Longmans); Rivers, *A Practical Guide to the teaching of French* (O.U.P.); Picoche, *Précis de lexicologie française* (Nathan).

For dictionaries see departmental leaflet.

### French III

**34.300** Ollivier, *Grammaire française* (HBJ).

**34.302** Montesquieu, *Les Lettres persanes* (Folio); Prévert, *Manon Lescaut* (Harrap); Rousseau, *Discours sur l'inégalité* (Ed. sociales); Voltaire, *Candide* (OUP); Laclos, *Les Liaisons dangereuses* (G-F).

**34.305** Seguin, *La Langue française au XVIIIe siècle* (Bordas); and Coursebook obtainable from the departmental secretary.

**34.306** Hollyman, *Descriptive Grammar of Old French* (from Dept); Einhorn, *Old French, a Concise Handbook* (CUP); *La Chastelaine de Vergi* (Manchester UP); *Le Voyage de Charlemagne* (Droz).

**34.307** Clouzet, *Jacques Brel* (Poésies et chansons, Seghers); Bonnafé, *Brassens* (Poésies et chansons, Seghers); Caradec, *Dictionnaire du français argotique*

et populaire (Larousse); Vernillat & Charpentreau, *Dictionnaire de la chanson française* (Larousse) and *La chanson française* (Que sais-je?, PUF); Renaud, *Sans Zikmu* (Champ Libre); Texts by various chansonniers in *Coursebook* obtainable from the departmental secretary.

**34.308** Stendhal, *Le rouge et le noir* (Garnier); Courtelaine, *Messieurs les ronds-de-cuir* (G-F); Zola, *Nana* (G-F); France, *L'île des pingouins* (ULB, Bordas); Balzac, *La Peau de chagrin* (LP).

**34.309** Sartre, *Situations II* (Gallimard); Doubrovsky, *Pourquoi la nouvelle critique?* (Gonthier); Mauran, *Des méaphores obsédantes au mythe personnel* (Corti); Goldmann, *Sciences humaines et philosophie* (Gonthier); Barthes, *Le Degré zéro de l'écriture, Essais critiques et Critique et vérité* (all Seuil).

**34.310** Molière, *le Malade imaginaire* and *Don Juan*; (both Bordas); Corneille, *L'illusion comique* and *Le Cid*; Racine, *Andromaque* and *Les plaideurs*; Beaumarchais, *Théâtre* (G-F); Marivaux, *Le jeu de l'amour et du hasard* (ULB, Bordas).

**34.318** *Coursebook* from Dept.

For dictionaries see departmental leaflet.

## French for MA and Honours

**34.400** *Le Petit Robert* (Soc. du Nouveau Littre) or *Larousse de la langue française: Lexis* (Larousse); Grevisse, *Le Bon usage* (Hatier).

**34.401** *La chanson de Roland* (Blackwell); *Le charroi de Nîmes* (Champion); *Gormont et Isembart* (Champion); Pidal, *La chanson de Roland et la tradition épique des Francs* (Picard).

**34.402** Du Bellay, *Les Regrets* (Droz); Ronsard, *Le Second livre des amours* (Droz); Baif, *Les Amours de Francine I: Sonnets* (Droz); *Fleurs de Rhétorique* (Blackwell).

**34.403** Montaigne, *Essais*, 3 vols. (Folio); Descartes, *Les Méditations métaphysiques* (PUF); Pascal, *Les Pensées* (LP).

**34.406** Colette, *Chéri* (LP); Céline, *Voyage au bout de la nuit* (Folio); Aymé, *Travelingue* (Folio); Sarraute, *Martereau* (Folio); Pérec, *Les Choses* (J'ai lu); Merle, *Derrière la vitre* (Folio).

**34.407** Teilhard de Chardin, *Le Phénomène humain* (10 x 18 or Seuil), *Genèse d'une pensée* (Grasset), and *Lettres de voyage* (Grasset); Sartre, *L'âge de raison*, (LP or Soleil, Gallimard); *Le sursis* (LP or Folio) and *Theatre I* (Soleil, Gallimard); Malraux, *La Condition humaine* (LP or Folio) and *La Voie royale* (LP).

**34.408** Camus, *Noces*, *L'étranger*, *La peste*, *La chute* (all Folio) *L'Envers et l'endroit* and *Carnets I et II* (Gallimard); Beckett *Murphy*, *Molloy* and *Malone meurt* (all Minuit).

**34.410** Lafayette, *Romans et Nouvelles* (Garnier); Perrault, *Contes* (Garnier); Sévigné, *Lettres* (G-F);

Sand, *Le Meunier d'Angibault* (Marabout), *La Petite Fadette* (G-F); Musset, *Théâtre I et II* (G-F).

**34.411** Godbout, *L'aquarium*, *Le couteau sur la table*, *Salut Galarneau!*, *D'amour P.Q.*, *L'île au dragon* (all Seuil); Blais, *La belle bête* (Québec: Institut littéraire), *Une liaison parisienne* (Montréal: Quinze, Stanke), *Une saison dans la vie d'Emmanuel*, *L'Insoumise*, *Manuscrits de Pauline Archange*, *Vivre! Vivre!*, *Un joualonnais, sa joualonie* (all Montréal: Éditions du Jour).

**34.412** Robert de Clari, *La conquête de Constantinople* (Champion); Aucassin et Nicolette (Champion); Adam de la Halle, *Le jeu de Robin et de Marion* (Harrap); Gossen, *Grammaire de l'ancien picard* (Klincksieck).

**34.413** Peletier de Mans, *Dialogue de l'ortographe et prononciacion françoise* (Droz); Du Bellay, *La Deffence et illustration de la langue françoise* (Droz).

**34.416** Material from the Department.

**34.417** Wilkins, *Linguistics in Language Teaching* (Arnold); Valdman, *Introduction to French Phonology and Morphology* (Newbury House); MacCarthy, *The Pronunciation of French* (OUP); François, *L'Enseignement et la diversité des grammaires* (Hachette); Roulet, *Linguistic theory, linguistic description and language teaching* (Longmans).

**34.418** Materials available from Department.

**34.419** Chaudenson, *Les Parlers créoles* (Nathan); Bickerton, *Roots of language* (Karoma) Baker & Corne, *Isle de France Creole* (Karoma).

**34.422** Ruwet, *Théorie syntaxique et syntaxe du français* (Seuil); Grosse, *Syntaxe du nom* (Larousse); and materials from Dept.

**34.423** Goncourt, *Germinie Lacerteux* (UGE); Céard, *Une belle journée* (Slatkine); Zola, *L'Assommoir* and *Nana* (both G-F); Maupassant, *Bel-Ami* (Folio) and *Pierre et Jean* (LP); Huysmans, *A vau-l'eau* (UGE) and *A rebourse* (G-F).

## GEOGRAPHY

For papers not listed below, see the Department of Geography *Students' Guide* available from the Secretary.

### Geography I

**20.102** A. R. de Souza and J. B. Foust, *World Space Economy* (C. E. Merrill 1979).

### Geography II

**20.203** J. M. Lillesand & R. W. Kiefer, *Remote Sensing and Image Interpretation* (Wiley); G. R. Cochrane, *Landsat Images of New Zealand* (Action Publications).

### Geography III

**20.316** F. S. Sabins, *Remote Sensing: Principles and Interpretations* 1st edn, (Freeman).

**Geography for MA, MSc and Honours**

**20.440** R. N. Colwell (ed.), *Manuel of Remote Sensing*. Vols 1 & 2, 2nd edn, (Am. Soc. Photogrammetry 1982).

**GEOLOGY****Geology I**

**21.100** F. Press & R. Siever, *Earth* (Freeman) 3rd edn 1982; OR A. N. Strahler, *Physical Geology* (Harper & Row, New York, 1981).

**21.150** *Geological Map of New Zealand*, scale 1:250,000 Sheet 3, Auckland (Government Printer); *Geological Maps of New Zealand*, scale 1:1,000,000 (Government Printer), but note: purchase only the maps and not the Geological Survey Bulletin of the same name.

**Geology II**

**21.201** B. E. Hobbs, W. D. Means and P. F. Williams, *An Outline of Structural Geology* (Wiley International Edition, J. Wiley and Sons, 1976).

**21.202** *Geological Maps of New Zealand*, scale 1:1,000,000 (Government Printer), but note: it is necessary to have only the maps not the Geological Survey Bulletin of the same name; A. R. Lillie, *Strata and Structure in New Zealand* (Tohunga Press, 1980); I. G. Speden & I. W. Keyes, *Illustrations of N.Z. Fossils* (Government Printer, DSIR Information Series 150, 1981).

**21.201, 21.202, 21.203** Port Waikato Field Camp: K. Rodgers and G. Gibson, *Noes on some Geological Field Techniques and a Field Trip Itinerary for the Port Waikato Region* (University of Auckland, 1979); K. Rodgers and J. Grant-Mackie, *Aspects of the Geology of the Port Waikato Region*, (University of Auckland, 1978).

**21.203** M. H. Battey, *Mineralogy for Students* (Oliver and Boyd, 1972).

**Geology III**

**21.301** A. R. Lillie, *Strata and Structure in New Zealand* (Tohunga Press, 1980); J. A. E. Allum, *Photogeology and Regional Mapping* (Pergamon) 1966. D. H. Griffiths & R. F. King *Applied Geophysics for Geologists and Engineers* (Pergamon) 2nd edn.

**21.302** R. L. Folk, *Petrology of Sedimentary Rocks* (Hemphills, Austin, Texas); Blatt, Middleton and Murray, *Origin of Sedimentary Rocks* (Prentice-Hall) 2nd edn 1980.

**21.303** L. F. Laporte, *Ancient Environments* (Prentice-Hall); N. de B. Hornibrook, *A Handbook of N.Z. Microfossils*, (N.Z. Government Printer); E. N. K. Clarkson, *Invertebrate Paleontology and Evolution* (Geo Allen and Unwin, 1979); I. G. Speden & I. W. Keyes, *Illustrations of NZ Fossils* (Government Printer, DSIR Information Series 150, 1981).

**21.305** W. A. Deer, R. A. Howie, J. Zussman, *An Introduction to Rock Forming Minerals* (Longmans 1966); K. G. Cox, J. D. Bell, R. J. Pankhurst, *The Interpretation of Igneous Rocks* (Allen & Unwin); F. J. Turner, *Metamorphic Petrology* 2nd edn 1980 (McGraw-Hill).

**21.306** D. S. Parasnis, *Principles of Applied Geophysics* (Chapman & Hall 1972).

**21.307** D. S. Parasnis, *Principles of Applied Geophysics* (Chapman & Hall 1972).

**GERMAN****German I**

**22.100** P. Terrell et al., *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins); *Collins Gem. 5000 German Words* (Collins). Asher, *The Framework of German*, 11th edn. (Whitcoulls). Prescribed texts for oral and language laboratory work: *Deutsch 2000, Band 2* (Hueber); *Deutsch 2000, Band 2, Glossar Deutsch-Englisch* (Hueber).

Prescribed texts for beginners will be announced at the commencement of the session.

**22.101** Dürrenmatt, *Der Richter und sein Henker* (Harrap); Otten (ed.), *Meistererzählungen* (Prentice-Hall); selected texts supplied by the Department.

**22.102** Pasley (ed.), *Germany: a companion to German studies* (Methuen); Dube, *The Expressionists* (Thames & Hudson); Thomas Mann, *Death in Venice* (Penguin); Kafka, *Metamorphosis and other stories* (Penguin); Brecht, *The Threepenny Opera* (Eyre Methuen); Böll, *The lost Honour of Katharina Blum* (Penguin).

**22.103** P. Terrell et al., *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins); Apelt, *Reading Knowledge in German for Art Historians and Archaeologists* (Erich Schmidt Verlag).

**German II**

**22.200** As for German I and, in addition: Farrell, *A Dictionary of German Synonyms*, 3rd Edn, (CUP, 1977). Prescribed texts for oral and language laboratory work as for German I.

**22.201** Asher, *A Short Descriptive Grammar of Middle High German* (Oxford); Selected poetry and prose supplied by the Department; Boyd (ed.), *Goethe's Poems* (Blackwell).

**22.202** Thomas Mann, *Die Erzählungen*, Band 1 (Fischer); Rilke, *Neue Gedichte* (Insel); Frisch, *Biedermann und die Brandstifter* (Edn Suhrkamp); Frisch, *Biografie: ein Spiel* (Bibl. Suhrkamp); Böll, *Als der Krieg ausbrach* (dtv); Böll, *Zum Tee bei Dr Borsig* (dtv).

Detailed reading lists for language and literature are available on request and will also be distributed to students at the commencement of the session.

**German III**

**22.300** As for German II and, in addition: *Der Grosse*

*Duden 2, Stilwörterbuch* (Duden); Hammer, *German Grammar and Usage* (Arnold); Wahrig, *Wörterbuch der deutschen Sprache* (dtv Taschenbuch).

Prescribed text for oral and language laboratory work: Hammond, *Fortbildung in der deutschen Sprache* (Students' Book) (OUP).

**22.301** Asher, *A Short Descriptive Grammar of Middle High German* (Oxford); *Zwò volle saelekeit* (will be supplied by the Department); Selected passages from Hartmann von Aue's *Erec* (will be supplied by the Department); *Die Märchen der Brüder Grimm* (Goldmann).

**22.302** Grillparzer, *Der arme Spielmann* (Reclam); Stifter, *Brigitta* (Reclam); Goethe, *Faust I* (Reclam); Büchner, *Dantons Tod/Woyzeck* (Manchester UP); Wedekind, *Frühlings Erwachen* (Goldmann); Brecht, *Mutter Courage* (Heinemann); Fontane, *Effi Briest* (Ullstein); Hesse, *Steppenwolf* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Kafka, *Der Prozess* (Fischer Taschenbuch, 1979 or subsequent edn); Keller, *Die drei gerechten Kammacher* (Reclam).

Detailed reading lists for language and literature are available on request and will also be distributed to students at the commencement of the session.

## MA and Honours

**22.400** As for German III.

**22.401** Hartmann von Aue, *Der arme Heinrich* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Gottfried von Strassburg, *Tristan und Isolde* (Götschen).

**22.402** Wolfram von Eschenbach, *Parzival* (Francke); Bartsch/de Boor (ed.), *Das Nibelungenlied* (Brockhaus).

**22.403** Heer, *The Medieval World* (Mentor); Bishop, *The Penguin Book of the Middle Ages* (Penguin); Kirchner, *Germanistische Handschriftenpraxis* (Beck). Further texts will be supplied by the Department.

**22.406** Schiller, *Der Verbrecher aus verlorener Ehre* (Reclam); Kleist, *Die Marquise von O...* (Reclam); Hoffmann, *Das Fräulein von Scuderi* (Reclam); Droste, *Die Judenbuche* (Reclam); Keller, *Romeo und Julia auf dem Dorfe* (Reclam); Fontane, *Unterm Birnbaum* (Reclam); *Die Märchen der Brüder Grimm* (Goldmann); Bettelheim, *The Uses of Enchantment* (Penguin).

**22.408** Böll, *Und sagte kein einziges Wort* (dtv); Böll, *Ansichten eines Clowns* (dtv); Böll *Die verlorene Ehre der Katharina Blum* (dtv); Handke, *Kindergeschichte* (Suhrkamp); Andersch, *Sansibar oder der letzte Grund* (Diogenes Taschenbuch); Andersch, *Der Vater eines Mörders* (Diogenes); Andersch, *Efraim* (Diogenes Taschenbuch); Handke, *Der kurze Brief zum langen Abschied* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Handke, *Wunschloses Unglück* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Walser, *Ein fliehendes Pferd* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch).

**22.409** The reading list for this paper will be available from the Department.

**22.410** *Der grosse Duden, vol. 4, Grammatik der deutschen Gegenwartssprache* (Duden).

**22.413** Thomas Mann, *Die Erzählungen*, (2 vols.) (Fischer Taschenbuch); Thomas Mann, *Buddenbrooks* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Kafka, *Sämtliche Erzählungen* (Fischer Taschenbuch).

**22.417** Rilke, *Duineser Elegien* (Suhrkamp); Pinthus (ed.), *Menschheitsdämmerung* (Rowohlt); Brecht, *Ausgewählte Gedichte* (Edition Suhrkamp); Brecht, *Über Lyrik* (Suhrkamp).

## GREEK

### Greek I

**10.100, 10.101** *Reading Greek and The Intellectual Revolution* (JACT Publications) available from the Department. Strongly recommended are: *Index to Cambridge Reading Greek Course*, (ed.), C. E. Gruzeliel and R. H. Allison (Auckland University, Dept. of Classics) and *Greek Vocabulary for Reading Greek* (JACT, Cambridge).

### Greek II

**10.200, 10.201, 10.202** (i) Prescribed Books: Plato, *Euthyphro, Apology and Crito* (ed.), Burnet, (Oxford); Sophocles, *Trachiniae* (ed.), P. Easterling (Cambridge).

(ii) Reading Course: *The Intellectual Revolution* (JACT Publications), available from the Department; other texts provided by the Department at cost.

(iii) History Topic for 1983: The Decelean War: texts will be supplied by the Department at cost.

(iv) Composition: W. W. Goodwin, *Greek Grammar* (Macmillan); North & Hillard, *Greek Prose Composition* (Rivingtons); *Greek-English Lexicon*, Liddell & Scott (Oxford). Students intending to advance further should consider purchasing the large (10th) edn, otherwise the smaller edition.

### Greek III

**10.300, 10.301, 10.302** (i) Prescribed Books: Plato, *Euthyphro, Apology and Crito* (ed.), Burnet (Oxford); Sophocles, *Trachiniae* (ed.), P. Easterling (Cambridge).

(ii) Reading Course: Aristophanes, *Clouds* (ed.), Dover (Oxford paperback). Other texts for translation will be supplied.

(iii) History Topic for 1983: The Decelean War: texts will be supplied by the Department at cost.

(iv) Greek Language: Homeric Greek and Homer: Prescribed text: Homer, *Odyssey I-XII* (ed.), Stanford (Macmillan).

(v) Composition – refer Greek II (iv).

### Greek for MA and Honours

**10.400, 10.401**, Texts will be supplied.

**10.402** Homer, *Iliad* (ed.), D. B. Monro & T. W. Allen (Clarendon, Oxford) 2 vols OR for books I-XII (ed.),

M. M. Willcock (Macmillan); *Greek Lyric Poetry*, (ed.), D. A. Campbell (B.C.P.).

**10.403** Thucydides (Oxford Classical Texts) Vol 1; Xenophon (Oxford Classical Texts) Vol 5 Opuscula.

**10.404** Consult the Department.

**10.405** Philip and Alexander. Prescribed Texts: Diodorus Siculus Books XVI-XVII (Loeb Classical Library Vols VII and VIII); Arrian (Loeb Classical Library, 2 Vols of which Vol 1 edn, P. A. Brunt is essential); Lactor 9 (Greek Historical Inscriptions 359-323 B.C.) would be useful.

**10.407** Aeschylus, *Agamemnon* (ed.), Denniston and Page (Oxford); Sophocles, *Antigone* (ed.), Jebb (Cambridge). Euripides, Choice of play to be notified later.

## HEBREW

### Hebrew I

23.100, 23.101 Genesis 1-4, Judges 6-9, Psalms 48, 74, 116, 122, 136 in *Hebrew Old Testament* (British and Foreign Bible Society); J. Weingreen, *A Practical Grammar for Classical Hebrew* (Oxford); W. R. Harper, *Introductory Hebrew, Method and Manual* (Univ. of Chicago Press).

## HISTORY

The Department will issue leaflets entitled *Books Recommended for Student Purchase* relating to papers not listed below.

### History I

**24.103** F. L. Carsten, *The Rise of Facism* (Methuen paperback); K. D. Bacher, *The German Dictatorship* (Pelican); E. Nolte, *The Three Faces of Facism* (Mentor paperback).

**24.106** Robert Tucker (ed.), *Marx-Engels Reader* (Norton paperback).

### History II

**24.215** K. Wrightson, *English Society 1580-1680*, 1982 (Hutchinson Paperback).

**24.233** R. Ward, *The Australian Legend* (O.U.P.)

### History III

**24.315** J. W. Davidson and Deryck Scarr (eds.) *Pacific Islands Portraits* (A.N.U.); Barrie Macdonald (comp.), *Essays from the Journal of Pacific History* (A.N.U.).

**24.327** Karl Marx, *Communist Manifesto* (Penguin).

**24.336** P. Burke, *Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe*, 1979 (Temple Smith paperback).

### History for MA and Honours

**24.404** G. R. Elton, *Tudor Constitution*, 1960 (C.U.P.).

**24.406** C. Morris, *The Discovery of the Individual* (SPCK).

## Asian History

The History Department will issue leaflets entitled *Books Recommended for Student Purchase*. There are no specific texts for Asian History I, II and III.

## HUMAN BIOLOGY

### Part I

**60.100, 60.101, 60.102** Ham & Cormack, *Histology*, 8th edn, (Harper & Row); Romer & Parsons, *The Vertebrate Body*, 5th edn (Holt-Saunders).

**60.103, 60.104, 60.105** Burns & MacDonald, *Physics for Biology and Pre-Medical Students* (Addison Wesley); Burgoyne, *A Short Course in Organic Chemistry*, (McGraw-Hill); Pecsok, Shields, Cairns and McWilliam, *Modern Methods of Chemical Analysis* 2nd edn, (Wiley); Stryer, *Biochemistry* 2nd edn (Freeman).

**60.108** *Psychology Today*, 4th edn. (CRM books); Davis, P., *Health and Health Care in New Zealand*. (Longman Paul).

### Part II

**60.205** Ham and Cormack, *Histology*, 8th edn 1979, (J. B. Lippincott & Co.), Hardback or softcover version); Moore, *Before We Are Born* (W. B. Saunders); Romanes, *Cunningham's Manual of Practical Anatomy, Vol. II, Thorax and Abdomen* (Oxford University Press), or Woodbourne, *Essentials of Human Anatomy*, 6th edn, (Oxford University Press), or Grant, *Method of Anatomy*, 10th edn J. V. Basmajian, ed., (Williams & Wilkins), Carman *Notes on Anatomy* (Department of Anatomy).

**60.206** Stryer, *Biochemistry* 2nd edn (Freeman) OR White, Handler, Smith, Hill & Lehman, *Principles of Biochemistry* 6th edn (McGraw-Hill) OR Lehninger, *Principles of Biochemistry* (Worth).

**60.207** Brobeck, *Best and Taylor's Physiological Basis of Medical Practice* 10th edn (Williams & Wilkins, 1979).

**60.208** Davis P., *Health and Health Care in New Zealand*, (Longman Paul); Bolton, R., *People Skills* 1979 (Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ); Papalia, D. E., and Olds, S. N., *Human Development*, 1978, (McGraw-Hill paperback).

### Part III

**60.301** You will require one textbook of Pathology and one of Microbiology, for use in the 3rd term of 3rd year and throughout the following 3 years of your Clinical Course. The best selection will be discussed with the class before the end of the 2nd term. *Principles of Pathology* (Department of Pathology). Joklik W. J., Willett H. P., Amos D. B., Linsser Microbiology, 17th edn, (Appleton-Century Crofts New York);

Robbins, S. L. & Angell, M., *Basic Pathology*, 2nd edn (Saunders), or Robbins, S.L., *Pathologic Basis of*

*Disease* (Saunders), or Anderson, J.R., *Muir's Textbook of Pathology*, 10th edn (Arnold); Jawetz, E., Melnick, J. L. & Adelberg, E. G., *Review of Medical Microbiology*, 13th or 14th edn (Lange), or Stewart & Beswick, *Bacteriology, Virology and Immunity For Students of Medicine*, 10th edn (Bailliere Tindall), or Youngmans, Paterson, Sommers, *The Biologic and Clinical Basis of Infectious Diseases*, 2nd edn (Saunders).

**60.302, 60.303** Noback and Demarest, *The Human Nervous System, Basic Principles of Neurology*, 3rd edn, (McGraw-Hill); Carman, *Notes of the Anatomy of the Head and Neck*, 1981 (Department of Anatomy); Romanes, *Cunningham's Manual of Practical Anatomy, Vol. I: Upper and Lower Limbs*, 14th edn, 1978 (Oxford University Press).

**60.304** Austin and Short, *Reproduction in Mammals* (Book VII) 1972 (Cambridge); Moore, *Before We Are Born* (Saunders); J. I. D. Sadow et al, *Human Reproduction; An integrated view* (Croom, Helm, London); L. Stryer, *Biochemistry*, 2nd edn 1981 (W. H. Freeman), or White, Handler, Smith, Hill & Lehman, *Principles of Biochemistry*, 6th edn, (McGraw-Hill).

**60.305** Brobeck, *Best and Taylor's Physiological Basis of Medical Practice*, 10th edn 1979 (Williams & Wilkins).

**60.306** *Departmental Manual on Pharmacology & Clinical Pharmacology*, 1982 (School of Medicine); D. R. Lawrence and P. N. Bennett *Clinical Pharmacology* 5th edn 1980 (Churchill Livingstone).

**60.308** Copies of recommended books have been placed in the Philson Library.

## INDONESIAN

### Indonesian I

**80.100 and 80.101** Wolff, John U., *Beginning Indonesian*, Part One, (Cornell University, South-east Asia Program).

**80.103** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

### Indonesian II

**80.200** Wolff, John U., *Beginning Indonesian*, Part Two; rev. edn, (Cornell University, South-east Asia Program); Wojowasito S. & Poerwadarminta W. J. S., *Kamus Indonesia Inggris*, (Penerbit Tiara, Jakarta).

**80.201** Notosusanto, N., *Tiga Kota*; Mochtar Lubis, *Djalan Tak Ada Ujung*.

**80.202** Materials for the study of Indonesian poets will be supplied by the Department.

### Indonesian III

**80.300, 80.301, 80.302, 80.305, 80.306** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

## Indonesian for MA and Honours

**80.400-409** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

## ITALIAN

### Italian I

**35.106 and 35.107** *Dizionario inglese-italiano, italiano-inglese* (Garzanti); Lennie & Grego, *Italian for you* (Longman).

**35.108** C. F. Delzell, *Italy in the Twentieth Century* (American Historical Association); D. Mack Smith, *Italy: A Modern History* (University of Michigan).

### Italian II

**35.200** F. Jones, *A Modern Italian Grammar* (University of London); *Dizionario inglese-italiano, italiano-inglese* (Garzanti), OR *Concise Cambridge Italian Dictionary* (Penguin).

**35.202** Dante Alighieri, *Inferno* (La Nuova Italia).

**35.203** G. Boccaccio, *Decamerone* (Laterza); F. Petrarca, *Selected Poems* (Manchester U.P.).

**35.204** L. Sciascia, *Il giorno della civetta* (Einaudi); A. Moravia, *Agostino* (Bompiani); E. Vittorini, *Uomini e no* (Mondadori Oscar).

### Italian III

**35.300** K. Katerinov, *La lingua italiana per stranieri corso superiore* (Edizione Guerra).

**35.302** Dante Alighieri, *Inferno* (La Nuova Italia).

**35.303** G. Boccaccio, *Decamerone* (Laterza); F. Petrarca, *Selected Poems* (Manchester U.P.).

**35.305** L. Sciascia, *Il giorno della civetta* (Einaudi); A. Moravia, *Agostino* (Bompiani); E. Vittorini, *Uomini e no* (Mondadori Oscar).

## JAPANESE

### Japanese I

**81.100 and 81.101** Jorden, Eleanor Harz, *Beginning Japanese Vol. I and II* (Yale University Press); Sakade, F. (ed.), *A Guide to Reading and Writing Japanese* (Tuttle, Tokyo).

**81.102** Keene, D., *Anthology of Japanese Literature* (Grove Press). Keene, D., *Modern Japanese Literature* (Grove Press).

### Japanese II

**81.200, 82.201 and 81.202** Sakade, F. (ed.), *A Guide to Reading and Writing Japanese* (Tuttle, Tokyo); *Modern Japanese for University Students Pt II* (Int. Christian Univ.); Uehara, T. and Kiyose, G. N., *Fundamentals of Japanese* (Indiana U.P. or Tenri U.P.).

### Japanese III

**81.300, 81.301 and 81.302** Bownas, G. and Thwaite, A., *The Penguin Book of Japanese Verse* (Penguin Books); Keene, D., *Anthology of Japanese Literature*

(Penguin Classics); Classical and Modern Poetry, *Modern Japanese for University Students*, Pt II (International Christian Univ.); selections from modern and classical literature (to be prescribed during lectures); selections from classical and modern poetry and drama (to be prescribed during lectures).

### Japanese for MA and Honours

**81.401** Webb, H., *Research in Japanese Sources: A Guide* (Columbia Univ. Press); *Nihon no Sanko Toshō* (Nihon Toshokan Kyokai), *Nihon Bungaku Kenkyū Hikkei* (ed.) by Nihon Bungaku Kyokai (Iwanami Shoten).

**81.402** Selections from the works of modern authors such as Natsume Soseki, Koda Rohan, Akutagawa Ryunosaku, Nagai Kafu, Kawabata Yasunari, Mishima Yukio and others. Specific texts will be prescribed during lectures.

**81.403** Selections from Heian monogatari, Gunki monogatari, Zuihitsu, Nikkimono, Setsuwa and others. Specific texts will be prescribed during lectures.

**81.404** Selections from Japanese poetry, including theory.

**81.405** Selections from Japanese drama, including theory.

**81.407** Photostat and cyclostyled texts will be provided by the Department when necessary.

## LATIN

### Latin I

**09.100** Cicero, *Pro Milone* (ed.), Colson, (Bristol Classical Press), Ovid, *Metamorphoses* I (ed.), A. G. Lee, (Cambridge U.P.).

**09.101** For Prose: Bradley's *Arnold's Latin Prose Composition* (ed.) J. F. Mountford (Longmans); Gildersleeve & Lodge *Latin Grammar* (Macmillan).

Chambers-Murray, *Latin-English Dictionary* (W. K. Chambers, Edinburgh), OR C. Lewis and C. T. Short, *Latin Dictionary* (Oxford).

**09.102** W. F. Richardson, *An Introductory Course in Latin* (University of Auckland), available from the Department; Kennedy's *Revised Latin Primer* (Longmans). Students are advised to purchase a copy of Chambers-Murray *Latin-English Dictionary* (W. K. Chambers, Edinburgh), which they will be permitted to take into the examination as a 'restricted book'.

### Latin II

**09.200/09.201/09.202** (i) Prescribed Books: Tacitus, *Agricola* (ed.), R. M. Ogilvie and I. A. Richmond (Oxford); Juvenal, *Satires* I, III, X (ed.), N. Rudd and E. Courtney (B.C.P.).

(ii) Reading Course: Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* (ed.), Patrick McGushin (B.C.P.); Horace, *Satires* (ed.), Palmer (Macmillan).

(iii) History period for 1983: 59–44 BC: texts will be supplied by the Department at cost.

(iv) Texts for translation will be supplied.

(v) For composition, the syntax and grammar books and Dictionary as for 09.101. Other texts will be supplied.

### Latin III

09.300/09.301/09.302 (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v) as Latin II.

(vi) Language: L. R. Palmer, *The Latin Language* (Faber).

### Latin for MA and Honours

**09.400/401** Texts will be supplied.

**09.402** Juvenal, *The Satires* (ed.), J. Ferguson (Macmillan, soft covers); Horace, *Odes and Satires*, texts will be notified later.

**09.403** Cicero, *Pro Caelio* (ed.), Austin, (Oxford); Cicero to Caelius and Caelius to Cicero; selections from Cicero *Epistulae ad Familiares* II and VIII will be provided at cost by the Department. Students who wish to purchase a text should purchase that of D. R. Shackleton Bailey, Cicero, *epistulae and familiares* Vol I 62–47 BC (Cambridge); Tacitus, *Annals* Books 1 and 2 in *The Annals of Tacitus* Vol. I (ed.), H. Furneaux (2nd edn), (Oxford).

**09.404** Vulgar Latin: Petronius, *Cena Trimalchionis*, (ed.), Smith (Oxford); Bede, *Historia Ecclesiastica*, (ed.), Garforth (Bell); *Millennium*, (ed.), F. E. Harrison (Oxford).

**09.405** Cicero, *Actio in Verrem I, pro lege Manilia, In Catilinam IV, pro Caelio*; Sallust, *Catiline*; Suetonius, *Divus Julius*. Students may obtain any text; D. L. Stockton, *Thirty-five Letters of Cicero* (Oxford).

**09.406** Virgil, *Aeneid* (ed.), R. D. Williams (Macmillan, 2 vols) OR *Vergili Opera* Oxford Classical Texts (ed.) R. A. B. Mynors.

## LAW

### First Law Examination

#### Part A

**25.102** Stream A: Scott, *The New Zealand Constitution*, 1962 (Oxford Clarendon Press); de Smith, *Constitutional and Administrative Law*, 3rd edn 1977 (Penguin); as an alternative to de Smith, Wade and Phillips, *Constitutional and Administrative Law*, 9th edn 1977 or 8th edn, 1970 (Longman).

Stream B: Wilson, *Cases and Materials of Constitution and Administrative Law*, 2nd edn 1976. (Cambridge University Press); available in paperback.

**25.103** Williams, *Learning the Law*, 9th edn 1978 (Stevens) with Notes for New Zealand Readers, 1979 (Sweet & Maxwell); Cross, *Precedent in English Law*, 3rd edn 1977 (Oxford); Hinde, *New*

*Zealand Law Dictionary*, 3rd edn 1979 (Butterworths).

## Part B

**25.101** Crimes Act 1961, and all amendments, Summary Offences Act 1981, Summary Proceedings Act (Reprint), all Government Printing Office; Doyle, *Criminal Procedure in New Zealand*, 1978 (Sweet & Maxwell); Smith & Hogan, *Criminal Law*, 3rd or 4th edn (Butterworths).

**25.104** Stream A: Salmond and Heuston, *The Law of Torts*, 18th edn 1981 (Sweet & Maxwell); Vennell, *Torts Casebook*, 1982 (University of Auckland Bindery).

Stream B: *Tort in Transition* — McKenzie, Palmer and Clark (Fourth Estate); Fleming, *Introduction to the Law of Torts* (Oxford); Vennell, *Law of Torts, Cases and Materials* (University of Auckland Bindery). Available only to law students from the Law School. Students should have copies of the following statutes: Accident Compensation Act 1972, Defamation Act 1954, Contributory Negligence Act 1947.

**25.105** Cheshire and Fifoot, *The Law of Contract* 5th NZ edn, 1979, Northey (Butterworths) and *Supplement*, 1980.

Stream B: Pannam & Hocker, *Cases on Contract*, 4th edn (Law Book Company, Sydney).

## Second Law Examination

**25.201** Hinde, McMorland and Sim, *Introduction to Land Law*, 1978 (Butterworths).

**25.202** Hinde, *Equity Study Guide*, 2nd edn 1973 (Butterworths); McKay, *Cases and Materials on Trusts*, 1980 (Fourth Estate Books Ltd.).

**25.203** Leys and Northey, *Commercial Law in New Zealand*, 7th edn 1982 (Butterworths). Students should have copies of the following statutes: Sale of Goods Act 1908, Hire Purchase Act 1971, Chattels Transfer Act 1924, Credit Contracts Act 1981 and also the Hire Purchase and Credit Sales Stabilisation Regulations 1957 (as amended).

**25.204** Leys and Northey, *Commercial Law in New Zealand*, 7th edn 1982 (Butterworths). Students should have copies of the following statutes: Sale of Goods Act 1908, Hire Purchase Act 1971, Chattels Transfer Act 1924, Insolvency Act 1967, Credit Contracts Act 1981 and also the Hire Purchase and Credit Sales Stabilisation Regulations 1957 (as amended).

**25.205** Northey, *Administrative Law Casebook*, (University of Auckland Bindery), 4th edn 1977. Available only to law students from the Law School.

**25.207** Clark (ed.), *Essays on Criminal Law in New Zealand*, 1971 (Sweet & Maxwell).

**25.208** Northey, *Company Law in New Zealand*, 9th edn 1981 (Butterworths); Webb and Webb, *Principles*

*of the Law of Partnership*, 2nd edn 1976 (Butterworths).

**25.211** Bromley and Webb, *Family Law*, 1974 (Butterworths). Students should have copies of the Statutes listed under 25.216.

**25.212** Szakats, *Introduction to the Law of Employment*, 1975 (Butterworths); Mathieson, *Industrial Law in New Zealand*, 1970 (Sweet & Maxwell).

**25.213** Bowett, *The Law of International Institutions*, 3rd edn 1975 (Stevens).

**25.214** Harris, *Cases and Materials of International Law*, London, 2nd edn, 1979 (Sweet & Maxwell), available in paperback.

**25.215** Northey, *Company Law in New Zealand* 9th edn, 1981 (Butterworths); Webb and Webb, *Principles of Partnership*, 2nd edn 1976 (Butterworths).

**25.216** Adams & Webb, *Family Law 1981*, (Legal Research Foundations, 1981) and Webb, *Further Aspects of Maintenance Law* (Legal Research Foundation, 1981). Students should have copies of the following New Zealand statutes: Marriage Act 1955; Adoption Act 1955; Guardianship Act 1968; Matrimonial Property Act 1963; Status of Children Act 1969; Domestic Actions Act 1975; Family Proceedings Act 1980; Family Courts Act 1980. Students contemplating taking Advanced Family Law in a subsequent year are advised to retain their copies of these statutes.

**25.218** S. F. C. Milsom, *Historical Foundations of the Common Law*, 2nd edn 1981 (Butterworths); J. H. Baker, *An Introduction to English Legal History*, 2nd edn 1979 (Butterworths); A. W. B. Simpson, *A History of the Common Law of Contract*, 1975 (Clarendon Press, Oxford).

**25.220** Palmer, *Local Government Law in New Zealand*, 1978 (Sweet & Maxwell).

**25.221** 1983 *New Zealand Master Tax Guide* (1983), Commerce Clearing House (New Zealand); *New Zealand Income Tax Legislation* (10th edn incorporating 1982 Amendments, 1983), Commerce Clearing House (New Zealand).

## Third Law Examination

**25.302** Leys & Northey, *Commercial Law in New Zealand*, 7th edn 1982. (Butterworths). Students should have copies of the following statutes, with all amendments: Chattels Transfer Act 1924, Contractual Remedies Act 1979, Companies Act 1955, The Stamp and Cheque Duties Act 1971, Sale of Goods Act 1908.

**25.308** Sim and Cain *Practice and Procedure*, 12th edn 1978 (Butterworths); Wily, *Magistrate's Courts Practice*, 7th edn 1973 (Butterworths).

**25.309** Northey, *Company Law in New Zealand*, 9th edn 1981 (Butterworths); Gower, *Principles of Modern Company Law* 3rd edn 1969 (Stevens & Sons); Leys & Northey, *Commercial Law in New Zealand*,



7th edn 1982 (Butterworths). Students should have copies of the following statutes, with *all amendments*: Chattels Transfer Act 1924, Companies Act 1955, Securities Act 1978.

**25.310** D. Lasok, *The Law of the Economy in the European Communities*, 1980 (Butterworths); T. C. Hartley, *The Foundations of European Community Law*, 1981 (Clarendon Press, Oxford).

**25.311** Webb and Davis, *A Casebook on the Conflict of Laws of New Zealand*, 1970 (Butterworths).

**25.312** Sutton, *Creditor's Remedies*, 1978. Students should in addition have copies of the following statutes, with all amendments: Distress and Replevin Act 1908, Wages Protection and Contracts Liens Act 1939 (1972 Reprint), Imprisonment for Debt Limitation Act 1908, Insolvency Act 1967.

**25.313** Williams, *Environmental Law in New Zealand*, 1980 (Butterworths).

**25.314** Evidence Act 1908, and all amendments, Government Printing Office.

**25.319** Palmer, *Planning Law in New Zealand*, 1977 (Sweet & Maxwell).

**25.322** McMorland, *Vendor and Purchaser*, 1978 (Butterworths), (being a reprint of Hinde, McMorland and Sim, *Land Law*, vol ii, chapter 10).

**25.323** Students should have copies of the following statutes with *all amendments*: Income Tax Act 1976, Estate and Gift Duties Act 1968, Trustee Act 1956. As an alternative to the Income Tax Act 1976, students may prefer to purchase the CCH edition "N.Z. Income Tax Legislation", incorporating the latest amendments to the principal Act.

**25.325** O'Keefe, *Readings in Maori Land Ownership*, 3rd edn, 1980 (University of Auckland Law School).

## LLB (Hons)

**25.350** Northey, *Company Law in New Zealand*, 9th edn 1981 (Butterworths); Gower, *Principles of Modern Company Law*, 3rd edn 1969 (Stevens & Sons).

**25.352** Williams, *Environmental Law in New Zealand*, 1980 (Butterworths); Barry Commoner, *The Closing Circle*, 1971 (Bantam Books) and Joseph L. Sax, *Defending the Environment*, 1970 (Vintage Books, Random House).

**25.367** O'Keefe, *Readings in Maori Land Ownership*, 3rd edn 1980 (University of Auckland Law School).

## Law Professional

**25.401** Sim and Cain, *Practice and Procedure*, 12th edn 1978; Wily, *Magistrate's Court Practice*, 7th edn 1973 (Butterworths).

**25.314** Evidence Act 1908, and all amendments, Government Printing Office.

**25.403** Piesse and Gilchrist Smith, *The Elements of Drafting*, 3rd edn 1965 (Stevens); Goodall and

Brookfield, *Conveyancing* 4th edn 1980 (Butterworths).

**25.404** Piesse and Gilchrist, *The Elements of Drafting*, 3rd edn 1965 (Stevens); Goodall and Brookfield, *Conveyancing*, 4th edn, 1980 (Butterworths); Macfarlane, *Legal Practice Manual Vols 1 & 2*, 2nd (Blue Spine) edn. Students should have copies of the property Law Act 1952 and the Land Transfer Act 1952, and of all amendments.

**25.405** Piesse and Gilchrist Smith, *The Elements of Drafting*, 3rd edn 1965 (Stevens); Goodall and Brookfield, *Conveyancing*, 4th edn 1980 (Butterworths).

## LINGUISTICS

### Linguistics I

**83.102** Fromkin, V and R. Rodman, *An Introduction to Language* (Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1978); Gleason, H. A., *Workbook in Descriptive Linguistics* (Holt, Rinehart & Winston).

**83.103** Lehmann, W. P. *Historical Linguistics: An Introduction*, 2nd edn 1973 (Holt, Rinehart & Winston).

### Linguistics II

**83.202** Trudgill, Peter, *Sociolinguistics: An Introduction*, 1974 (Penguin); Pride, J. B. and J. Holmes, (eds) *Sociolinguistics: Selected Readings* 1972 (Penguin).

**83.203** Hyman, Larry, *Phonology, Theory and Analysis* (Holt, Rinehart and Winston).

**83.204** Stockwell, R. P., *Foundations of Syntactic Theory*, 1977 (Prentice-Hall). Stockwell, R. P. et al. *Workbook in Syntactic Theory and Analysis*, 1977 (Prentice-Hall).

### Linguistics III

**83.301** Refer Philosophy 29.210.

**83.303** Clark, R., *Aspects of Proto-Polynesian Syntax* (Linguistic Society of N.Z., 1976); Walsh, D. S. and B. Biggs, *Proto-Polynesian Word List I* (Linguistic Society of N.Z., 1966).

**83.304** Steinberg, D. and Jakobovitz, L. A. (eds.), *Semantics* (C.U.P., 1971) (paperback).

**83.305** Refer English 18.303.

**83.307** Refer English 18.304.

## LOCAL GOVERNMENT AND ADMINISTRATION

**30.500** Graham W. A. Bush, *Local Government and Politics in New Zealand*, (Allen and Unwin, pb 1980); C. D. Scott, *Local and Regional Government: Function and Finance* (Allen & Unwin, pb 1979).

Note: Not offered in 1983

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES

### Management Studies I

**72.100** D. M. Kroenke, *Business Computer Systems: An introduction*, (Mitchell, 1981); Diana Stark, *Study Guide/Casebook to Accompany Kroenke*, (Mitchell, 1981).

### Management Studies II

**72.201** P. Kotler, *Marketing Management: Analysis, Planning and Control* 4th edn, (Prentice-Hall, 1980).

**72.202** G. Gordon & I. Pressman, *Quantitative Decision Making For Business*, (Prentice-Hall, 1978).

**72.203** J. A. F. Stoner, *Management* 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall, 1982).

**72.204** K. H. Chung & L. C. Megginson, *Organizational Behaviour: Developing Managerial Skills*, (Harper & Row, 1981).

**72.221** Daniel D. McCracken, *A Simplified Guide to Structured COBOL Programming*, (John Wiley & Sons, 1976).

### Management Studies III

**72.300** Alan J. Rowe, Richard O. Mason Karl Dickel, *Strategic Management & Business Policy*, (Addison-Wesley, 1982).

**72.301** J. F. Engel and R. D. Blackwell, *Consumer Behaviour*, 4th edn (Dryden Press).

**72.302** R. Wild, *Production and Operations Management*, (Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1979).

**72.303** J. S. Deeks et al., *Industrial Relations in New Zealand*, (Methuen, 1978).

**72.306** R. A. Peterson, *Marketing Research*, (Business Publications Inc., 1982).

**72.307** Strauss and Sayles, *Personnel - The Human Problem of Management*, 4th edn (Prentice-Hall); Gilbertson and Aston, *Personnel Management, Cases and Readings*, 4th edn (McGraw-Hill).

**72.308** H. M. Wagner, *Operations Research*, 2nd edn (Prentice-Hall 1975). E. F. P. Newson, *Management Science and The Manager, A Casebook*, (Prentice-Hall).

**72.309** Robock, Simmonds, Zwick, *International Business and Multinational Enterprises*, Rev. edn (Irwin, 1977).

**72.313** Arthur Elkins and Dennis W. Callaghan, *A Managerial Odyssey: Problems in Business and its Environment*, 3rd edn (Addison-Wesley).

**72.324** T. Yourdon and Constantine, *Structured Design*, (Prentice-Hall).

**72.321** J. Buckle, *Managing Software Projects*, (MacDonald and Jane's/American Elsevier).

**72.324** T. Housley, *Data Communications and Teleprocessing System*, (Prentice-Hall, 1979).

## MAORI STUDIES

### Maori Studies I

**04.100** Biggs, Bruce, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); Biggs, Bruce, *English-Maori Dictionary* (Reed, 1979).

**04.101** Metge Joan. *The Maoris of New Zealand* (Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1976); Schwimmer, E., *The World of the Maori* (Reed, 1966).

**04.104** Biggs, Bruce, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); Biggs, B., *English-Maori Dictionary* (Reed, 1979); Penfold, Merimeri, *Nga Hiikoi Tuatahi*: (copies available from the Anthropology Department).

### Maori Studies II

**04.203** Houghton, P., *The First New Zealanders* (Hodder & Stoughton, 1979); Prickett, N. (ed.) *The First Thousand Years* (Dunmore Press, 1982); Leach B. F., *The Prehistory of the Southern Wairarapa* (Reprint, Otago University, 1981).

**04.204** Biggs, Bruce, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); Biggs, Bruce, *Complete English-Maori Dictionary* (Auckland University Press, 1980); Biggs, Bruce, S. M. Mead, P. W. Hohepa, *Selected Readings in Maori* (copies available from the Anthropology Department); Biggs, B., C. Lane, H. Cullen, *Readings from Maori Literature* (copies available from the Anthropology Department); Williams, H. W., *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975).

**04.205** Waititi, Hoani, *Te Rangatahi II* (copies available from the Anthropology Department); Williams, H. W., *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); Biggs, B., *Complete English-Maori Dictionary* (Auckland University Press, 1980).

**04.206** Pendergrast, M., *Maori Basketry for Beginners* (Reed, 1975); Buck, P. H., *The Coming of the Maori* (Whitcombe & Tombs, 1968).

### Maori Studies III

**04.303** Mahuta, R. te K., *Whaikoorero* (available from Anthropology Department); Salmond, Anne, *Hui* (Reed, 1975); King, Michael, *Te Puea* (Hodder & Stoughton, 1977); King, Michael, *Te Ao Hurihuri* (Hicks, Smith & Sons, 1975); King, Michael (ed.) *Tihe Mauri Ora* (Methuen 1978).

**04.304** McLean, M and M. Orbell, *Traditional Songs of the Maori* (Auckland University Press/Oxford University Press, 1975).

**04.305** Clark, R., *Aspects of Proto-Polynesian Syntax* (Linguistic Society of N.Z., 1976); Walsh, D. S and Biggs, B., *Proto-Polynesian Word List I* (Linguistic Society of N.Z., 1966).

**04.306** Biggs, Bruce *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); Grey, Sir George, *Nga Mahi a nga Tupuna* (Reed, 1971); Williams, H. W., *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); Biggs B., P. W. Hohepa, S. M. Mead, *Selected Readings in Maori* (copies available from Department).

**04.307** Williams, H. W. *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); Grey, Sir George, *Nga Mahi a nga Tupuna* (Reed, 1971);

Biggs, Bruce, *Complete English-Maori Dictionary* (Auckland University Press, 1980)

## MATHEMATICS

### Maths I

**26.122** Mizrahi A, Sullivan, M., *Finite Mathematics with Applications* (Wiley International Edition, 3rd edn 1979).

**26.140** Grossman, Stanley I., *Calculus*, 2nd edn (Academic Press – International Edition.)

**26.141** Swokowski, Earl W., *Calculus, a First Course*, (International Student, 2nd edn) (Wadsworth Publishing Co. N.S.W. 1979) (Part I only).

**26.142** Haeussler, E. F. and Paul, R. S., *Calculus for the Managerial, Life and Social Sciences* (Prentice-Hall Inc., 1980).

**26.170** Bullen, K. E. *Theory of Mechanics* (Science Press).

**26.180** Larson, R. J. and Marx, M. L. *An Introduction to Mathematical Statistics and its Application* (Prentice-Hall Inc. 1981). *Eton Four-Figure Mathematical and Statistical Tables*. Calculators: see footnote.

**26.181** Mendenhall, W., *Introduction to Probability and Statistics* (Duxbury Press, Massachusetts, 5th edn 1979) (Wadsworth Student International Edition). *Eton Four-Figure Mathematical and Statistical Tables*. Calculators: see footnote.

### Maths II

**26.220** Leon, Steven J. *Linear Algebra with Applications* (MacMillan 1980).

**26.221** Bradley, G. L., *A Primer of Linear Algebra* (Prentice-Hall, Inc).

**26.240** Salas, S. L., and Hille E., *Calculus, (One and Several Variables)*, (Xerox College Publishing) or (Wiley International Edition) (3rd edn preferably).

**26.241** Apostol, T. M., *Calculus, Vol. 1*, 2nd edn (Xerox College Publishing, 1969, International Edition, Wiley).

**26.260** Zill, Dennis, G., *A First Course in Differential Equations with Applications* (Wadsworth International Student Edition).

**26.280** Larson, R. J. and Marx, M. L. *An Introduction to Mathematical Statistics and its Application* (Prentice-Hall Inc., 1981).

**26.281** A reading list for this course will be available from the course Study Guide.

### Maths III

**26.311** Lindquist, M. M., *Selected Issues in Mathematics Education* (National Society for the Study of Education, 5835 Kimbark Avenue, Chicago, IL 60637, 1980 (ISBN 0-8211-1114-0)).

**26.315** Dalen, van D. *Logic and Structure*. (Springer-Verlag, 1980) (ISBN 3-540-09839-3 or 0-387-09893-3).

**26.320** Durbin, John R., *Modern Algebra* (Wiley International Edition 1979).

**26.321** Durbin, John R., *Modern Algebra* (Wiley International Edition 1979).

**26.330** A reading list for this course will be available from the course Study Guide.

**26.331** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department.

**26.340** Rogers, K., *Advanced Calculus* (Bell and Howell Co., 1976 Columbus, Ohio, U.S.A.).

**26.345** Spiegel, M. R. *Complete Variables, with an introduction to conformal mapping and its applications* (Schaum Publishing Co.).

**26.350** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department.

**26.360** Boyce, William E., and DiPrima, Richard C., *Elementary Differential Equations and Boundary Value Problems* 3rd edn (John Wiley & Sons).

**26.370** Spiegel, M. R., *Theory and Problems of Theoretical Mechanics* (Schaum Publishing Co.).

**26.380** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased through the Department.

**26.388/488** Seber, G. A. F., *Linear Regression Analysis* (Wiley, New York).

**26.391** Murtagh, Bruce A., *Advanced Linear Programming* (McGraw-Hill 1981).

**26.395** Phillips, D. T., Ravindran A., Solberg, J., *Operations Research: Principles and Practice* (Wiley International Edition).

**Note:** Students taking course 26.180, 26.181 and 26.280 are required to have a battery powered calculator which has at least the following facilities: (i) Square roots, (ii) at least one memory.

## MEDICINE

Reading lists for MBChB are published in *The Handbook of the Faculty of Medicine & Human Biology*.

## MUSIC FOR BA AND BMUS

### Music I

**28.101** Trubitt, A & Hines, R., *Ear Training and Sight Singing*.

**28.103** Grout, D. J., *A History of Western Music* (3rd edn, Morton); Palisca, C. (ed.), *Norton Anthology of Western Music* (2 vols., Norton, 1980).

**28.122** Tunley, D., *Introductory Studies in Tonal Harmony* (University of Western Australia); Mews, D., *Harmony, a Young Musician's Introduction* (Lone Kauri Press).

### Music II

**28.202** Bach-Riemenschneider, 371 *Chorales* (Schirmer); Bach, J. S., *Inventions and Sinfonie: Preludes and Fugues (Well-tempered Klavier)* (Henle or Lea Pocket Scores).

- 28.203** Grout, D. J., *A History of Western Music* (3rd edn, Norton); Hoppin, R., *Medieval Music* (Norton, 1978); Strunk, O., *Source Readings in Music History: The Middle Ages* (Norton paperback, 1963); Palisca, C. (ed.), *Norton Anthology of Western Music* (Vol. 1).
- 28.205** Grout, D. J., *A History of Western Music* (3rd edn); Palisca, C. (ed.), *Norton Anthology of Western Music* (Vol. 1); Blume, F., *Renaissance and Baroque Music* (Norton paperback, 1967); Strunk, O., *Source Readings in Music History: The Baroque* (Norton paperback, 1963); Monteverdi, C., *Vespers of 1610* (Novello) Palisca, C., *Baroque Music* (2nd edn, Prentice-Hall).
- 28.207** Grout, D. J., *A History of Western Music* (3rd edn); Palisca, C., (ed.), *Norton Anthology of Western Music* (Vol. II); Abraham, G., *A Hundred Years of Music* (3rd edn. Methuen, 1964); Blume, F., *Classic and Romantic Music* (Norton paperback, 1970); Strunk, O., *Source Readings in Music History: The Romantic Period* (Norton paperback, 1963); Berlioz, *Symphonie Fantastique* (Kalmus Miniature Score).
- 28.209** Palisca, C. (ed.), *Norton Anthology of Western Music* (2 vols., Norton, 1980).
- 28.210** Harris, R., *Trio for Flute, Harp and Viola* (Price Milburn Music).
- 28.211** Swindale, O., *Polyphonic Composition* (O.U.P.).
- 28.214** Nettl, B., *Music in Primitive Cultures* (Harvard U.P., 1956).
- 28.215** Adler, S., *The Study of Orchestration; Workbook for the Study of Orchestration* (Norton, 1982).
- 28.216** Dwyer, T., *Composing with Tape Recorders* (O.U.P.); Strange, A., *Electronic Music Systems, Techniques and Controls*, (Wm. C. Brown & Co.).
- 28.222** Routley, E., *Church Music and the Christian Faith* (Collins).

### Music III

- 28.303** As for 28.203.
- 28.305** As for 28.205.
- 28.307** As for 28.207.
- 28.309** Palisca, C. (ed.), *Norton Anthology of Western Music* (2 vols., Norton, 1980).
- 28.310** Smith-Brindle, R., *Serial Composition* (C.U.P.).
- 28.314** McLean, M., *an Annotated Bibliography of Oceanic Music* (Polynesian Society, 1977).
- 28.316** Smith-Brindle, R., *The New Music* (O.U.P.); Farquhar, D., *Evocation for Violins* (Price Milburn Music); Body, J., *A Carol to St Stephen* (Wai-te-ata Press); Pruden, L., *Harbour Nocturne* (Wai-te-ata Press); Sanders, N., *Flame Tree* (Wai-te-ata Press).

### Music for Masters & Honours

- 28.406** Apel, W., *The Notation of Polyphonic Music 900-1600* (Medieval Academy of America, 1953).
- 28.409** Schenker, M., *Five Graphic Music Analyses* (Dover, 1969).

- 28.415** Kennan, K., *The Technique of Orchestration* (2nd edn, Prentice-Hall).

- 28.423** Brook, B. et al. (eds.) *Perspectives in Musicology* (Norton paperback, 1975).

## OPTOMETRY

For BOptom. The list of texts for DipOpt will be available from the Psychology Department.

### Optometry II

- 44.200** Longhurst, R. S., *Geometrical and Physical Optics* (Longmans).
- 44.201** Fincham, W. H. A. and Freeman, M. H., *Optics* 9th edn (Butterworth 1980).
- 44.203** Last, R. J., *Wolff's Anatomy of the Eye and Orbit* (Lewis).
- 44.204** Fatt, I., *Physiology of the Eye* (Butterworth 1978); Davson, H., *Physiology of the Eye*, 4th edn (Churchill Livingstone, 1980).
- 44.210** Moses, R. A., *Adler's Physiology of the Eye* 7th edn (Mosby 1981); Emsley, H. H., *Visual Optics Vol 1: Optics of Vision* 5th edn (Butterworth 1979).

### Optometry III

- 44.305** O'Connor Davies, P. H., *The Actions and Uses of Ophthalmic Drugs* (Barrie and Jenkins 1972).
- 44.310** Davson, H., *Physiology of the Eye* 4th edn (Churchill Livingstone 1980); Moses, R. A., *Adler's Physiology of the Eye* 7th edn (Mosby 1981).
- 44.311** Welford, W. T., *Aberrations of the Symmetrical Optical System* (Academic 1974).
- 44.312** Stone, J. and Phillips, A. J., *Contact Lenses Vol 1 and 2* 2nd edn (Butterworth 1981) or Ruben, M., *Contact Lens Practice: Visual, Therapeutic and Prosthetic* (Bailliere Tindall 1975).
- 44.313** Stevens, *Building Physics: Lighting* (Pergamon 1976).
- 44.315** Spector, W. G., *Introduction to General Pathology* 2nd edn (Churchill Livingstone 1980); Newell, F., *Ophthalmology, Principles and Concepts* 4th edn (Mosby 1978).
- 44.316** Bennett, A. G., *Emsley and Swaine's Ophthalmic Lenses* 4th edn (Butterworth, 1974); Bennett, A. G., *Optics of Contact Lenses* (Association of Dispensing Optician); Jalie, M., *The Principles of Ophthalmic Lenses* (Association of Dispensing Opticians); Standards Association of New Zealand NZS1563:1963 *Spectacle Lenses*.
- 44.330** Lyle and Wybar, *Practical Orthoptics in the Treatment of Squint* (Lewis); Reed, H. and Drance, S. M., *The Essentials of Perimetry* 2nd edn (Oxford 1978); Borish, I., *Clinical Refraction (Professional)*.

### Optometry IV

- 44.414** Standards Association of New Zealand. NZS5815:1979 *Industrial Eye Protection; Optometrists and Dispensing Opticians Act 1976* (Government Printer).

**44.430** Lyle and Wybar, *Practical Orthoptics in the Treatment of Squint* (Lewis); Reed, H. and Drance, S.M., *The Essentials of Perimetry* 2nd edn (Oxford 1978); Borish, I., *Clinical Refraction* (Professional).

## PHILOSOPHY

### Philosophy I

**29.100** J. Hospers, *An Introduction to Philosophical Analysis*, 2nd edn (R.K.P. paperback); R. Descartes, *Discourse on Method and the Meditations* (Penguin); Plato, *The Last Days of Socrates* (Penguin); Plato, *Protagoras and Meno* (Penguin).

**29.101** W. Hodges, *Logic* (Penguin paperback)

**29.102** Victor Grassian, *Moral Reasoning* (Prentice Hall paperback); H. J. Paton, *The Moral Law* (Hutchinson University Library); J. S. Mill, *Utilitarianism*, (ed. Mary Warnock) (Fontana paperback).

**29.103** J. S. Mill, *Three Essays* (Oxford paperback); Joel Feinberg, *Social Philosophy* (Prentice Hall paperback, 1973).

### Philosophy II

**29.201** I. Hacking, *Concise Introduction to Logic* (Random House paperback).

**29.203** C. G. Hempel, *Philosophy of Natural Science* (Prentice Hall paper back); A. Chalmers, *What is this thing called Science?* (Queensland U.P. paperback); D. Hull, *Philosophy of Biological Sciences* (Prentice-Hall paperback); E. D. Kelmke & R. Hollinger & A. D. Kline, (eds) *Introductory Readings in the Philosophy of Science* (Prometheus Books paperback); K. Popper, *The Logic of Scientific Discovery* (Hutchinson paperback).

**29.204** Plato, *Protagoras and Meno* (Penguin paperback); Plato, *Republic* (Penguin); R. Bambrough, *The Philosophy of Aristotle* (Mentor).

**29.205** R. Nozick, *Anarchy, State & Utopia* (Basic Books paperback).

**29.207** David Stewart, *Exploring the Philosophy of Religion* (Prentice-Hall paperback); J. D. Bettis (ed.), *Phenomenology of Religion* (Harper & Row)

**29.208** D. J. O'Connor and Brian Carr, *Introduction to the Theory of Knowledge* (Harvester paperback)

**29.211** Nino Langiulli (ed.), *The Existentialist Tradition, Selected Writings* (Humanities Press, New Jersey. Harvester Press, Sussex).

### Philosophy III

**29.300** K. Popper, *The Logic of Scientific Discovery* (Hutchinson paperback); K. Popper, *Conjectures and Refutations* (R. K. P. paperback).

**29.302** Plato, *Euthyphro, Apology, Crito* (Bobbs-Merrill); Plato, *Protagoras and Meno* (Penguin paperback); Plato, *Phaedo* (Hackett); R.

McKeon, *The Basic Works of Aristotle* (Random House).

**29.305** D. van Dalen, *Logic and Structure* (Springer-Verlag, Universitext).

## PHYSICS

### Physics I

**31.105** Backus, *The Acoustical Foundations of Music* (Murray, London, 1970).

**31.110** Halliday & Resnick, *Fundamentals of Physics*, 2nd edn Extended version (Wiley, 1981), *Laboratory Manual of First Year Practical Physics*, published by the Department of Physics and available from the University Bookshop.

**31.113** as for 31.110.

**31.115** Giancoli, *Physics: Principles with Applications* (Prentice-Hall, 1980), *Laboratory Manual of First Year Practical Physics*, Published by the Department of Physics and available from the University Bookshop.

**31.120** as for 31.110.

**31.123** as for 31.110.

**31.125** Giancoli, *Physics: Principles with Applications* (Prentice-Hall); *Laboratory Manual of First Year Practical Physics*, Published by the Department of Physics and available from the University Bookshop.

### Physics II, III, MSc and Honours

Lists of prescribed texts are available from Department Office by 1 December of the year prior to enrolment.

## PHYSIOLOGY

### Physiology (Science) II.

**67.201** Bell, G. H., Emslie-Smith, D & Paterson, C. R., *Textbook of Physiology* (Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh), 1980.

### Physiology (Science) III

**67.301** As for 67.201, supplemented by directed reading.

## POLITICAL STUDIES

### Political Studies I

**30.100** James Q. Wilson, *American Government: Institutions and Policies*, (Lexington: D. C. Heath & Co., 1980); Theo M. Christenson, *Challenge and Decision: Political Issues of Our Time*, 6th edn (New York: Harper & Row, 1981).

**30.101** D. D. Barry & C. Barner-Barry, *Contemporary Soviet Politics*, (Prentice-Hall, ppr., 2nd edn, 1981); A. Z. Rubinstein, *Soviet Foreign Policy Since World War II*, (Winthrop, ppr., 1981).

**30.102** Some of John Locke, *Two Treatises* (Mentor or any full edition); J. J. Rousseau, *Social Contract and Discourses* (Everyman); Robert C. Tucker, *The Marx-Engels Reader* (Norton) or David McLellan (ed.), *Marx: Selected Writings*, (Penguin or O.U.P.); Stephen Lukes, *Individualism* (Blackwell); Edmund Burke, *Reflections on the Revolution in France* (Penguin); John Dunn, *Western Political Theory in the Face of the Future* (C.U.P., 1979); C. B. Macpherson, *Property*, (Univ. of Toronto Press, 1978).

**30.105** Graham W. A. Bush, *Local Government and Politics in New Zealand*, (Allen & Unwin, ppr, 1980); R. M. Alley (ed.), *State Servants and the Public in the 1980s*, (N.Z. Institute of Public Administration, Wellington, 1980); McCurdy, Howard E., *Public Administration: A Synthesis* (Cummings 1977); S. Macrae & D. Pitt, *Public Administration: An Introduction*, (Pitman ppr, 1979).

## Political Studies II

**30.201** Stacey, Frank, *British Government 1966-1975 Years of Reform* (O.U.P., ppr.); Magdwick, P. J., *Introduction to British Politics*, (2nd edn, Hutchinson, ppr.); or M. Minogue, *Documents on Contemporary British Government* (Vol. 1, C.U.P., ppr.); B. Smith, *Policy-Making in British Government*, (Martin Robertson, ppr.); F. Hirsch, *The Social Limits to Growth*, (Routledge, ppr.); D. E. Ashford, *Policy and Politics in Britain: The Limits of Consensus* (Temple U.P. ppr.); R. M. Punnett, *British Government and Politics*, (4th rev. edn ppr.).

**30.202** R. Chapman (ed.), *Ends and Means in New Zealand Politics*, (Univ. of Auckland Bulletin); R. Chapman, *The Political Scene 1919-1931* (Heinemann ppr.); R. M. Chapman, *Marginals '72* (Heinemann ppr. 1973); S. Levine (ed.), *Politics in New Zealand: A Reader* (George Allen & Unwin 1978).

**30.203** Brian Easton *Pragmatism and Progress: Social Security in the Seventies* (Univ. of Canterbury, 1980); G. Palmer, *Unbridled Power* (O.U.P. 1979).

**30.204** J. A. Camilleri, *An Introduction to Australian Foreign Policy*, (4th edn, Jacaranda Press ppr.); Henderson, Jackson & Kennaway (eds), *Beyond New Zealand: The Foreign Policy of a Small State* (Methuen).

**30.208** Sten Berglund & Ulf Lindsrom. *The Scandinavian Party System(s)*, (Studentlitteratur, ppr, 1978);

**30.209** J. Martin, *A Guide to Marxism*, (Univ. of Queensland Press, 1979); D. J. Manning, *The Form of Ideology*, (Allen & Unwin, 1980); R. N. Berki,

*Socialism*, (Dent, 1975); Isaiah Berlin, *Four Essays on Liberty*.

## Political Studies III

**30.301** H. T. Nash, *American Foreign Policy: Changing Perspectives on National Security*, (Dorsey, ppr. 1978); Thomas L. Brewer, *American Foreign Policy: A Contemporary Introduction*, (Prentice-Hall, ppr., 1980).

**30.302** Leslie Rubin and Brian Weinstein, *Introduction to African Politics* (Praeger, 2nd edn); Irving Leonard Markowitz, *Power and Class in Africa* (Prentice-Hall).

Arthur Garshon *Crisis in Africa*, (Penguin); D. Cohen & J. Daniel (eds), *Political Economy of Africa*, (Longman ppr.); C. Stoneman (ed.) *Zimbabwe's Inheritance*, (Macmillan ppr.); Billy Dudley, *Introduction to Nigerian Government and Politics* (Macmillan ppr.).

**30.303** Denis J. Palumbo, *Statistics in Political and Behavioural Science* (Revised edn, Columbia U.P., 1977); Claire Seltiz, Lawrence S. Wrightsman and Stuart W. Cook, *Research Methods in Social Relations*, (4th edn Holt Rinehart & Winston, ppr. 1981).

**30.304** H. Himmelweit et al, *How Voters Decide* (Academic Press, ppr. 1981) N. H. Nie, S. Verba, J. R. Petrocik, *The Changing American Voter*, (Harvard U.P. ppr., 1979 edn).

**30.305** S. I. Benn and R. S. Peters, *Principles of Political Thought* (Free Press ppr.); D. D. Raphael, *Problems of Political Philosophy*, (McMillan).

**30.307** K. Dawisha and P. Hanson, *Soviet-East European Dilemmas*, (Heinemann, ppr. 1981); J. Lodge, *Institutions and Policies of the European Community*, (Frances Pinter ppr. 1982).

**30.309** Wilson, *Rationality*, (Blackwell); Anthony Downs, *An Economic Theory of Democracy* (Harper and Row 1957); either Brian Barry, *Sociologists, Economists, and Democracy* or Jack Lively, *Democracy*; A. F. Chalmers, *What is this thing called Science?* (Univ. of Queensland, 1978).

**30.310** C. Ham & M. Hill, *Policy Analysis & Public Administration* (Wheatseaf ppr.) 1982; T. M. Berthold (ed.), *The Accountability of the Executive* (New Zealand Institute of Public Administration ppr. 1981); W. I. Jenkins & A. Gray, *Administrative Politics in British Government* (Wheatseaf ppr.; 1982); C. H. Weiss & A. H. Barton (ed.), *Making Bureaucracies Work* (Sage ppr. 1980); B. G. Peters, *The Politics of Bureaucracy* (Longman ppr. 1978).

## Political Studies for MA and Honours

**30.401** D. G. Bromley and C. E. Longino (eds), *White Racism and Black Americans* (Schenkman GLP); L. L. Burke and J. J. McCorry, *Black Ameri-*

*cans and the Political System* (Winthrop, 2nd edn 1980); S. Carmichael and C. V. Hamilton, *Black Power* (Vintage ppr.); J. G. A. Pocock (ed.), *The Maori and New Zealand Politics* (Pauls); *Report of the National Advisory Commission on Civil Disorders* (Kerner Report) (Bantam Books).

**30.402** P. Dunleavy, *Urban Political Analysis: The Politics of Collective Consumption* (Macmillan ppr 1980); J. Gyford, *Local Politics in Britain* (Croon Helm ppr. 1976); P. G. Richards, *The Reformed Local Government System* (Allen & Unwin ppr. 1980); C. N. Stone et al, *Urban Policy & Politics in a Bureaucratic Age* (Prentice-Hall ppr. 1979); R. C. Fried & F. F. Rabinovitz, *Comparative Urban Politics: A Performance Approach* (Prentice-Hall ppr. 1980); D. Caraley, *City Governments & Urban Problems* (Prentice-Hall; 1977).

**30.403** Rosemary Righter, *Whose News? Politics, the Press and the Third World*, (Burnett Books/Deutsch); Jeremy Tunstall, *The Media are American*, (Constable, ppr.); Anthony Smith, *The Geopolitics of Information*, (Faber); Sean MacBride, *Many Voices, One World*, (Kogan Page, ppr.); M. Gurevitch et al (eds), *Culture, Society and the Media* (Methuen ppr.).

**30.404** Don Aitkin & Brian Jinks, *Australian Political Institutions*, (Australia, ppr. 1982 edn).

**30.407** Thomas Hobbes, *Leviathan*, (Blackwells, O.U.P., or Penguin); D. D. Raphael, *Hobbes*, (Allen & Unwin, 1977).

**30.408** James Curran, Michael Gurevitch and Jane Woollacott (eds), *Mass Communication and Society*, (Edward Arnold, Open University, 1977); Colin Seymour-Ure, *The Political Impact of Mass Media*, (Sage or Constable, 1974).

**30.409** J. Stephen Hoadley, *The Military in the Politics of Southeast Asia: A Comparative Perspective* (Schenkman paperback); Lucian W. Pye, *Aspects of Political Development* (Little, Brown paperback); Rex Mortimer, (ed.), *Showcase State: The Illusion of Indonesia's "Accelerated Modernisation"* (Angus and Robertson); Alasdair MacBean, *Meeting the Third World Challenge*, (Macmillan, ppr., 2nd edn, 1978).

**30.411** K. Dawisha and P. Hanson, *Soviet East European Dilemmas*, (Heinemann ppr. 1981); A. Brown and J. Gray, *Political Culture and Political Change in Communist States*. (Macmillan 1979); R. Kindersley, *In Search of Eurocommunism* (Macmillan ppr. 1981).

**30.412** Thomas E. Cronin, *The State of the Presidency*, 2nd edn., (Little Brown, ppr., 1980); Lucius J. Barker and Twiley W. Barker Jr., (eds.), *Civil Liberties and the Constitution: Cases and Commentaries*. (4th edn, Prentice-Hall, 1982).

**32.109** Gleitman, H. *Psychology*, (Norton, 1981) *Psychology I Laboratory Manual* (available from the University Bookshop).

### Psychology II (for Arts and Science)

**32.206** Domjan, M. and Burkhard, B. *Principles of learning and Behaviour*, (Brooks/Cole, 1982); Matheson, D. W., Bruce, R. L., and Beauchamp, K. L., *Experimental Psychology: Research Design & Analysis*. (Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 3rd edn, 1978).

**32.207** *Physiological Psychology Laboratory Manual* (available from the University Bookshop); Coren, S., Porac, C. and Ward, L. M., *Sensation and Perception* (Academic Press, 1979); Carlson, N. R. *Physiology of Behaviour* (Allyn and Bacon, 1980).

**32.208** Craig, G. C. *Human Development* (Prentice-Hall, 2nd edn, 1980). Knapp, M. L., *Non Verbal Communication in Human Interaction*. (Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 2nd edn, 1978).

### Psychology III (for Arts and Science)

**32.301** Anastasi, Ann, *Psychological Testing* (Macmillan 5th edn, 1975).

**32.303** Seamon, J. G. *Memory and Cognition: An Introduction* (Oxford University Press, 1980); Miller, G. A., *Language and Speech*, (Freeman, 1981).

**32.304** Students must choose one of the following texts: Rychlak, J. F. *Introduction to Personality and Psychopathology: A Theory-Construction Approach* (Houghton-Mifflin, 1973); Monte, C. F., *Beneath the Mask* (Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 2nd edn, 1979).

**32.305** Carlson, N. R. *Physiology of Behaviour* (Allyn and Bacon, 1980).

**32.307** Moore, B. C. J., *Introduction to Psychology of Hearing*. (Academic, 2nd edn, 1982).

**32.311** Turner, J. C. and Giles, H. (eds.), *Intergroup Behaviour*, (Blackwell, 1981).

**32.312** Wexley, K. N. and Yukl, G. A., *Organizational Behavior and Personnel Psychology*, (Irwin, 1977); Argyle, M., *The Social Psychology of Work*, (Pelican, 1974).

### Psychology for MA, MSc and Honours

**32.403** Hersen, M. and Barlow, D. H. *Single Case Experimental Designs* (Pergamon, N.Y., 1980).

**32.409** Sarason, I. G. and Sarason, B. R. *Abnormal Psychology* (Prentice-Hall, 3rd edn, 1980).

**32.418** Wexley, K. N. and Yukl, G. A. *Organisational Behaviour and Personnel Psychology* (Irwin, 1977); Thompson, D. W. *Managing People, Influencing Behaviour* (C. V. Mosby, 1978).

### RUSSIAN

Only prescribed books for Russian I, II and III and MA papers offered in 1983 are indicated below. A handbook, reading lists and additional teaching material in mimeographed form are available from the Department.

## PSYCHOLOGY

### Psychology I (for Arts and Science)

**32.108** Gleitman, H. *Psychology*, (Norton, 1981)

**Russian I**

**43.100/101** V. Kostomarov (ed.), *Russkii iazyk dlia vsekh*, 5 vols. (Progress, Moscow); A. S. Romanov (ed.), *Russian-English, English-Russian Dictionary* (Pocket Book); Iu. Prokhorov *Lingvostranovedcheskie teksty dlia govoriashchikh na angliiskom iazyke* (Russkii iazyk).

**43.111** Lj. Jonke, E. Leskovar, K. Pranjic, *Hrvatskosrpski Audio-vizuelna metoda* (Jugoton-Zagreb, Didier-Pariz); Thomas F. Magner, *The Student's Dictionary of Serbo-Croatian* (Singidunum Press).

**43.112** N. V. Riasanovsky, *A History of Russia* (Oxford, 1977).

**43.113** I. S. Turgenev, *Fathers and Sons* (Penguin); F. M. Dostoevskii, *Crime and Punishment* (Penguin); L. N. Tolstoi, *Anna Karenina* (Penguin); A. P. Chekhov, *Lady with the Lapdog and Other Stories* (Penguin); A. P. Chekhov, *Plays* (Penguin); M. Gor'kii, *Childhood* (Penguin); Boris Pasternak, *Doctor Zhivago* (Fontana).

**Russian II**

**43.210** S. Khavronina, A. Shirochenskaia, *Russian in Exercises* (Progress, Moscow); Patricia Anne Davis, Donald Vincent Oprende, *Making Progress in Russian* (Xerox Publishers).

**43.211** (i) B. O. Unbegaun, *Russian Grammar* (Clarendon) ch. E. Gribble, *Russian Root List (Slavica)*; (ii) D. Obolensky (ed.), *The Heritage of Russian Verse* (Indiana).

**43.212** A. S. Pushkin, *Povesti Belkina* (Blackwell or Bradda); Nikolai Gogol', *Shinel'* (Bradda); I. S. Turgenev, *Mumu* (Bradda); Anton Chekhov, *Selected Short Stories* (Prideaux); D. S. Mirsky, *A History of Russian Literature from its Beginnings to 1900* (Vintage Russian Library).

**Russian III**

**43.310** Patricia Anne Davis, Donald Vincent Oprende, *Making Progress in Russian* (Xerox Publishers); Roger W. Phillips, *A Concise Russian Review Grammar* (Univ. of Wisconsin Press); M. Bogojavlensky, *Russian Review Grammar (Slavica)*.

**43.311** B. O. Unbegaun, *Russian Grammar* (Clarendon); Ch. E. Gribble, *Russian Root List (Slavica)*.

**43.312** A. S. Pushkin, *Evgenii Onegin* (Bradda); F. M. Dostoevskii, *Brat'ia Karamazovy* (any edition); L. N. Tolstoi, *Anna Karenina* (any edition).

**43.313** I. A. Bunin, *Rasskazy* (available from Department); Aleksandr Blok, *Lirika* (available from Department); I. Babel', *Konarmiia* (Prideaux); M. Zoshchenko, *Rasskazy* (available from Department); Vladimir Maiakovskii, *Lirika* (available from Department); E. Zamiatin, *Rasskazy* (available from Department); Anna Akhmatova, *Lirika* (available from Department); V. Shukshin, *Rasskazy* (available from Department); Bella Akhmadulina, *Lirika*

(available from Department).

**Russian for MA and Honours**

**43.410** A. Nakhimovsky, R. Leed, *Advanced Russian (Slavica)*.

**43.411** B. O. Unbegaun, *Russian Grammar* (Clarendon). Ch. E. Gribble, *Russian Root List (Slavica)*.

**43.416** Material available from Department.

**43.417** I. Andrić, *Na Drini ćuprija* (Svjetlost, Sarajevo).

**43.419** N. K. Gudzii (ed.), *Khrestomatiia po drevne-russkoi literature* (Prosveshchenie; latest edition).

**SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES****Scandinavian Studies I**

**46.100** Beite, *Basic Swedish Grammar*. Hildeman, *Learn Swedish – Swedish Reader for Beginners*.

**46.101** H. C. Andersen, selected tales (cyclostyled); Ibsen, *Hedda Gabler and Other Plays* (Penguin); Strindberg, *Fröken Julie*; Bellman, selected poems (cyclostyled); Brandberg, *A Swedish Reader* (Athlone); selected Swedish poems (cyclostyled).

**Scandinavian Studies II**

**46.200** Beite, *Basic Swedish Grammar* (Almqvist & Wiksell); Holm & Mathlein, *Svensk, svenska, Fortsättningsbok* (Skriptor); *Modern svensk-engelsk ordbok* (Prisma); *Modern engelsk-svensk ordbok* (Prisma).

**46.201** Bergman, *A Short History of the Swedish Language* (Swedish Institute); Heidenfors, *Danska och norska 3* (Utbildningsförlaget); Lagerkvist, *Barabbas* (Aldus); selected Swedish poems (cyclostyled).

**46.202** Holberg, *Jeppé of the Hill* (text supplied by Dept.); Ibsen, *Brand* (Heinemann), *An Enemy of the People* (Eyre Methuen), *The Master Builder and Other Plays* (Penguin); Strindberg, *Påsk, Till Damaskus I* (Aldus); Hjalmar Bergman, *Herr Sleeman kommer*; Lagerkvist, *Himlens hemlighet* (text supplied by Dept.); Ingmar Bergman, *The Seventh Seal, Wild Strawberries* (Lorrimer).

**Scandinavian Studies III**

**46.300** Beite, *Basic Swedish Grammar* (Almqvist & Wiksell); Lindholm, *Svensk grammatik*; Bruzaeus, *Mera svenska* (both Kursverksamheten, Lund); Heidenfors, *Danska och norska 3* (Utbildningsförlaget); *Modern svensk-engelsk ordbok* (Prisma); *Modern engelsk-svensk ordbok* (Prisma).

**SOCIOLOGY****Sociology I**

**82.100** Robertson, I. *Sociology*, (Worth, 1981).

**82.101** Bedgood, D., *Rich & Poor in New Zealand*, (George Allen & Unwin, 1980); Spoonley, P., Pearson, D., and I. Shirley, (eds) *New Zealand: Sociological Perspectives*, (Dunmore Press, 1982).



**82.102** Nisbet, Robert, *The Sociological Tradition*, (London, Heinemann, 1967). Bullock, A., and Oliver Stallybrass, *The Fontana Dictionary of Modern Thought*. (London, Fontana Books 1977). Campell, Tom, *Seven Theories of Human Society*, (London, O.U.P. 1981); Coser, Lewis A., *Masters of Sociological Thought* (New York, Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 2nd edn 1977).

## Sociology II

**82.200** Durkheim, E., *The Division of Labour in Society*, (Free Press, 1964); Gerth, H. H. & C. W. Mills (ed.) *From Max Weber* (Routledge, 1970); Tucker, R. C. (ed) *The Marx-Engels Reader*, (Norton, 1980).

**82.201** Ackroyd, S., & J. Hughes, *Data Collection in Context*, (Longman Paul, 1981); Hughes, J., *The Philosophy of Social Research*, (Longman Paul, 1980); Silvey, J., *Deciphering Data*, (Longman Paul, 1975).

**82.202** Wild, R. A., *Australian Community Studies and Beyond*, (Allen & Unwin, Sydney, 1981).

**82.204** Hastings, W. M., *How to Think about Social Problems*, (New York, O.U.P., 1979).

**82.205** Reading List available from the Department.

**82.206** Reading List available from the Department.

**82.208** Perrow, C., *Complex Organizations. A Critical Essay*, (Scott, Foresman & Co., 2nd edn).

## Sociology III & MA

Reading lists are available from the Department.

## SPANISH

### Spanish I

**45.100** Da Silva, *Beginning Spanish, A Concept Approach* (Harper & Rowe).

**45.101** Modern Poetry (supplied); Lorca, *La Casa de Bernarda Alba* (Cátedra); Unamuno, *Dos novelas cortas* (Ginn/Blaisdell); Modern Poetry (supplied).

**45.102** Curso Básico (supplied).

**45.103** R. Carr, *Modern Spain, 1875-1980* (Opus - O.U.P. paperback).

### Spanish II

**45.200** Michalson & Aires, *Spanish Grammar* (Prentice-Hall).

**45.201** C. C. Smith (ed.), *Spanish Ballads*; R. O. Jones (ed.), *Lazarillo de Tormes*; Lope de Vega, *El castigo sin venganza*; 16th Century Poetry (supplied).

**45.202** Bécquer, *Rimas y leyendas* (Cátedra); Blasco Ibáñez, *La barraca* (Harrap); Duque de Rivas, *Don Alvaro* (Cátedra); Buero Vallejo, *Hoy es fiesta* (Harrap); Sender *Mosén Millán* (D. C. Heath).

**45.203** Poetry (supplied); Lorca, *Bodas de sangre* (Cátedra); Rojas, *La Celestina*; Galdós, *Doña Perfecta* (las Américas); Borges, *Ficciones* (Emecé).

**45.204** South American poetry (supplied) Sábato, *El túnel*; Rulfo, *Pedro Paramo*; Solórzano (ed.), *Teatro hispanoamericano II*; Cuentos.

## Spanish III

**45.301** Old Spanish; Lyric Poetry (supplied); C. Smith (ed.) *Poema de mio Cid* (Oxford Clarendon); *Poema de Fernán González*; Juan Ruiz, *Libro de buen amor*.

**45.302** Calderón, *La vida es sueño* (MUP); Tirso de Molina, *El burlador de Sevilla*; Cervantes, *Páginas del Quijote*; Quevedo, *El buscón*; Terry (ed.), *Anthology of Spanish Poetry*, vol. II.

**45.303** Larra, *Artículos* (Bell); Espronceda, *Poesías líricas*, *El estudiante de Salamanca*; Zorrilla, *Don Juan Tenorio*; Valera, *Pepita Jiménez* (Pergamon); Pardo Bazán, *Los pazos de Ulloa* (Alianza).

**45.304** Machado, *Poesías completas*; Lorca, *La casa de Bernarda Alba* (Cátedra); Cela, *La familia de Pascual Duarte*; Buero Vallejo, *Historia de una escalera*; J. Marse, *La muchacha de las bragas de oro* (Planeta paperback).

**45.305** Gallegos, *Doña Barbara*; Neruda, *Residencia en la tierra*; Asturias, *El señor presidente*; García Márquez, *Cien años de soledad*, Solórzano, *Teatro I*.

## TOWN PLANNING

Reading lists are available from the Department.

## ZOOLOGY

### Zoology I

**Zoology 102** Chapman and Barker, *Zoology* (Longmans); Valentine, *Evolution of Multicellular Plants and Animals*, Scientific American Offprint 1978; Ketton. W. T., *Biological Science* 3rd edn, (Norton); *An Auckland Book of the Invertebrates* purchased in Zoology Department.

### Advanced Zoology

**Zoology 201, 301** Barnes, *Invertebrate Zoology*, 4th edn (Saunders).

**Zoology 202, 302** Young, *Life of the Vertebrates* (O.U.P.), or Romer, *The Vertebrate Body* 4th edn, (Saunders).

**Zoology 203, 303** Saunders, *An Introduction to Biological Rhythms*, (Glasgow Blackie, 1977); or Brady, *Biological Clocks*, Studies in Biology No 104.

**Note:** Course notes must be obtained from the Zoology Department at the start of the course).

**Zoology 204, 304** Krebs, C. and Davies, N. B., *An Introduction to Behavioural Ecology* (Blackwell Scientific Publications, 1981).

**Zoology 205, 305** Miller, *Common Insects in New Zealand* (Reed); Romoser, *The Science of Entomology* (Macmillan).

**Zoology 209, 309** R. M. G. Wells, *Invertebrate Respiration* (Studies in Biology No. 127) (Arnold); K. Schmidt-Nielsen, *Animal Physiology*, 2nd edn (Cambridge University Press).

**Zoology 315** D. L. Hartl, *A Primer of Population Genetics* (Sinauer Associates, 1981); or D. L. Hartl, *Principles of Population Genetics* (Sinauer Associates, 1980).

## SUMMARY OF SUBJECT CODES

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>01</b> Accounting   | <b>44</b> Optometry                              |
| <b>02</b> Commercial Law                                       | <b>45</b> Spanish                                |
| <b>03</b> Anthropology   | <b>46</b> Scandinavian Studies                   |
| <b>04</b> Maori Studies  | <b>47</b> Obstetrics and Gynaecology             |
| <b>06</b> Botany   | <b>48</b> Chinese                                |
| <b>07</b> Computer Science                                     | <b>50</b> }                                      |
| <b>08</b> Chemistry  | <b>51</b> } Engineering: Chemical, Civil         |
| <b>09</b> Latin  | <b>52</b> } Electrical, Science,                 |
| <b>10</b> Greek  | <b>53</b> } Mechanical                           |
| <b>11</b> Biblical History & Literature                        | <b>54</b> }                                      |
| <b>12</b> Ancient History                                      | <b>55</b> }                                      |
| <b>13</b> Economics  | <b>57</b> Engineering Mechanics                  |
| <b>14</b> Education; Guidance & Counselling                    | <b>59</b> Languages and Literature               |
| <b>15</b> Architecture   | <b>60</b> Human Biology                          |
| <b>16</b> Educational Psychology                               | <b>63</b> Behavioural Science                    |
| <b>18</b> English  | <b>65</b> Anatomy                                |
| <b>19</b> Art History  | <b>66</b> Biochemistry                           |
| <b>20</b> Geography  | <b>67</b> Physiology                             |
| <b>21</b> Geology  | <b>68</b> Pathology                              |
| <b>22</b> German   | <b>70</b> Business and Industrial Administration |
| <b>23</b> Hebrew   | <b>72</b> Management Studies                     |
| <b>24</b> History  | <b>73</b> Classical Studies                      |
| <b>25</b> Law  | <b>74</b> Operations Research                    |
| <b>26</b> Mathematics  | <b>75</b> Drama                                  |
| <b>27</b> Fine Arts  | <b>76</b> Systems Analysis                       |
| <b>28</b> Music  | <b>80</b> Indonesian                             |
| <b>29</b> Philosophy   | <b>81</b> Japanese                               |
| <b>30</b> Political Studies; Local Government & Administration | <b>82</b> Sociology                              |
| <b>31</b> Physics  | <b>83</b> Linguistics                            |
| <b>32</b> Psychology: (Arts and Science)                       | <b>84</b> Environmental Studies                  |
| <b>34</b> French   | <b>86</b> Energy Technology                      |
| <b>35</b> Italian  | <b>90</b> Medicine (MBChB)                       |
| <b>36</b> Town Planning  | <b>91</b> Community Health                       |
| <b>37</b> Valuation  | <b>92</b> Medicine                               |
| <b>38</b> Zoology  | <b>93</b> Paediatrics                            |
| <b>39</b> Biology  | <b>94</b> Psychiatry                             |
| <b>40</b> Cell Biology   | <b>95</b> Surgery                                |
| <b>43</b> Russian  | <b>96</b> Pharmacology                           |

**DIRECTORY**

*The Postal Address for all Departments is Private Bag, Auckland*

Accommodation Officer, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street

Accounts, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street

Accountancy, 3 Alfred Street

Administration, 24 Princes Street

Anatomy, School of Medicine, 85 Park Road

Ancient History, Classics and Ancient History Dept, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street

Animal Research Laboratories, School of Medicine, 85 Park Road

Anthropology Department, 10 Symonds Street

Anthropology (Linguistics), 10 Symonds Street

(Maori Studies), 10 Symonds Street

(Prehistory), 10 Symonds Street

(Social Anthropology), 10 Symonds Street

Applied Research Office, 24 Symonds Street (Sixth Floor)

Architecture, 26 Symonds Street

Art History, 11 Symonds Street

Asian History, History Department, 1A Wynyard Street

Asian Geography, Geography Department, 10 Symonds Street

Asian Languages and Literatures, 9 Symonds Street

Audio Visual Facilities, Science Building, 23 Symonds Street

Bank, Old Arts Building wing, left of driveway, 3A Symonds Street

Behavioural Science, Psychology Department, 10 Symonds Street

Biblical History, Classics and Ancient History Department, Old Arts Building, 22 Princess Street

Bindery, 176 Kapa Road, Orakei, 5

Biochemistry, Science Building, 23 Symonds Street

Bookshop, Student Union, 34 Princes Street (Deliveries to 25 Anzac Avenue)

Botany, 3A Symonds Street (Deliveries to No 3)

Cafeteria, Student Union, 34 Princes Street

Careers Adviser, at rear of Upper Lecture Theatre

Cashier, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street

Cell Biology, 3A Symonds Street (Deliveries to No 3)

Chapel and Chaplain, 18 Princes Street

Chemistry, 23 Symonds Street (Deliveries to Wellesley Street East)

Chinese, 9 Symonds Street

Choral Hall, see Old Choral Hall

Classics and Ancient History, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street

Community Health, School of Medicine, 85 Park Road

Computer Centre, 24 Symonds Street

Computer Science, Science Building, 36 Princes Street

Continuing Education, Old Choral Hall, 7 Symonds Street

Counsellors, Old Arts Building wing, left of driveway, 3A Symonds Street

Crèche, 30 Wynyard Street

Criminology, Library Building, 5 Alfred Street

Custodian, Office: Old Choral Hall, 7 Symonds Street

Economics, 4 Alfred Street

Education, 5 Alten Road

Educational Psychology, Education Department, 5 Alten Road

Engineering, 20 Symonds Street (Deliveries to 3 Grafton Road)

English, left of driveway, 5 Symonds Street

Finance, Old Arts Building, 22 Princess Street

Fine Arts, 20 Whitaker Place

French, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street

Maidment Arts Centre, 8 Alfred Street  
Maintenance, left of driveway, 5 Wynyard Street  
Management Studies, Old Choral Hall, 7 Symonds Street  
Maori Studies, Anthropology Department, 10 Symonds Street  
Mathematics and Statistics, Science Building, 36 Princes Street  
Medicine, School of, 85 Park Road

Medicine, Department of, Auckland Hospital, Park Road  
Music, 31 Princes Street

Newman Hall, Waterloo Quadrant  
New Zealand Energy Research and Development Committee, 20 Symonds Street  
Norman Spencer Senior Student Apartments, 9 St Stephens Avenue

Obstetrics and Gynaecology, National Women's Hospital, Claude Road, 3  
Old Choral Hall, 1 Alfred Street  
Optometry, 8 Symonds Street  
O'Rorke Hall, 49 Symonds Street

Paediatrics, School of Medicine, 85 Park Road  
Pathology, School of Medicine, 85 Park Road  
Pharmacology, School of Medicine, 85 Park Road  
Philosophy, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street  
Photographer, Ground Floor Science Building, 23 Symonds Street  
Physical Recreation (Gymnasium), Student Union, 17 Symonds Street  
Physico-Chemistry, 10 Symonds Street  
Physics, Science Building, 36 Princes Street (Deliveries to Wellesley Street East)  
Physiology, School of Medicine, 85 Park Road  
Political Studies, 18 Symonds Street  
Post Office, Old Arts Building wing, left of driveway, 3A Symonds Street  
Psychiatry, School of Medicine, 85 Park Road  
Psychology, 10 Symonds Street  
Publications, Editor, 9 Grafton Road

Radio Research Centre, 36 Princes Street, and at Ardmore  
Recreation Centre, 17 Symonds Street  
Registry, 24 Princes Street  
Rex Court, 4 Symonds Street  
Romance Languages, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street  
Russian, 10 Symonds Street

Scandinavian Studies, 10 Grafton Road  
Senior Common Room, Old Government House, 3A Symonds Street  
Serbo-Croatian, Russian Department, 10 Symonds Street  
Sociology, 10 Symonds Street  
Spanish, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street  
Student Accommodation, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street  
Student Counsellors, Old Arts Building wing, left of driveway, 3A Symonds Street  
Student Health, Old Arts Building wing, left of driveway, 3A Symonds Street  
Student Union, 34 Princes Street  
Surgery, Auckland Hospital, Park Road

Theatre and Student Activities Officer, Student Union, 34 Princes Street  
Thomas Building, 3A Symonds Street (Deliveries to No. 3)  
Town Planning, 26 Symonds Street

University Club 23/25 Princes Street  
University Park, 85 Merton Road, Auckland  
University Press, 9 Grafton Road

Valuation, Architecture, 26 Symonds Street

Works, Old Choral Hall, 7 Symonds Street

Zoology, 3A Symonds Street (Deliveries to No. 3)

**INDEX****A**

Abandonments, 72  
 Abstracts, 86  
 Academic Dress, 86  
 Academic Dress hire, 414  
 Accommodation Service, 415  
 Accountancy, Department of, 268-269  
 Additional Lectures, 72  
 Addition of pages and subjects, 65  
 Admission, 60-61  
   ad eundem statum, 60, 76  
   provisional 60-61  
   University Entrance, 60  
 Aegrotat pass, 84-85  
 Alcohol, 92  
 Alterations to courses, 65-66  
 Anatomy, Department of, 220  
 Ancient History, 154-157  
 Anthropology, 139-143  
 Anthropology, Department of, 139-144  
 Applied Research Office, 415  
 Architecture and Town Planning, Faculty of, 325-343  
 Architecture, School of, 324-336  
 Arms of the University, 10  
 Art History, Department of, 145  
 Arts, Faculty of, 97-195  
 Asian Geography, 166  
 Asian History, 169, 170, 171, 172  
 Asian Languages and Literatures, 145-149  
 Asian Politics, 177  
 Auckland University Club, 420  
 Auckland University District Graduates' Association, 419  
 Awards Handbook, 446

**B**

Biblical History and Literature, 157-158  
 Biochemistry, Department of, 220  
 Biology (for BA), 149  
 Biology (for BHB), 388  
 Biology (for BSc), 220-222  
 Botany, Department of, 220-222, 245-246  
 Bursaries, (See Tertiary Assistance Grants)

**C**

Calendar, 4, 12-18  
 Careers Adviser, 414  
 Catering Services, 417  
 Cell Biology, Department of, 223  
 Centenary Celebrators  
   Address of Vice Chancellor, 6  
   History of the University, 8-10  
   Programme of Events, 14  
 University of Auckland Foundation, 7

## Certificates:

Courses of Instruction in a Single Instrument, 320-321  
 Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry, 253  
 Certificate of Proficiency, 407  
 Chapel, 414  
 Chaplains, 414  
 Chemistry, Department of, 223-227  
 Chinese, 145-146  
 Classical Studies, 154  
 Classics and Ancient History, Department of, 149-158  
 Commerce, Faculty of, 255-273  
 Compassionate Pass, 84-85  
 Computer Centre, 410  
 Computer Science, Department of, 227-228  
   Science papers, 227-228  
   Commerce papers, 323  
 Computer System Regulations, 411  
 Conceded Pass, 83  
 Continuing Education, Centre for, 410  
 Copyright, 96  
 Council meetings, 12-18  
   members, 19-20  
 Counselling Service, 416  
 Course prescriptions for degrees:  
   Accounting, 268  
   Anatomy, 220  
   Ancient History, 154-157  
   Anthropology, 139-143  
   Architecture, 331-333  
   Art History, 145, 376  
   Asian Geography, 166  
   Asian History, 169, 170, 171, 172  
   Asian Politics, 177  
   Asian Studies, 133  
   Biblical History and Literature, 157-158  
   Biochemistry, 220  
   Biology for BA, 149  
   Biology for BHB, 457, 388  
   Biology for BSc, 220-222  
   Business Administration, 271-272  
   Botany, 220-222  
   Cell Biology, 223  
   Chemistry, 223, 227  
   Chinese, 145-146  
   Classical Studies, 154  
   Commercial Law, 268-269  
   Computer Science, 227-228  
   Economics, 269-270  
   Education, 159-162  
   Engineering, 355-370  
   English, 162-164  
   Environmental Studies, 247-408  
   Fine Arts, 446-448  
   French, 180-182  
   Geography, 165-166, 228

- Geology, 228-232
  - German, 166-168
  - Greek, 152-154
  - Hebrew, 158
  - History, 169-174
  - Human Biology, 388-389, 390-391
  - Indonesian, 147
  - Italian, 182, 184
  - Japanese, 147-149
  - Jurisprudence, 292-293
  - Latin, 150-152
  - Law, 287-289, 292-293
  - Law (Honours), 290-291
  - Linguistics, 144-145
  - Management Studies, 270-271
  - Maori Studies, 143-144
  - Mathematics and Statistics, 233-236
  - Medicine, 389-390
  - Music, 174-175, 311-313, 314-315
  - Music (Performance), 313-314
  - Music (Performance) with Honours, 314
  - Optometry, 243-244
  - Pathology, 236
  - Philosophy, 175-177, 236
  - Physics, 237-242
  - Physiology, 242-243
  - Political Studies, 177-178, 224, 245
  - Psychology, 178-180, 244-245
  - Russian, 185-187
  - Scandinavian Studies, 168-169
  - Sociology, 187-188
  - Spanish, 184-185
  - Town Planning, 341-342
  - Zoology, 245-247
- Course prescriptions for Diplomas:
- Broadcast Communication, 189-190
  - Business and Industrial Administration, 273
  - Clinical Psychology, 248-249
  - Computational Mathematics, 249-250
  - Criminology, 295
  - Drama, 190-191
  - Energy Technology (Geothermal), 250-251
  - Gynaecology and Obstetrics, 393-394
  - Local Government and Administration, 195
  - Mathematical Education, 251-252
  - Music, 319
  - Music with Honours, 320
  - Obstetrics, 394-395
  - Statistics, 252-253
  - Town Planning, 343
  - Valuation, 335-336
- Course prescriptions for Professional Examinations:
- Accounting, 272
  - Architecture, 329-330
  - Engineering, 370
  - Law, 292
- Course Regulations for Degrees — see Degree Regulations
- Course Regulations for Diplomas:
- Broadcast Communication, 189
  - Business and Industrial Administration, 273
  - Clinical Psychology, 248
  - Computational Mathematics, 249
  - Criminology, 294-295
  - Drama, 190
  - Education, 191-192
  - Educational Psychology, 192-193
  - Energy Technology (Geothermal), 250
  - Guidance and Counselling, 193
  - Gynaecology and Obstetrics, 393
  - Local Government and Administration, 194
  - Mathematical Education, 251
  - Music, 316-319
  - Music with Honours, 319-320
  - Obstetrics, 394
  - Paediatrics, 392
  - Psychiatry, 392
  - Statistics, 252
  - Town Planning, 343
  - Valuation, 334-335
- Course Regulations for Professional Examinations:
- Membership of NZ Society of Accountants, 272
  - Institute of Architects & AERB Special Examinations, 329-330
  - Admission as Barrister and Solicitor, 292
  - Law and Practice in NZ, 282-283
- Craccum*, 418
- Crêche*, 417
- Credits, 60, 69-71
- Centre for Continuing Education, 70
  - Teachers' College, 69-71
- Cross-credits, 68-69
- D**
- Dates of Terms, 12-18, 61
  - Deans, 22
  - Degree, Completion of at another University, 72
  - Degrees, Conferring of, 86-87
  - Degree Courses, *see* Course Prescriptions for Degrees
  - Degrees, Honary, 86
  - Degree Regulations:
  - Bachelor of Architecture, 324-328
    - Arts, 98-130
    - Commerce, 256-264
    - Engineering, 346-351
    - Fine Arts, 372-373
    - Human Biology, 382-383
    - Laws, 276-280
    - Laws (Honours), 280-282
    - Medicine and Surgery, 383-384
    - Music, 298-301
    - Music (Performance), 302-306
    - Music (Performance) (Hons), 306

Optometry, 214-216  
 Science, 198-211  
 Science (Honours), 212-214  
 Town Planning, 337-339  
 Master of Architecture, 328-329  
 Arts, 131-138  
 Business Administration, 267  
 Commerce, 265-266  
 Engineering, 352-354  
 Fine Arts, 373-375  
 Human Biology, 384-385  
 Jurisprudence, 285-286  
 Laws, 283-284  
 Medical Science, 385-386  
 Music, 308-310  
 Philosophy, 404  
 Science, 217-219  
 Town Planning, 339-340  
 Doctor of Laws, 400-401  
 Literature, 398-399  
 Medicine, 386-387  
 Music, 401-402  
 Philosophy, 468-471, 404  
 Science, 399-400  
 Deletions of papers and subjects, 65-66  
 Diploma courses, *see* Course prescriptions for  
 Diplomas  
 Discipline, Regulations, 91-94  
 Library, 96  
 Computer System, 411  
 District, University, 72-73  
 Doctorates, *see* Degree Regulations  
 Tuition and Research Fees, 85

**E**  
 Economics, Department of, 269-270  
 Education, Department of, 159-162  
 Elam School of Fine Arts, 376-377  
 Eligibility to Enrol, 62-63  
 Eligibility to sit Examinations, 81  
 English, Department of, 162-164  
 Engineering, Faculty of, 346-370  
 Enrolment 1983, 74-79  
 Enrolment:  
   eligibility, 62-63  
   extramural, 80-81  
   late, 64  
   limitations, 421-423  
   Regulations, 63-64  
   timetable 1983, 77-79  
 Enrolment Course, Regulations (General), 61-73  
 Environmental Studies:  
   Faculty of Arts, 130  
   Faculty of Science, 247  
   Town Planning, 342  
 Examinations, 81-85  
   aegrotat and compassionate passes, 84-85

concessions, 85  
 conduct, 81-84  
 grades and marks, 83  
 marking of script, 83  
 open and restricted book, 84  
 recount of marks, 84  
 theses, 85  
 viva voce, 85  
 Exclusions from Course of study, 67-68  
 Exempted papers, courses, subjects, 71-72  
 Extramural enrolment, 80-81  
   at Massey University, 80-81

**F**  
 Failure in a paper, course, subject after two attempts, 67  
 Failure to make satisfactory progress in a course of study as a whole, 67-68  
 Fees, 88-91  
   examination, 88  
   general, 88  
   late, 89-90  
   payment of, 64  
   private foreign students, 91  
   refunds, 66  
   Student's Association, 88  
   tuition and research, 90  
   welfare, 89  
 Fine Arts, Faculty of, 371-378  
   School of, 376-377  
 Fines:  
   disciplinary, 93  
   library, 96  
   penalties, 89-90  
 Foreign Language Reading Examination, 219, 405  
   French, 181  
   German, 168  
 French, 180-182  
 Full-time study, Definitions, 444-445

**G**  
 General Course Provisions, 60-96  
 General Statutes and Regulations, 60-96  
 Geography, Department of, 165-166, 228  
 German, 166-168  
 Germanic Languages and Literature,  
   Department of, 166-169  
 Geology, Department of, 228-232  
 Graduates:  
   Association 419  
   N.Z. Association, 420  
   Club, 420  
   Honorary, 23  
 Graduation, 85  
 Grafton Hall, 415  
 Greek, 152-154



**H**

Halls of Residence, 415  
 International House, 415  
 Grafton Hall, 415  
 Norman Spencer Apartments, 415  
 O'Rorke Hall, 415  
 Park Road Student Flats, 415  
 Health Service, Student, 416-417  
 Hebrew, 158  
 Higher Degrees:  
   Doctor of Laws, 400-401  
   Doctor of Literature, 398-399  
   Doctor of Music, 401-402  
   Doctor of Science, 399-400  
 History, Department of, 169-174  
 History University of Auckland, 8-10  
 Honorary Degrees, award of, 87  
 Honorary Graduates, 23

**I**

Indonesian, 147  
 Intermediate Courses,  
   Other Universities, 408  
 Inter-Faculty Studies, 404-408  
 International House, 415  
 Inventions and Patents, 415-416  
 Italian, 182-184

**J**

Japanese, 147-149

**L**

Laboratory Timetable 1983, 438-441  
 Late Enrolment, 63-64  
 Latin, 150-152  
 Law, Faculty of, 275-295  
 Lecture Timetable 1983, 423-438  
 Legislation 453  
 Leigh Laboratory, 232-233  
 Library, 94-96  
   hours, 95  
 Linguistics, 144-145  
 Lost property, 416

**M**

Maclaurin Chapel, 414  
 Maidment Arts Centre, 418  
 Management Studies, Department of, 270-271  
 Map, Campus, 2-3  
 Massey University, tuition at, 80-81  
 Maori Studies, 143-144  
 Marine Research Laboratory, See Leigh Laboratory,  
   232-233  
 Marking of Scripts, 83  
 Mathematics and Statistics, Department of, 223-236

Matriculation, 60  
 McGregor Museum, 247  
 Medicine and Human Biology, Faculty of, 380-396  
   Higher Academic and Refresher Training, 395  
   School of 380-381  
 Music, BA papers, 174-175  
   course for non-degree students, 320-321  
 Music, Faculty of, 297-321

**N**

Newman Hall, 414-415  
 NZ University Students' Association, 419  
 NZ Universities Graduates' Association (UK), 420  
 Non-matriculated students, 66  
 Norman Spencer Apartments, 415

**O**

Obstetrics and Gynaecology, higher Training, 395  
   Postgraduate School, 392  
 Refresher Training for Family Doctors, 395  
 Officers of the University, 19  
 Operations Research, 407  
 Optometry, 243-245  
 O'Rorke Hall, 479  
 Overseas educational qualifications, 60  
 Overseas Students Admissions Committee, 60

**P**

Parking, 82, 416  
 Park Road Student Flats, 415  
 Patents, 479  
 Pathology, Department of, 236  
 Payment of Fees, 64  
 Penalties for late enrolment, 64  
 Philosophy, Department of, 175-177, 236  
   Master of, 404  
   Doctor of, 404-406  
 Physics, Department of, 237-242  
 Physiology, Department of, 242-243  
 Political Studies, Department of, 177-178  
 Postgraduate Medical Committee, 396  
 Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology,  
   392  
 Pre-enrolment, 74-77  
 Preliminary, preparatory and supplementary  
   Courses:  
     German, 167  
     Latin, 150  
 Prerequisites, see Degree regulations  
 Prescribed Texts, 484-509  
 Press correspondence, 416  
 Prizes:  
   University of Auckland 1981, 449-451  
   Prizes and Scholarships, National, 447  
 Professores Emeriti, 24  
 Professional Examinations, see Course prescriptions  
 for professional examinations

Provisional Admission, 60-61  
 Psychiatry, 392  
 Psychology, Arts and Science papers, 178-180, 244  
   Department of 178-180, 244-245  
 Optometry papers, 243-245

## R

Radio Chemistry, 253  
 Radio Research Centre, 354  
 Research Engineering, 354  
 Restricted pass, 83  
 Restrictions on Enrolment, 421-422  
 Recount of marks, 84  
 Romance Languages, Department of, 180-185  
 Russian, 185-187

## S

Scandinavian Studies, 168-169  
 Science, Faculty of, 199-253  
 Scholarships and other Awards, 446-452  
 Scholarships, University of Auckland 1982, 447-449  
 Scholarships, and Prizes, National, 1982, 447  
 Senate:  
   meetings, 12-18  
   members, 21  
 Sketch Plan, Auckland University district, 73  
 Smoking, 92, 96  
 Society of Accounts, 272  
 Sociology, 187-188  
 Spanish, 184-185  
 Staff:  
   Adademic, 25-50  
   Administrative, 53-57  
   Library, 51-52  
 Statutes and Regulations of the University:  
   Admission Regulations, 60-61  
   Award of Honorary Degrees Regulations, 87  
   Computer Systems Regulations, 411  
   Conferring of Degrees and Academic Dress 86-88  
 Court of Convocation Statute, 470  
 Council Elections (Regulations),  
   Court of Convocation Representatives  
   Regulations, 471-474  
   Representatives of Governing Bodies of Secondary  
   Schools Regulations, 474-476  
   Lecturers' Representative Regulations, 477-479  
 Disciplinary Regulations, 91-94  
 Dress Regulations, 85-87  
 Enrolment and Course (General) Regulations, 61-73  
 Extramural Enrolment Regulations, 81  
 Extramural Enrolment Statute, 80  
 Examination Regulations, 81-85  
 Fees Regulations, 88-91  
 Library Regulations, 94  
 Senate Elections,  
   Lecturers' Representatives Regulations, 479-482

Student Counselling, 416  
 Student Health Service, 416-417  
 Students' Association, 417-419  
 Studio:  
   Architecture, 331  
   Fine Arts, 377-378  
 Subject Codes, Summary of, 510  
 Supplementary courses, see preliminary courses

## T

Telephones, 417  
 Terms, 61  
   dates, 12-18  
 Theses, 85  
   see also the Regulations for individual degrees  
 Tertiary Assistance Grants, 444  
 Tertiary Assistance Grants, Tenure, 446  
 Texts, prescribed, 1983, 558-591  
 Timetables, 1983, 423-440  
   Enrolment, 1983, 74-79  
   Lecture, 1983, 423-439  
   Laboratory, 1983, 439-441  
 Town Planning, Department of, 337-345  
 Transfer from another NZ University, 60

## U

University (Other) Intermediate Courses, 408  
 University Grants Committee Handbook, 446  
 Unsatisfactory work during year, 67-68

## V

Valuation Diploma of, 334-336  
 Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers, 72  
 Viva Voce examinations, 85

## W

Welfare Services, 416-417  
 Withdrawals from course, paper or subject, 65-66

## Z

Zoology, Department of, 245-247  
 Museum, 247

## 1983 CALENDAR

JANUARY							FEBRUARY							MARCH							
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	
31					1	2		1	2	3	4	5	6		1	2	3	4	5	6	
3	4	5	6	7	8	9	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	
10	11	12	13	14	15	16	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	
17	18	19	20	21	22	23	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	
24	25	26	27	28	29	30	28							28	29	30	31				
APRIL							MAY							JUNE							
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	
				1	2	3	30	31					1				1	2	3	4	5
4	5	6	7	8	9	10	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	
18	19	20	21	22	23	24	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	
25	26	27	28	29	30		23	24	25	26	27	28	29	27	28	29	30				
JULY							AUGUST							SEPTEMBER							
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	
				1	2	3	1	2	3	4	5	6	7				1	2	3	4	
4	5	6	7	8	9	10	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
18	19	20	21	22	23	24	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	29	30	31					26	27	28	29	30			
OCTOBER							NOVEMBER							DECEMBER							
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	
31					1	2		1	2	3	4	5	6				1	2	3	4	
3	4	5	6	7	8	9	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	
10	11	12	13	14	15	16	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	
17	18	19	20	21	22	23	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	
24	25	26	27	28	29	30	28	29	30	31				26	27	28	29	30	31		

## 1984 CALENDAR

JANUARY							FEBRUARY							MARCH						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S
30	31					1	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
9	10	11	12	13	14	15	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
16	17	18	19	20	21	22	27	28	29					26	27	28	29	30	31	
23	24	25	26	27	28	29														
APRIL							MAY							JUNE						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S
30					1		7	8	9	10	11	12	13	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
9	10	11	12	13	14	15	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
16	17	18	19	20	21	22	28	29	30	31				25	26	27	28	29	30	
23	24	25	26	27	28	29														
JULY							AUGUST							SEPTEMBER						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S
30	31					1	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
9	10	11	12	13	14	15	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
16	17	18	19	20	21	22	27	28	29	30	31			24	25	26	27	28	29	30
23	24	25	26	27	28	29														
OCTOBER							NOVEMBER							DECEMBER						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	31				1	2	
8	9	10	11	12	13	14	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
15	16	17	18	19	20	21	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
22	23	24	25	26	27	28	26	27	28	29	30			17	18	19	20	21	22	23
29	30	31												24	25	26	27	28	29	30

## **UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND CENTENARY**

**1883**

**1983**

The University will mark its centenary in 1983, and invites past and present students and staff and members of the community to join in celebrating the event. The main celebrations will be held on 6-9 May, 1983, but there will be other events throughout the year. For further details apply or write to the Registrar, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland.